



KM-2560

KM-3060

SERVICE

MANUAL



Published in April 2008
842H0112
2H0SM062
Rev. 2

CAUTION

RISK OF EXPLOSION IF BATTERY IS REPLACED BY AN INCORRECT TYPE. DISPOSE OF USED BATTERIES ACCORDING TO THE INSTRUCTIONS.

It may be illegal to dispose of this battery into the municipal waste stream. Check with your local solid waste officials for details in your area for proper disposal.

ATTENTION

IL Y A UN RISQUE D'EXPLOSION SI LA BATTERIE EST REMPLACÉE PAR UN MODÈLE DE TYPE INCORRECT. METTRE AU REBUT LES BATTERIES UTILISÉES SELON LES INSTRUCTIONS DONNÉES.

Il peut être illégal de jeter les batteries dans des eaux d'égout municipales. Vérifiez avec les fonctionnaires municipaux de votre région pour les détails concernant des déchets solides et une mise au rebut appropriée.

Revision history

Revision	Date	Replaced pages	Remarks
1	October 31, 2007	CONTENTS, 1-1-1, 1-1-2, 1-2-1, 1-2-4, 1-3-2, 1-3-6 to 1-3-8, 1-3-31, 1-3-32, 1-3-53, 1-3-70 to 1-3-72, 1-4-18 to 1-4-27, 1-4-36, 1-4-37, 1-5-1, 1-5-41 to 1-5-59, 1-6-1, 1-6-2, 2-4-1, 2-4-3 to 2-4-6	-
2	April 25, 2008	CONTENTS, 1-1-2, 1-2-15, 1-4-20, 1-5-2, 1-5-36	-


This page is intentionally left blank.


Safety precautions


This booklet provides safety warnings and precautions for our service personnel to ensure the safety of their customers, their machines as well as themselves during maintenance activities. Service personnel are advised to read this booklet carefully to familiarize themselves with the warnings and precautions described here before engaging in maintenance activities.

Safety warnings and precautions


Various symbols are used to protect our service personnel and customers from physical danger and to prevent damage to their property. These symbols are described below:

 **DANGER:** High risk of serious bodily injury or death may result from insufficient attention to or incorrect compliance with warning messages using this symbol.

 **WARNING:** Serious bodily injury or death may result from insufficient attention to or incorrect compliance with warning messages using this symbol.

 **CAUTION:** Bodily injury or damage to property may result from insufficient attention to or incorrect compliance with warning messages using this symbol.

Symbols

The triangle () symbol indicates a warning including danger and caution. The specific point of attention is shown inside the symbol.



General warning.



Warning of risk of electric shock.



Warning of high temperature.

 indicates a prohibited action. The specific prohibition is shown inside the symbol.



General prohibited action.



Disassembly prohibited.

 indicates that action is required. The specific action required is shown inside the symbol.



General action required.





Remove the power plug from the wall outlet.





Always ground the copier.

1. Installation Precautions


WARNING



- Do not use a power supply with a voltage other than that specified. Avoid multiple connections to one outlet: they may cause fire or electric shock. When using an extension cable, always check that it is adequate for the rated current. 
- Connect the ground wire to a suitable grounding point. Not grounding the copier may cause fire or electric shock. Connecting the earth wire to an object not approved for the purpose may cause explosion or electric shock. Never connect the ground cable to any of the following: gas pipes, lightning rods, ground cables for telephone lines and water pipes or faucets not approved by the proper authorities. 


CAUTION:


- Do not place the copier on an infirm or angled surface: the copier may tip over, causing injury. 
- Do not install the copier in a humid or dusty place. This may cause fire or electric shock. 
- Do not install the copier near a radiator, heater, other heat source or near flammable material.

This may cause fire. 

- Allow sufficient space around the copier to allow the ventilation grills to keep the machine as cool as possible. Insufficient ventilation may cause heat buildup and poor copying performance. 











- Always handle the machine by the correct locations when moving it. 
- Always use anti-toppling and locking devices on copiers so equipped. Failure to do this may cause the copier to move unexpectedly or topple, leading to injury. 

- Avoid inhaling toner or developer excessively. Protect the eyes. If toner or developer is accidentally ingested, drink a lot of water to dilute it in the stomach and obtain medical attention immediately. If it gets into the eyes, rinse immediately with copious amounts of water and obtain medical attention. 





- Advise customers that they must always follow the safety warnings and precautions in the copier's instruction handbook. 

2.Precautions for Maintenance

WARNING

- Always remove the power plug from the wall outlet before starting machine disassembly. 
- Always follow the procedures for maintenance described in the service manual and other related brochures. 
- Under no circumstances attempt to bypass or disable safety features including safety mechanisms and protective circuits. 
- Always use parts having the correct specifications. 
- Always use the thermostat or thermal fuse specified in the service manual or other related brochure when replacing them. Using a piece of wire, for example, could lead to fire or other serious accident. 
- When the service manual or other serious brochure specifies a distance or gap for installation of a part, always use the correct scale and measure carefully. 
- Always check that the copier is correctly connected to an outlet with a ground connection. 
- Check that the power cable covering is free of damage. Check that the power plug is dust-free. If it is dirty, clean it to remove the risk of fire or electric shock. 
- Never attempt to disassemble the optical unit in machines using lasers. Leaking laser light may damage eyesight. 
- Handle the charger sections with care. They are charged to high potentials and may cause electric shock if handled improperly. 

CAUTION

- Wear safe clothing. If wearing loose clothing or accessories such as ties, make sure they are safely secured so they will not be caught in rotating sections. 
- Use utmost caution when working on a powered machine. Keep away from chains and belts. 
- Handle the fixing section with care to avoid burns as it can be extremely hot. 
- Check that the fixing unit thermistor, heat and press rollers are clean. Dirt on them can cause abnormally high temperatures. 

• Do not remove the ozone filter, if any, from the copier except for routine replacement.



• Do not pull on the AC power cord or connector wires on high-voltage components when removing them; always hold the plug itself.



• Do not route the power cable where it may be stood on or trapped. If necessary, protect it with a cable cover or other appropriate item.



• Treat the ends of the wire carefully when installing a new charger wire to avoid electric leaks.



• Remove toner completely from electronic components.



• Run wire harnesses carefully so that wires will not be trapped or damaged.



• After maintenance, always check that all the parts, screws, connectors and wires that were removed, have been refitted correctly. Special attention should be paid to any forgotten connector, trapped wire and missing screws.



• Check that all the caution labels that should be present on the machine according to the instruction handbook are clean and not peeling. Replace with new ones if necessary.



• Handle greases and solvents with care by following the instructions below:



• Use only a small amount of solvent at a time, being careful not to spill. Wipe spills off completely.

• Ventilate the room well while using grease or solvents.

• Allow applied solvents to evaporate completely before refitting the covers or turning the power switch on.

• Always wash hands afterwards.

• Never dispose of toner or toner bottles in fire. Toner may cause sparks when exposed directly to fire in a furnace, etc.



• Should smoke be seen coming from the copier, remove the power plug from the wall outlet immediately.



3.Miscellaneous

WARNING

• Never attempt to heat the drum or expose it to any organic solvents such as alcohol, other than the specified refiner; it may generate toxic gas.



This page is intentionally left blank.

CONTENTS

1-1 Specifications

1-1-1 Specifications	1-1-1
1-1-2 Parts names	1-1-3
(1) Machine	1-1-3
(2) Operation panel	1-1-4
1-1-3 Machine cross section	1-1-5

1-2 Installation

1-2-1 Installation environment	1-2-1
1-2-2 Unpacking and installation	1-2-2
(1) Installation procedure	1-2-2
(2) Setting initial copy modes	1-2-11
1-2-3 Installing the key counter (option)	1-2-12
1-2-4 Installing the expanded memory (option)	1-2-15

1-3 Maintenance Mode

1-3-1 Maintenance mode	1-3-1
(1) Executing a maintenance item	1-3-1
(2) Maintenance modes item list	1-3-2
(3) Contents of the maintenance mode items	1-3-5
1-3-2 User management	1-3-83
(1) Using the user management mode	1-3-83
(2) Common settings	1-3-84
(3) Copy settings	1-3-87
(4) Sending settings	1-3-88
(5) Document box/Removable memory settings	1-3-88
(6) Printer settings	1-3-89
(7) Network setup	1-3-90
(8) Printing reports/Sending notice	1-3-91
(9) Adjustment/Maintenance	1-3-91
(10) Date/Timer	1-3-92
(11) Editing Destination (Address Book/Adding One-Touch Keys)	1-3-93
(12) User login administration	1-3-94
(13) Job accounting	1-3-95

1-4 Troubleshooting

1-4-1 Paper misfeed detection	1-4-1
(1) Paper misfeed indication	1-4-1
(2) Paper misfeed detection conditions	1-4-2
(3) Paper misfeeds	1-4-9
1-4-2 Self-diagnosis	1-4-18
(1) Self-diagnostic function	1-4-18
(2) Self diagnostic codes	1-4-19
1-4-3 Image formation problems	1-4-32
(1) No image appears (entirely white)	1-4-33
(2) No image appears (entirely black)	1-4-33
(3) Image is too light	1-4-34
(4) Background is visible	1-4-34
(5) A white line appears longitudinally	1-4-34
(6) A black line appears longitudinally	1-4-35
(7) A black line appears laterally	1-4-35
(8) One side of the copy image is darker than the other	1-4-35
(9) Black dots appear on the image	1-4-35
(10) Image is blurred	1-4-36
(11) The leading edge of the image is consistently misaligned with the original	1-4-36
(12) The leading edge of the image is sporadically misaligned with the original	1-4-36
(13) Paper creases	1-4-36
(14) Offset occurs	1-4-37
(15) Image is partly missing	1-4-37
(16) Fusing is poor	1-4-37

(17) Image is out of focus	1-4-37
(18) Image center does not align with the original center	1-4-38
1-4-4 Electric problems	1-4-39
1-4-5 Mechanical problems	1-4-43
1-4-6 Send error code	1-4-45
(1) Scan to SMB error codes	1-4-45
(2) Scan to FTP error codes	1-4-46
(3) Scan to E-mail error codes	1-4-47
(4) Network Twain error codes	1-4-48
(5) Software trouble error codes	1-4-48

1-5 Assembly and Disassembly

1-5-1 Precautions for assembly and disassembly	1-5-1
(1) Precautions	1-5-1
(2) Drum	1-5-1
(3) Toner	1-5-1
(4) How to tell a genuine Kyocera Mita toner container	1-5-2
1-5-2 Paper feed section	1-5-3
(1) Detaching and refitting the forwarding, paper feed and separation pulleys	1-5-3
(2) Detaching and refitting the MP separation, MP paper feed and MP forwarding pulleys	1-5-6
1-5-3 Optical section	1-5-15
(1) Detaching and refitting the exposure lamp	1-5-15
(2) Detaching and refitting the scanner unit	1-5-19
(3) Detaching and refitting the scanner wires	1-5-23
(3-1) Detaching the scanner wires	1-5-23
(3-2) Fitting the scanner wires	1-5-25
(4) Detaching and refitting the ISU (reference)	1-5-28
(5) Detaching and refitting the laser scanner unit	1-5-30
(6) Adjusting the position of the ISU (reference)	1-5-34
1-5-4 Drum section	1-5-35
(1) Detaching and refitting the drum unit	1-5-35
(2) Detaching and refitting the main charger unit	1-5-37
(3) Detaching and refitting the drum separation claws	1-5-38
1-5-5 Developing section	1-5-39
(1) Detaching and refitting the developing unit	1-5-39
1-5-6 Transfer section	1-5-40
(1) Detaching and refitting the transfer roller unit	1-5-40
1-5-7 Fuser section	1-5-41
(1) Detaching and refitting the fuser unit	1-5-41
(2) Detaching and refitting the heat roller separation claws	1-5-44
(3) Detaching and refitting the press roller	1-5-45
(4) Detaching and refitting the fuser heater	1-5-47
(5) Detaching and refitting the heat roller	1-5-49
(6) Detaching and refitting the fuser thermistor 1	1-5-50
(7) Detaching and refitting the fuser thermistor 2	1-5-51
(8) Detaching and refitting the fuser thermostats 1 and 2	1-5-52
(9) Adjusting front position of the fuser unit (adjusting lateral squareness)	1-5-54
1-5-8 PWBs	1-5-55
(1) Detaching and refitting the engine PWB	1-5-55
1-5-9 Others	1-5-57
(1) Detaching and refitting the ozone filter 1	1-5-57
(2) Detaching and refitting the ozone filter 2	1-5-58
(3) Detaching and refitting the hard disk	1-5-59

1-6 Requirements on PWB Replacement

1-6-1 Upgrading the firmware	1-6-1
1-6-2 Adjustment-free variable resistors (VR)	1-6-1
1-6-3 Remarks on engine PWB replacement	1-6-2
1-6-4 Remarks on main PWB replacement	1-6-2

2-1 Mechanical construction

2-1-1 Paper feed section	2-1-1
(1) Cassette paper feed section	2-1-1
(2) MP tray paper feed section	2-1-3
2-1-2 Main charging section	2-1-4
2-1-3 Optical section	2-1-5
(1) Image scanner section	2-1-5
(2) Laser scanner section	2-1-7
2-1-4 Developing section	2-1-9
(1) Single component developing system	2-1-11
2-1-5 Transfer and separation sections	2-1-12
2-1-6 Cleaning and charge erasing sections	2-1-13
2-1-7 Fuser section	2-1-14
2-1-8 Eject and switchback sections	2-1-16
2-1-9 Duplex section	2-1-17
(1) Paper conveying operation in duplex copying	2-1-19

2-2 Electrical Parts Layout

2-2-1 Electrical parts layout	2-2-1
(1) PWBs	2-2-1
(2) Switches and sensors	2-2-3
(3) Motors	2-2-5
(4) Clutches and solenoids	2-2-7
(5) Other electrical components	2-2-8

2-3 Operation of the PWBs

2-3-1 Power source PWB	2-3-1
2-3-2 Engine PWB	2-3-4
2-3-3 Main PWB	2-3-13
2-3-4 Main operation unit PWB	2-3-17

2-4 Appendixes

Maintenance parts list	2-4-1
Maintenance kits	2-4-2
Periodic maintenance procedures	2-4-3
Chart of image adjustment procedures	2-4-7
General wiring diagram	2-4-9

INSTALLATION GUIDE

DOCUMENT PROCESSOR
PAPER FEEDER
DOCUMENT FINISHER
BUILT-IN FINISHER
JOB SEPARATOR
FAX System (M)
Data Security Kit (C)
UG-30

This page is intentionally left blank.

1-1-1 Specifications

Machine

Type	Desktop	
Printing method.....	Electrophotography by semiconductor laser	
Supported original types	Sheets, books and three-dimensional objects	
	Maximum original size: A3/Ledger	
Original feed system	Fixed	
Paper weight.....	Cassette: 60 to 120 g/m ² (Duplex: 60 to 80 g/m ²)	
	MP tray : 45 to 200 g/m ²	
Paper type	Cassette: Plain, Rough, Vellum, Recycled, Preprinted, Bond, Color (Colour), Prepunched, Letterhead, Thick paper, High Quality, Custom 1 to 8	
	MP tray : Plain, Transparency (OHP film), Rough, Vellum, Labels, Recycled, Preprinted, Bond, Cardstock, Color (Colour), Prepunched, Letterhead, Thick paper, Envelope, High Quality, Custom 1 to 8	
Paper size	Cassette: Ledger, Legal, Oficio II, 8.5 x 13.5", Letter, LetterR, StatementR, A3, B4, A4, A4R, B5, B5R, A5R, Folio, 8K, 16K, 16KR	
	MP tray : Ledger, Legal, Oficio II, 8.5 x 13.5", Letter, LetterR, Executive, StatementR, A3, B4, A4, A4R, B5, B5(ISO), B5R, A5R, B6R, A6R, Oufuku Hagaki, Hagaki, Envelope DL, Envelope C5, Envelope C4, Comm.#10, Comm.#9, Comm.#6-3/4, Monarch, Youkei 2, Youkei 4, Folio, 8K, 16K, 16KR	
Zoom level	Manual mode: 25 to 400%, 1% increments	
	Auto mode: Preset Zoom	
Printing speed	25 ppm model	
	Simplex	Duplex
	A3/11 x 17" : 12.5 sheets/min.	A3/11 x 17" : 9 sheets/min.
	B4/8 1/2 x 14": 12.5 sheets/min.	B4/8 1/2 x 14": 9 sheets/min.
	A4/11 x 8 1/2": 25 sheets/min.	A4/11 x 8 1/2": 19 sheets/min.
	A4R/8 1/2 x 11": 17.5 sheets/min.	A4R/8 1/2 x 11": 10 sheets/min.
	B5 : 25 sheets/min.	B5 : 20 sheets/min.
	B5R: 20 sheets/min.	B5R: 11 sheets/min.
	A5R: 14 sheets/min.	A5R: 14 sheets/min.
	30 ppm model	
	Simplex	Duplex
	A3/11 x 17" : 15 sheets/min.	A3/11 x 17" : 9 sheets/min.
	B4/8 1/2 x 14": 15 sheets/min.	B4/8 1/2 x 14": 10 sheets/min.
	A4/11 x 8 1/2": 30 sheets/min.	A4/11 x 8 1/2": 20 sheets/min.
	A4R/8 1/2 x 11": 22 sheets/min.	A4R/8 1/2 x 11": 11 sheets/min.
	B5 : 30 sheets/min.	B5 : 21 sheets/min.
	B5R: 20 sheets/min.	B5R: 11 sheets/min.
	A5R: 14 sheets/min.	A5R: 14 sheets/min.
First copy time	4.7 s or less	
Warm-up time	29 s (room temperature 22°C/71.6°F, 60% RH)	
	Recovery from low power mode: 10 s (room temperature 22°C/71.6°F, 60% RH)	
	Recovery from sleep mode: 15 s (room temperature 22°C/71.6°F, 60% RH)	
Paper capacity	Cassette : 500 sheets (80 g/m ²)	
	MP tray : 200 sheets (80 g/m ²)	
Output tray capacity	Top tray : 250 sheets (80 g/m ²)	
	150 sheets (80 g/m ² , with job separator)	
	100 sheets (80 g/m ² , with built-in finisher)	
Continuous copying	1 to 999 sheets	
Light source	Inert gas lamp	
Scanning system	Flat bed scanning by CCD image sensor	
Photoconductor.....	a-Si (drum diameter 30 mm)	
Image white system	Semiconductor laser	
Charging system	Single positive corona charging	
Developing system	Dry, reverse developing (single component system)	
	Developer: 1-component, magnetism toner	
	Toner replenishing: automatic from a toner container	
Transfer system	Transfer roller	
Separation system	Separation electrode	
Cleaning system	Cleaning blade and roller	

Charge erasing system	Exposure by cleaning lamp
Fusing system	Heat roller
	Heat source: halogen heaters
	Abnormally high temperature protection devices: thermostats
Main memory	Standard 512 MB/Maximum 1024 MB
Image storage memory	80 GB (standard)
Resolution	600 x 600 dpi
Operating environment	Temperature: 10 to 32.5°C/50 to 90.5°F
	Humidity: 15 to 80% RH
	Altitude: 2500 m/8,202 ft maximum
	Brightness: 1500 lux maximum
Dimensions	570 (W) x 620 (D) x 767.2 (H) mm (main unit only)
	22 7/16" (W) x 24 13/16" (D) x 30 3/16" (H)
Weight	75 kg/165 lbs
Space required	725 (W) x 620 (D) mm (using MP tray)
	28 9/16" (W) x 24 13/16" (D)
Power source	120 V AC, 60 Hz, 11.5 A
	220 to 240 V AC, 50 Hz, 6.5 A
Power consumption	1370 W
Options	Document processor, paper feeder, document finisher, built-in finisher, job separator, key counter, FAX kit, data backup kit, security kit, PDF upgrade kit and expanded memory

Printer functions

Printing speed	Same as copying speed
First print time	4.7 s or less
Resolution	300 dpi/600 dpi/Fast 1200 mode
Supported OS	Microsoft Windows 2000/XP
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003
	Microsoft Windows Vista
	Apple Macintosh OS 9.x/OS X 10.x
Interface	Hi-speed USB: 1
	Network interface: 1 (10BASE-T/100BASE-TX)
Page description language	PRESCRIBE

Scanner functions

Supported OS	Microsoft Windows 98 (second edition)
	Microsoft Windows 2000 (service pack 2 or later)
	Microsoft Windows Me
	Microsoft Windows XP
	Microsoft Windows Vista
Operating environment	CPU: 600 MHz or higher
	RAM: 128 MB or more
Resolution	600 dpi, 400 dpi, 300 dpi, 200 dpi, 200 x 100 dpi, 200 x 400 dpi
File format	TIFF (MMR/JPEG compression), JPEG, PDF (MMR/JPEG compression), PDF (high compression)
Scanning speed	A4/600 dpi/Text + Photo mode
	Single-sided: monochrome 30 sheets/min, Color 15 sheets/min
	Double-sided: monochrome 15 sheets/min, Color 10 sheets/min
Interface	Ethernet: 10BASE-T/100BASE-TX
Network protocol	TCP/IP
Transmission protocol	PC transmission: SMB Scan to SMB, FTP Scan to FTP
	E-mail transmission: SMTP Scan to E-mail
	TWAIN scan: TWAIN source/WIA scan (only for Windows Vista)



NOTE: These specifications are subject to change without notice.

www.tonerplus.com.ua

1-1-2 Parts names

(1) Machine

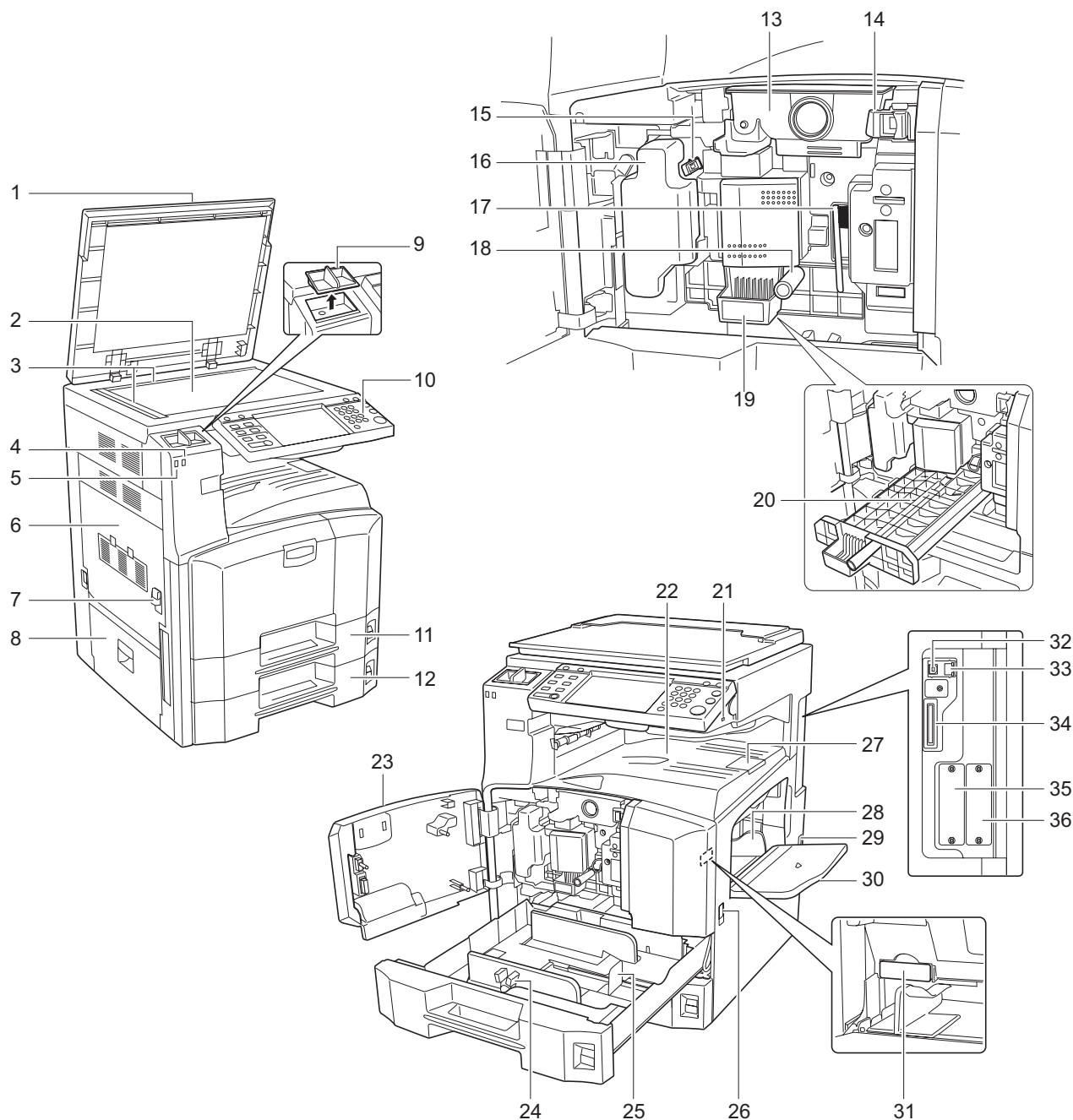
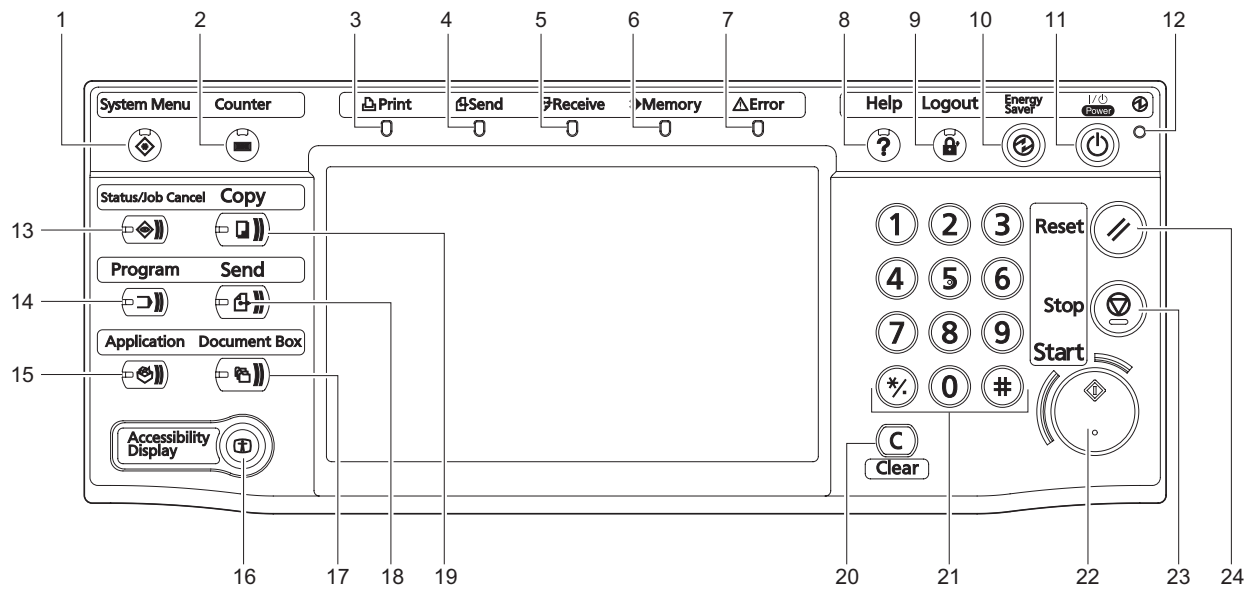


Figure 1-1-1

- | | | |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. Original cover (Option) | 13. Toner container | 25. Paper length guide |
| 2. Platen | 14. Toner container stopper | 26. Carrying handles |
| 3. Original size indicator plates | 15. Cleaner rod | 27. Eject stopper |
| 4. Reception indicator | 16. Waste toner box | 28. Paper width guides |
| 5. Error indicator | 17. Cleaning brush | 29. Main power switch |
| 6. Left cover 1 | 18. Knob (A1) | 30. MP tray |
| 7. Left cover 1 Lever | 19. Paper feed unit (A2) | 31. Memory card cover |
| 8. Left cover 2 | 20. Paper feed unit cover (A3) | 32. USB interface connector |
| 9. Clip holder | 21. USB memory slot | 33. Network interface connector |
| 10. Operation panel | 22. Top tray | 34. Memory card slot |
| 11. Cassette 1 | 23. Front cover | 35. Option interface slot (OPT1) |
| 12. Cassette 2 | 24. Paper width adjusting tab | 36. Option interface slot (OPT2) |

(2) Operation panel**Figure 1-1-2**

- | | |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. System menu key/indicator | 13. Status/Job cancel key/indicator |
| 2. Counter key/indicator | 14. Program key/indicator |
| 3. Print indicator | 15. Application key/indicator |
| 4. Send indicator | 16. Accessibility key/indicator |
| 5. Receive indicator | 17. Document box key/indicator |
| 6. Memory indicator | 18. Send key/indicator |
| 7. Error indicator | 19. Copy key/indicator |
| 8. Help key/indicator | 20. Clear key |
| 9. Logout key/indicator | 21. Numeric keys |
| 10. Energy saver key/indicator | 22. Start key/indicator |
| 11. Power key/indicator | 23. Stop key |
| 12. Main power indicator | 24. Reset key |

1-1-3 Machine cross section

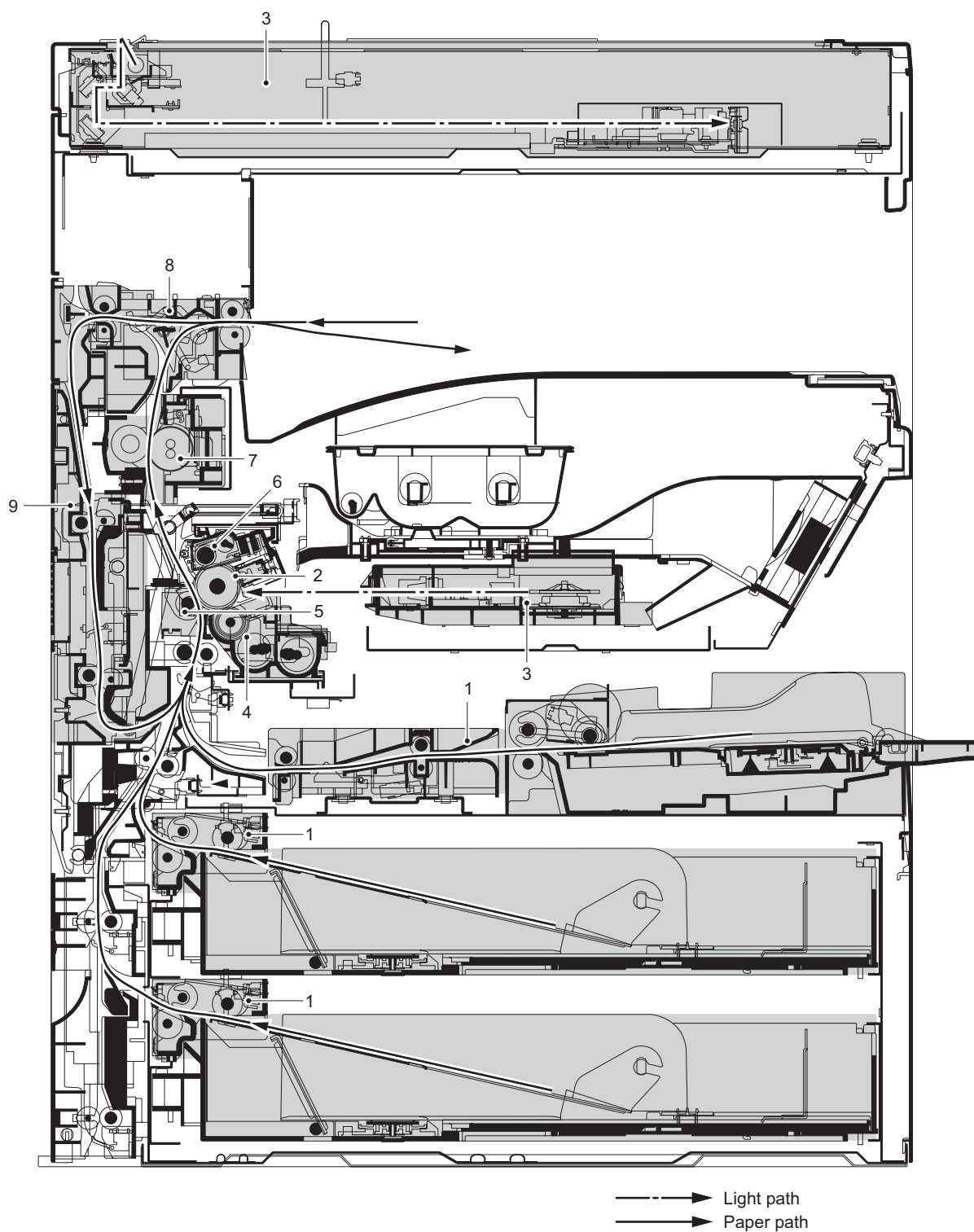


Figure 1-1-3 Machine cross section

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--|
| 1. Paper feed section | 6. Cleaning and charge erasing section |
| 2. Main charging section | 7. Fuser section |
| 3. Optical section | 8. Eject and switchback section |
| 4. Developing section | 9. Duplex section |
| 5. Transfer and separation section | |

This page is intentionally left blank.

1-2-1 Installation environment

1. Temperature: 10 to 32.5°C/50 to 90.5°F
2. Humidity: 15 to 80% RH
3. Power supply: 120 V AC, 11.5 A
220 to 240 V AC, 6.5 A
4. Power source frequency: 50 Hz \pm 0.3%/60 Hz \pm 0.3%
5. Installation location

Avoid direct sunlight or bright lighting. Ensure that the photoconductor will not be exposed to direct sunlight or other strong light when removing paper jams.

Avoid locations subject to high temperature and high humidity or low temperature and low humidity; an abrupt change in the environmental temperature; and cool or hot, direct air.

Avoid places subject to dust and vibrations.

Choose a surface capable of supporting the weight of the machine.

Place the machine on a level surface (maximum allowance inclination: 1°).

Avoid air-borne substances that may adversely affect the machine or degrade the photoconductor, such as mercury, acidic or alkaline vapors, inorganic gasses, NOx, SOx gases and chlorine-based organic solvents.

Select a well-ventilated location.
6. Allow sufficient access for proper operation and maintenance of the machine.

Machine front: 1000 mm/39 3/8" Machine rear: 100 mm/3 15/16"

Machine right: 300 mm/11 13/16" Machine left: 400 mm/15 3/4"

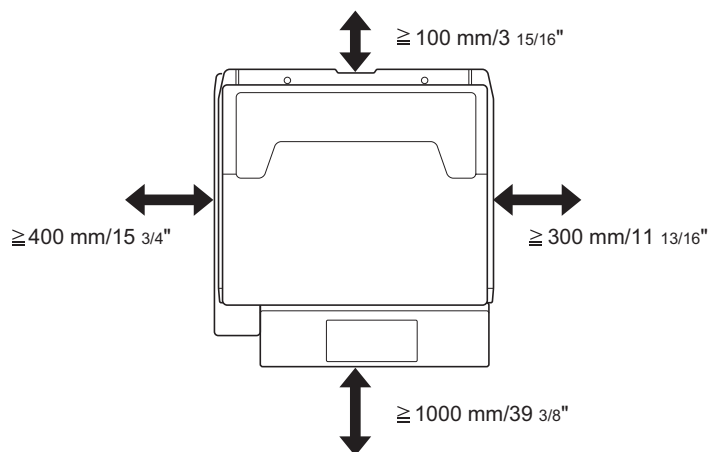
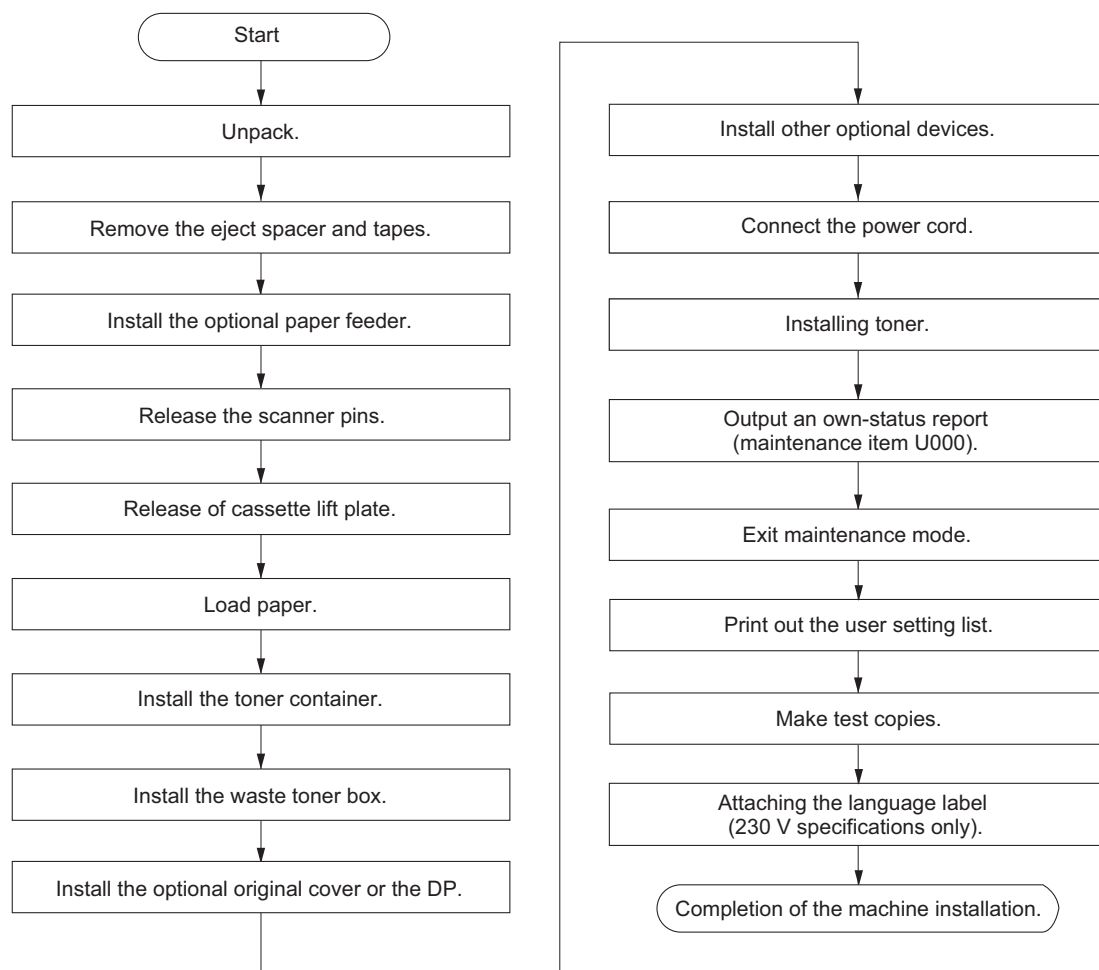


Figure 1-2-1 Installation dimensions

1-2-2 Unpacking and installation

(1) Installation procedure



Moving the machine

When moving the machine, pull out the four carrying handles on the right and left sides and hold them.

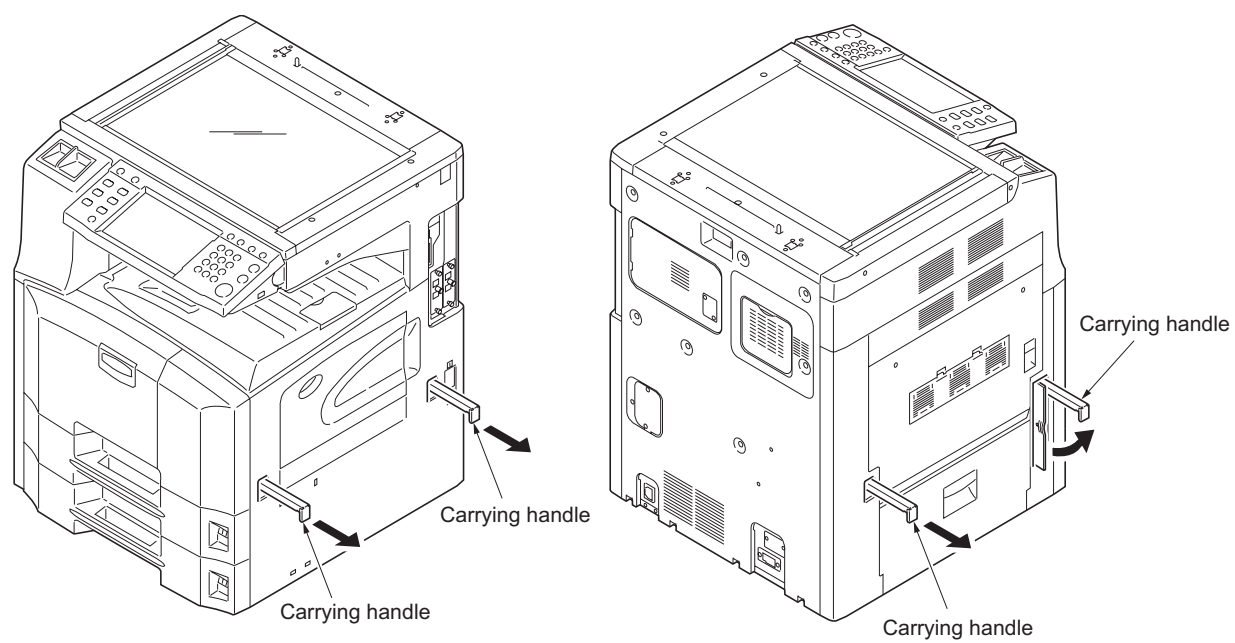


Figure 1-2-2

Unpacking.

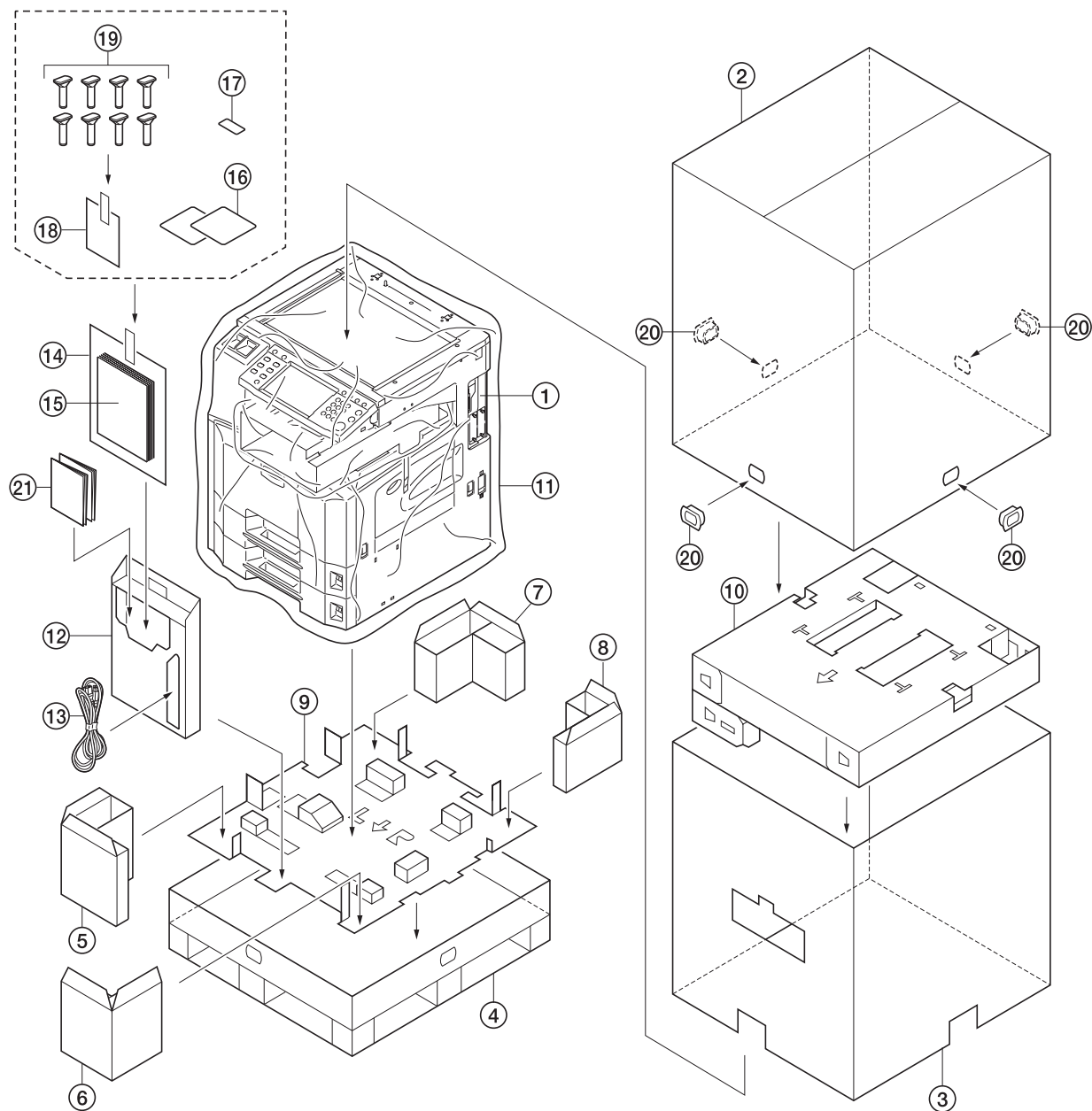


Figure 1-2-3 Unpacking

- | | |
|---------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. Machine | 12. Document tray |
| 2. Outer case | 13. Power cord |
| 3. Inner frame | 14. Plastic bag |
| 4. Skid | 15. Operation guide |
| 5. Bottom front left pad | 16. Size plates |
| 6. Bottom front right pad | 17. USB host label |
| 7. Bottom rear left pad | 18. Plastic bag |
| 8. Bottom rear right pad | 19. Cursor pins |
| 9. Bottom pad | 20. Hinge joints |
| 10. Top pad | 21. Paper storage bags |
| 11. Machine cover | |

Caution: Place the machine on a level surface.

Remove the eject spacer and tapes.

1. Remove the eject spacer.
2. Remove four tapes.

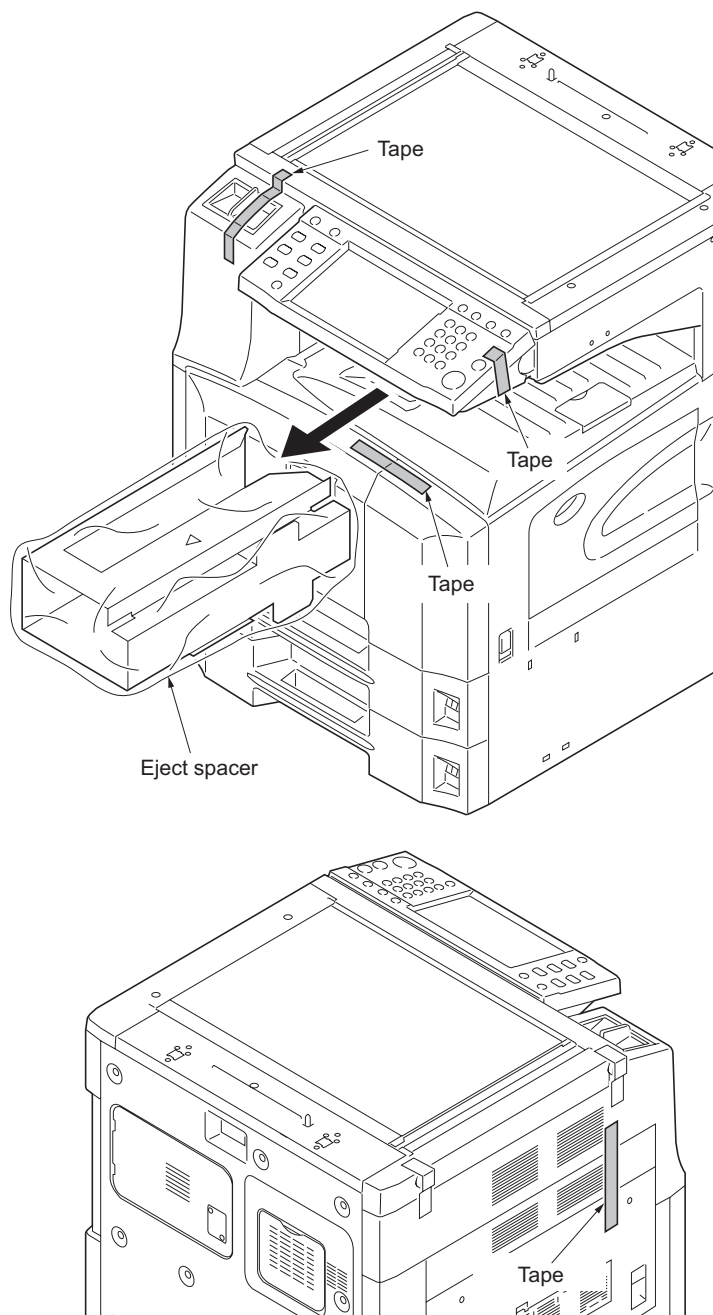


Figure 1-2-4

Install the optional paper feeder.

1. Install the optional paper feeder as necessary.
2. Verify levelness at the four corners of the platen using a level gauge, and adjust the level bolts at the bottom of the machine to optimize levelness.

Release the scanner pins.

1. Remove two tapes.
2. Remove two scanner pins.

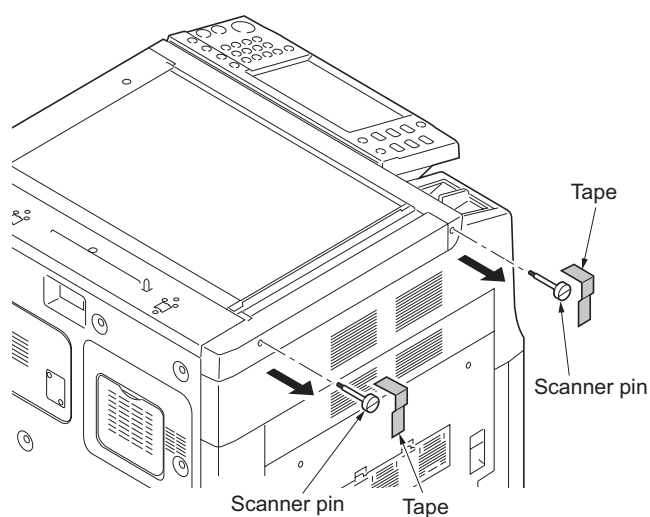


Figure 1-2-5

Release of cassette lift plate.

1. Pull cassette 1 and 2 out. Remove the lift plate stopper from each cassette and attach it to the storage location. When moving the machine, attach the lift plate in original position.

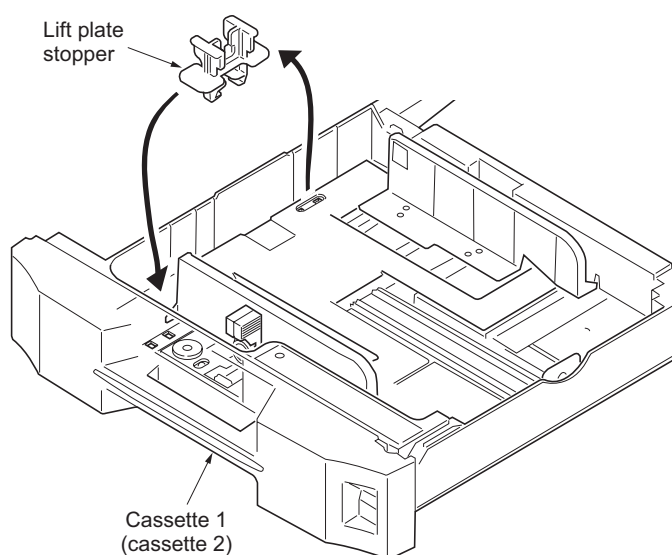


Figure 1-2-6

Load paper.

1. Holding the paper width adjusting tab both ends, move the paper width guides to fit the paper size.

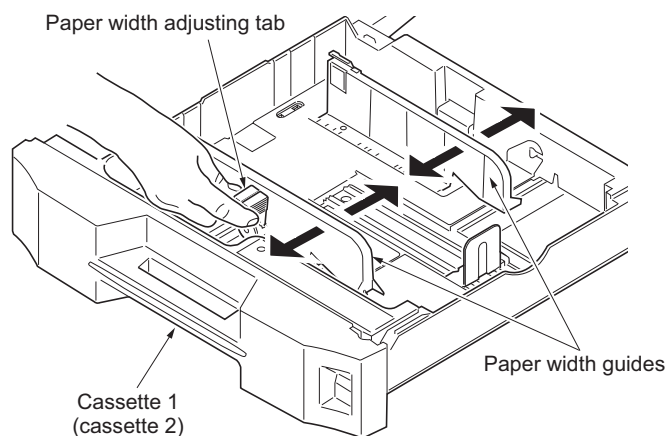


Figure 1-2-7

2. Adjust the paper length guide to fit the paper size.

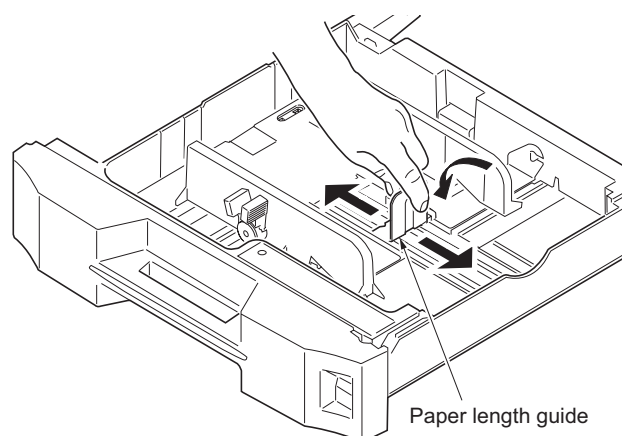


Figure 1-2-8

3. Align the paper flush against the left side of the cassette.

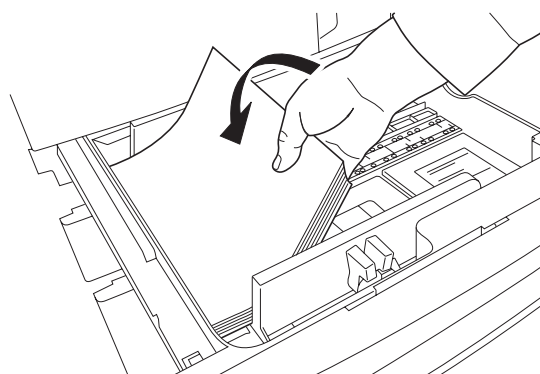


Figure 1-2-9

4. Gently push cassette 1 and 2 back in.

Install the toner container.

1. Open the front cover.
2. Hold the toner container vertically and tap the upper part five times or more.
Turn the toner container upside down and tap the upper part five times or more.

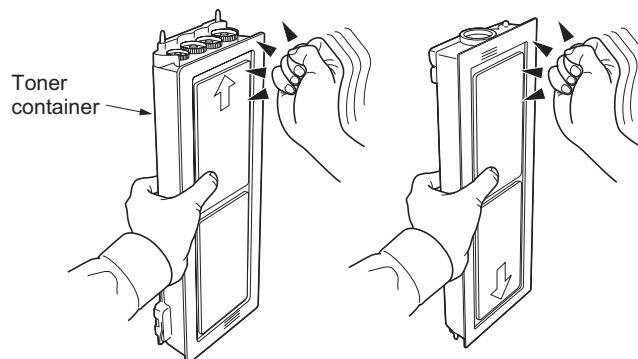


Figure 1-2-10

3. Shake the toner container up and down five times or more.
Turn the toner container upside down and shake it five times or more.

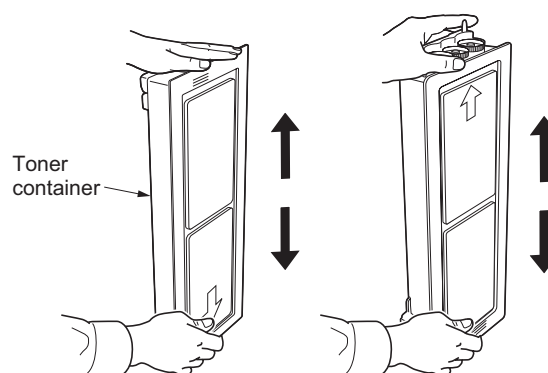


Figure 1-2-11

4. Shake the toner container approximately five times in the horizontal direction to stir toner.

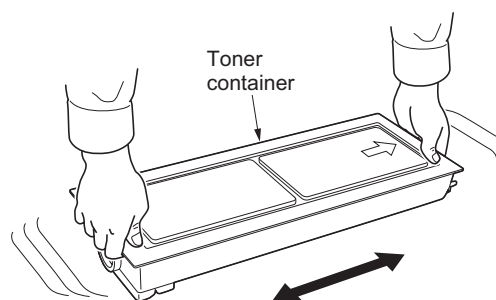


Figure 1-2-12

5. Gently push the toner container into the machine along the rails. Push the container all the way into the machine until it locks in place.

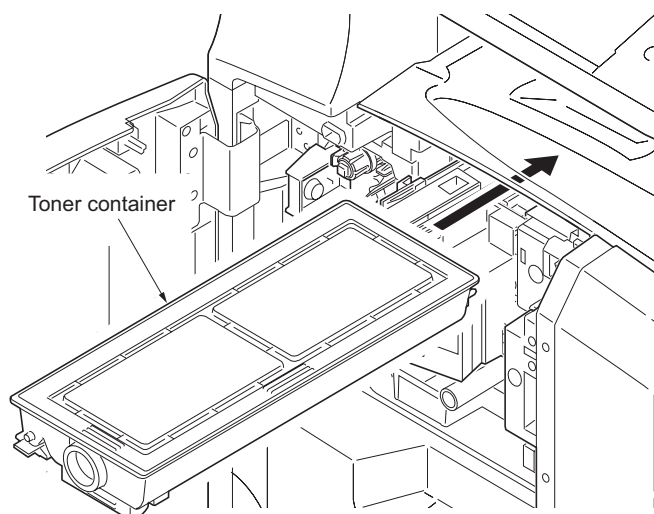


Figure 1-2-13

Install the waste toner box.

1. Install the waste toner box in the machine.
2. Close the front cover.

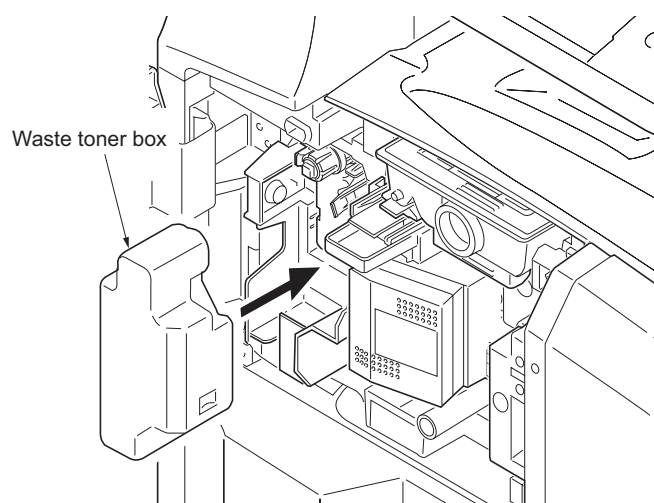


Figure 1-2-14

Install the optional original cover or the DP.

1. Install the optional original cover or DP.

Install other optional devices.

1. Install the optional devices (job separator, built-in finisher, document finisher and/or fax kit etc.) as necessary.

Connect the power cord.

1. Connect the power cord to the connector on the machine.
2. Insert the power plug into the wall outlet.

Installing toner.

1. Turn the main power switch on. Toner installation is started.
2. The drive chain is disengaged when toner installation is completed.
Run maintenance mode U130 if [Add Toner] remains displayed even after the drive chain is disengaged.

Output an own-status report (maintenance item U000).

1. Press the status key.
2. Enter the maintenance mode by entering 10871087 using the numeric keys.
3. Enter 000 using the numeric keys and press the start key.
4. Select MAINTENANCE and press the start key to output a list of the current settings of the maintenance items.
5. Press the stop key.

Exit maintenance mode.

1. Enter 001 using the numeric keys and press the start key. The machine exits the maintenance mode.

Print out the user setting list.

1. Select [Report Print] to output the user various setting reports.

Make test copies.

1. Place an original and make test copies.

Attaching the language label (230 V specifications only).

1. According to need, attach the correspond language label.

Completion of the machine installation.

(2) Setting initial copy modes

Factory settings are as follows:

Maintenance item No.	Contents	Factory setting
U253	Switching between double and single counts	Double count (A3/LGR)
U260	Selecting the timing for copy counting	After ejection
U285	Setting service status page	ON
U324	Setting the main charger cleaning indication	ON
U326	Setting the black line cleaning indication	ON
U328	Side ejection setting	OFF
U342	Setting the ejection restriction	ON
U343	Switching between duplex/simplex copy mode	OFF

1-2-3 Installing the key counter (option)

Installing the key counter requires the following component:

Key counter (P/N 3025418011)

Key counter set (P/N 302A369708)

Supplied parts of key counter set:

Key counter socket assembly (P/N 3029236241)

Key counter cover (P/N 3066060011)

Key counter mount (P/N 3066060041)

Key counter retainer (P/N 302GR03020)

Key counter cover retainer (P/N 302GR03010)

One (1) M3 × 8 tap-tight P screw (P/N 5MBTPB3008PW++R)

Two (2) M4 × 10 tap-tight P screws (P/N 5MBTPB4010PW++R)

Two (2) M4 × 10 tap-tight S screws (P/N 5MBTPB4010TW++R)

Two (2) M3 × 6 bronze flat-head screws (P/N 7BB003306H)

One (1) M4 × 20 tap-tight S screw (P/N 7BB100420H)

One (1) M3 bronze nut (P/N 7BC1003055++H01)

One (1) M3 × 8 bronze binding screw (P/N B1B03080)

One (1) M4 × 30 tap-tight S screw (P/N B1B54300)

Five (5) M4 × 6 chrome TP screws (P/N B4A04060)

Two (2) M4 × 10 chrome TP screws (P/N B4A04100)

Procedure

1. Press the power key on the operation panel to off. Make sure that the power indicator and the memory indicator are off before turning off the main power switch. And then unplug the power cable from the wall outlet.
2. Fit the key counter socket assembly to the key counter retainer using two screws and nut.
3. Fit the key counter mount to the key counter cover using two screws.
4. Fit the key counter retainer to the key counter mount using two screws.

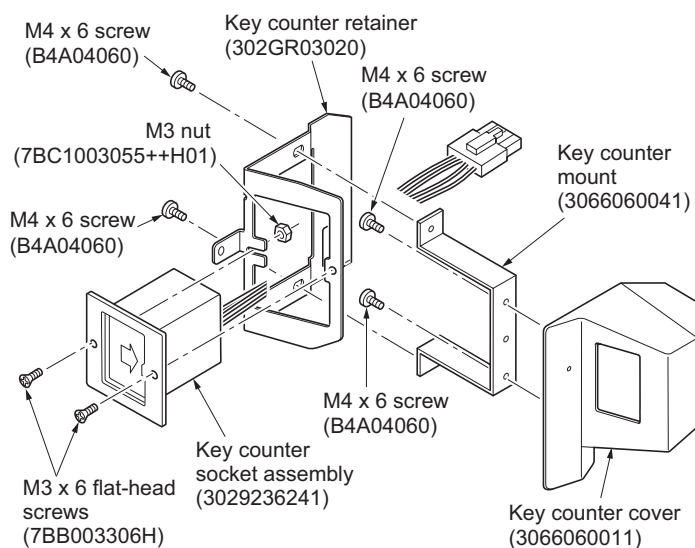


Figure 1-2-15

5. Remove two screws and remove the scanner right cover.
6. Cut out the aperture plate on the upper right cover using nippers.
7. Pull the key counter wire out.

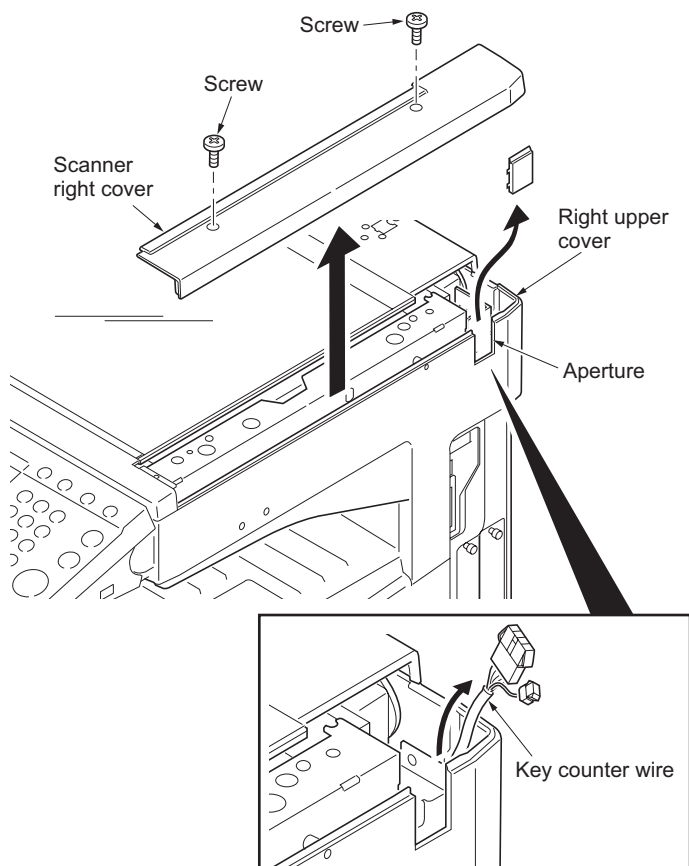


Figure 1-2-16

8. Seat the fook of the key counter cover retainer in the aperture in the right upper cover.
9. Fit the key counter cover retainer using two screws.

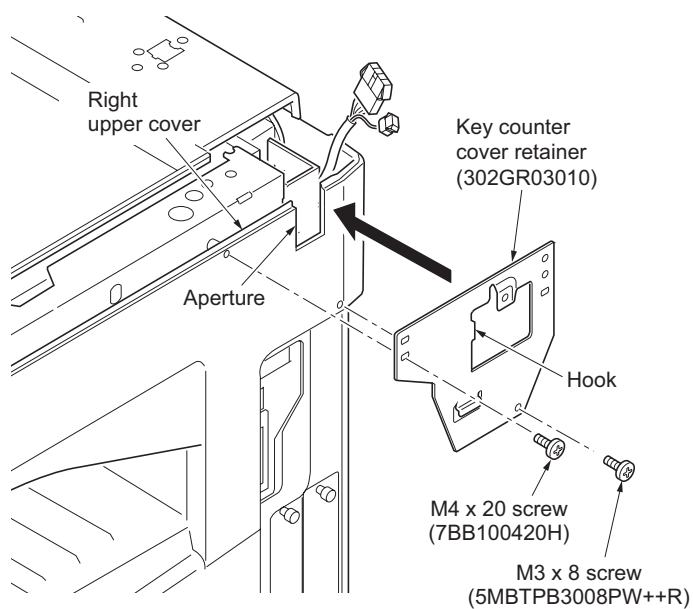


Figure 1-2-17

10. Pass the 4-pin connector of the key counter signal cable through the aperture in the key counter cover retainer.
11. Insert the 4-pin connector of the key counter signal cable into the 4-pin connector of the key counter wire.
12. Hook the square hole on the key counter cover onto the key counter cover retainer.
13. Fit the key counter unit using the screw.

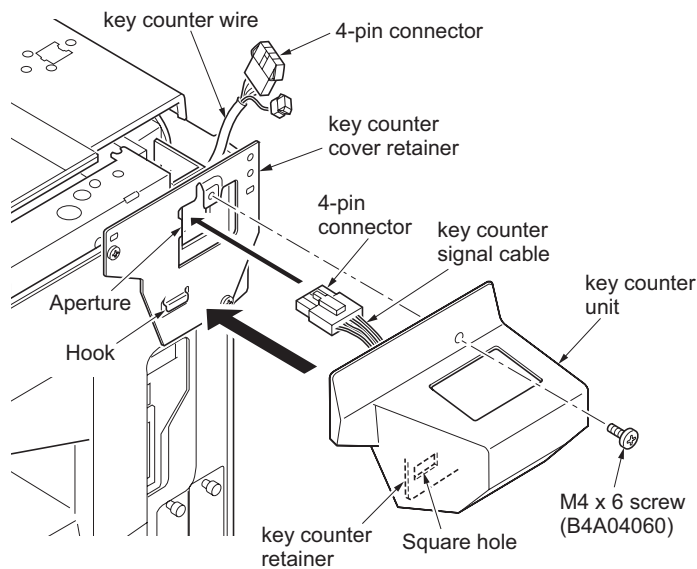


Figure 1-2-18

14. Seat the 2-pin and the 4-pin connectors between the right upper cover and the partition plate.
15. Refit the scanner right cover.
Be sure not that the 2-pin connector is not pinched between the scanner right cover and the upper right cover.

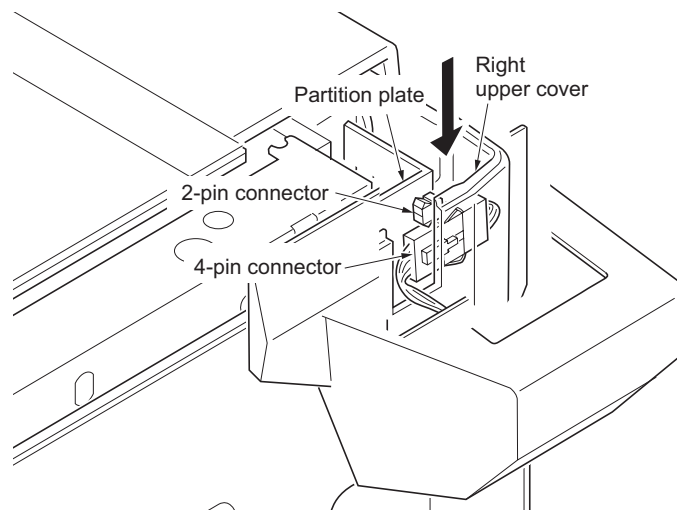


Figure 1-2-19

16. Insert the key counter into the key counter socket assembly.
17. Turn the main power switch on and enter the maintenance mode.
18. Run maintenance item U204 and select ON.
19. Exit the maintenance mode.
20. Check that the message requesting the key counter to be inserted is displayed on the touch panel when the key counter is pulled out.
21. Check that the counter counts up as prints are made.

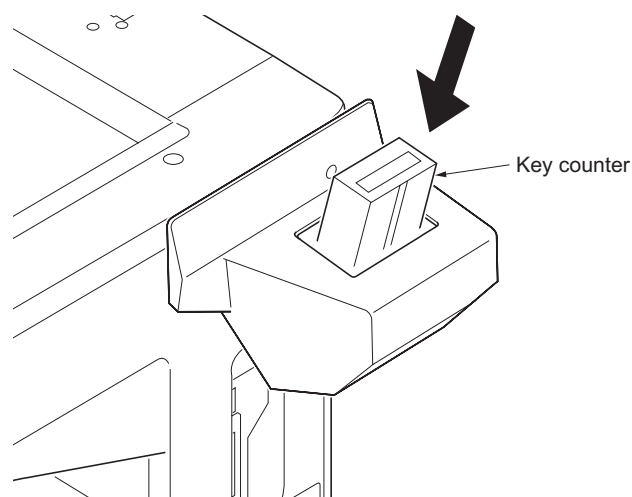


Figure 1-2-20

1-2-4 Installing the expanded memory (option)

Procedure

1. Press the power key on the operation panel to off. Make sure that the power indicator and the memory indicator are off before turning off the main power switch. And then unplug the power cable from the wall outlet.
2. Remove the screw and remove the PWB rear cover.
3. Open clamps on both ends of the memory socket on the main PWB.
4. Insert the expanded memory into the memory socket so that the notch on the memory align with the corresponding protrusion in the slot.

The memory module is secured to the memory socket with the clamps.

5. Refit the PWB rear cover.
 6. Print a status page to check the memory expansion (See page 1-3-5).
- If memory expansion has been properly performed, information on the installed memory.

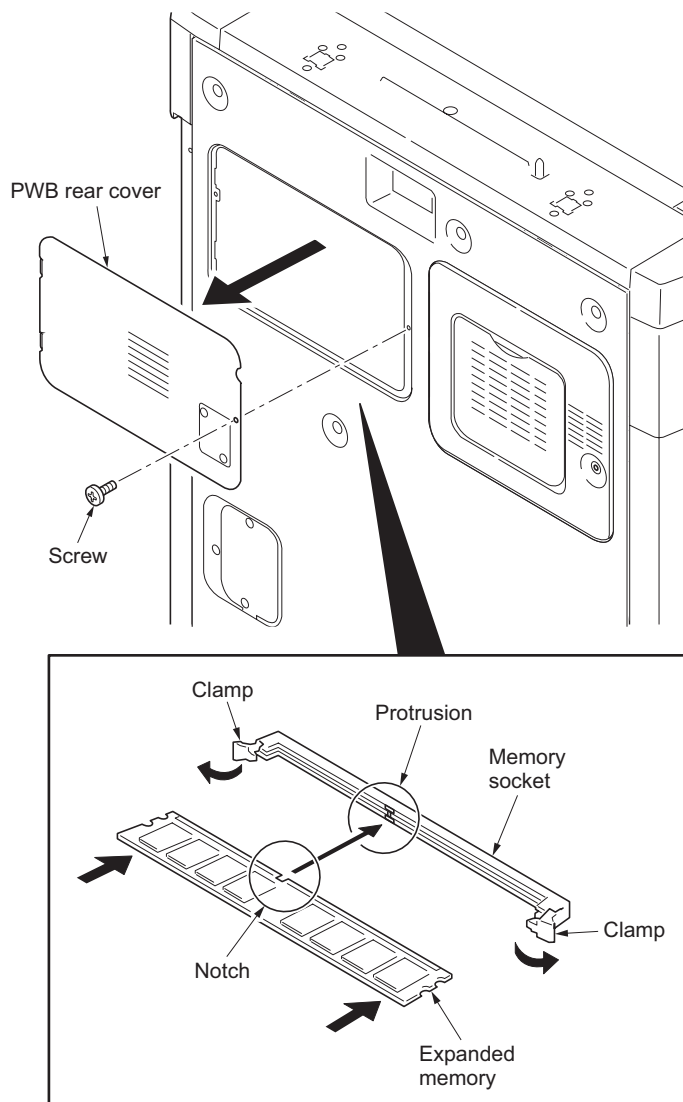


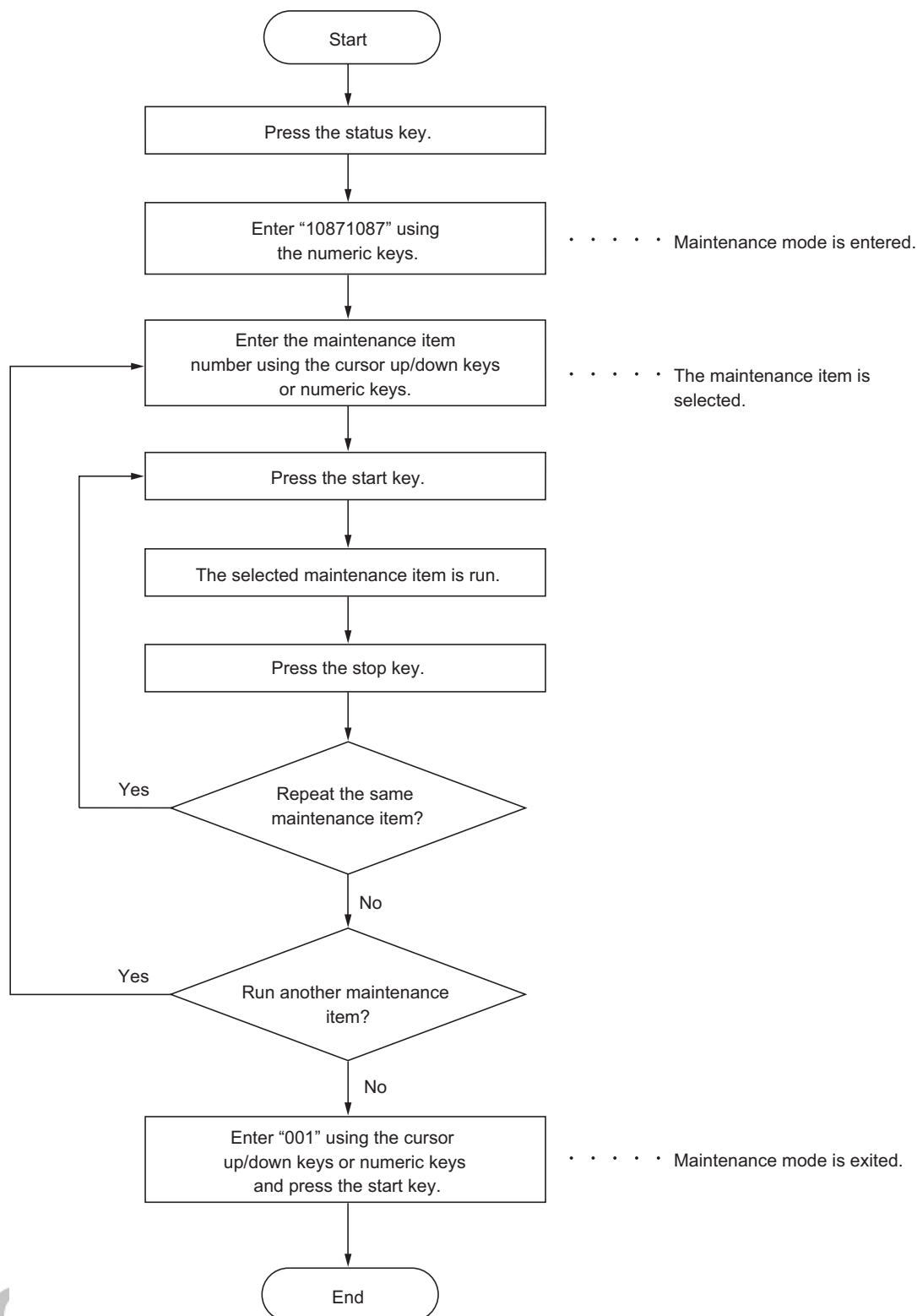
Figure 1-2-21

This page is intentionally left blank.

1-3-1 Maintenance mode

The machine is equipped with a maintenance function which can be used to maintain and service the machine.

(1) Executing a maintenance item



(2) Maintenance modes item list

Section	Item No.	Content of maintenance item	Initial setting*
General	U000	Outputting an own-status report	-
	U001	Exiting the maintenance mode	-
	U002	Setting the factory default data	-
	U003	Setting the service telephone number	*****1,*2
	U004	Displaying the machine number	-
	U005	Copying without paper	-
	U019	Displaying the ROM version	-
Initialization	U020	Initializing all data	-
	U021	Initializing counters and mode settings	-
	U022	Initializing backup memory	-
	U024	HDD formatting	-
Drive, paper feed, paper conveying and cooling system	U030	Checking motor operation	-
	U031	Checking switches for paper conveying	-
	U032	Checking clutch operation	-
	U033	Checking solenoid operation	-
	U034	Adjusting the print start timing Adjusting the leading edge registration Adjusting the center line Adjusting the trailing edge registration	120/0/0/0*1 180/0/0/0/0/0*1 0*1
	U035	Setting the printing area for folio paper Length Width	330*1 210*1
	U051	Adjusting the deflection in the paper	0/50/50/40/10*1
	U053	Setting the adjustment of the motor speed	0/-1/-2/0/2/-8/0*1
	U055	Setting the motor periodic drive	ON*1
	U059	Setting fan mode	45*1
Optical	U061	Turning the exposure lamp on	-
	U063	Adjusting the shading position	0*1
	U065	Adjusting the scanner magnification Main scanning direction/auxiliary scanning direction	0/0*1
	U066	Adjusting the scanner leading edge registration	0/0*1
	U067	Adjusting the scanner center line	0/0*1
	U068	Adjusting the scanning position for originals from the DP	0/0*1
	U070	Adjusting the DP magnification	0/0*1
	U071	Adjusting the DP scanning timing	0/0/0/0/0/0/0*1
	U072	Adjusting the DP center line	0/0*1
	U073	Checking scanner operation	-
	U074	Adjusting the DP input light luminosity	0/0/0/0*1
	U080	Setting the economy mode	-6*1
	U081	Adjusting the correct exposure	0/0/0*1
	U087	Setting DP reading position modification operation	125/125/120*1
	U089	Outputting a MIP-PG pattern	-
	U093	Setting the exposure density gradient Text and photo/Text/Photo	0/0/0*1
	U099	Adjusting original size detection	105/105/105/60/60/60/*1 150/240*1

*Initial setting for executing U020, *1: The item initialized for executing U020, *2: The item initialized for executing U021

www.tonerplus.com.ua

Section	Item No.	Content of maintenance item	Initial setting*
High voltage	U100	Setting the main high voltage	-
	U101	Setting the other high voltages	26/58/50/89/1* ¹ 115/91/68/40/92* ¹
	U110	Checking the drum count	-
	U114	Setting separation charger mode	4* ¹
	U117	Checking the drum number	-
	U118	Displaying the drum history	-
Developing	U130	Initial setting for the developing unit	-
	U135	Checking toner motor operation	100/30/100* ¹
	U144	Setting toner loading operation	0/5/30* ¹
	U150	Checking sensors for toner	-
	U157	Checking/clearing the developing drive time	-
	U158	Checking the developing count	-
Fuser and cleaning	U161	Setting the fuser control temperature Driving start temperature when warm-up starts Fuser center control temperature for displaying [Ready for copying.] Fuser edge control temperature for displaying [Ready for copying.] Fuser center control temperature during printing Time of period from driving until Ready is displayed	110* ¹ 165* ¹ 155* ¹ 165* ¹ 0* ¹
	U163	Resetting the fuser problem data	-
	U167	Checking/clearing the fuser counts	-
	U193	Setting the fuser drive control	ON* ¹
	U199	Checking the fuser temperature	-
Operation panel and support equipment	U200	Turning all LEDs on	-
	U201	Initializing the touch panel	-
	U202	Setting the KMAS host monitoring system	-
	U203	Checking DP operation	-
	U204	Setting the presence or absence of a key card or key counter	OFF/COUNTER* ^{1,2}
	U207	Checking the operation panel keys	-
	U220	Setting the trial functions	-
	U221	Setting the USB host lock function	OFF* ¹
	U233	Limiting job separator output	MODE0* ^{1,2}
	U236	Setting the limit for the ejection section of the built-in finisher	OFF* ^{1,2}
	U243	Checking the operation of the DP motors	-
	U244	Checking the DP switches	-
	U245	Checking messages	-
	U246	Setting the finisher	0/0/0* ¹
	U247	Setting the paper feed device	-
Mode setting	U250	Setting the maintenance cycle	300000* ^{1,2}
	U251	Checking/clearing the maintenance count	-
	U252	Setting the destination	-
	U253	Switching between double and single counts	Double count (A3/LGR)* ¹
	U260	Selecting the timing for copy counting	After ejection* ^{1,2}
	U265	Setting OEM purchaser code	0* ¹
	U285	Setting service status page	ON* ^{1,2}

*Initial setting for executing U020, *1: The item initialized for executing U020, *2: The item initialized for executing U021

www.tonerplus.com.ua

Section	Item No.	Content of maintenance item	Initial setting*
Mode setting	U324	Setting the main charger cleaning indication	ON ^{*1,*2}
	U326	Setting the black line cleaning indication	ON/8 ^{*1,*2}
	U328	Side ejection setting	OFF ^{*1,*2}
	U332	Setting the size conversion factor	1.0 ^{*1,*2}
	U339	Setting the drum heater ON/OFF	0 ^{*1,*2}
	U341	Specific paper feed location setting for printing function	-
	U342	Setting the ejection restriction	ON ^{*1,*2}
	U343	Switching between duplex/simplex copy mode	OFF ^{*1,*2}
	U345	Setting the value for maintenance due indication	-
Image processing	U402	Adjusting margins of image printing	75/85/85/95/155/110 ^{*1}
	U403	Adjusting margins for scanning an original on the platen	2.0/2.0/2.0/2.0 ^{*1}
	U404	Adjusting margins for scanning an original from the DP	3.0/2.5/3.0/4.0 ^{*1}
	U407	Adjusting the leading edge registration for memory image printing	47 ^{*1}
	U411	Adjusting the scanner automatically	-
	U425	Setting the target	-
Network scanner	U510	Setting the enterprise mode	Inch specifications: ON ^{*1,*2} Metric specifications: OFF ^{*1,*2}
Others	U901	Checking/clearing copy counts by paper feed locations	-
	U903	Checking/clearing the paper jam counts	-
	U904	Checking/clearing the service call counts	-
	U905	Checking/clearing counts by optional devices	-
	U906	Resetting partial operation control	-
	U908	Checking the total counter value	-
	U910	Clearing the black ratio data	-
	U911	Checking/clearing copy counts by paper sizes	-
	U920	Checking the copy counts	-
	U927	Clearing the all copy counts and machine life counts (one time only)	-
	U928	Checking machine life counts	-
	U931	Setting the automatic toner install	OFF ^{*1,*2}
	U933	Setting the fax backup kit	-
	U935	Relay board maintenance	-
	U942	Setting of deflection for feeding from DP	0/0 ^{*1}
	U984	Checking the developing unit number	-
	U985	Displaying the developing unit history	-
	U989	HDD scandisk	-
	U990	Checking/clearing the time for the exposure lamp to light	-
	U991	Checking the scanner count	-
	U993	Outputting a VTC-PG pattern	-

*Initial setting for executing U020, *1: The item initialized for executing U020, *2: The item initialized for executing U021

www.tonerplus.com.ua

(3) Contents of the maintenance mode items

Maintenance item No.	Description																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																												
U000	<p>Outputting an own-status report</p> <p>Description</p> <p>Outputs lists of the current settings of the maintenance items, and paper jam and service call occurrences. Outputs the event log or service status page.</p> <p>Printing a report is disabled either when a job is remaining in the buffer or when [Pause All Print Jobs] is pressed to halt printing.</p> <p>Purpose</p> <p>To check the current setting of the maintenance items, or paper jam or service call occurrences. Before initializing or replacing the backup RAM, output a list of the current settings of the maintenance items to reenter the settings after initialization or replacement.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">Press the start key.Select the item to be output. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Output list</th></tr><tr><td>MAINTENANCE</td><td>List of the current settings of the maintenance modes</td></tr><tr><td>EVENT LOG</td><td>Outputs the event log</td></tr><tr><td>SERVICE STATUS</td><td>Outputs the service status page</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none">Press the start key. The interrupt print mode is entered and a list is output. When A4/Letter paper is available, a report of this size is output. If not, specify the paper feed location. When output is complete, the screen for selecting an item is displayed. <p>Event log</p> <div><div><h2>Event Log</h2><p>MFP</p><p>Firmware version 2H0_2L00.P01.006 2007.05.22</p><div><div>(1)</div><div>(2)</div></div><div><div><div>(3) Paper Jam Log</div><table><thead><tr><th>#</th><th>Count.</th><th>Event Descriptions</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>16</td><td>9876543</td><td>10.01.08.01.01</td></tr><tr><td>15</td><td>666554</td><td>10.01.08.01.02</td></tr><tr><td>14</td><td>4988</td><td>10.01.08.01.01</td></tr><tr><td>13</td><td>4988</td><td>10.01.08.01.02</td></tr><tr><td>12</td><td>4988</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>11</td><td>4988</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>10</td><td>1103</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>9</td><td>1103</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>8</td><td>1103</td><td>12.03.08.01.01</td></tr><tr><td>7</td><td>1103</td><td>12.03.08.01.01</td></tr><tr><td>6</td><td>1027</td><td>12.03.08.01.01</td></tr><tr><td>5</td><td>1027</td><td>12.03.0A.01.01</td></tr><tr><td>4</td><td>1027</td><td>12.03.08.01.01</td></tr><tr><td>3</td><td>1027</td><td>12.03.08.01.02</td></tr><tr><td>2</td><td>550</td><td>12.03.0A.01.01</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>28</td><td>12.03.08.01.01</td></tr></tbody></table></div><div><div>(4) Service Call Log</div><table><thead><tr><th>#</th><th>Count.</th><th>Service Code</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>8</td><td>7881214</td><td>01.0060</td></tr><tr><td>7</td><td>578944</td><td>01.0120</td></tr><tr><td>6</td><td>5296</td><td>01.4000</td></tr><tr><td>5</td><td>5295</td><td>01.3100</td></tr><tr><td>4</td><td>2099</td><td>01.2000</td></tr><tr><td>3</td><td>1054</td><td>01.2000</td></tr><tr><td>2</td><td>809</td><td>01.2200</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>30</td><td>01.2500</td></tr></tbody></table></div><div><div>(5) Maintenance Log</div><table><thead><tr><th>#</th><th>Count.</th><th>Item</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>8</td><td>9045571</td><td>01.00</td></tr><tr><td>7</td><td>704511</td><td>02.00</td></tr><tr><td>6</td><td>7045</td><td>01.00</td></tr><tr><td>5</td><td>3454</td><td>02.00</td></tr><tr><td>4</td><td>3454</td><td>01.00</td></tr><tr><td>3</td><td>3454</td><td>02.00</td></tr><tr><td>2</td><td>417</td><td>01.00</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>35</td><td>02.00</td></tr></tbody></table></div><div><div>(6) Unknown toner Log</div><table><thead><tr><th>#</th><th>Count.</th><th>Item</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>5</td><td>3454</td><td>01.00</td></tr><tr><td>4</td><td>3454</td><td>01.00</td></tr><tr><td>3</td><td>3454</td><td>01.00</td></tr><tr><td>2</td><td>417</td><td>01.00</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>35</td><td>01.00</td></tr></tbody></table></div><div><div>(7) Counter Log</div><table><thead><tr><th>(f)</th><th>J04:000</th><th>J23:000</th><th>J70:000</th><th>J93:002</th><th>(g)</th><th>C0060:001</th><th>C2000:001</th><th>C7000:001</th><th>(h)</th><th>M00:01</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>J05:000</td><td>J30:000</td><td>J71:000</td><td>J94:000</td><td>J0120:001</td><td>C2200:001</td><td>C7200:001</td><td>M00:01</td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td>J10:000</td><td>J40:000</td><td>J72:000</td><td>J95:000</td><td>C0130:001</td><td>C2500:001</td><td>C7300:001</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td>J11:002</td><td>J41:000</td><td>J73:000</td><td>J96:000</td><td>C0150:001</td><td>C2600:001</td><td>C7400:001</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td>J12:000</td><td>J42:002</td><td>J74:002</td><td></td><td>C0160:001</td><td>C3100:001</td><td>C7410:001</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td>J13:000</td><td>J43:002</td><td>J75:002</td><td></td><td>C0180:001</td><td>C3200:001</td><td>C7800:001</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td>J14:000</td><td>J44:000</td><td>J78:000</td><td></td><td>C0320:001</td><td>C3300:001</td><td>C8030:001</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td>J18:000</td><td>J47:000</td><td>J80:000</td><td></td><td>C0420:001</td><td>C3500:001</td><td>C8140:001</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td></td><td>J50:000</td><td>J81:000</td><td></td><td>C0440:001</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td></td><td>J54:000</td><td>J82:000</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td></td><td></td><td>J83:000</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr></tbody></table></div></div></div></div>	Display	Output list	MAINTENANCE	List of the current settings of the maintenance modes	EVENT LOG	Outputs the event log	SERVICE STATUS	Outputs the service status page	#	Count.	Event Descriptions	16	9876543	10.01.08.01.01	15	666554	10.01.08.01.02	14	4988	10.01.08.01.01	13	4988	10.01.08.01.02	12	4988		11	4988		10	1103		9	1103		8	1103	12.03.08.01.01	7	1103	12.03.08.01.01	6	1027	12.03.08.01.01	5	1027	12.03.0A.01.01	4	1027	12.03.08.01.01	3	1027	12.03.08.01.02	2	550	12.03.0A.01.01	1	28	12.03.08.01.01	#	Count.	Service Code	8	7881214	01.0060	7	578944	01.0120	6	5296	01.4000	5	5295	01.3100	4	2099	01.2000	3	1054	01.2000	2	809	01.2200	1	30	01.2500	#	Count.	Item	8	9045571	01.00	7	704511	02.00	6	7045	01.00	5	3454	02.00	4	3454	01.00	3	3454	02.00	2	417	01.00	1	35	02.00	#	Count.	Item	5	3454	01.00	4	3454	01.00	3	3454	01.00	2	417	01.00	1	35	01.00	(f)	J04:000	J23:000	J70:000	J93:002	(g)	C0060:001	C2000:001	C7000:001	(h)	M00:01	J05:000	J30:000	J71:000	J94:000	J0120:001	C2200:001	C7200:001	M00:01				J10:000	J40:000	J72:000	J95:000	C0130:001	C2500:001	C7300:001					J11:002	J41:000	J73:000	J96:000	C0150:001	C2600:001	C7400:001					J12:000	J42:002	J74:002		C0160:001	C3100:001	C7410:001					J13:000	J43:002	J75:002		C0180:001	C3200:001	C7800:001					J14:000	J44:000	J78:000		C0320:001	C3300:001	C8030:001					J18:000	J47:000	J80:000		C0420:001	C3500:001	C8140:001						J50:000	J81:000		C0440:001								J54:000	J82:000											J83:000								
Display	Output list																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																												
MAINTENANCE	List of the current settings of the maintenance modes																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																												
EVENT LOG	Outputs the event log																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																												
SERVICE STATUS	Outputs the service status page																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																												
#	Count.	Event Descriptions																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																											
16	9876543	10.01.08.01.01																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																											
15	666554	10.01.08.01.02																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																											
14	4988	10.01.08.01.01																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																											
13	4988	10.01.08.01.02																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																											
12	4988																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																												
11	4988																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																												
10	1103																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																												
9	1103																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																												
8	1103	12.03.08.01.01																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																											
7	1103	12.03.08.01.01																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																											
6	1027	12.03.08.01.01																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																											
5	1027	12.03.0A.01.01																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																											
4	1027	12.03.08.01.01																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																											
3	1027	12.03.08.01.02																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																											
2	550	12.03.0A.01.01																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																											
1	28	12.03.08.01.01																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																											
#	Count.	Service Code																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																											
8	7881214	01.0060																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																											
7	578944	01.0120																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																											
6	5296	01.4000																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																											
5	5295	01.3100																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																											
4	2099	01.2000																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																											
3	1054	01.2000																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																											
2	809	01.2200																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																											
1	30	01.2500																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																											
#	Count.	Item																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																											
8	9045571	01.00																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																											
7	704511	02.00																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																											
6	7045	01.00																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																											
5	3454	02.00																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																											
4	3454	01.00																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																											
3	3454	02.00																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																											
2	417	01.00																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																											
1	35	02.00																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																											
#	Count.	Item																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																											
5	3454	01.00																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																											
4	3454	01.00																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																											
3	3454	01.00																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																											
2	417	01.00																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																											
1	35	01.00																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																											
(f)	J04:000	J23:000	J70:000	J93:002	(g)	C0060:001	C2000:001	C7000:001	(h)	M00:01																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																			
J05:000	J30:000	J71:000	J94:000	J0120:001	C2200:001	C7200:001	M00:01																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																						
J10:000	J40:000	J72:000	J95:000	C0130:001	C2500:001	C7300:001																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																							
J11:002	J41:000	J73:000	J96:000	C0150:001	C2600:001	C7400:001																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																							
J12:000	J42:002	J74:002		C0160:001	C3100:001	C7410:001																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																							
J13:000	J43:002	J75:002		C0180:001	C3200:001	C7800:001																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																							
J14:000	J44:000	J78:000		C0320:001	C3300:001	C8030:001																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																							
J18:000	J47:000	J80:000		C0420:001	C3500:001	C8140:001																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																							
	J50:000	J81:000		C0440:001																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																									
	J54:000	J82:000																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																											
		J83:000																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																											

Figure 1-3-1

Maintenance item No.	Description			
U000	Detail of event log			
	No.	Items	Description	
	(1)	System version		
	(2)	System date		
	(3)	Paper Jam Log	#	Count. Event
			Remembers 1 to 16 of occurrence. If the occurrence of the previous paper jam is less than 16, all of the paper jams are logged. When the occurrence exceeds 16, the oldest occurrence is removed.	The total page count at the time of the paper jam. Log code (2 digit, hexadecimal, 5 categories) (a) Cause of a paper jam (b) Paper source (c) Paper size (d) Paper type (e) Paper eject
			(a) Cause of paper jam (Hexadecimal)	
			04: Cover open 05: Secondary paper feed does not start 10: No paper feed from cassette 1 11: No paper feed from cassette 2 12: No paper feed from optional cassette 3 13: No paper feed from optional cassette 4 14: No paper feed from MP tray 18: Misfeed in vertical paper conveying section 19: Misfeed in paper feeder vertical paper conveying section 20: Misfeed in MP tray paper conveying section 21: Multiple sheets in paper feed section 23: Multiple sheets in MP tray conveying section 30: Misfeed in registration/transfer section 40: Misfeed in fuser section (MP tray) 41: Misfeed in fuser section (cassette 1) 42: Misfeed in fuser section (cassette 2) 43: Misfeed in fuser section (optional cassette 3) 44: Misfeed in fuser section (optional cassette 4) 47: Misfeed in fuser section (duplex section) 50: Misfeed in eject section 51: Misfeed in job separator eject section 52: Misfeed in feedshift section 60: Duplex paper conveying section 1 61: Duplex paper conveying section 2 70: No original feed 71: An original jam in the original conveying section 1 72: An original jam in the original conveying section 2 73: An original jam in the original switchback section 74: An original jam in the original switchback/feed section 75: An original jam in the original switchback/conveying section 78: Document processor cover open 80: Jam between the finisher and machine (built-in finisher) 81: Paper entry sensor nonarrival jam 82: Jam in stapler 83: Exit sensor stay jam 91: Finisher cover open 92: Exit sensor non-arrival jam (document finisher) 93: Reverse sensor jam (document finisher) 94: Paper entry sensor stay/remaining jam (document finisher) 95: Paper conveying sensor jam (document finisher) 96: Jam between the built-in finisher and machine (built-in finisher)	

Maintenance item No.	Description		
U000			
(3) cont.	Paper Jam Log	No. Items Description	
		(b) Detail of paper source (Hexadecimal)	
		01: Cassette 1 02: Cassette 2 03: Cassette 3 (paper feeder) 04: Cassette 4 (paper feeder) 07: MP tray 05/06/08/09: Reserved	
		(c) Detail of paper size (Hexadecimal)	
		01: Monarch 02: Business 03: International DL 04: International C5 05: Executive 06: Letter-R 86: Letter-E 07: Legal 08: A4R 88: A4E 09: B5R 89: B5E 0A: A3 0B: B4	0C: Ledger 0D: A5R 8D: A5E 0E: A6 0F: B6 10: Commercial #9 11: Commercial #6 12: ISO B5 13: Custom size 1E: C4 1F: Postcard 20: Reply-paid postcard 21: Oficio II 22: Special 1
		23: Special 2 24: A3 wide 25: Ledger wide 26: Full bleed paper (12 × 8) 27: 8K 28: 16K-R A8: 16K-E 32: Statement-R B2: Statement-E 33: Folio 34: Western type 2 35: Western type 4	
		(d) Detail of paper type (Hexadecimal)	
		00: (Not specified) 01: Plain 02: Transparency 03: Preprinted 04: Labels 05: Bond 06: Recycled 07: Vellum 08: Rough	09: Letterhead 0A: Color 0B: Prepunched 0C: Envelope 0D: Cardstock 0E: Coated 0F: 2nd side 10: Media 16 11: High quality
		15: Custom 1 16: Custom 2 17: Custom 3 18: Custom 4 19: Custom 5 1A: Custom 6 1B: Custom 7 1C: Custom 8	
		(e) Detail of paper exit location (Hexadecimal)	
		01: Face down (FD) 02: Face up (FU)/ Document finisher face up (FU)/ 03: Document finisher face-down (FD) 04: Document finisher sub tray (FD) 05: Reserved 0B: Reserved 0C: Reserved 0D: Reserved 0E: Reserved 15: Reserved	16: Reserved 1F: Reserved 20: Reserved 29: Reserved 2A: Reserved 33: Reserved 34: Reserved 3D: Reserved 3E: Reserved 47: Reserved 48: Reserved

Maintenance item No.	Description																																								
U000	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>No.</th><th>Items</th><th colspan="3">Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td rowspan="2">(4)</td><td rowspan="2">Service Call Log</td><td>#</td><td>Count.</td><td>Service Code</td></tr> <tr> <td>Remembers 1 to 8 of occurrence of self diagnostics error. If the occurrence of the previous diagnostics error is less than 8, all of the diagnostics errors are logged.</td><td>The total page count at the time of the self diagnostics error.</td><td>Self diagnostic error code (See page 1-4-19) Example: 01.6000 01: Self diagnostic error 6000: Self diagnostic error code number</td></tr> <tr> <td rowspan="2">(5)</td><td rowspan="2">Maintenance Log</td><td>#</td><td>Count.</td><td>Item</td></tr> <tr> <td>Remembers 1 to 8 of occurrence of replacement. If the occurrence of the previous replacement of toner container is less than 8, all of the occurrences of replacement are logged.</td><td>The total page count at the time of the replacement of the toner container.</td><td>Code of maintenance replacing item (1 byte, 2 categories) First byte (Replacing item) 01: Toner container 02: Maintenance kit Second byte (Type of replacing item) 00: (fixed)</td></tr> <tr> <td rowspan="2">(6)</td><td rowspan="2">Unknown Toner Log</td><td>#</td><td>Count.</td><td>Item</td></tr> <tr> <td>Remembers 1 to 5 of occurrence of unknown toner detection. If the occurrence of the previous unknown toner detection is less than 5, all of the unknown toner detection are logged.</td><td>The total page count at the time of the [Toner Empty] error with using an unknown toner container.</td><td>Unknown toner log code (1 byte, 2 categories) First byte 01: Fixed (Toner container) Second byte 00: Fixed (Black)</td></tr> <tr> <td rowspan="2">(7)</td><td rowspan="2">Counter Log</td><td>(f) Paper jam</td><td>(g) Self diagnostic error</td><td>(h) Maintenance item replacing</td></tr> <tr> <td>Comprised of three log counters including paper jams, self diagnostics errors, and replacement of the toner container.</td><td>Indicates the log counter of paper jams depending on location. Refer to Paper Jam Log. All instances including those are not occurred are displayed.</td><td>Indicates the log counter of self diagnostics errors depending on cause. (See page 1-4-19) Example: C6000: 4 Self diagnostics error 6000 has happened four times.</td></tr> </tbody> </table>				No.	Items	Description			(4)	Service Call Log	#	Count.	Service Code	Remembers 1 to 8 of occurrence of self diagnostics error. If the occurrence of the previous diagnostics error is less than 8, all of the diagnostics errors are logged.	The total page count at the time of the self diagnostics error.	Self diagnostic error code (See page 1-4-19) Example: 01.6000 01: Self diagnostic error 6000: Self diagnostic error code number	(5)	Maintenance Log	#	Count.	Item	Remembers 1 to 8 of occurrence of replacement. If the occurrence of the previous replacement of toner container is less than 8, all of the occurrences of replacement are logged.	The total page count at the time of the replacement of the toner container.	Code of maintenance replacing item (1 byte, 2 categories) First byte (Replacing item) 01: Toner container 02: Maintenance kit Second byte (Type of replacing item) 00: (fixed)	(6)	Unknown Toner Log	#	Count.	Item	Remembers 1 to 5 of occurrence of unknown toner detection. If the occurrence of the previous unknown toner detection is less than 5, all of the unknown toner detection are logged.	The total page count at the time of the [Toner Empty] error with using an unknown toner container.	Unknown toner log code (1 byte, 2 categories) First byte 01: Fixed (Toner container) Second byte 00: Fixed (Black)	(7)	Counter Log	(f) Paper jam	(g) Self diagnostic error	(h) Maintenance item replacing	Comprised of three log counters including paper jams, self diagnostics errors, and replacement of the toner container.	Indicates the log counter of paper jams depending on location. Refer to Paper Jam Log. All instances including those are not occurred are displayed.	Indicates the log counter of self diagnostics errors depending on cause. (See page 1-4-19) Example: C6000: 4 Self diagnostics error 6000 has happened four times.
No.	Items	Description																																							
(4)	Service Call Log	#	Count.	Service Code																																					
		Remembers 1 to 8 of occurrence of self diagnostics error. If the occurrence of the previous diagnostics error is less than 8, all of the diagnostics errors are logged.	The total page count at the time of the self diagnostics error.	Self diagnostic error code (See page 1-4-19) Example: 01.6000 01: Self diagnostic error 6000: Self diagnostic error code number																																					
(5)	Maintenance Log	#	Count.	Item																																					
		Remembers 1 to 8 of occurrence of replacement. If the occurrence of the previous replacement of toner container is less than 8, all of the occurrences of replacement are logged.	The total page count at the time of the replacement of the toner container.	Code of maintenance replacing item (1 byte, 2 categories) First byte (Replacing item) 01: Toner container 02: Maintenance kit Second byte (Type of replacing item) 00: (fixed)																																					
(6)	Unknown Toner Log	#	Count.	Item																																					
		Remembers 1 to 5 of occurrence of unknown toner detection. If the occurrence of the previous unknown toner detection is less than 5, all of the unknown toner detection are logged.	The total page count at the time of the [Toner Empty] error with using an unknown toner container.	Unknown toner log code (1 byte, 2 categories) First byte 01: Fixed (Toner container) Second byte 00: Fixed (Black)																																					
(7)	Counter Log	(f) Paper jam	(g) Self diagnostic error	(h) Maintenance item replacing																																					
		Comprised of three log counters including paper jams, self diagnostics errors, and replacement of the toner container.	Indicates the log counter of paper jams depending on location. Refer to Paper Jam Log. All instances including those are not occurred are displayed.	Indicates the log counter of self diagnostics errors depending on cause. (See page 1-4-19) Example: C6000: 4 Self diagnostics error 6000 has happened four times.																																					

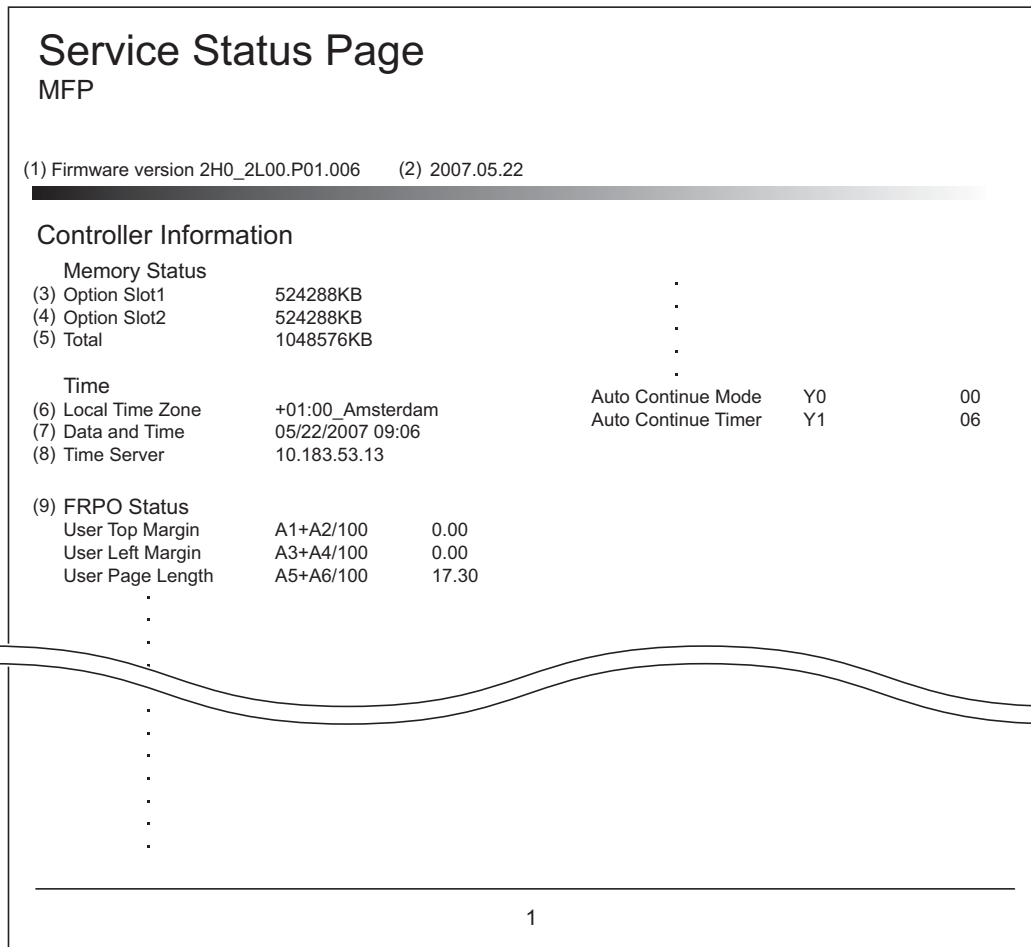
Maintenance item No.	Description
U000	<p>Service status page (1)</p>  <p>The screenshot shows the 'Service Status Page' for an MFP. It includes the following information:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Firmware version 2H0_2L00.P01.006 (2) 2007.05.22 Controller Information <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Memory Status <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (3) Option Slot1 524288KB (4) Option Slot2 524288KB (5) Total 1048576KB Time <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (6) Local Time Zone +01:00_Amsterdam (7) Data and Time 05/22/2007 09:06 (8) Time Server 10.183.53.13 Auto Continue Mode Y0 00 Auto Continue Timer Y1 06 (9) FRPO Status <ul style="list-style-type: none"> User Top Margin A1+A2/100 0.00 User Left Margin A3+A4/100 0.00 User Page Length A5+A6/100 17.30 <p>The page number '1' is displayed at the bottom center of the screenshot.</p>

Figure 1-3-2

Detail of service status page

No.	Description	Supplement
(1)	System version	
(2)	System date	
(3)	Slot 1 RAM size	
(4)	Slot 2 RAM size	
(5)	Total RAM size	
(6)	Local time zone	
(7)	Report output date	Day/Month/Year hour:minute
(8)	NTP server name	
(9)	FRPO setting	

TONER
www.tonerplus.com.ua

Maintenance item No.	Description
U000	<p>Service status page (2)</p> <div> <h3>Service Status Page</h3> <p>MFP</p> <p>Firmware version 2H0_2L00.P01.006 2007.05.22</p> <hr/> <div> <h4>Engine Information</h4> <p>(10) Engine ROM Version 2H0_1000.P01.006 (11) Front Panel ROM Version 2H0_A000.001.019 (12) NVRAM Version _Bb04B29_Bb04B29 (13) Scanner Version (14) FAX Slot1 FAX BOOT Version 3KH_5000.001.001 FAX APL Version 3KH_5100.001.001 FAX IPL Version 3KH_5200.001.001 (15) Serial No. AFZ3123456 (16) MAC Address 00:C0:EE:D0:01:0D</p> <h4>Toner Coverage (%)</h4> <p>(17) Period (- 05/22/2007 08:05) (18) Usage Page (A4/Letter Conversion) 3043.50 (19) Average (%) Total 2.90 Copy 3.56 Printer 2.87 FAX 3.52 (20) Last Page (%) 2.80</p> <h4>Installed Options</h4> <p>(21) Document Processor Installed (22) Paper Feeder Cassette (23) Finisher 3000-Finisher Mail Box Not Installed (24) Job Separator Installed (25) Memory Card Not Installed (26) PDF Expansion Kit Installed (27) Fax Backup Kit Not Installed (28) Security Kit Installed (29) Data Security Kit (C) Software (30) Security Library Version 0.50</p> </div> <div> <h4>Counter</h4> <p>(31) Printed Total Printed Pages 631 Copier 11 Printer 620 FAX 0 (32) Scanned Total Scanned Pages 1 Copier 0 Other 1 (33) Paper Size A3 69 A4 539 A5 0 B4 36 B5 0 Ledger 7 Folio 0 Legal 0 Letter 0 Statement 0 Other 0</p> </div> <div> <h4>(34) FAX Information Slot1/Slot2</h4> <p>Rings (Normal) 3 Rings (FAX/TEL) 3 Rings (TAD) 3 TX SPEED V.29 9600bps RX SPEED 9600bps ECM TX ON ECM RX OFF V.34 TX REG.G3 TX EQR 4db REG.G3 RX EQR 0db RX MODEM LEVEL -43dBm SGL LVL MODEM -9dBm</p> </div> <p>(35) 1/2 (36) 245/490 (37) 0/-30/-30/-30 (38) 0/0/0/0 (39) 0/50/0/50/10/61/8/11 (40) F00/U00 (41) 12345678/11223344/00001234abcd567800001234abcd5678/01234567890123456789012345678901/0008/00/07 (42) 0000000000/F80C001A37/302A183C00/000100013D/8791BFC305/0000003100/000F5D0000/01FD000000/ 0000000FB7/0000000000/0000260000/0000000000/0000000000/0000008400/0000000000/011F000F51/ 8F0F000000/0000000000/0000000000/0000000000/0000000000/0000000000/0000000000/00000000F/</p> </div>

Figure 1-3-3

Maintenance item No.	Description																																																													
U000	Detail of service status page																																																													
	<table> <tr> <th>No.</th><th>Description</th><th>Supplement</th></tr> <tr> <td>(10)</td><td>Engine ROM version</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>(11)</td><td>Operation panel ROM version</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>(12)</td><td>NV RAM version</td><td> <p> <u> </u> Bb 04B29 <u> </u> Bb 04B29 (a) (b) (c) (d) (e) (f) </p> <p> (a) Consistency of the present software version and the database <u> </u> (underscore): OK * (Asterisk): NG (b) Database version (c) The oldest time stamp of database version (d) Consistency of the present software version and the ME firmware version <u> </u> (underscore): OK * (Asterisk): NG (e) ME firmware version (f) The oldest time stamp of the ME database version </p> <p>Normal if (a) and (d) are underscored, and (b) and (e) are identical with (c) and (f).</p> </td></tr> <tr> <td>(13)</td><td>-</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>(14)</td><td>Fax firmware version</td><td>This item is printed only when the fax kit is installed.</td></tr> <tr> <td>(15)</td><td>Serial No.</td><td>10 digits</td></tr> <tr> <td>(16)</td><td>Mac address</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>(17)</td><td>Cleared date and output date</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>(18)</td><td>Page of relation to the A4/Letter</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>(19)</td><td>Average coverage</td><td>Total/Copy/Printer/Fax</td></tr> <tr> <td>(20)</td><td>Coverage on the final output page</td><td></td></tr> <tr> <td>(21)</td><td>Presence or absence of the optional DP</td><td>Installed Not Installed</td></tr> <tr> <td>(22)</td><td>Presence or absence of the optional paper feeder</td><td>Cassette: Paper feeder Not Installed</td></tr> <tr> <td>(23)</td><td>Presence or absence of the optional document finisher</td><td>Inner Finisher: Built-in finisher 1000-Finisher: Document finisher Not Installed</td></tr> <tr> <td>(24)</td><td>Presence or absence of the optional job separator</td><td>Installed Not Installed</td></tr> <tr> <td>(25)</td><td>Presence or absence of the memory card</td><td>Installed Not Installed</td></tr> <tr> <td>(26)</td><td>Presence or absence of the optional PDF upgrade kit</td><td>Installed: The formal version is installed Not Installed: The PDF upgrade kit is not installed Trial Version(xx/xx/xx): A trial version is installed</td></tr> <tr> <td>(27)</td><td>Presence or absence of the optional fax backup kit</td><td>Installed Not Installed</td></tr> <tr> <td>(28)</td><td>Presence or absence of the optional security kit</td><td>Installed Not Installed</td></tr> </table>	No.	Description	Supplement	(10)	Engine ROM version		(11)	Operation panel ROM version		(12)	NV RAM version	<p> <u> </u> Bb 04B29 <u> </u> Bb 04B29 (a) (b) (c) (d) (e) (f) </p> <p> (a) Consistency of the present software version and the database <u> </u> (underscore): OK * (Asterisk): NG (b) Database version (c) The oldest time stamp of database version (d) Consistency of the present software version and the ME firmware version <u> </u> (underscore): OK * (Asterisk): NG (e) ME firmware version (f) The oldest time stamp of the ME database version </p> <p>Normal if (a) and (d) are underscored, and (b) and (e) are identical with (c) and (f).</p>	(13)	-		(14)	Fax firmware version	This item is printed only when the fax kit is installed.	(15)	Serial No.	10 digits	(16)	Mac address		(17)	Cleared date and output date		(18)	Page of relation to the A4/Letter		(19)	Average coverage	Total/Copy/Printer/Fax	(20)	Coverage on the final output page		(21)	Presence or absence of the optional DP	Installed Not Installed	(22)	Presence or absence of the optional paper feeder	Cassette: Paper feeder Not Installed	(23)	Presence or absence of the optional document finisher	Inner Finisher: Built-in finisher 1000-Finisher: Document finisher Not Installed	(24)	Presence or absence of the optional job separator	Installed Not Installed	(25)	Presence or absence of the memory card	Installed Not Installed	(26)	Presence or absence of the optional PDF upgrade kit	Installed: The formal version is installed Not Installed: The PDF upgrade kit is not installed Trial Version(xx/xx/xx): A trial version is installed	(27)	Presence or absence of the optional fax backup kit	Installed Not Installed	(28)	Presence or absence of the optional security kit	Installed Not Installed	
No.	Description	Supplement																																																												
(10)	Engine ROM version																																																													
(11)	Operation panel ROM version																																																													
(12)	NV RAM version	<p> <u> </u> Bb 04B29 <u> </u> Bb 04B29 (a) (b) (c) (d) (e) (f) </p> <p> (a) Consistency of the present software version and the database <u> </u> (underscore): OK * (Asterisk): NG (b) Database version (c) The oldest time stamp of database version (d) Consistency of the present software version and the ME firmware version <u> </u> (underscore): OK * (Asterisk): NG (e) ME firmware version (f) The oldest time stamp of the ME database version </p> <p>Normal if (a) and (d) are underscored, and (b) and (e) are identical with (c) and (f).</p>																																																												
(13)	-																																																													
(14)	Fax firmware version	This item is printed only when the fax kit is installed.																																																												
(15)	Serial No.	10 digits																																																												
(16)	Mac address																																																													
(17)	Cleared date and output date																																																													
(18)	Page of relation to the A4/Letter																																																													
(19)	Average coverage	Total/Copy/Printer/Fax																																																												
(20)	Coverage on the final output page																																																													
(21)	Presence or absence of the optional DP	Installed Not Installed																																																												
(22)	Presence or absence of the optional paper feeder	Cassette: Paper feeder Not Installed																																																												
(23)	Presence or absence of the optional document finisher	Inner Finisher: Built-in finisher 1000-Finisher: Document finisher Not Installed																																																												
(24)	Presence or absence of the optional job separator	Installed Not Installed																																																												
(25)	Presence or absence of the memory card	Installed Not Installed																																																												
(26)	Presence or absence of the optional PDF upgrade kit	Installed: The formal version is installed Not Installed: The PDF upgrade kit is not installed Trial Version(xx/xx/xx): A trial version is installed																																																												
(27)	Presence or absence of the optional fax backup kit	Installed Not Installed																																																												
(28)	Presence or absence of the optional security kit	Installed Not Installed																																																												

Maintenance item No.	Description	
U000	No.	Description
	(29)	Identification name for the security kit
	(30)	Security kit version
	(31)	Printed page counts
	(32)	Scanned page counts
	(33)	Counts by paper sizes
	(34)	Fax kit information
	(35)	Destination information/Area information
	(36)	Printable area setting
	(37)	Top offset for each bin
	(38)	Left offset for each bin
	(39)	Margin/Page length/Page width settings
	(40)	Panel lock information/USB information
	(41)	RFID information
	(42)	Maintenance information
Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.		
U001	Exiting the maintenance mode Description Exits the maintenance mode and returns to the normal copy mode. Purpose To exit the maintenance mode. Method Press the start key. The normal copy mode is entered.	
U002	Setting the factory default data Description Restores the machine conditions to the factory default settings. Purpose To move the mirror frame of the scanner to the position for transport (position in which the frame can be fixed). Method <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Press [MODE1(ALL)] on the touch panel. 3. Press the start key. The mirror frame of the scanner returns to the position for transport. 4. Turn the main power switch off and on. <p>An error code is displayed in case of an initialization error. Refer to the table of the error codes on P.1-3-15. When ERROR 09 occurred, turn main power switch off then on, format the hard disk using maintenance item U024, and execute initialization using maintenance item U002. For other errors occurred, turn main power switch off then on, and execute initialization using maintenance item U002.</p>	

Maintenance item No.	Description						
U003	<p>Setting the service telephone number</p> <p>Description Sets the telephone number to be displayed when a service call code is detected.</p> <p>Purpose To set the telephone number to call service when installing the machine.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The currently set telephone number is displayed.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. The keys to enter the number are displayed on the touch panel. 2. Enter a telephone number (up to 15 digits). 3. Press the start key. The setting is set. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>						
U004	<p>Displaying the machine number</p> <p>Description Displays the machine number.</p> <p>Purpose To check the machine number.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The currently machine number is displayed.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>						
U005	<p>Copying without paper</p> <p>Description Simulates the copy operation without paper feed.</p> <p>Purpose To check the overall operation of the machine.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be operated. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Operation</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>MFP</td><td>Only the machine operates.</td></tr> <tr> <td>MFP + DP</td><td>Both the machine and DP operate (continuous operation).</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. Press the start key. 4. Press the system menu key. The copy mode screen is displayed. 5. Set the operation conditions required on the copy mode screen. Changes in the following settings can be made. Paper feed locations Magnifications Simplex or duplex copy mode Number of copies: in simplex copy mode, continuous copying is performed when set to 999; in duplex copy mode, continuous copying is performed regardless of the setting. Copy density Keys on the operation panel 6. To control the paper feed pulley, remove all the paper in the drawers, or the drawers. With the paper present, the paper feed pulley does not operate. 7. Press the start key. The operation starts. Copy operation is simulated without paper under the set conditions. To stop continuous operation, press the stop key. 8. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the system menu key. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Operation	MFP	Only the machine operates.	MFP + DP	Both the machine and DP operate (continuous operation).
Display	Operation						
MFP	Only the machine operates.						
MFP + DP	Both the machine and DP operate (continuous operation).						

Maintenance item No.	Description																																				
U019	<p>Displaying the ROM version</p> <p>Description Displays the part number of the ROM fitted to each PWB.</p> <p>Purpose To check the part number or to decide, if the newest version of ROM is installed.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. The ROM version are displayed. 2. Change the screen using the cursor up/down keys. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>MAIN</td><td>Main PWB ROM IC</td></tr> <tr> <td>MMI</td><td>Operation PWB ROM IC</td></tr> <tr> <td>ENGINE</td><td>Engine PWB ROM IC</td></tr> <tr> <td>ENGINE BOOT</td><td>Engine PWB booting</td></tr> <tr> <td>OPTION LANGUAGE</td><td>Optional language ROM IC</td></tr> <tr> <td>DICTIONARY</td><td>-</td></tr> <tr> <td>DP</td><td>Optional DP main PWB ROM IC</td></tr> <tr> <td>OPTION CASSETTE</td><td>Optional paper feeder main PWB ROM IC</td></tr> <tr> <td>INNER DF</td><td>Optional built-in finisher main PWB ROM IC</td></tr> <tr> <td>SIMPLE DF MAIN</td><td>Optional document finisher main PWB ROM IC</td></tr> <tr> <td>ENGINE POWER</td><td>Engine power CPU</td></tr> <tr> <td>FAX BOOT1</td><td>Optional fax control PWB booting (port 1)</td></tr> <tr> <td>FAX APL1</td><td>Optional fax control PWB APL (port 1)</td></tr> <tr> <td>FAX IPL1</td><td>Optional fax control PWB IPL (port 1)</td></tr> <tr> <td>FAX BOOT2</td><td>Fax control PWB booting (port 2: optional dual FAX)</td></tr> <tr> <td>FAX APL2</td><td>Fax control PWB APL (port 2: optional dual FAX)</td></tr> <tr> <td>FAX IPL2</td><td>Fax control PWB IPL (port 2: optional dual FAX)</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	MAIN	Main PWB ROM IC	MMI	Operation PWB ROM IC	ENGINE	Engine PWB ROM IC	ENGINE BOOT	Engine PWB booting	OPTION LANGUAGE	Optional language ROM IC	DICTIONARY	-	DP	Optional DP main PWB ROM IC	OPTION CASSETTE	Optional paper feeder main PWB ROM IC	INNER DF	Optional built-in finisher main PWB ROM IC	SIMPLE DF MAIN	Optional document finisher main PWB ROM IC	ENGINE POWER	Engine power CPU	FAX BOOT1	Optional fax control PWB booting (port 1)	FAX APL1	Optional fax control PWB APL (port 1)	FAX IPL1	Optional fax control PWB IPL (port 1)	FAX BOOT2	Fax control PWB booting (port 2: optional dual FAX)	FAX APL2	Fax control PWB APL (port 2: optional dual FAX)	FAX IPL2	Fax control PWB IPL (port 2: optional dual FAX)
Display	Description																																				
MAIN	Main PWB ROM IC																																				
MMI	Operation PWB ROM IC																																				
ENGINE	Engine PWB ROM IC																																				
ENGINE BOOT	Engine PWB booting																																				
OPTION LANGUAGE	Optional language ROM IC																																				
DICTIONARY	-																																				
DP	Optional DP main PWB ROM IC																																				
OPTION CASSETTE	Optional paper feeder main PWB ROM IC																																				
INNER DF	Optional built-in finisher main PWB ROM IC																																				
SIMPLE DF MAIN	Optional document finisher main PWB ROM IC																																				
ENGINE POWER	Engine power CPU																																				
FAX BOOT1	Optional fax control PWB booting (port 1)																																				
FAX APL1	Optional fax control PWB APL (port 1)																																				
FAX IPL1	Optional fax control PWB IPL (port 1)																																				
FAX BOOT2	Fax control PWB booting (port 2: optional dual FAX)																																				
FAX APL2	Fax control PWB APL (port 2: optional dual FAX)																																				
FAX IPL2	Fax control PWB IPL (port 2: optional dual FAX)																																				

Maintenance item No.	Description																																				
U020	<p>Initializing all data</p> <p>Description Initializes all the backup RAM on the main PWB to return to the original settings. Refer to *1 of the maintenance mode item list about the item initialized. Also, initializes the settings with the system menu in order to restore default settings simultaneously. Reregister the fax settings since the settings are initialized when the fax kit is installed.</p> <p>Purpose To be executed as required.</p> <p>Caution Run the maintenance item U411 (Adjusting the scanner automatically) after initialization (see page 1-3-68).</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the destination. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>INCH</td><td>Inch (North America) specifications</td></tr> <tr> <td>EUROPE METRIC</td><td>Metric (Europe) specifications</td></tr> <tr> <td>ASIA PACIFIC</td><td>Metric (Asia Pacific) specifications</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. Press the start key. All data in the backup RAM is initialized. 4. Turn the main power switch off and on. <p>An error code is displayed in case of an initialization error. When ERROR 09 occurred, turn main power switch off then on, format the hard disk using maintenance item U024, and execute initialization using maintenance item U020. For other errors occurred, turn main power switch off then on, and execute initialization using maintenance item U020.</p> <p>Error codes</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Codes</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>ERROR 01</td><td>Configuration initialization error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 02</td><td>Counter initialization error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 03</td><td>One-touch initialization error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 04</td><td>Panel program initialization error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 05</td><td>Event log initialization error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 06</td><td>Account initialization error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 07</td><td>Address book initialization error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 08</td><td>Department initialization error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 09</td><td>Document box initialization error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 0a</td><td>Permissibility initialization error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 0b</td><td>Job log initialization error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 20</td><td>Engine initialization error</td></tr> <tr><td>ERROR 40</td><td>Scanner initialization error</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Display	Description	INCH	Inch (North America) specifications	EUROPE METRIC	Metric (Europe) specifications	ASIA PACIFIC	Metric (Asia Pacific) specifications	Codes	Description	ERROR 01	Configuration initialization error	ERROR 02	Counter initialization error	ERROR 03	One-touch initialization error	ERROR 04	Panel program initialization error	ERROR 05	Event log initialization error	ERROR 06	Account initialization error	ERROR 07	Address book initialization error	ERROR 08	Department initialization error	ERROR 09	Document box initialization error	ERROR 0a	Permissibility initialization error	ERROR 0b	Job log initialization error	ERROR 20	Engine initialization error	ERROR 40	Scanner initialization error
Display	Description																																				
INCH	Inch (North America) specifications																																				
EUROPE METRIC	Metric (Europe) specifications																																				
ASIA PACIFIC	Metric (Asia Pacific) specifications																																				
Codes	Description																																				
ERROR 01	Configuration initialization error																																				
ERROR 02	Counter initialization error																																				
ERROR 03	One-touch initialization error																																				
ERROR 04	Panel program initialization error																																				
ERROR 05	Event log initialization error																																				
ERROR 06	Account initialization error																																				
ERROR 07	Address book initialization error																																				
ERROR 08	Department initialization error																																				
ERROR 09	Document box initialization error																																				
ERROR 0a	Permissibility initialization error																																				
ERROR 0b	Job log initialization error																																				
ERROR 20	Engine initialization error																																				
ERROR 40	Scanner initialization error																																				

Maintenance item No.	Description																
U021	<p>Initializing counters and mode settings</p> <p>Description Initializes all settings, except those pertinent to the type of machine, namely each counter, service call history and mode setting. Also initializes backup RAM according to region specification selected in maintenance item U252 Setting the destination. Refer to *2 of the maintenance mode item list about the item initialized.</p> <p>Purpose To return the machine settings to their factory default.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Press [EXECUTE] on the touch panel. 3. Press the start key. All data other than that for adjustments due to variations between machines is initialized based on the destination setting. 4. Turn the main power switch off and on. <p>An error code is displayed in case of an initialization error. Refer to the table of the error codes on P.1-3-15. When ERROR 09 occurred, turn main power switch off then on, format the hard disk using maintenance item U024, and execute initialization using maintenance item U021. For other errors occurred, turn main power switch off then on, and execute initialization using maintenance item U021.</p>																
U022	<p>Initializing backup memory</p> <p>Description Initializes only the backup data for image processing. Also, initializes the settings with the system menu in order to restore default settings simultaneously when [MAIN+ENGINE] is selected. Reregister the fax settings since the settings are initialized when the fax kit is installed.</p> <p>Purpose To be executed as required.</p> <p>Caution Run the maintenance item U411 (Adjusting the scanner automatically) after initialization the backup data of scanner or DP main PWB (see page 1-3-68).</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to initialize. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>MAIN+ENGINE</td><td>Initialize the backup data of main PWB and engine PWB.</td></tr> <tr> <td>SCANNER</td><td>Initialize the backup data of scanner.</td></tr> <tr> <td>DP</td><td>Initialize the backup data of DP main PWB.</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. When selecting [MAIN+ENGINE], select the destination. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>INCH</td><td>Inch (North America) specifications</td></tr> <tr> <td>EUROPE METRIC</td><td>Metric (Europe) specifications</td></tr> <tr> <td>ASIA PACIFIC</td><td>Metric (Asia Pacific) specifications</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4. Press the start key. All data in the backup RAM is initialized. 5. Turn the main power switch off and on. <p>An error code is displayed in case of an initialization error. Refer to the table of the error codes on P.1-3-15. When ERROR 09 occurred, turn main power switch off then on, format the hard disk using maintenance item U024, and execute initialization using maintenance item U022. For other errors occurred, turn main power switch off then on, and execute initialization using maintenance item U022.</p>	Display	Description	MAIN+ENGINE	Initialize the backup data of main PWB and engine PWB.	SCANNER	Initialize the backup data of scanner.	DP	Initialize the backup data of DP main PWB.	Display	Description	INCH	Inch (North America) specifications	EUROPE METRIC	Metric (Europe) specifications	ASIA PACIFIC	Metric (Asia Pacific) specifications
Display	Description																
MAIN+ENGINE	Initialize the backup data of main PWB and engine PWB.																
SCANNER	Initialize the backup data of scanner.																
DP	Initialize the backup data of DP main PWB.																
Display	Description																
INCH	Inch (North America) specifications																
EUROPE METRIC	Metric (Europe) specifications																
ASIA PACIFIC	Metric (Asia Pacific) specifications																

Maintenance item No.	Description												
U024	<p>HDD formatting</p> <p>Description Initializes the HDD. In addition, the following settings are also initialized by initializing the HDD. System menu (user login administration, job accounting, address book, one-touch keys and document box etc.), shortcuts and panel programs</p> <p>Purpose To initialize the HDD when replacing the HDD after shipping.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Press [EXECUTE] on the touch panel. 3. Press the start key to initialize the hard disk. 4. Turn the main power switch off and on. 												
U030	<p>Checking motor operation</p> <p>Description Drives each motor.</p> <p>Purpose To check the operation of each motor.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the motor to be operated. 3. Press the start key. The operation starts. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Operation</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>FEED</td><td>Paper feed motor operates</td></tr> <tr> <td>MAIN</td><td>Main motor operates</td></tr> <tr> <td>EJECT(FW)</td><td>Eject motor rotates forward</td></tr> <tr> <td>EJECT(REV)</td><td>Eject motor rotates in reverse</td></tr> <tr> <td>DRUM</td><td>Drum motor operates</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4. To stop operation, press the stop key. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Operation	FEED	Paper feed motor operates	MAIN	Main motor operates	EJECT(FW)	Eject motor rotates forward	EJECT(REV)	Eject motor rotates in reverse	DRUM	Drum motor operates
Display	Operation												
FEED	Paper feed motor operates												
MAIN	Main motor operates												
EJECT(FW)	Eject motor rotates forward												
EJECT(REV)	Eject motor rotates in reverse												
DRUM	Drum motor operates												

Maintenance item No.	Description																						
U031	<p>Checking switches for paper conveying</p> <p>Description Displays the on-off status of each paper detection switch on the paper path.</p> <p>Purpose To check if the switches for paper conveying operate correctly.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Turn each switch on and off manually to check the status. <p>When a switch is detected to be in the ON position, the display for that switch will be highlighted.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Switches</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>FEED1</td><td>Feed switch 1 (FSW1)</td></tr> <tr> <td>FEED2</td><td>Feed switch 2 (FSW2)</td></tr> <tr> <td>FEED3</td><td>Feed switch 3 (FSW3)</td></tr> <tr> <td>MP TRAY</td><td>MP feed switch (MPFSW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>REGIST</td><td>Registration switch (RSW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>EJECT</td><td>Eject switch (ESW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>BRANCH</td><td>Feedshift switch (FSSW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>DUPLEX</td><td>Duplex paper conveying switch (DUPPCSW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>JOB SEPARATOR</td><td>Job separator eject switch (JBESW)*</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>*: Optional.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Switches	FEED1	Feed switch 1 (FSW1)	FEED2	Feed switch 2 (FSW2)	FEED3	Feed switch 3 (FSW3)	MP TRAY	MP feed switch (MPFSW)	REGIST	Registration switch (RSW)	EJECT	Eject switch (ESW)	BRANCH	Feedshift switch (FSSW)	DUPLEX	Duplex paper conveying switch (DUPPCSW)	JOB SEPARATOR	Job separator eject switch (JBESW)*		
Display	Switches																						
FEED1	Feed switch 1 (FSW1)																						
FEED2	Feed switch 2 (FSW2)																						
FEED3	Feed switch 3 (FSW3)																						
MP TRAY	MP feed switch (MPFSW)																						
REGIST	Registration switch (RSW)																						
EJECT	Eject switch (ESW)																						
BRANCH	Feedshift switch (FSSW)																						
DUPLEX	Duplex paper conveying switch (DUPPCSW)																						
JOB SEPARATOR	Job separator eject switch (JBESW)*																						
U032	<p>Checking clutch operation</p> <p>Description Turns each clutch on.</p> <p>Purpose To check the operation of each clutch.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the clutch to be operated. 3. Press the start key. The clutch turns on for 1 s. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Clutches</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>PF1</td><td>Upper paper feed clutch (PFCL-U)</td></tr> <tr> <td>PF2</td><td>Lower paper feed clutch (PFCL-L)</td></tr> <tr> <td>PF MP TRAY</td><td>MP paper feed clutch (MPPFCL)</td></tr> <tr> <td>FEED1</td><td>Feed clutch 1 (FCL1)</td></tr> <tr> <td>FEED2</td><td>Feed clutch 2 (FCL2)</td></tr> <tr> <td>LIFTBYP</td><td>MP paper feed clutch (MPPFCL)</td></tr> <tr> <td>FEED MP TRAY</td><td>MP feed clutch (MPFCL)</td></tr> <tr> <td>REGIST</td><td>Registration clutch (RCL)</td></tr> <tr> <td>DUPLEX</td><td>Duplex feed clutch (DUPFCL)</td></tr> <tr> <td>MOTOR ON</td><td>The main motor (MM) and the paper feed motor (PFM) are turned ON.</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>To stop motor driving, press [MOTOR ON] again.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Clutches	PF1	Upper paper feed clutch (PFCL-U)	PF2	Lower paper feed clutch (PFCL-L)	PF MP TRAY	MP paper feed clutch (MPPFCL)	FEED1	Feed clutch 1 (FCL1)	FEED2	Feed clutch 2 (FCL2)	LIFTBYP	MP paper feed clutch (MPPFCL)	FEED MP TRAY	MP feed clutch (MPFCL)	REGIST	Registration clutch (RCL)	DUPLEX	Duplex feed clutch (DUPFCL)	MOTOR ON	The main motor (MM) and the paper feed motor (PFM) are turned ON.
Display	Clutches																						
PF1	Upper paper feed clutch (PFCL-U)																						
PF2	Lower paper feed clutch (PFCL-L)																						
PF MP TRAY	MP paper feed clutch (MPPFCL)																						
FEED1	Feed clutch 1 (FCL1)																						
FEED2	Feed clutch 2 (FCL2)																						
LIFTBYP	MP paper feed clutch (MPPFCL)																						
FEED MP TRAY	MP feed clutch (MPFCL)																						
REGIST	Registration clutch (RCL)																						
DUPLEX	Duplex feed clutch (DUPFCL)																						
MOTOR ON	The main motor (MM) and the paper feed motor (PFM) are turned ON.																						

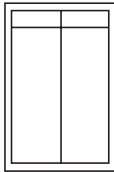
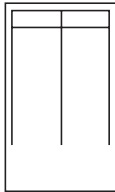
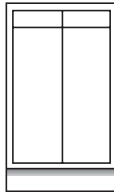
Maintenance item No.	Description								
U033	<p>Checking solenoid operation</p> <p>Description Applies current to each solenoid in order to check its ON status.</p> <p>Purpose To check the operation of each solenoid.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the solenoid to be operated. 3. Press the start key. The solenoid turns on for 1 s. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Solenoids</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>BRANCH1</td><td>Feedshift solenoid (FSSOL)</td></tr> <tr> <td>BRANCH2</td><td>Feedshift solenoid (FSSOL)*</td></tr> <tr> <td>MOTOR ON</td><td>The main motor (MM) and the paper feed motor (PFM) are turned on.</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>*Optional. To stop motor driving, press [MOTOR ON] again.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Solenoids	BRANCH1	Feedshift solenoid (FSSOL)	BRANCH2	Feedshift solenoid (FSSOL)*	MOTOR ON	The main motor (MM) and the paper feed motor (PFM) are turned on.
Display	Solenoids								
BRANCH1	Feedshift solenoid (FSSOL)								
BRANCH2	Feedshift solenoid (FSSOL)*								
MOTOR ON	The main motor (MM) and the paper feed motor (PFM) are turned on.								



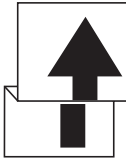
Maintenance item No.	Description																																	
U034	<p>Adjusting the print start timing</p> <p>Description Adjusts the leading edge registration or center line.</p> <p>Purpose Make the adjustment if there is a regular error between the leading edges of the copy image and original. Make the adjustment if there is a regular error between the center lines of the copy image and original.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Select the item to be adjusted. The setting screen for the selected item is displayed. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>LSU OUT TOP</td><td>Leading edge registration adjustment</td></tr><tr><td>LSU OUT LEFT</td><td>Center line adjustment</td></tr><tr><td>LSU OUT END</td><td>Trailing edge registration adjustment</td></tr></table> <p>Adjustment: Leading edge registration adjustment</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Select the item to be adjusted. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>TOP</td><td>Adjustment of reference value</td><td>0 to 500</td><td>120</td><td>0.042 mm</td></tr><tr><td>MP TRAY</td><td>Paper feed from MP tray*</td><td>-250 to 250</td><td>0</td><td>0.042 mm</td></tr><tr><td>CASSETTE</td><td>Paper feed from cassette*</td><td>-250 to 250</td><td>0</td><td>0.042 mm</td></tr><tr><td>DUPLEX</td><td>Duplex mode (second side)*</td><td>-250 to 250</td><td>0</td><td>0.042 mm</td></tr></table> <p>*: Setting the difference value from reference value</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">2. Press the system menu key.3. Press the start key to output a test pattern.4. Press the system menu key.5. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys. For output example 1, decrease the value. For output example 2, increase the value. <div><p>Leading edge registration</p><p>Correct image Output example 1 Output example 2</p></div> <p>Figure 1-3-4</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">6. Press the start key. The value is set. <p>Caution Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode.</p> <div><div>U034</div><div>→</div><div>U066 (P.1-3-28)</div><div>→</div><div>U071 (P.1-3-32)</div></div>	Display	Description	LSU OUT TOP	Leading edge registration adjustment	LSU OUT LEFT	Center line adjustment	LSU OUT END	Trailing edge registration adjustment	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	TOP	Adjustment of reference value	0 to 500	120	0.042 mm	MP TRAY	Paper feed from MP tray*	-250 to 250	0	0.042 mm	CASSETTE	Paper feed from cassette*	-250 to 250	0	0.042 mm	DUPLEX	Duplex mode (second side)*	-250 to 250	0	0.042 mm
Display	Description																																	
LSU OUT TOP	Leading edge registration adjustment																																	
LSU OUT LEFT	Center line adjustment																																	
LSU OUT END	Trailing edge registration adjustment																																	
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step																														
TOP	Adjustment of reference value	0 to 500	120	0.042 mm																														
MP TRAY	Paper feed from MP tray*	-250 to 250	0	0.042 mm																														
CASSETTE	Paper feed from cassette*	-250 to 250	0	0.042 mm																														
DUPLEX	Duplex mode (second side)*	-250 to 250	0	0.042 mm																														

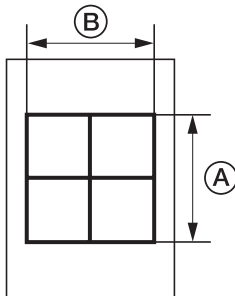
TONER

www.tonerplus.com.ua

Maintenance item No.	Description																																								
U034	<div>Adjustment: Center line adjustment</div> <div>1. Select the item to be adjusted.</div> <table><thead><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>LEFT</td><td>Adjustment of reference value</td><td>0 to 1000</td><td>180</td><td>0.042 mm</td></tr><tr><td>MP TRAY</td><td>Paper feed from MP tray*</td><td>-500 to 500</td><td>0</td><td>0.042 mm</td></tr><tr><td>CASSETTE 1</td><td>Paper feed from cassette 1*</td><td>-500 to 500</td><td>0</td><td>0.042 mm</td></tr><tr><td>CASSETTE 2</td><td>Paper feed from cassette 2*</td><td>-500 to 500</td><td>0</td><td>0.042 mm</td></tr><tr><td>CASSETTE 3</td><td>Paper feed from optional cassette 3*</td><td>-500 to 500</td><td>0</td><td>0.042 mm</td></tr><tr><td>CASSETTE 4</td><td>Paper feed from optional cassette 4*</td><td>-500 to 500</td><td>0</td><td>0.042 mm</td></tr><tr><td>DUPLEX</td><td>Duplex mode (second side)*</td><td>-500 to 500</td><td>0</td><td>0.042 mm</td></tr></tbody></table> <div>*: Setting the difference value from reference value</div> <div>2. Press the system menu key.</div> <div>3. Press the start key to output a test pattern.</div> <div>4. Press the system menu key.</div> <div>5. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.</div> <div>For output example 1, decrease the value. For output example 2, increase the value.</div> <div><div>Center line of printing</div><div></div><div>Correct image Output example 1 Output example 2</div></div> <div>Figure 1-3-5</div> <div>6. Press the start key. The value is set.</div> <div>Caution</div> <div>Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode.</div> <div><div>U034</div><div>→</div><div>U067 (P.1-3-29)</div><div>→</div><div>U072 (P.1-3-34)</div></div>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	LEFT	Adjustment of reference value	0 to 1000	180	0.042 mm	MP TRAY	Paper feed from MP tray*	-500 to 500	0	0.042 mm	CASSETTE 1	Paper feed from cassette 1*	-500 to 500	0	0.042 mm	CASSETTE 2	Paper feed from cassette 2*	-500 to 500	0	0.042 mm	CASSETTE 3	Paper feed from optional cassette 3*	-500 to 500	0	0.042 mm	CASSETTE 4	Paper feed from optional cassette 4*	-500 to 500	0	0.042 mm	DUPLEX	Duplex mode (second side)*	-500 to 500	0	0.042 mm
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step																																					
LEFT	Adjustment of reference value	0 to 1000	180	0.042 mm																																					
MP TRAY	Paper feed from MP tray*	-500 to 500	0	0.042 mm																																					
CASSETTE 1	Paper feed from cassette 1*	-500 to 500	0	0.042 mm																																					
CASSETTE 2	Paper feed from cassette 2*	-500 to 500	0	0.042 mm																																					
CASSETTE 3	Paper feed from optional cassette 3*	-500 to 500	0	0.042 mm																																					
CASSETTE 4	Paper feed from optional cassette 4*	-500 to 500	0	0.042 mm																																					
DUPLEX	Duplex mode (second side)*	-500 to 500	0	0.042 mm																																					

Maintenance item No.	Description												
U034	<p>Adjustment: Trailing edge registration adjustment</p> <p>1. Select [END].</p> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>END</td><td>Trailing edge registration adjustment</td><td>-40 to 100</td><td>0</td><td>1 ms</td></tr></table> <p>2. Press the system menu key. 3. Press the start key to output a test pattern. 4. Press the system menu key. 5. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys. For output example 1, decrease the value. For output example 2, increase the value.</p> <div><div><p>Correct image</p></div><div><p>Output example 1</p></div><div><p>Output example 2</p></div></div> <p>Figure 1-3-6</p> <p>6. Press the start key. The value is set.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	END	Trailing edge registration adjustment	-40 to 100	0	1 ms		
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step									
END	Trailing edge registration adjustment	-40 to 100	0	1 ms									
U035	<p>Setting the printing area for folio paper</p> <p>Description Changes the printing area for copying on folio paper.</p> <p>Purpose To prevent cropped images on the trailing edge or left/right side of copy paper by setting the actual printing area for folio paper.</p> <p>Setting</p> <p>1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be set. 3. Change the setting using the +/- keys.</p> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Setting</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>LENGTH DATA</td><td>Length</td><td>330 to 356 mm</td><td>330</td></tr><tr><td>WIDTH DATA</td><td>Width</td><td>200 to 220 mm</td><td>210</td></tr></table> <p>4. Press the start key. The value is set.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Setting	Setting range	Initial setting	LENGTH DATA	Length	330 to 356 mm	330	WIDTH DATA	Width	200 to 220 mm	210
Display	Setting	Setting range	Initial setting										
LENGTH DATA	Length	330 to 356 mm	330										
WIDTH DATA	Width	200 to 220 mm	210										

Maintenance item No.	Description																								
U051	<p>Adjusting the deflection in the paper</p> <p>Description Adjusts the deflection in the paper.</p> <p>Purpose Make the adjustment if the leading edge of the copy image is missing or varies randomly, or if the copy paper is Z-folded.</p> <p>Adjustment</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Select the item to be adjusted. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>MP TRAY</td><td>Paper feed from MP tray</td><td>-50 to 127</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>CASSETTE</td><td>Paper feed from cassette 1</td><td>-50 to 127</td><td>50</td></tr><tr><td>CASSETTE2</td><td>Paper feed from cassette 2</td><td>-50 to 127</td><td>50</td></tr><tr><td>DUPLEX</td><td>Duplex mode (second side)</td><td>-50 to 127</td><td>40</td></tr><tr><td>MP TRAY (THICK)</td><td>Paper feed from MP tray (thick paper)</td><td>-50 to 127</td><td>10</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none">3. Press the system menu key.4. Place an original and press the start key to make a test copy.5. Press the system menu key.6. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys. For output example 1, increase the value. For output example 2, decrease the value. The greater the value, the larger the deflection; the smaller the value, the smaller the deflection. <div><div><p>Original</p></div><div><p>Copy example 1</p></div><div><p>Copy example 2</p></div></div> <p>Figure 1-3-7</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">7. Press the start key. The value is set. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The indication for selecting a maintenance item No. appears.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	MP TRAY	Paper feed from MP tray	-50 to 127	0	CASSETTE	Paper feed from cassette 1	-50 to 127	50	CASSETTE2	Paper feed from cassette 2	-50 to 127	50	DUPLEX	Duplex mode (second side)	-50 to 127	40	MP TRAY (THICK)	Paper feed from MP tray (thick paper)	-50 to 127	10
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting																						
MP TRAY	Paper feed from MP tray	-50 to 127	0																						
CASSETTE	Paper feed from cassette 1	-50 to 127	50																						
CASSETTE2	Paper feed from cassette 2	-50 to 127	50																						
DUPLEX	Duplex mode (second side)	-50 to 127	40																						
MP TRAY (THICK)	Paper feed from MP tray (thick paper)	-50 to 127	10																						

Maintenance item No.	Description																																								
U053	<p>Setting the adjustment of the motor speed</p> <p>Description Performs fine adjustment of the speeds of the motors.</p> <p>Purpose To adjust the speed of the respective motors when the magnification is not correct.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Select the item to be adjusted. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>ALL</td><td>Main motor, drum motor, paper feed motor and eject motor speed adjustment</td><td>-40 to 40</td><td>0</td><td>0.25 %</td></tr><tr><td>MAIN MOTOR</td><td>Main motor speed adjustment*1</td><td>-40 to 40</td><td>-1</td><td>0.25 %</td></tr><tr><td>DRUM MOTOR</td><td>Drum motor speed adjustment*1</td><td>-40 to 40</td><td>-2</td><td>0.25 %</td></tr><tr><td>FEED MOTOR</td><td>Paper feed motor speed adjustment*1</td><td>-40 to 40</td><td>0</td><td>0.25 %</td></tr><tr><td>EJECT MOTOR</td><td>Eject motor speed adjustment*1</td><td>-40 to 40</td><td>2</td><td>0.25 %</td></tr><tr><td>POLYGON MOTOR</td><td>Polygon motor speed adjustment</td><td>-20 to 20</td><td>-8</td><td>-</td></tr><tr><td>DF MOTOR</td><td>Paper conveying motor speed adjustment*2</td><td>-40 to 40</td><td>0</td><td>0.25 %</td></tr></table> <p>*1: Correction value for the [ALL] value *2: Optional built-in finisher</p> <p>Adjustment</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the system menu key.2. Press the start key to output an A3/Ledger VTC pattern. <div><p>Correct values for an A3/Ledger output are: A = 300 ± 1.0 mm B = 260 ± 1.0 mm</p></div> <p>Figure 1-3-8</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">3. Press the system menu key.4. A: Magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction<ol style="list-style-type: none">1) Select [ALL].2) Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys. Increasing the setting makes the image longer in the auxiliary scanning direction, and decreasing it makes the image shorter in the auxiliary scanning direction.B: Magnification in the main scanning direction<ol style="list-style-type: none">1) Select [POLYGON MOTOR].2) Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys. Increasing the setting makes the image shorter in the main scanning direction, and decreasing it makes the image longer in the main scanning direction.5. Press the start key. The value is set. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The indication for selecting a maintenance item No. appears.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	ALL	Main motor, drum motor, paper feed motor and eject motor speed adjustment	-40 to 40	0	0.25 %	MAIN MOTOR	Main motor speed adjustment*1	-40 to 40	-1	0.25 %	DRUM MOTOR	Drum motor speed adjustment*1	-40 to 40	-2	0.25 %	FEED MOTOR	Paper feed motor speed adjustment*1	-40 to 40	0	0.25 %	EJECT MOTOR	Eject motor speed adjustment*1	-40 to 40	2	0.25 %	POLYGON MOTOR	Polygon motor speed adjustment	-20 to 20	-8	-	DF MOTOR	Paper conveying motor speed adjustment*2	-40 to 40	0	0.25 %
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step																																					
ALL	Main motor, drum motor, paper feed motor and eject motor speed adjustment	-40 to 40	0	0.25 %																																					
MAIN MOTOR	Main motor speed adjustment*1	-40 to 40	-1	0.25 %																																					
DRUM MOTOR	Drum motor speed adjustment*1	-40 to 40	-2	0.25 %																																					
FEED MOTOR	Paper feed motor speed adjustment*1	-40 to 40	0	0.25 %																																					
EJECT MOTOR	Eject motor speed adjustment*1	-40 to 40	2	0.25 %																																					
POLYGON MOTOR	Polygon motor speed adjustment	-20 to 20	-8	-																																					
DF MOTOR	Paper conveying motor speed adjustment*2	-40 to 40	0	0.25 %																																					







Maintenance item No.	Description								
U055	<p>Setting the motor periodic drive</p> <p>Description Specifies ON/OFF the drum small rotation mode.</p> <p>Purpose Set to ON if dribbling occurs on the image.</p> <p>Setting</p> <div><div><div>1. Press the start key.</div><div>2. Select ON or OFF.</div></div><table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>ON</td><td>Drum small rotation mode ON</td></tr><tr><td>OFF</td><td>Drum small rotation mode OFF</td></tr></table><div>Initial setting: ON</div><div>3. Press the start key. The setting is set.</div></div> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	ON	Drum small rotation mode ON	OFF	Drum small rotation mode OFF		
Display	Description								
ON	Drum small rotation mode ON								
OFF	Drum small rotation mode OFF								
U059	<p>Setting fan mode</p> <p>Description Sets the time of period cooling fan motor 1 is driven.</p> <p>Purpose To be executed as required.</p> <p>Method</p> <div><div><div>1. Press the start key.</div><div>2. Change the setting using the +/- keys.</div></div><table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>FAN1</td><td>Time of period the fan is driven after printing is completed</td><td>0 to 250 (s)</td><td>45</td></tr></table><div>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</div></div> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	FAN1	Time of period the fan is driven after printing is completed	0 to 250 (s)	45
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting						
FAN1	Time of period the fan is driven after printing is completed	0 to 250 (s)	45						

TONER

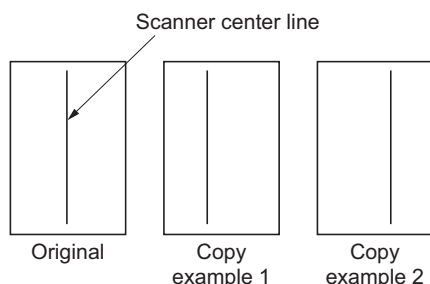
www.tonerplus.com.ua

Maintenance item No.	Description								
U061	<p>Turning the exposure lamp on</p> <p>Description Turns the exposure lamp on.</p> <p>Purpose To check the exposure lamp.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Select [CCD].3. Press the start key. The exposure lamp lights.4. To turn the exposure lamp off, press the stop key. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>								
U063	<p>Adjusting the shading position</p> <p>Description Changes the shading position of the scanner.</p> <p>Purpose Used when white lines continue to appear longitudinally on the image after the shading plate is cleaned. This is due to flaws or stains inside the shading plate. To prevent this problem, the shading position should be changed so that shading is possible without being affected by the flaws or stains.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys. <table><tr><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>Shading position</td><td>-12 to 18</td><td>0</td><td>0.086 mm</td></tr></table> <p>Increasing the setting moves the shading position toward the machine left, and decreasing it moves the position toward the machine right.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">3. Press the start key. The value is set. <p>Supplement While this maintenance item is being executed, copying from an original is available in interrupt copying mode (which is activated by pressing the system menu key).</p> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	Shading position	-12 to 18	0	0.086 mm
Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step						
Shading position	-12 to 18	0	0.086 mm						

TONER




Maintenance item No.	Description															
U065	<p>Adjusting the scanner magnification</p> <p>Description Adjusts the magnification of the original scanning.</p> <p>Purpose Make the adjustment if the magnification in the main scanning direction is incorrect. Make the adjustment if the magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction is incorrect.</p> <p>Caution Adjust the magnification of the scanner in the following order.</p> <div><div>U053 (P.1-3-24)</div><div>→</div><div>U065 (main scanning direction)</div><div>→</div><div>U065 (auxiliary scanning direction)</div><div>→</div><div>U067 (P.1-3-29)</div><div>→</div><div>U070 (P.1-3-31)</div></div> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">Press the start key.Select the item to be adjusted. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>MAIN SCAN ADJ</td><td>Scanner magnification in the main scanning direction</td><td>-15 to 15</td><td>0</td><td>0.1 %</td></tr><tr><td>SUB SCAN ADJ</td><td>Scanner magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction</td><td>-25 to 25</td><td>0</td><td>0.1 %</td></tr></table> <p>Adjustment: Main scanning direction</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">Press the system menu key.Place an original and press the start key to make a test copy.Press the system menu key.Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys. For copy example 1, increase the value. For copy example 2, decrease the value. <div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div><div>Original</div><div>Copy example 1</div><div>Copy example 2</div></div></div> <p>Figure 1-3-9</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">Press the start key. The value is set. <p>Adjustment: Auxiliary scanning direction</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">Press the system menu key.Place an original and press the start key to make a test copy.Press the system menu key.Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys. For copy example 1, increase the value. For copy example 2, decrease the value. <div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div><div>Original</div><div>Copy example 1</div><div>Copy example 2</div></div></div> <p>Figure 1-3-10</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">Press the start key. The value is set. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	MAIN SCAN ADJ	Scanner magnification in the main scanning direction	-15 to 15	0	0.1 %	SUB SCAN ADJ	Scanner magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction	-25 to 25	0	0.1 %
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step												
MAIN SCAN ADJ	Scanner magnification in the main scanning direction	-15 to 15	0	0.1 %												
SUB SCAN ADJ	Scanner magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction	-25 to 25	0	0.1 %												




Maintenance item No.	Description															
U066	<p>Adjusting the scanner leading edge registration</p> <p>Description Adjusts the scanner leading edge registration of the original scanning.</p> <p>Purpose Make the adjustment if there is a regular error between the leading edges of the copy image and original.</p> <p>Adjustment</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Select the item to be adjusted. <table><thead><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>ADJUST DATA 1</td><td>Scanner leading edge registration</td><td>-45 to 45</td><td>0</td><td>0.086 mm</td></tr><tr><td>ADJUST DATA2</td><td>Scanner leading edge registration (rotate copying)</td><td>-45 to 45</td><td>0</td><td>0.086 mm</td></tr></tbody></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none">3. Press the system menu key.4. Place an original and press the start key to make a test copy.5. Press the system menu key.6. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys. For copy example 1, increase the value. For copy example 2, decrease the value. <div><p>Scanner leading edge registration</p><p>Original Copy example 1 Copy example 2</p></div> <p>Figure 1-3-11</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">7. Press the start key. The value is set. <p>Caution Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode.</p> <div><div>U066</div><div>→</div><div>U403 (P.1-3-65)</div><div>→</div><div>U071 (P.1-3-32)</div><div>→</div><div>U404 (P.1-3-66)</div></div> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	ADJUST DATA 1	Scanner leading edge registration	-45 to 45	0	0.086 mm	ADJUST DATA2	Scanner leading edge registration (rotate copying)	-45 to 45	0	0.086 mm
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step												
ADJUST DATA 1	Scanner leading edge registration	-45 to 45	0	0.086 mm												
ADJUST DATA2	Scanner leading edge registration (rotate copying)	-45 to 45	0	0.086 mm												

Maintenance item No.	Description															
U067	<p>Adjusting the scanner center line</p> <p>Description Adjusts the scanner center line of the original scanning.</p> <p>Purpose Make the adjustment if there is a regular error between the center lines of the copy image and original.</p> <p>Adjustment</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Select the item to be adjusted. <table><thead><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>ADJUST DATA 1</td><td>Scanner center line</td><td>-70 to 70</td><td>0</td><td>0.085 mm</td></tr><tr><td>ADJUST DATA 2</td><td>Scanner center line (rotate copying)</td><td>-25 to 25</td><td>0</td><td>0.085 mm</td></tr></tbody></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none">3. Press the system menu key.4. Place an original and press the start key to make a test copy.5. Press the system menu key.6. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys. For copy example 1, decrease the value. For copy example 2, increase the value. <div><p>Scanner center line</p></div> <p style="text-align: center;">Figure 1-3-12</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">7. Press the start key. The value is set. <p>Caution Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode.</p> <div><div>U067</div><div>→</div><div>U403 (P.1-3-65)</div><div>→</div><div>U072 (P.1-3-34)</div><div>→</div><div>U404 (P.1-3-66)</div></div> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	ADJUST DATA 1	Scanner center line	-70 to 70	0	0.085 mm	ADJUST DATA 2	Scanner center line (rotate copying)	-25 to 25	0	0.085 mm
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step												
ADJUST DATA 1	Scanner center line	-70 to 70	0	0.085 mm												
ADJUST DATA 2	Scanner center line (rotate copying)	-25 to 25	0	0.085 mm												




Maintenance item No.	Description															
U068	<p>Adjusting the scanning position for originals from the DP</p> <p>Description Adjusts the position for scanning originals from the DP. Performs the test copy at the four scanning positions after adjusting.</p> <p>Purpose Used when the image fogging occurs because the scanning position is not proper when the DP is used. Run U071 to adjust the timing of DP leading edge when the scanning position is changed.</p> <p>Setting</p> <div><div>1. Press the start key.</div><table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>ADJUST DATA</td><td>Starting position adjustment for scanning originals</td><td>-33 to 33</td><td>0</td><td>0.086 mm</td></tr><tr><td>TEST POSITION</td><td>Scanning position for the test copy originals</td><td>0 to 3</td><td>0</td><td>0.22 mm</td></tr></table></div> <div><div>2. Select [ADJUST DATA] of the screen for selecting an item.</div><div>3. Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys. When the setting value is increased, the scanning position moves to the right and it moves to the left when the setting value is decreased.</div><div>4. Press the start key. The value is set.</div><div>5. Select [TEST POSITION] of the screen for selecting an item.</div><div>6. Select the scanning position using the +/- or numeric keys.</div><div>7. Press the start key. The value is set.</div><div>8. Set the original (the one which density is known) in the DP and press the system menu key. The screen for the test copy mode is displayed.</div><div>9. Press the start key. Test copy is executed.</div><div>10. Perform the test copy at each scanning position with the setting value from 0 to 3 and check that no black line appears and the image is normally scanned.</div></div> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	ADJUST DATA	Starting position adjustment for scanning originals	-33 to 33	0	0.086 mm	TEST POSITION	Scanning position for the test copy originals	0 to 3	0	0.22 mm
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step												
ADJUST DATA	Starting position adjustment for scanning originals	-33 to 33	0	0.086 mm												
TEST POSITION	Scanning position for the test copy originals	0 to 3	0	0.22 mm												

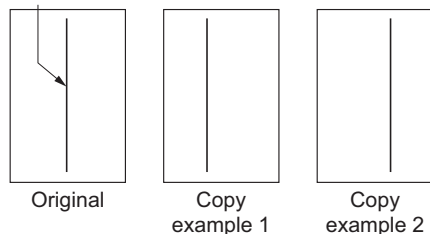
TONER

Maintenance item No.	Description															
U070	<p>Adjusting the DP magnification</p> <p>Description Adjusts the DP original scanning speed.</p> <p>Purpose Make the adjustment if the magnification is incorrect in the auxiliary scanning direction when the optional DP is used.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Select the item to be adjusted. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>MAIN ADJ</td><td>Magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction (first page)</td><td>-25 to 25</td><td>0</td><td>0.1 %</td></tr><tr><td>SUB ADJ</td><td>Magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction (second page)</td><td>-25 to 25</td><td>0</td><td>0.1 %</td></tr></table> <p>Adjustment</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the system menu key.2. Place an original on the DP and press the start key to make a test copy.3. Press the system menu key.4. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys. For copy example 1, increase the value. For copy example 2, decrease the value. <div><div><p>Original</p></div><div><p>Copy example 1</p></div><div><p>Copy example 2</p></div></div> <p>Figure 1-3-13</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">5. Press the start key. The value is set. <p>Caution Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode.</p> <div><div>U070</div><div>→</div><div>U071 (P.1-3-32)</div><div>→</div><div>U404 (P.1-3-66)</div></div> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	MAIN ADJ	Magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction (first page)	-25 to 25	0	0.1 %	SUB ADJ	Magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction (second page)	-25 to 25	0	0.1 %
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step												
MAIN ADJ	Magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction (first page)	-25 to 25	0	0.1 %												
SUB ADJ	Magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction (second page)	-25 to 25	0	0.1 %												

Maintenance item No.	Description																																													
U071	<p>Adjusting the DP scanning timing</p> <p>Description Adjusts the DP original scanning timing.</p> <p>Purpose Make the adjustment if there is a regular error between the leading or trailing edges of the original and the copy image when the optional DP is used.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Select the item to be adjusted. <table><thead><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>ADJUST DATA1</td><td>Leading edge registration (first page)</td><td>-32 to 32</td><td>0</td><td>0.196 mm</td></tr><tr><td>ADJUST DATA2</td><td>Trailing edge registration (first page)</td><td>-32 to 28</td><td>0</td><td>0.196 mm</td></tr><tr><td>ADJUST DATA3</td><td>Leading edge registration (second page)</td><td>-32 to 32</td><td>0</td><td>0.196 mm</td></tr><tr><td>ADJUST DATA4</td><td>Trailing edge registration (second page)</td><td>-32 to 28</td><td>0</td><td>0.196 mm</td></tr><tr><td>ADJUST DATA1(H)</td><td>Leading edge registration at high-speed scanning (first page)</td><td>-32 to 32</td><td>0</td><td>0.196 mm</td></tr><tr><td>ADJUST DATA2(H)</td><td>Trailing edge registration at high-speed scanning (first page)</td><td>-32 to 28</td><td>0</td><td>0.196 mm</td></tr><tr><td>ADJUST DATA3(H)</td><td>Leading edge registration at high-speed scanning (second page)</td><td>-32 to 32</td><td>0</td><td>0.196 mm</td></tr><tr><td>ADJUST DATA4(H)</td><td>Trailing edge registration at high-speed scanning (second page)</td><td>-32 to 28</td><td>0</td><td>0.196 mm</td></tr></tbody></table> <p>Adjustment: Leading edge registration</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the system menu key.2. Place an original on the DP and press the start key to make a test copy.3. Press the system menu key.4. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys. For copy example 1, increase the value. For copy example 2, decrease the value. <div><div> Original</div><div> Copy example 1</div><div> Copy example 2</div></div> <p>Figure 1-3-14</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">5. Press the start key. The value is set. <p>Caution Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode.</p> <div><div>U071</div><div>→</div><div>U404 (P.1-3-66)</div></div>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	ADJUST DATA1	Leading edge registration (first page)	-32 to 32	0	0.196 mm	ADJUST DATA2	Trailing edge registration (first page)	-32 to 28	0	0.196 mm	ADJUST DATA3	Leading edge registration (second page)	-32 to 32	0	0.196 mm	ADJUST DATA4	Trailing edge registration (second page)	-32 to 28	0	0.196 mm	ADJUST DATA1(H)	Leading edge registration at high-speed scanning (first page)	-32 to 32	0	0.196 mm	ADJUST DATA2(H)	Trailing edge registration at high-speed scanning (first page)	-32 to 28	0	0.196 mm	ADJUST DATA3(H)	Leading edge registration at high-speed scanning (second page)	-32 to 32	0	0.196 mm	ADJUST DATA4(H)	Trailing edge registration at high-speed scanning (second page)	-32 to 28	0	0.196 mm
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step																																										
ADJUST DATA1	Leading edge registration (first page)	-32 to 32	0	0.196 mm																																										
ADJUST DATA2	Trailing edge registration (first page)	-32 to 28	0	0.196 mm																																										
ADJUST DATA3	Leading edge registration (second page)	-32 to 32	0	0.196 mm																																										
ADJUST DATA4	Trailing edge registration (second page)	-32 to 28	0	0.196 mm																																										
ADJUST DATA1(H)	Leading edge registration at high-speed scanning (first page)	-32 to 32	0	0.196 mm																																										
ADJUST DATA2(H)	Trailing edge registration at high-speed scanning (first page)	-32 to 28	0	0.196 mm																																										
ADJUST DATA3(H)	Leading edge registration at high-speed scanning (second page)	-32 to 32	0	0.196 mm																																										
ADJUST DATA4(H)	Trailing edge registration at high-speed scanning (second page)	-32 to 28	0	0.196 mm																																										

TONER

Maintenance item No.	Description
U071	<p>Adjustment: Trailing edge registration</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the system menu key.2. Place an original on the DP and press the start key to make a test copy.3. Press the system menu key.4. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys. For copy example 1, increase the value. For copy example 2, decrease the value. <div><div><p>Original</p></div><div><p>Copy example 1</p></div><div><p>Copy example 2</p></div></div> <p>Figure 1-3-15</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">5. Press the start key. The value is set. <p>Caution Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode.</p> <div><div>U071</div><div>→</div><div>U404 (P.1-3-66)</div></div> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>

Maintenance item No.	Description															
U072	<p>Adjusting the DP center line</p> <p>Description Adjusts the scanning start position for the DP original.</p> <p>Purpose Make the adjustment if there is a regular error between the centers of the original and the copy image when the optional DP is used.</p> <p>Adjustment</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Select the item to be adjusted. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>ADJUST DATA1</td><td>Center line (first page)</td><td>-78 to 78</td><td>0</td><td>0.085 mm</td></tr><tr><td>ADJUST DATA2</td><td>Center line (second page)</td><td>-78 to 78</td><td>0</td><td>0.085 mm</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none">3. Press the system menu key.4. Place an original on the DP and press the start key to make a test copy.5. Press the system menu key.6. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys. For copy example 1, increase the value. For copy example 2, decrease the value. <div><p>Reference</p><p>Original Copy example 1 Copy example 2</p></div> <p style="text-align: center;">Figure 1-3-16</p> 7. Press the start key. The value is set. <p>Caution Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode.</p> <div><div>U072</div><div>→</div><div>U404 (P.1-3-66)</div></div> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	ADJUST DATA1	Center line (first page)	-78 to 78	0	0.085 mm	ADJUST DATA2	Center line (second page)	-78 to 78	0	0.085 mm
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step												
ADJUST DATA1	Center line (first page)	-78 to 78	0	0.085 mm												
ADJUST DATA2	Center line (second page)	-78 to 78	0	0.085 mm												

TONER

www.tonerplus.com.ua

Maintenance item No.	Description																																																						
U073	<p>Checking scanner operation</p> <p>Description Simulates the scanner operation under arbitrary conditions.</p> <p>Purpose To check scanner operation.</p> <p>Start</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Select the item to be operated. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>SCANNER MOTOR</td><td>Scanner operation</td></tr><tr><td>HOME POSITION</td><td>Home position operation</td></tr><tr><td>DP READING</td><td>DP scanning position operation</td></tr><tr><td>DUST CHECK</td><td>Dust adhesion check operation with lamp on</td></tr></table> <p>Setting: SCANNER MOTOR</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Select [SCANNER MOTOR].2. Select the item.3. Change the setting using the +/- keys. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Operating conditions</th><th>Setting range</th></tr><tr><td>ZOOM</td><td>Magnification</td><td>25 to 400 %</td></tr><tr><td>SIZE</td><td>Original size</td><td>See below.</td></tr><tr><td>LAMP</td><td>On and off of the exposure lamp</td><td>0 (off) or 1 (on)</td></tr></table> <p>Original sizes for each setting in SIZE</p> <table><tr><th>Setting</th><th>Paper size</th><th>Setting</th><th>Paper size</th></tr><tr><td>5000</td><td>A4</td><td>5000</td><td>A5R</td></tr><tr><td>4300</td><td>B5</td><td>7800</td><td>Folio</td></tr><tr><td>5100</td><td>11" x 8 1/2"</td><td>10200</td><td>11" x 17"</td></tr><tr><td>10000</td><td>A3</td><td>9000</td><td>11" x 15"</td></tr><tr><td>8600</td><td>B4</td><td>8400</td><td>8 1/2" x 14"</td></tr><tr><td>7100</td><td>A4R</td><td>6600</td><td>8 1/2" x 11"</td></tr><tr><td>6100</td><td>B5R</td><td>5100</td><td>5 1/2" x 8 1/2"</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none">4. Press the start key. Scanning starts under the selected conditions.5. To stop operation, press the stop key. <p>Method: HOME POSITION</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Select [HOME POSITION].2. Press the start key. The mirror frame of the scanner moves to the home position. <p>Method: DP READING</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Select [DP READING].2. Press the start key. The mirror frame of the scanner moves to the reading position. <p>Method: DUST CHECK</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Select [DUST CHECK].2. Press the start key. The exposure lamp lights.3. To turn the exposure lamp off, press the stop key. <p>Completion Press the stop key when scanning stops. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	SCANNER MOTOR	Scanner operation	HOME POSITION	Home position operation	DP READING	DP scanning position operation	DUST CHECK	Dust adhesion check operation with lamp on	Display	Operating conditions	Setting range	ZOOM	Magnification	25 to 400 %	SIZE	Original size	See below.	LAMP	On and off of the exposure lamp	0 (off) or 1 (on)	Setting	Paper size	Setting	Paper size	5000	A4	5000	A5R	4300	B5	7800	Folio	5100	11" x 8 1/2"	10200	11" x 17"	10000	A3	9000	11" x 15"	8600	B4	8400	8 1/2" x 14"	7100	A4R	6600	8 1/2" x 11"	6100	B5R	5100	5 1/2" x 8 1/2"
Display	Description																																																						
SCANNER MOTOR	Scanner operation																																																						
HOME POSITION	Home position operation																																																						
DP READING	DP scanning position operation																																																						
DUST CHECK	Dust adhesion check operation with lamp on																																																						
Display	Operating conditions	Setting range																																																					
ZOOM	Magnification	25 to 400 %																																																					
SIZE	Original size	See below.																																																					
LAMP	On and off of the exposure lamp	0 (off) or 1 (on)																																																					
Setting	Paper size	Setting	Paper size																																																				
5000	A4	5000	A5R																																																				
4300	B5	7800	Folio																																																				
5100	11" x 8 1/2"	10200	11" x 17"																																																				
10000	A3	9000	11" x 15"																																																				
8600	B4	8400	8 1/2" x 14"																																																				
7100	A4R	6600	8 1/2" x 11"																																																				
6100	B5R	5100	5 1/2" x 8 1/2"																																																				

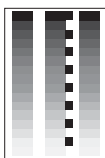


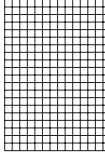
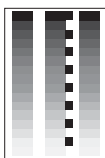


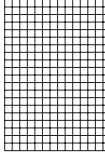
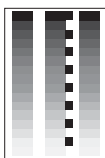


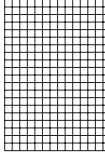
Maintenance item No.	Description																				
U074	<p>Adjusting the DP input light luminosity</p> <p>Description Adjusts the luminosity of the exposure lamp for scanning originals from the DP.</p> <p>Purpose Used if the exposure amount differs significantly between when scanning an original on the platen and when scanning an original from the DP.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Select the item to be set. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>R</td><td>DP input light luminosity of R image</td><td>-12 to 12</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>G</td><td>DP input light luminosity of G image</td><td>-12 to 12</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>B</td><td>DP input light luminosity of B image</td><td>-12 to 12</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>K</td><td>DP input light luminosity of K image</td><td>-12 to 12</td><td>0</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none">3. Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys. Increasing the setting makes the luminosity higher, and decreasing it makes the luminosity lower.4. Press the start key. The value is set. <p>Supplement While this maintenance item is being executed, copying from an original is available in interrupt copying mode (which is activated by pressing the system menu key).</p> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	R	DP input light luminosity of R image	-12 to 12	0	G	DP input light luminosity of G image	-12 to 12	0	B	DP input light luminosity of B image	-12 to 12	0	K	DP input light luminosity of K image	-12 to 12	0
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting																		
R	DP input light luminosity of R image	-12 to 12	0																		
G	DP input light luminosity of G image	-12 to 12	0																		
B	DP input light luminosity of B image	-12 to 12	0																		
K	DP input light luminosity of K image	-12 to 12	0																		
U080	<p>Setting the economy mode</p> <p>Description Sets the level in the economy mode.</p> <p>Purpose To increase or decrease the image density in the eco-print mode.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Select [ADJUST DATA]. <table><tr><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>Exposure is toner economy mode</td><td>-12 to 0</td><td>-6</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none">3. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys. Increasing the setting makes the image darker; decreasing it makes the image lighter.4. Press the start key. The value is set. <p>Supplement While this maintenance item is being executed, copying from an original is available in interrupt copying mode (which is activated by pressing the system menu key).</p> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Exposure is toner economy mode	-12 to 0	-6														
Description	Setting range	Initial setting																			
Exposure is toner economy mode	-12 to 0	-6																			

TONER

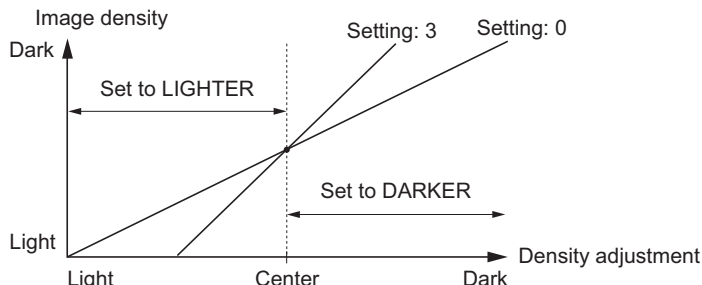
Maintenance item No.	Description																						
U081	<p>Adjusting the correct exposure</p> <p>Description Adjusts the correct exposure in text and photo mode, text mode or photo mode.</p> <p>Purpose To be executed as required.</p> <p>Setting</p> <div><div><div>1. Press the start key.</div><div>2. Select the item to be set.</div></div><table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>MIX ADJ</td><td>Adjusts the correct exposure in text and photo mode</td><td>-5 to 5</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>TEXT ADJ</td><td>Adjusts the correct exposure in text mode</td><td>-5 to 5</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>PHOTO ADJ</td><td>Adjusts the correct exposure in photo mode</td><td>-5 to 5</td><td>0</td></tr></table><div><div>3. Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys. Increasing the setting makes the image darker; decreasing it makes the image lighter.</div><div>4. Press the start key. The value is set.</div></div></div> <p>Supplement While this maintenance item is being executed, copying from an original is available in interrupt copying mode (which is activated by pressing the system menu key).</p> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	MIX ADJ	Adjusts the correct exposure in text and photo mode	-5 to 5	0	TEXT ADJ	Adjusts the correct exposure in text mode	-5 to 5	0	PHOTO ADJ	Adjusts the correct exposure in photo mode	-5 to 5	0						
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting																				
MIX ADJ	Adjusts the correct exposure in text and photo mode	-5 to 5	0																				
TEXT ADJ	Adjusts the correct exposure in text mode	-5 to 5	0																				
PHOTO ADJ	Adjusts the correct exposure in photo mode	-5 to 5	0																				
U087	<p>Setting DP reading position modification operation</p> <p>Description The presence or absence of dust is determined by comparing the scan data of the original trailing edge and that taken after the original is conveyed past the DP original scanning position. If dust is identified, the DP original scanning position is adjusted for the following originals.</p> <p>Purpose When using optional DP, to solve the problem when black lines occurs due to the dust with respect to original reading position.</p> <p>Method</p> <div><div><div>1. Press the start key.</div><div>2. Select the item to be set. The setting screen for the selected item is displayed.</div></div><table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>CCD</td><td>Setting of standard data when dust is detected.</td></tr><tr><td>BLACK LINE</td><td>Initialization of original reading position.</td></tr></table></div> <p>Setting: Standard data when dust is detected</p> <div><div><div>1. Select the item to be set.</div><div>2. Change the value using the +/- or numeric keys.</div></div><table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>CCD R</td><td>Lowest density of the R regard as the dust</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>125</td></tr><tr><td>CCD G</td><td>Lowest density of the G regard as the dust</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>125</td></tr><tr><td>CCD B</td><td>Lowest density of the B regard as the dust</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>120</td></tr></table><div><div>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</div></div></div> <p>Setting: Initialization of original reading position</p> <div><div><div>1. Select [CLEAR].</div><div>2. Press the start key. The setting is cleared.</div></div></div> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	CCD	Setting of standard data when dust is detected.	BLACK LINE	Initialization of original reading position.	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	CCD R	Lowest density of the R regard as the dust	0 to 255	125	CCD G	Lowest density of the G regard as the dust	0 to 255	125	CCD B	Lowest density of the B regard as the dust	0 to 255	120
Display	Description																						
CCD	Setting of standard data when dust is detected.																						
BLACK LINE	Initialization of original reading position.																						
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting																				
CCD R	Lowest density of the R regard as the dust	0 to 255	125																				
CCD G	Lowest density of the G regard as the dust	0 to 255	125																				
CCD B	Lowest density of the B regard as the dust	0 to 255	120																				

TONER

www.tonerplus.com.ua

Maintenance item No.	Description																								
U089	<p>Outputting a MIP-PG pattern</p> <p>Description Selects and outputs the MIP-PG pattern created in the machine.</p> <p>Purpose To check copier status other than scanner when adjusting image printing, using MIP-PG pattern output (without scanning).</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Select the MIP-PG pattern to be output and press the start key. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>PG pattern to be output</th><th>Purpose</th></tr><tr><td>GRAYSCALE</td><td></td><td>To check the laser scanner unit engine output characteristics.</td></tr><tr><td>MONO-LEVEL</td><td></td><td>To check the drum quality.</td></tr><tr><td>256-LEVEL</td><td></td><td>To check resolution reproducibility in printing.</td></tr><tr><td>1 dot-LINE</td><td></td><td>To check fine line reproducibility. To adjust the position of the laser scanner unit (lateral squareness)</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none">3. To change the output conditions of MONO-LEVEL and 1dot-LINE, use the +/- or numeric keys to change the preset values and press the start key to register the setting. <table><tr><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>Output density of MONO-LEVEL</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>1dot-LINE</td><td>0 to 24</td><td>0</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none">4. Press the system menu key.5. Press the start key. A MIP-PG pattern is output.6. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the system menu key. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	PG pattern to be output	Purpose	GRAYSCALE		To check the laser scanner unit engine output characteristics.	MONO-LEVEL		To check the drum quality.	256-LEVEL		To check resolution reproducibility in printing.	1 dot-LINE		To check fine line reproducibility. To adjust the position of the laser scanner unit (lateral squareness)	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Output density of MONO-LEVEL	0 to 255	0	1dot-LINE	0 to 24	0
Display	PG pattern to be output	Purpose																							
GRAYSCALE		To check the laser scanner unit engine output characteristics.																							
MONO-LEVEL		To check the drum quality.																							
256-LEVEL		To check resolution reproducibility in printing.																							
1 dot-LINE		To check fine line reproducibility. To adjust the position of the laser scanner unit (lateral squareness)																							
Description	Setting range	Initial setting																							
Output density of MONO-LEVEL	0 to 255	0																							
1dot-LINE	0 to 24	0																							

TONER

Maintenance item No.	Description																																
U093	<p>Setting the exposure density gradient</p> <p>Description Changes the exposure density gradient in the manual density mode, depending on respective image quality modes.</p> <p>Purpose To set how the image density is altered by a change of one step in the manual density adjustment for respective image quality modes. Also used to make copy images darker or lighter.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Select the image quality mode. The setting screen for the selected item is displayed. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>MIXED</td><td>Density in text and photo mode</td></tr><tr><td>TEXT</td><td>Density in text mode</td></tr><tr><td>PHOTO</td><td>Density in photo mode</td></tr></table> <p>Setting: Density in text and photo mode</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Select the item to be set.2. Adjust the setting using the +/- or numeric keys. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>MIXED DARKER</td><td>Change in density when manual density is set dark</td><td>0 to 3</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>MIXED LIGHTER</td><td>Change in density when manual density is set light</td><td>0 to 3</td><td>0</td></tr></table> <p>Increasing the setting makes the change in density larger, and decreasing it makes the change smaller.</p> <div></div> <p>Figure 1-3-17</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">3. Press the start key. The value is set.4. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop key. <p>Setting: Density in text mode</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Select the item to be set.2. Adjust the setting using the +/- or numeric keys. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>TEXT DARKER</td><td>Change in density when manual density is set dark</td><td>0 to 3</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>TEXT LIGHTER</td><td>Change in density when manual density is set light</td><td>0 to 3</td><td>0</td></tr></table> <p>Increasing the setting makes the change in density larger, and decreasing it makes the change smaller.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">3. Press the start key. The value is set.4. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop key.	Display	Description	MIXED	Density in text and photo mode	TEXT	Density in text mode	PHOTO	Density in photo mode	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	MIXED DARKER	Change in density when manual density is set dark	0 to 3	0	MIXED LIGHTER	Change in density when manual density is set light	0 to 3	0	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	TEXT DARKER	Change in density when manual density is set dark	0 to 3	0	TEXT LIGHTER	Change in density when manual density is set light	0 to 3	0
Display	Description																																
MIXED	Density in text and photo mode																																
TEXT	Density in text mode																																
PHOTO	Density in photo mode																																
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting																														
MIXED DARKER	Change in density when manual density is set dark	0 to 3	0																														
MIXED LIGHTER	Change in density when manual density is set light	0 to 3	0																														
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting																														
TEXT DARKER	Change in density when manual density is set dark	0 to 3	0																														
TEXT LIGHTER	Change in density when manual density is set light	0 to 3	0																														

Maintenance item No.	Description																		
U093	<p>Setting: Density in photo mode</p> <p>1. Select the item to be set.</p> <p>2. Adjust the setting using the +/- or numeric keys.</p> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>PHOTO DARKER</td><td>Change in density when manual density is set dark</td><td>0 to 3</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>PHOTO LIGTER</td><td>Change in density when manual density is set light</td><td>0 to 3</td><td>0</td></tr></table> <p>Increasing the setting makes the change in density larger, and decreasing it makes the change smaller.</p> <p>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</p> <p>4. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop key.</p> <p>Supplement</p> <p>While this maintenance item is being executed, copying from an original is available in interrupt copying mode (which is activated by pressing the system menu key).</p> <p>Completion</p> <p>Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	PHOTO DARKER	Change in density when manual density is set dark	0 to 3	0	PHOTO LIGTER	Change in density when manual density is set light	0 to 3	0						
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting																
PHOTO DARKER	Change in density when manual density is set dark	0 to 3	0																
PHOTO LIGTER	Change in density when manual density is set light	0 to 3	0																
U099	<p>Adjusting original size detection</p> <p>Description</p> <p>Checks the operation of the original size detection sensor and sets the sensing threshold value.</p> <p>Purpose</p> <p>To adjust the sensitiveness of the sensor and size judgement time if the original size detection sensor malfunctions frequently due to incident light or the like.</p> <p>Method</p> <p>1. Press the start key.</p> <p>2. Select the item. The screen for executing each item is displayed.</p> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>DATA</td><td>Displaying detection sensor transmission data</td></tr><tr><td>B/W LEVEL</td><td>Setting detection sensor threshold value Setting original size judgment time</td></tr></table> <p>Method to display the data for the sensor</p> <p>1. Place the original and close the original cover or DP. The detection sensor transmission data is displayed.</p> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>ORIGINAL AREA R</td><td>Detected original width size (R)</td></tr><tr><td>ORIGINAL AREA G</td><td>Detected original width size (G)</td></tr><tr><td>ORIGINAL AREA B</td><td>Detected original width size (B)</td></tr><tr><td>ORIGINAL AREA</td><td>Detected original width size</td></tr><tr><td>SIZE SW L</td><td>Displays the original detection switch ON/OFF</td></tr></table> <p>2. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop key.</p>	Display	Description	DATA	Displaying detection sensor transmission data	B/W LEVEL	Setting detection sensor threshold value Setting original size judgment time	Display	Description	ORIGINAL AREA R	Detected original width size (R)	ORIGINAL AREA G	Detected original width size (G)	ORIGINAL AREA B	Detected original width size (B)	ORIGINAL AREA	Detected original width size	SIZE SW L	Displays the original detection switch ON/OFF
Display	Description																		
DATA	Displaying detection sensor transmission data																		
B/W LEVEL	Setting detection sensor threshold value Setting original size judgment time																		
Display	Description																		
ORIGINAL AREA R	Detected original width size (R)																		
ORIGINAL AREA G	Detected original width size (G)																		
ORIGINAL AREA B	Detected original width size (B)																		
ORIGINAL AREA	Detected original width size																		
SIZE SW L	Displays the original detection switch ON/OFF																		

TONER

Maintenance item No.	Description			
U099	Setting detection sensor threshold value			
	1. Select an item to be set.			
	2. Adjust the setting using the +/- or numeric keys.			
	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
	ORIGINAL R	Original threshold value (R)	0 to 255	105
	ORIGINAL G	Original threshold value (G)	0 to 255	105
	ORIGINAL B	Original threshold value (B)	0 to 255	105
	LIGHT SOURCE R	Light source threshold value (R)	0 to 255	60
	LIGHT SOURCE G	Light source threshold value (G)	0 to 255	60
	LIGHT SOURCE B	Light source threshold value (B)	0 to 255	60
	WAIT TIME	Time from activation of the original detection switch (ODSW) to original size judgment	0 to 255	150
	A4R AREA	Original size detection position display (mm)	220/240	240
	3. Press the start key. The value is set.			
4. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop key.				
Completion				
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.				
U100	Setting the main high voltage			
	Description			
	Performs main charging.			
	Purpose			
	To check main charging.			
	Method			
	1. Press the start key.			
	2. Select the item to be operated.			
	3. Press the start key. The selected operation starts.			
	Display	Description		
	MC ON	Turning the main charger on		
	LASER ON/OFF	Turning the main charger on and the laser scanner unit on and off		
	4. To stop operation, press the stop key.			
Completion				
Press the stop key when main charger output stops. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.				

TONER

www.tonerplus.com.ua

Maintenance item No.	Description																																												
U101	<p>Setting the other high voltages</p> <p>Description Sets the developing bias control voltage, the transfer control voltage and the separation control voltage or checks the output of these voltages. Sets the transfer control voltage and the separation control voltage ON/OFF timing.</p> <p>Purpose To check the developing bias, the transfer voltage and the separation voltage or to take measures against drop of image density or background fog.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Select the item to be set.3. Change the setting using the +/- keys. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>DEV BIAS</td><td>Developing bias AC component frequency at image formation</td><td>20 to 32</td><td>26</td></tr><tr><td>DEV SBIAS</td><td>Developing shift bias potential at image formation</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>58</td></tr><tr><td>DEV DUTY</td><td>Developing bias AC component duty at image formation</td><td>0 to 100</td><td>50</td></tr><tr><td>TC DATA</td><td>Transfer control voltage</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>89</td></tr><tr><td>SC DATA</td><td>Separation control voltage</td><td>0 to 2</td><td>1</td></tr><tr><td>TC DATA2</td><td>Transfer control voltage for small sizes</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>115</td></tr><tr><td>TC ON</td><td>Time of period since the registration clutch is turned on until the transfer voltage is turned on</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>91</td></tr><tr><td>TC OFF</td><td>Time of period since the registration clutch is turned off until the transfer voltage is turned off</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>68</td></tr><tr><td>SC ON</td><td>Time of period since the registration clutch is turned on until the separation voltage is turned on</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>40</td></tr><tr><td>SC OFF</td><td>Time of period since the registration clutch is turned off until the separation voltage is turned off</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>92</td></tr></table> <p>Increasing the DEV BIAS setting makes the image darker; decreasing it makes the image lighter. Increasing the DEV SBIAS setting makes the image darker. Increasing the DEV DUTY setting makes the image lighter; decreasing it makes the image darker. Increasing the TC DATA/TC DATA2 setting makes the transfer voltage higher, and decreasing it makes the voltage lower. Increasing the SC DATA setting makes the separation voltage higher, and decreasing it makes the voltage lower.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">4. Press the start key. The value is set. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	DEV BIAS	Developing bias AC component frequency at image formation	20 to 32	26	DEV SBIAS	Developing shift bias potential at image formation	0 to 255	58	DEV DUTY	Developing bias AC component duty at image formation	0 to 100	50	TC DATA	Transfer control voltage	0 to 255	89	SC DATA	Separation control voltage	0 to 2	1	TC DATA2	Transfer control voltage for small sizes	0 to 255	115	TC ON	Time of period since the registration clutch is turned on until the transfer voltage is turned on	0 to 255	91	TC OFF	Time of period since the registration clutch is turned off until the transfer voltage is turned off	0 to 255	68	SC ON	Time of period since the registration clutch is turned on until the separation voltage is turned on	0 to 255	40	SC OFF	Time of period since the registration clutch is turned off until the separation voltage is turned off	0 to 255	92
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting																																										
DEV BIAS	Developing bias AC component frequency at image formation	20 to 32	26																																										
DEV SBIAS	Developing shift bias potential at image formation	0 to 255	58																																										
DEV DUTY	Developing bias AC component duty at image formation	0 to 100	50																																										
TC DATA	Transfer control voltage	0 to 255	89																																										
SC DATA	Separation control voltage	0 to 2	1																																										
TC DATA2	Transfer control voltage for small sizes	0 to 255	115																																										
TC ON	Time of period since the registration clutch is turned on until the transfer voltage is turned on	0 to 255	91																																										
TC OFF	Time of period since the registration clutch is turned off until the transfer voltage is turned off	0 to 255	68																																										
SC ON	Time of period since the registration clutch is turned on until the separation voltage is turned on	0 to 255	40																																										
SC OFF	Time of period since the registration clutch is turned off until the separation voltage is turned off	0 to 255	92																																										
U110	<p>Checking the drum count</p> <p>Description Displays the drum counts for checking.</p> <p>Purpose To check the drum status.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The drum counter count is displayed.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>																																												

TONER

www.tonerplus.com.ua

Maintenance item No.	Description																																				
U114	<p>Setting separation charger mode</p> <p>Description Sets the separation charger mode.</p> <p>Purpose To change the setting if the fuser offset or carrier leaking occurs.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>MODE</td><td>Separation charger mode</td><td>0 to 5</td><td>4</td></tr></table> <p>Details on the modes</p> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>First page</th><th>Second page</th><th>Specification by design</th></tr><tr><td>MODE0 (Value 0)</td><td>Full page separation turned off</td><td>Full page separation turned off</td><td>Countermeasure against thick paper, offset and carrier leaking</td></tr><tr><td>MODE1 (Value 1)</td><td>Full page separation turned off</td><td>Leading edge and trailing edge separation turned on</td><td>Countermeasure against thick paper, offset and carrier leaking</td></tr><tr><td>MODE2 (Value 2)</td><td>Leading edge and trailing edge separation turned on</td><td>Leading edge and trailing edge separation turned on</td><td>Countermeasure against color paper and back-side offset</td></tr><tr><td>MODE3 (Value 3)</td><td>Leading edge separation turned on</td><td>Full page separation turned on</td><td>Countermeasure against humidity-optimized paper and offset/smear</td></tr><tr><td>MODE4 (Value 4)</td><td>Leading edge and trailing edge separation turned on</td><td>Full page separation turned on</td><td>Countermeasure against low temperature and low moisture, and faulty paper separation</td></tr><tr><td>MODE5 (Value 5)</td><td>Full page separation turned on</td><td>Full page separation turned on</td><td>Countermeasure against thin paper and electrostatic discharging</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none">3. Press the start key. The setting is set. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	MODE	Separation charger mode	0 to 5	4	Display	First page	Second page	Specification by design	MODE0 (Value 0)	Full page separation turned off	Full page separation turned off	Countermeasure against thick paper, offset and carrier leaking	MODE1 (Value 1)	Full page separation turned off	Leading edge and trailing edge separation turned on	Countermeasure against thick paper, offset and carrier leaking	MODE2 (Value 2)	Leading edge and trailing edge separation turned on	Leading edge and trailing edge separation turned on	Countermeasure against color paper and back-side offset	MODE3 (Value 3)	Leading edge separation turned on	Full page separation turned on	Countermeasure against humidity-optimized paper and offset/smear	MODE4 (Value 4)	Leading edge and trailing edge separation turned on	Full page separation turned on	Countermeasure against low temperature and low moisture, and faulty paper separation	MODE5 (Value 5)	Full page separation turned on	Full page separation turned on	Countermeasure against thin paper and electrostatic discharging
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting																																		
MODE	Separation charger mode	0 to 5	4																																		
Display	First page	Second page	Specification by design																																		
MODE0 (Value 0)	Full page separation turned off	Full page separation turned off	Countermeasure against thick paper, offset and carrier leaking																																		
MODE1 (Value 1)	Full page separation turned off	Leading edge and trailing edge separation turned on	Countermeasure against thick paper, offset and carrier leaking																																		
MODE2 (Value 2)	Leading edge and trailing edge separation turned on	Leading edge and trailing edge separation turned on	Countermeasure against color paper and back-side offset																																		
MODE3 (Value 3)	Leading edge separation turned on	Full page separation turned on	Countermeasure against humidity-optimized paper and offset/smear																																		
MODE4 (Value 4)	Leading edge and trailing edge separation turned on	Full page separation turned on	Countermeasure against low temperature and low moisture, and faulty paper separation																																		
MODE5 (Value 5)	Full page separation turned on	Full page separation turned on	Countermeasure against thin paper and electrostatic discharging																																		

TONER

Maintenance item No.	Description						
U117	<p>Checking the drum number</p> <p>Description Displays the drum number.</p> <p>Purpose To check the drum number.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The drum number is displayed.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>						
U118	<p>Displaying the drum history</p> <p>Description Displays the past record of machine number and the drum counter.</p> <p>Purpose To check the count value of machine number and the drum counter.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. Past record of 5 cases is displayed.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>MACHINE No.1 to 5</td><td>Past record of machine number</td></tr> <tr> <td>COUNT 1 to 5</td><td>Past record of drum counter</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	MACHINE No.1 to 5	Past record of machine number	COUNT 1 to 5	Past record of drum counter
Display	Description						
MACHINE No.1 to 5	Past record of machine number						
COUNT 1 to 5	Past record of drum counter						
U130	<p>Initial setting for the developing unit</p> <p>Description Replenishes toner to the developing unit to a certain level from the toner container that has been installed.</p> <p>Purpose To operate when installing the machine or replacing the developing unit.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. The screen for executing is displayed. 2. Press the start key. Toner installation is started and the output value of the sensor and execution time are displayed. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>TONER SENSOR</td><td>Output value of the sensor</td></tr> <tr> <td>TIME(SEC)</td><td>Execution time</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Completion Press the stop key after initial setting is complete. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	TONER SENSOR	Output value of the sensor	TIME(SEC)	Execution time
Display	Description						
TONER SENSOR	Output value of the sensor						
TIME(SEC)	Execution time						

Maintenance item No.	Description																								
U135	<p>Checking toner motor operation</p> <p>Description Turns the toner feed motor and toner feed clutch on.</p> <p>Purpose To check the operation of the toner feed motor or toner feed clutch. Settings may also be modified where mobility in toner is inferior or when printing materials of very high density. Normally no change is necessary from the initial setting.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Select the item. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>TONER CARRY</td><td>Toner feed motor (TFM)</td><td>-</td><td>-</td></tr><tr><td>TONER SUPPLY</td><td>Toner feed clutch (TNFCL)</td><td>-</td><td>-</td></tr><tr><td>CARRY ON TIME</td><td>Toner feed motor drive on time</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>100</td></tr><tr><td>SUPPLY ON TIME</td><td>Toner feed clutch on time</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>30</td></tr><tr><td>SUPPLY OFF TIME</td><td>Toner feed clutch off time</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>100</td></tr></table> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Select [TONER CARRY] or [TONER SUPPLY].2. Press the start key. The operation starts.3. To stop operation, press the stop key. <p>Setting: Low toner mobility</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Select [CARRY ON TIME].2. Increasing the setting value using the + key.3. Press the start key. The value is set. <p>Setting: Printing very high density materials</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Select [SUPPLY ON TIME].2. Increasing the setting value using the + key.3. Press the start key. The value is set. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	TONER CARRY	Toner feed motor (TFM)	-	-	TONER SUPPLY	Toner feed clutch (TNFCL)	-	-	CARRY ON TIME	Toner feed motor drive on time	0 to 255	100	SUPPLY ON TIME	Toner feed clutch on time	0 to 255	30	SUPPLY OFF TIME	Toner feed clutch off time	0 to 255	100
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting																						
TONER CARRY	Toner feed motor (TFM)	-	-																						
TONER SUPPLY	Toner feed clutch (TNFCL)	-	-																						
CARRY ON TIME	Toner feed motor drive on time	0 to 255	100																						
SUPPLY ON TIME	Toner feed clutch on time	0 to 255	30																						
SUPPLY OFF TIME	Toner feed clutch off time	0 to 255	100																						

TONER

www.tonerplus.com.ua

Maintenance item No.	Description																
U144	<p>Setting toner loading operation</p> <p>Description Sets toner loading operation after completion of copying. Toner is forcibly evacuated in case the average printing ratio for the number of printed pages assigned by [PAGE] is lower than the ratio defined by [RATIO].</p> <p>Purpose To set whether or not toner is loaded on the drum after low density copying. Normally no change is necessary from the initial setting.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Select the item to be set.3. Change the setting using the +/- keys. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>MODE</td><td>Toner loading operation</td><td>1 (ON) / 0 (OFF)</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>PAGE</td><td>Number of pages set</td><td>1 to 50</td><td>5</td></tr><tr><td>RATIO</td><td>Printing ratio</td><td>10 to 40</td><td>30</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none">4. Press the start key. The value is set. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	MODE	Toner loading operation	1 (ON) / 0 (OFF)	0	PAGE	Number of pages set	1 to 50	5	RATIO	Printing ratio	10 to 40	30
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting														
MODE	Toner loading operation	1 (ON) / 0 (OFF)	0														
PAGE	Number of pages set	1 to 50	5														
RATIO	Printing ratio	10 to 40	30														
U150	<p>Checking sensors for toner</p> <p>Description Displays the on-off status of each sensor or switch related to toner.</p> <p>Purpose To check if the sensors and switches operate correctly.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Turn each switch on and off manually to check the status. When the on-status of a switch is detected, that switch is displayed in reverse. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Switches</th></tr><tr><td>DEVELOPER SENSOR</td><td>Toner sensor (TNS)</td></tr><tr><td>CONTAINER SET</td><td>Toner container detection switch (TCDSW)</td></tr><tr><td>CONTAINER SENSOR</td><td>Toner container sensor (TCS)</td></tr><tr><td>WASTE BOX SENSOR</td><td>Overflow sensor (OFS)</td></tr><tr><td>MOTOR ON</td><td>The toner feed clutch (TNFCL), the paper feed motor (PFM) and the toner feed motor (TFM) are turned on.</td></tr></table> <p>To stop motor driving, press [MOTOR ON] again.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Switches	DEVELOPER SENSOR	Toner sensor (TNS)	CONTAINER SET	Toner container detection switch (TCDSW)	CONTAINER SENSOR	Toner container sensor (TCS)	WASTE BOX SENSOR	Overflow sensor (OFS)	MOTOR ON	The toner feed clutch (TNFCL), the paper feed motor (PFM) and the toner feed motor (TFM) are turned on.				
Display	Switches																
DEVELOPER SENSOR	Toner sensor (TNS)																
CONTAINER SET	Toner container detection switch (TCDSW)																
CONTAINER SENSOR	Toner container sensor (TCS)																
WASTE BOX SENSOR	Overflow sensor (OFS)																
MOTOR ON	The toner feed clutch (TNFCL), the paper feed motor (PFM) and the toner feed motor (TFM) are turned on.																

TONER

Maintenance item No.	Description																								
U157	<p>Checking/clearing the developing drive time</p> <p>Description Displays the developing drive time for checking, or clearing a figure, which is used as a reference when correcting the toner control.</p> <p>Purpose To check the developing drive time after replacing the developing unit.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The developing drive time is displayed in minutes.</p> <p>Clearing</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the clear key.2. Press the start key. The time is cleared. <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Enter a drive time (in minutes) using the +/- or numeric keys.2. Press the start key. The time is set. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>																								
U158	<p>Checking the developing count</p> <p>Description Displays the developing count for checking.</p> <p>Purpose To check the developing count after replacing the developing unit.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The developing counter count is displayed.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>																								
U161	<p>Setting the fuser control temperature</p> <p>Description Changes the fuser control temperature.</p> <p>Purpose Normally no change is necessary. However, can be used to prevent curling or creasing of paper, or solve a fuser problem on thick paper.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Select the item to be set.3. Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>DRIVE START TEMP</td><td>Driving start temperature when warm-up starts</td><td>0 to 255 (°C)</td><td>110</td></tr><tr><td>READY CONTROL T</td><td>Fuser center control temperature for displaying [Ready for copying.]</td><td>0 to 255 (°C)</td><td>165</td></tr><tr><td>READY CONTROL T2</td><td>Fuser edge control temperature for displaying [Ready for copying.]</td><td>0 to 255 (°C)</td><td>155</td></tr><tr><td>PRINT CONTROL T</td><td>Fuser center control temperature during printing</td><td>0 to 255 (°C)</td><td>165</td></tr><tr><td>READY DISP TIME</td><td>Time of period from driving until Ready is displayed</td><td>0 to 255 (s)</td><td>0</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none">4. Press the start key. The value is set. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	DRIVE START TEMP	Driving start temperature when warm-up starts	0 to 255 (°C)	110	READY CONTROL T	Fuser center control temperature for displaying [Ready for copying.]	0 to 255 (°C)	165	READY CONTROL T2	Fuser edge control temperature for displaying [Ready for copying.]	0 to 255 (°C)	155	PRINT CONTROL T	Fuser center control temperature during printing	0 to 255 (°C)	165	READY DISP TIME	Time of period from driving until Ready is displayed	0 to 255 (s)	0
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting																						
DRIVE START TEMP	Driving start temperature when warm-up starts	0 to 255 (°C)	110																						
READY CONTROL T	Fuser center control temperature for displaying [Ready for copying.]	0 to 255 (°C)	165																						
READY CONTROL T2	Fuser edge control temperature for displaying [Ready for copying.]	0 to 255 (°C)	155																						
PRINT CONTROL T	Fuser center control temperature during printing	0 to 255 (°C)	165																						
READY DISP TIME	Time of period from driving until Ready is displayed	0 to 255 (s)	0																						

TONER

www.tonerplus.com.ua

Maintenance item No.	Description						
U163	<p>Resetting the fuser problem data</p> <p>Description Resets the detection of a service call code indicating a problem in the fuser section.</p> <p>Purpose To prevent accidents due to an abnormally high fuser temperature.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Press [EXECUTE] on the touch panel. 3. Press the start key. The fuser problem data is initialized. 4. Turn the main power switch off and on. 						
U167	<p>Checking/clearing the fuser counts</p> <p>Description Displays and clears the fuser counts for checking.</p> <p>Purpose To check or clear the fuser counts after replacing the fuser unit.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The fuser counts is displayed.</p> <p>Clearing</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the clear key. 2. Press the start key. The count is cleared. <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Change the count using the +/- or numeric keys. 2. Press the start key. The count is set. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>						
U193	<p>Setting the fuser drive control</p> <p>Description Specifies ON/OFF the fuser drive control.</p> <p>Purpose Countermeasure against black dots which is caused by toner adhering to the heat roller separation claws.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Select ON or OFF. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ON</td><td>Fuser drive control ON</td></tr> <tr> <td>OFF</td><td>Fuser drive control OFF</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: ON</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. Press the start key. The setting is set. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	ON	Fuser drive control ON	OFF	Fuser drive control OFF
Display	Description						
ON	Fuser drive control ON						
OFF	Fuser drive control OFF						

Maintenance item No.	Description										
U199	<p>Checking the fuser temperature</p> <p>Description Displays the fuser temperature, the ambient temperature and the absolute humidity.</p> <p>Purpose To check the fuser temperature, the ambient temperature and the absolute humidity.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The fuser temperature and ambient temperature are displayed in centigrade (°C) and the absolute humidity is displayed in percentage (%).</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>FIX CENTER TEMP</td><td>Fuser center temperature (°C)</td></tr> <tr> <td>FIX EDGE TEMP</td><td>Fuser edge temperature (°C)</td></tr> <tr> <td>SURROUND TEMP</td><td>Ambient temperature (°C)</td></tr> <tr> <td>HUMIDITY</td><td>Absolute humidity (%)</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	FIX CENTER TEMP	Fuser center temperature (°C)	FIX EDGE TEMP	Fuser edge temperature (°C)	SURROUND TEMP	Ambient temperature (°C)	HUMIDITY	Absolute humidity (%)
Display	Description										
FIX CENTER TEMP	Fuser center temperature (°C)										
FIX EDGE TEMP	Fuser edge temperature (°C)										
SURROUND TEMP	Ambient temperature (°C)										
HUMIDITY	Absolute humidity (%)										
U200	<p>Turning all LEDs on</p> <p>Description Turns all the LEDs on the operation panel on.</p> <p>Purpose To check if all the LEDs on the operation panel light.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. All the LEDs on the operation panel light. 2. Press the stop key. The LEDs turns off. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>										
U201	<p>Initializing the touch panel</p> <p>Description Automatically correct the positions of the X- and Y-axes of the touch panel.</p> <p>Purpose To automatically correct the display positions on the touch panel after it is replaced.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the [INITIALIZE] or [CHECK]. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>INITIALIZE</td><td>Adjusts the display on the panel automatically.</td></tr> <tr> <td>CHECK</td><td>Checks the display on the touch panel.</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Method: INITIALIZE</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Press the center of the + keys. Be sure to press three + keys displayed in order. The touch panel is adjusted automatically. 3. Press the indicated three + keys, and then check the display. 4. Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed. <p>Method: CHECK</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Press the indicated three + keys, and then check the display. When adjusting the display, press [INITIALIZE] to execute the adjustment automatically. 3. Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	INITIALIZE	Adjusts the display on the panel automatically.	CHECK	Checks the display on the touch panel.				
Display	Description										
INITIALIZE	Adjusts the display on the panel automatically.										
CHECK	Checks the display on the touch panel.										

Maintenance item No.	Description																								
U202	Setting the KMAS host monitoring system Description Initializes or operates the KMAS host monitoring system. This is an optional device which is currently supported only by Japanese specification machines, so no setting is necessary.																								
U203	Checking DP operation Description Simulates the original conveying operation separately in the optional DP. Purpose To check the DP operation. Method <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Place an original in the DP if running this simulation with paper.3. Select the item to be operated.4. When selecting [ADP] or [RADP], to set the magnification using the +/- keys. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Operation</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>ADP</td><td>With paper, single-sided original</td><td>100 to 200 (%)</td><td>100</td></tr><tr><td>RADP</td><td>With paper, double-sided original</td><td>100 to 200 (%)</td><td>100</td></tr><tr><td>ADP (NON P)</td><td>Without paper, single-sided original (continuous operation)</td><td>-</td><td>-</td></tr><tr><td>RADP (NON P)</td><td>Without paper, double-sided original (continuous operation)</td><td>-</td><td>-</td></tr><tr><td>SPEED</td><td>Switching between normal reading (600 dpi) and high-speed reading</td><td>0 (Normal)/ 1 (high-speed)</td><td>0</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none">5. Press the start key. The operation starts.6. To stop continuous operation, press the stop key. Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.	Display	Operation	Setting range	Initial setting	ADP	With paper, single-sided original	100 to 200 (%)	100	RADP	With paper, double-sided original	100 to 200 (%)	100	ADP (NON P)	Without paper, single-sided original (continuous operation)	-	-	RADP (NON P)	Without paper, double-sided original (continuous operation)	-	-	SPEED	Switching between normal reading (600 dpi) and high-speed reading	0 (Normal)/ 1 (high-speed)	0
Display	Operation	Setting range	Initial setting																						
ADP	With paper, single-sided original	100 to 200 (%)	100																						
RADP	With paper, double-sided original	100 to 200 (%)	100																						
ADP (NON P)	Without paper, single-sided original (continuous operation)	-	-																						
RADP (NON P)	Without paper, double-sided original (continuous operation)	-	-																						
SPEED	Switching between normal reading (600 dpi) and high-speed reading	0 (Normal)/ 1 (high-speed)	0																						

TONER

Maintenance item No.	Description												
U204	<p>Setting the presence or absence of a key card or key counter</p> <p>Description Sets the presence or absence of the optional key card or key counter.</p> <p>Purpose To run this maintenance item if a key card or key counter is installed.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be set. The setting screen for the selected item is displayed. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>KEY-DEVICE</td><td>Sets the presence or absence of the key card or key counter</td></tr> <tr> <td>MESSAGE</td><td>Sets the message when optional equipment is not installed</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Setting: KEY-DEVICE</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select ON or OFF. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ON</td><td>The key card or the key counter is installed</td></tr> <tr> <td>OFF</td><td>Not installed</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 2. Press the start key. The setting is set. 3. Turn the main power switch off and on. <p>Setting: MESSAGE</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select [COUNTER], [CARD] or [COIN]. 2. Press the start key. The setting is set. 3. Turn the main power switch off and on. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	KEY-DEVICE	Sets the presence or absence of the key card or key counter	MESSAGE	Sets the message when optional equipment is not installed	Display	Description	ON	The key card or the key counter is installed	OFF	Not installed
Display	Description												
KEY-DEVICE	Sets the presence or absence of the key card or key counter												
MESSAGE	Sets the message when optional equipment is not installed												
Display	Description												
ON	The key card or the key counter is installed												
OFF	Not installed												
U207	<p>Checking the operation panel keys</p> <p>Description Checks operation of the operation panel keys.</p> <p>Purpose To check operation of all the keys and LEDs on the operation panel.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. The screen for executing is displayed. 2. COUNT0 is displayed and the leftmost LED on the operation panel lights. 3. As the keys lined up in the same line as the lit indicator are pressed in the order from the top to the bottom, the figure shown on the touch panel increases in increments of 1. When all the keys in that line are pressed and if there are any LEDs corresponding to the keys in the line on the immediate right, the top LED in that line will light. 4. When all the keys on the operation panel have been pressed, all the LEDs light for up to 10 seconds. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>												

Maintenance item No.	Description														
U220	<p>Setting the trial functions</p> <p>Description Enables the trial of USB functions by period limitation.</p> <p>Purpose To try USB activation functions.</p> <p>Method Press the start key.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>FUNCTION</td><td>Selecting trial functions</td></tr> <tr> <td>TRIAL STATUS</td><td>Displays the current setting (1: Under trial, 0: Not trial)</td></tr> <tr> <td>COUPON COUNT</td><td>Displays remaining times</td></tr> <tr> <td>TIME LIMIT</td><td>Displays the end term of the function under present trial</td></tr> <tr> <td>TRIAL START</td><td>Starts the trial of the function selected with FUNCTION</td></tr> <tr> <td>TRIAL STOP</td><td>Stops the trial of the function selected with FUNCTION</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Setting: FUNCTION</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select [FUNCTION]. 2. Select the function using the +/- keys. 3. Press the start key. The setting is set. [COUPON COUNT], [TIME LIMIT], [TRIAL START] and [TRIAL STOP] are displayed. <p>Method: TRIAL START</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select [TRIAL STRAT]. 2. Press the start key. Trial of the function selected with [FUNCTION] is started. The display of [COUPON COUNT] decreases one. The display of [TIME LIMIT] will be the date of the present date plus 30 days. <p>Method: TRIAL STOP</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select [TRIAL STOP]. 2. Press the start key. Trial of the function selected with [FUNCTION] is stopped. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	FUNCTION	Selecting trial functions	TRIAL STATUS	Displays the current setting (1: Under trial, 0: Not trial)	COUPON COUNT	Displays remaining times	TIME LIMIT	Displays the end term of the function under present trial	TRIAL START	Starts the trial of the function selected with FUNCTION	TRIAL STOP	Stops the trial of the function selected with FUNCTION
Display	Description														
FUNCTION	Selecting trial functions														
TRIAL STATUS	Displays the current setting (1: Under trial, 0: Not trial)														
COUPON COUNT	Displays remaining times														
TIME LIMIT	Displays the end term of the function under present trial														
TRIAL START	Starts the trial of the function selected with FUNCTION														
TRIAL STOP	Stops the trial of the function selected with FUNCTION														

Maintenance item No.	Description								
U221	<p>Setting the USB host lock function</p> <p>Description Specifies ON/OFF the USB host lock function. Setting this to ON causes the machine to be unable to recognize the device connected to the USB host.</p> <p>Purpose Set according to the preference of the user.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Select ON or OFF. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ON</td><td>USB host lock function ON</td></tr> <tr> <td>OFF</td><td>USB host lock function OFF</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: OFF</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. Press the start key. The setting is set. 4. Turn the main power switch off and on. 	Display	Description	ON	USB host lock function ON	OFF	USB host lock function OFF		
Display	Description								
ON	USB host lock function ON								
OFF	USB host lock function OFF								
U233	<p>Limiting job separator output</p> <p>Description Sets a limit of number of output pages from the optional job separator.</p> <p>Purpose Settings may be modified if curled paper is output from the job separator.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the mode. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>MODE0</td><td>All sizes: 100 sheets</td></tr> <tr> <td>MODE1</td><td>A3 and Ledger sizes: 70, other sizes: 100</td></tr> <tr> <td>MODE2</td><td>A3 and Ledger sizes: 50, other sizes: 100</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: MODE0</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. Press the start key. The setting is set. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	MODE0	All sizes: 100 sheets	MODE1	A3 and Ledger sizes: 70, other sizes: 100	MODE2	A3 and Ledger sizes: 50, other sizes: 100
Display	Description								
MODE0	All sizes: 100 sheets								
MODE1	A3 and Ledger sizes: 70, other sizes: 100								
MODE2	A3 and Ledger sizes: 50, other sizes: 100								

Maintenance item No.	Description												
U236	<p>Setting the limit for the ejection section of the built-in finisher</p> <p>Description If the machine is equipped with an optional built-in finisher, this mode sets whether A5R/B5R/statement size paper is output to the machine eject tray or not.</p> <p>Purpose If the machine is equipped with an optional built-in finisher and if paper jams occur due to curling of paper in the built-in ejection section when two-sided copying onto A5R/B5R/statement size paper is performed, this mode is used to change the setting to ON to disable ejection to the machine eject tray.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Press the start key. Select ON or OFF. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ON</td><td>Does not eject to the machine eject tray.</td></tr> <tr> <td>OFF</td><td>Eject to the machine eject tray.</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: OFF</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Press the start key. The setting is set. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	ON	Does not eject to the machine eject tray.	OFF	Eject to the machine eject tray.						
Display	Description												
ON	Does not eject to the machine eject tray.												
OFF	Eject to the machine eject tray.												
U243	<p>Checking the operation of the DP motors</p> <p>Description Turns the motors and solenoids in the optional DP on.</p> <p>Purpose To check the operation of the DP motors or solenoids.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Press the start key. Select the item to be operated. Press the start key. The operation starts. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Motors and solenoids</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>DP FEED MOTOR</td><td>Original feed motor (OFM) is turned on.</td></tr> <tr> <td>DP CONV MOTOR</td><td>Original conveying motor (OCM) is turned on.</td></tr> <tr> <td>DP REV MOTOR</td><td>Original switchback motor (OSBM) is turned on.</td></tr> <tr> <td>DP RJ SOL</td><td>Switchback feedshift solenoid (SBFSSOL) is turned on.</td></tr> <tr> <td>DP RP SOL</td><td>Switchback pressure solenoid (SBPSOL) is turned on.</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> To stop operation, press the stop key. <p>Completion Press the stop key when operation stops. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Motors and solenoids	DP FEED MOTOR	Original feed motor (OFM) is turned on.	DP CONV MOTOR	Original conveying motor (OCM) is turned on.	DP REV MOTOR	Original switchback motor (OSBM) is turned on.	DP RJ SOL	Switchback feedshift solenoid (SBFSSOL) is turned on.	DP RP SOL	Switchback pressure solenoid (SBPSOL) is turned on.
Display	Motors and solenoids												
DP FEED MOTOR	Original feed motor (OFM) is turned on.												
DP CONV MOTOR	Original conveying motor (OCM) is turned on.												
DP REV MOTOR	Original switchback motor (OSBM) is turned on.												
DP RJ SOL	Switchback feedshift solenoid (SBFSSOL) is turned on.												
DP RP SOL	Switchback pressure solenoid (SBPSOL) is turned on.												

Maintenance item No.	Description														
U244	<p>Checking the DP switches</p> <p>Description Displays the status of the respective switches in the optional DP.</p> <p>Purpose To check if respective switches in the optional DP operate correctly.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Turn the respective switches on and off manually to check the status. <p>When a switch is detected to be in the ON position, the display for that switch will be highlighted.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Switches</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>DP SET SW</td><td>Original set switch (OSSW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>DP PSD SW</td><td>Original size length switch (OSLSW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>DP REV SW</td><td>Original switchback switch (OSBSW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>CCD TIMING SW</td><td>DP timing switch (DPTSW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>DP COVER SW</td><td>DP interlock switch (DPILSW)</td></tr> <tr> <td>DP OPEN SW</td><td>DP open/close switch (DPOCSW)</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Switches	DP SET SW	Original set switch (OSSW)	DP PSD SW	Original size length switch (OSLSW)	DP REV SW	Original switchback switch (OSBSW)	CCD TIMING SW	DP timing switch (DPTSW)	DP COVER SW	DP interlock switch (DPILSW)	DP OPEN SW	DP open/close switch (DPOCSW)
Display	Switches														
DP SET SW	Original set switch (OSSW)														
DP PSD SW	Original size length switch (OSLSW)														
DP REV SW	Original switchback switch (OSBSW)														
CCD TIMING SW	DP timing switch (DPTSW)														
DP COVER SW	DP interlock switch (DPILSW)														
DP OPEN SW	DP open/close switch (DPOCSW)														
U245	<p>Checking messages</p> <p>Description Displays a list of messages on the touch panel of the operation panel.</p> <p>Purpose To check the messages to be displayed.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be displayed. 3. Displays the message one by one using cursor up/down keys. Switches the language on the touch panel using the cursor left/right keys. <p>When a message number is entered with the numeric keys and then the start key is pressed, the message corresponding the specified number is displayed.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>														

Maintenance item No.	Description																				
U246	<p>Setting the finisher</p> <p>Description Provides various settings for the built-in finisher, if furnished.</p> <p>Purpose Adjusts the side registration cursor stop position if paper registration is poor or stapling is made outside the specified area.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Select the desired cursor position.3. Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>FRONT</td><td>Front side registration cursor stop position</td><td>-4 to +4</td><td>0</td><td>0.566 mm</td></tr><tr><td>REAR</td><td>Rear side registration cursor stop position</td><td>-4 to +4</td><td>0</td><td>0.566 mm</td></tr><tr><td>END</td><td>Trailing edge registration cursor stop position</td><td>-4 to +4</td><td>0</td><td>0.566 mm</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none">4. Press the start key. The value is set. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	FRONT	Front side registration cursor stop position	-4 to +4	0	0.566 mm	REAR	Rear side registration cursor stop position	-4 to +4	0	0.566 mm	END	Trailing edge registration cursor stop position	-4 to +4	0	0.566 mm
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step																	
FRONT	Front side registration cursor stop position	-4 to +4	0	0.566 mm																	
REAR	Rear side registration cursor stop position	-4 to +4	0	0.566 mm																	
END	Trailing edge registration cursor stop position	-4 to +4	0	0.566 mm																	
U247	<p>Setting the paper feed device</p> <p>Description Turns on motor and clutches of optional paper feeder.</p> <p>Purpose To check the operation of motors and clutches of paper feeder.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Select the item to be operated. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Motor and clutches</th></tr><tr><td>DESK FEED</td><td>Paper feeder drive motor (PFDM)</td></tr><tr><td>CLUTCH FEED</td><td>Paper feeder conveying clutch (PFCCL)</td></tr><tr><td>CLUTCH U</td><td>Paper feeder paper feed clutch 1 (PFPFCL1)</td></tr><tr><td>CLUTCH L</td><td>Paper feeder paper feed clutch 2 (PFPFCL2)</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none">3. Press the start key. The operation starts.4. To stop operation, press the stop key. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Motor and clutches	DESK FEED	Paper feeder drive motor (PFDM)	CLUTCH FEED	Paper feeder conveying clutch (PFCCL)	CLUTCH U	Paper feeder paper feed clutch 1 (PFPFCL1)	CLUTCH L	Paper feeder paper feed clutch 2 (PFPFCL2)										
Display	Motor and clutches																				
DESK FEED	Paper feeder drive motor (PFDM)																				
CLUTCH FEED	Paper feeder conveying clutch (PFCCL)																				
CLUTCH U	Paper feeder paper feed clutch 1 (PFPFCL1)																				
CLUTCH L	Paper feeder paper feed clutch 2 (PFPFCL2)																				

TONER

Maintenance item No.	Description						
U250	<p>Setting the maintenance cycle</p> <p>Description Displays and changes the maintenance cycle.</p> <p>Purpose To check and change the maintenance cycle.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The currently set maintenance cycle is displayed.</p> <p>Setting</p> <p>1. Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys.</p> <table><tr><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>Maintenance cycle</td><td>0 to 9999999</td><td>300000</td></tr></table> <p>2. Press the start key. The value is set.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Maintenance cycle	0 to 9999999	300000
Description	Setting range	Initial setting					
Maintenance cycle	0 to 9999999	300000					
U251	<p>Checking/clearing the maintenance count</p> <p>Description Displays, clears and changes the maintenance count.</p> <p>Purpose To check the maintenance count. Also to clear the count during maintenance service.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The maintenance count is displayed.</p> <p>Clearing</p> <p>1. Press the clear key. 2. Press the start key. The count is cleared.</p> <p>Setting</p> <p>1. Enter a count using the +/- or numeric keys. 2. Press the start key. The count is set.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>						

TONER

Maintenance item No.	Description																		
U252	<p>Setting the destination</p> <p>Description Switches the operations and screens of the machine according to the destination.</p> <p>Purpose To be executed after initializing the backup RAM by running maintenance item U020, in order to return the setting to the value before replacement or initialization.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Select the destination. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>INCH</td><td>Inch (North America) specifications</td></tr><tr><td>EUROPE METRIC</td><td>Metric (Europe) specifications</td></tr><tr><td>ASIA PACIFIC</td><td>Metric (Asia Pacific) specifications</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none">3. Press the start key. The setting is set.4. Turn the main power switch off and on. <p>Supplement The specified initial settings are provided according to the destinations in the maintenance items below. To change the initial settings in those items, be sure to run maintenance item U021 after changing the destination.</p> <p>Initial setting according to the destinations</p> <table><tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Title</th><th>Japan</th><th>Inch</th><th>Europe Metric, Asia Pacific</th></tr><tr><td>253</td><td>Switching between double and single counts</td><td>Single</td><td>Double</td><td>Double</td></tr></table>	Display	Description	INCH	Inch (North America) specifications	EUROPE METRIC	Metric (Europe) specifications	ASIA PACIFIC	Metric (Asia Pacific) specifications	Maintenance item No.	Title	Japan	Inch	Europe Metric, Asia Pacific	253	Switching between double and single counts	Single	Double	Double
Display	Description																		
INCH	Inch (North America) specifications																		
EUROPE METRIC	Metric (Europe) specifications																		
ASIA PACIFIC	Metric (Asia Pacific) specifications																		
Maintenance item No.	Title	Japan	Inch	Europe Metric, Asia Pacific															
253	Switching between double and single counts	Single	Double	Double															
U253	<p>Switching between double and single counts</p> <p>Description Switches the count system for the total counter and other counters.</p> <p>Purpose Used to select, according to the preference of the user (copy service provider), if A3/Ledger paper is to be counted as one sheet (single count) or two sheets (double count).</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Select the count system. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>SINGLE COUNT</td><td>Single count for all size paper</td></tr><tr><td>DBL CNT(A3/LGR)</td><td>Double count for A3/Ledger size or larger</td></tr><tr><td>DBL COUNT(B4)</td><td>Double count for B4 size or larger</td></tr><tr><td>DBL CNT(FOL/LGL)</td><td>Double count for Folio/Legal size or larger</td></tr></table> <p>Initial setting: DBL CNT(A3/LGR)</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">3. Press the start key. The setting is set. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	SINGLE COUNT	Single count for all size paper	DBL CNT(A3/LGR)	Double count for A3/Ledger size or larger	DBL COUNT(B4)	Double count for B4 size or larger	DBL CNT(FOL/LGL)	Double count for Folio/Legal size or larger								
Display	Description																		
SINGLE COUNT	Single count for all size paper																		
DBL CNT(A3/LGR)	Double count for A3/Ledger size or larger																		
DBL COUNT(B4)	Double count for B4 size or larger																		
DBL CNT(FOL/LGL)	Double count for Folio/Legal size or larger																		

TONER

www.tonerplus.com.ua

Maintenance item No.	Description						
U260	<p>Selecting the timing for copy counting</p> <p>Description Changes the copy count timing for the total counter and other counters.</p> <p>Purpose To be set according to user (copy service provider) request. If a paper jam occurs frequently in the optional document finisher when the number of copies is counted at the time of paper ejection, copies are provided without copy counts. The copy service provider cannot charge for such copying. To prevent this, the copy timing should be made earlier. If a paper jam occurs frequently in the paper conveying or fuser sections when the number of copies is counted before the paper reaches those sections, copying is charged without a copy being made. To prevent this, the copy timing should be made later.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the copy count timing. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>FEED</td><td>When secondary paper feed starts</td></tr> <tr> <td>EJECT</td><td>When the paper is ejected</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: EJECT</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. Press the start key. The setting is set. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	FEED	When secondary paper feed starts	EJECT	When the paper is ejected
Display	Description						
FEED	When secondary paper feed starts						
EJECT	When the paper is ejected						
U265	<p>Setting OEM purchaser code</p> <p>Description Sets the OEM purchaser code.</p> <p>Purpose Sets the code when replacing the main PWB and the like.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Change the preset value using the +/- or numeric keys. 3. Press the start key. The setting is set. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>						
U285	<p>Setting service status page</p> <p>Description Determines displaying the toner coverage report on reporting.</p> <p>Purpose According to user request, changes the setting.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Press [COVERAGE]. Highlighted: ON, Non-highlighted: OFF Initial setting: ON 3. Press the start key. The setting is set. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>						

Maintenance item No.	Description								
U324	<p>Setting the main charger cleaning indication</p> <p>Description Sets whether to display the main charger cleaning guidance.</p> <p>Purpose Set according to the preference of the user.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Select ON or OFF. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ON</td><td>Displays the main charger cleaning guidance</td></tr> <tr> <td>OFF</td><td>Not to display the main charger cleaning guidance</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: ON</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. Press the start key. The setting is set. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	ON	Displays the main charger cleaning guidance	OFF	Not to display the main charger cleaning guidance		
Display	Description								
ON	Displays the main charger cleaning guidance								
OFF	Not to display the main charger cleaning guidance								
U326	<p>Setting the black line cleaning indication</p> <p>Description Sets whether to display the cleaning guidance when detecting the black line.</p> <p>Purpose Displays the cleaning guidance in order to make the call for service with the black line decrease by the rubbish on the platen when scanning from the DP.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Select ON or OFF. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ON</td><td>Displays the cleaning guidance</td></tr> <tr> <td>OFF</td><td>Not to display the cleaning guidance</td></tr> <tr> <td>COUNT</td><td>Setting counts of the cleaning guidance indication</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: ON</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. Press the start key. The setting is set. <p>Setting the count value</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Enter a count using the +/- or numeric keys. Setting range: 0 to 999 Initial setting: 8 When setting is 0, the black line cleaning indication is displayed only if the black line is detected. 2. Press the start key. The count is set. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	ON	Displays the cleaning guidance	OFF	Not to display the cleaning guidance	COUNT	Setting counts of the cleaning guidance indication
Display	Description								
ON	Displays the cleaning guidance								
OFF	Not to display the cleaning guidance								
COUNT	Setting counts of the cleaning guidance indication								

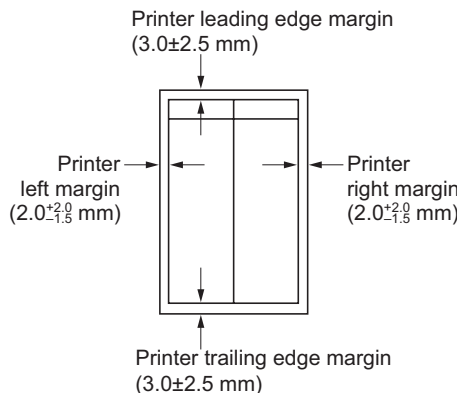
Maintenance item No.	Description								
U328	<p>Side ejection setting</p> <p>Description Sets whether to eject to the side of the machine when an optional curl eliminator is installed.</p> <p>Purpose Set according to the preference of the user.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Select ON or OFF. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>ON</td><td>To eject to the side of the machine</td></tr><tr><td>OFF</td><td>Not to eject to the side of the machine</td></tr></table> <p>Initial setting: OFF</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">3. Press the start key. The setting is set.4. Turn the main power switch off and on.	Display	Description	ON	To eject to the side of the machine	OFF	Not to eject to the side of the machine		
Display	Description								
ON	To eject to the side of the machine								
OFF	Not to eject to the side of the machine								
U332	<p>Setting the size conversion factor</p> <p>Description Sets the coefficient of nonstandard sizes in relation to the A4/Letter size. The coefficient set here is used to convert the black ratio in relation to the A4/Letter size and to display the result in user simulation.</p> <p>Purpose To set the coefficient for converting the black ratio for nonstandard sizes in relation to the A4/Letter size.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Change the setting using the +/- keys. <table><tr><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>Size parameter</td><td>0.1 to 3.0</td><td>1.0</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none">3. Press the start key. The setting is set. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Size parameter	0.1 to 3.0	1.0		
Description	Setting range	Initial setting							
Size parameter	0.1 to 3.0	1.0							
U339	<p>Setting the drum heater ON/OFF</p> <p>Description Turns the drum heater on or off during sleep mode.</p> <p>Purpose Set according to the preference of the user.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr><tr><td>MODE</td><td>Setting the drum heater ON/OFF</td><td>0 to 4*</td><td>0</td></tr></table> <p>*: The drum heater is off at sleep mode when the value is 0. The drum heater is on at sleep mode when the value is between 1 and 4.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">3. Press the start key. The setting is set. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	MODE	Setting the drum heater ON/OFF	0 to 4*	0
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting						
MODE	Setting the drum heater ON/OFF	0 to 4*	0						

TONER

www.tonerplus.com.ua

Maintenance item No.	Description														
U341	<p>Specific paper feed location setting for printing function</p> <p>Description Sets a paper feed location specified for printer output.</p> <p>Purpose To use a paper feed location only for printer output. A paper feed location specified for printer output cannot be used for copy output.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the paper feed location for the printer. Two or more cassette can be selected. 3. Press the start key. The setting is set. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>														
U342	<p>Setting the ejection restriction</p> <p>Description Sets or cancels the restriction on the number of sheets to be ejected continuously when the internal eject tray is selected as the eject location.</p> <p>Purpose According to user request, sets or cancels restriction on the number of sheets.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Select ON or OFF. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ON</td><td>Sets restriction on the number of sheets</td></tr> <tr> <td>OFF</td><td>Cancels restriction on the number of sheets</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: ON Details of restriction (number of sheets to be ejected continuously after the start key is pressed)</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Condition</th><th>Number of sheets</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>When no optional ejection device is installed</td><td>250</td></tr> <tr> <td>When the job separator is installed</td><td>150</td></tr> <tr> <td>When the built-in finisher is installed</td><td>100</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. Press the start key. The setting is set. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	ON	Sets restriction on the number of sheets	OFF	Cancels restriction on the number of sheets	Condition	Number of sheets	When no optional ejection device is installed	250	When the job separator is installed	150	When the built-in finisher is installed	100
Display	Description														
ON	Sets restriction on the number of sheets														
OFF	Cancels restriction on the number of sheets														
Condition	Number of sheets														
When no optional ejection device is installed	250														
When the job separator is installed	150														
When the built-in finisher is installed	100														

Maintenance item No.	Description						
U343	<p>Switching between duplex/simplex copy mode</p> <p>Description Switches the initial setting between duplex and simplex copy.</p> <p>Purpose To be set according to frequency of use: set to the more frequently used mode.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Select ON or OFF. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ON</td><td>Duplex copy</td></tr> <tr> <td>OFF</td><td>Simplex copy</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: OFF</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. Press the start key. The setting is set. 4. Turn the main power switch off and on. 	Display	Description	ON	Duplex copy	OFF	Simplex copy
Display	Description						
ON	Duplex copy						
OFF	Simplex copy						
U345	<p>Setting the value for maintenance due indication</p> <p>Description Sets when to display a message notifying that the time for maintenance is about to be reached, by setting the number of copies that can be made before the current maintenance cycle ends. When the difference between the number of copies of the maintenance cycle and that of the maintenance count reaches the set value, the message is displayed. This maintenance mode is effective for only Japanese specification.</p>						

Maintenance item No.	Description																																			
U402	<p>Adjusting margins of image printing</p> <p>Description Adjusts margins for image printing.</p> <p>Purpose Make the adjustment if margins are incorrect.</p> <p>Adjustment</p> <div><div><div>1. Press the start key.</div><div>2. Select the item to be adjusted.</div></div><table><thead><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>LEAD</td><td>Printer leading edge margin</td><td>0 to 236</td><td>75</td><td>0.042 mm</td></tr><tr><td>A</td><td>Printer left margin</td><td>-80 to 236</td><td>85</td><td>0.042 mm</td></tr><tr><td>C</td><td>Printer right margin</td><td>-118 to 236</td><td>85</td><td>0.042 mm</td></tr><tr><td>TRAIL</td><td>Printer trailing edge margin</td><td>-118 to 236</td><td>95</td><td>0.042 mm</td></tr><tr><td>TRAIL(DUP)</td><td>Printer trailing edge margin in duplex mode (second side)</td><td>-118 to 236</td><td>155</td><td>0.042 mm</td></tr><tr><td>TRIAL(MP)</td><td>Printer trailing edge margin (MP tray)</td><td>-118 to 236</td><td>110</td><td>0.042 mm</td></tr></tbody></table><div><div><div>3. Press the system menu key.</div><div>4. Press the start key to output a test pattern.</div><div>5. Press the system menu key.</div><div>6. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.</div></div><div>Increasing the value makes the margin wider, and decreasing it makes the margin narrower.</div></div><div></div><p style="text-align: center;">Figure 1-3-18</p><div><div><div>7. Press the start key. The value is set.</div></div></div><p>Caution Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode.</p><div><div><div>U402</div><div>→</div><div>U403 (P.1-3-65)</div><div>→</div><div>U404 (P.1-3-66)</div></div></div><p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p></div>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	LEAD	Printer leading edge margin	0 to 236	75	0.042 mm	A	Printer left margin	-80 to 236	85	0.042 mm	C	Printer right margin	-118 to 236	85	0.042 mm	TRAIL	Printer trailing edge margin	-118 to 236	95	0.042 mm	TRAIL(DUP)	Printer trailing edge margin in duplex mode (second side)	-118 to 236	155	0.042 mm	TRIAL(MP)	Printer trailing edge margin (MP tray)	-118 to 236	110	0.042 mm
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step																																
LEAD	Printer leading edge margin	0 to 236	75	0.042 mm																																
A	Printer left margin	-80 to 236	85	0.042 mm																																
C	Printer right margin	-118 to 236	85	0.042 mm																																
TRAIL	Printer trailing edge margin	-118 to 236	95	0.042 mm																																
TRAIL(DUP)	Printer trailing edge margin in duplex mode (second side)	-118 to 236	155	0.042 mm																																
TRIAL(MP)	Printer trailing edge margin (MP tray)	-118 to 236	110	0.042 mm																																

Maintenance item No.	Description																									
U403	<p>Adjusting margins for scanning an original on the platen</p> <p>Description Adjusts margins for scanning the original on the platen.</p> <p>Purpose Make the adjustment if margins are incorrect.</p> <p>Adjustment</p> <div><div><div></div><div></div><div></div><div></div></div><div><div>1. Press the start key.</div><div>2. Select the item to be adjusted.</div></div></div> <table><thead><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>A MARGIN</td><td>Scanner left margin</td><td>0 to 10.0</td><td>2.0</td><td>0.5 mm</td></tr><tr><td>B MARGIN</td><td>Scanner leading edge margin</td><td>0 to 10.0</td><td>2.0</td><td>0.5 mm</td></tr><tr><td>C MARGIN</td><td>Scanner right margin</td><td>0 to 10.0</td><td>2.0</td><td>0.5 mm</td></tr><tr><td>D MARGIN</td><td>Scanner trailing edge margin</td><td>0 to 10.0</td><td>2.0</td><td>0.5 mm</td></tr></tbody></table> <div><div>3. Press the system menu key.</div><div>4. Place an original and press the start key to make a test copy.</div><div>5. Press the system menu key.</div><div>6. Change the setting value using the +/- keys.</div></div> <p>Increasing the value makes the margin wider, and decreasing it makes the margin narrower.</p> <div><div><div><div>Scanner leading edge margin (3±1.5 mm)</div><div>Scanner left margin (2±1.0 mm)</div><div>Scanner right margin (2±1.0 mm)</div><div>Scanner trailing edge margin (2±1.0 mm)</div></div></div></div> <p>Figure 1-3-19</p> <div><div>7. Press the start key. The value is set.</div></div> <p>Caution Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode.</p> <div><div><div>U403</div><div>→</div><div>U404 (P.1-3-66)</div></div></div> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The indication for selecting a maintenance item No. appears.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	A MARGIN	Scanner left margin	0 to 10.0	2.0	0.5 mm	B MARGIN	Scanner leading edge margin	0 to 10.0	2.0	0.5 mm	C MARGIN	Scanner right margin	0 to 10.0	2.0	0.5 mm	D MARGIN	Scanner trailing edge margin	0 to 10.0	2.0	0.5 mm
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step																						
A MARGIN	Scanner left margin	0 to 10.0	2.0	0.5 mm																						
B MARGIN	Scanner leading edge margin	0 to 10.0	2.0	0.5 mm																						
C MARGIN	Scanner right margin	0 to 10.0	2.0	0.5 mm																						
D MARGIN	Scanner trailing edge margin	0 to 10.0	2.0	0.5 mm																						

Maintenance item No.	Description																									
U404	<p>Adjusting margins for scanning an original from the DP</p> <p>Description Adjusts margins for scanning the original from the DP.</p> <p>Purpose Make the adjustment if margins are incorrect when the optional DP is used.</p> <p>Caution Before making this adjustment, ensure that the following adjustments have been made in maintenance mode.</p> <div><div>U402 (P.1-3-64)</div>→<div>U403 (P.1-3-65)</div>→<div>U404</div></div> <p>Adjustment</p> <div><div>1. Press the start key.</div><div>2. Select the item to be adjusted.</div></div> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>A MARGIN</td><td>Left margin</td><td>0 to 10.0</td><td>3.0</td><td>0.5 mm</td></tr><tr><td>B MARGIN</td><td>Leading edge margin</td><td>0 to 10.0</td><td>2.5</td><td>0.5 mm</td></tr><tr><td>C MARGIN</td><td>Right margin</td><td>0 to 10.0</td><td>3.0</td><td>0.5 mm</td></tr><tr><td>D MARGIN</td><td>Trailing edge margin</td><td>0 to 10.0</td><td>4.0</td><td>0.5 mm</td></tr></table> <div><div>3. Press the system menu key.</div><div>4. Place an original on the DP and press the start key to make a test copy.</div><div>5. Press the system menu key.</div><div>6. Change the setting value using the +/- keys.</div></div> <p>Increasing the value makes the margin wider, and decreasing it makes the margin narrower.</p> <div><div>Leading edge margin (3±1.5 mm)</div><div>Left margin (2±1.0 mm)</div><div>Right margin (2±1.0 mm)</div><div>Trailing edge margin (2±1.0 mm)</div></div> <p>Figure 1-3-20</p> <div><div>7. Press the start key. The value is set.</div></div> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	A MARGIN	Left margin	0 to 10.0	3.0	0.5 mm	B MARGIN	Leading edge margin	0 to 10.0	2.5	0.5 mm	C MARGIN	Right margin	0 to 10.0	3.0	0.5 mm	D MARGIN	Trailing edge margin	0 to 10.0	4.0	0.5 mm
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step																						
A MARGIN	Left margin	0 to 10.0	3.0	0.5 mm																						
B MARGIN	Leading edge margin	0 to 10.0	2.5	0.5 mm																						
C MARGIN	Right margin	0 to 10.0	3.0	0.5 mm																						
D MARGIN	Trailing edge margin	0 to 10.0	4.0	0.5 mm																						

Maintenance item No.	Description								
U407	<p>Adjusting the leading edge registration for memory image printing</p> <p>Description Adjusts the leading edge registration during memory copying.</p> <p>Purpose Make the following adjustment if there is a regular error between the leading edge of the copy image on the front face and that on the reverse face during duplex switchback copying.</p> <p>Caution Before making this adjustment, ensure that the following adjustments have been made in maintenance mode.</p> <div><div>U034 (P.1-3-20)</div>→<div>U402 (P.1-3-64)</div>→<div>U066 (P.1-3-28)</div>→<div>U403 (P.1-3-65)</div>→<div>U071 (P.1-3-32)</div>→</div> <div><div>U404 (P.1-3-66)</div>→<div>U407</div></div> <p>Adjustment</p> <div><div>1. Press the start key.</div><table><tr><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>Leading edge registration for memory image printing</td><td>-47 to 47</td><td>47</td><td>0.042 mm</td></tr></table><div><div>2. Press the system menu key.</div><div>3. Place an original and press the start key to make a test copy.</div><div>4. Press the system menu key.</div><div>5. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys. For copy example 1, decrease the value. For copy example 2, increase the value.</div></div><div><div><div>↑</div><div>Original</div></div><div><div>↑</div><div>Copy example 1</div></div><div><div>↑</div><div>Copy example 2</div></div></div><p>Figure 1-3-21</p><div><div>6. Press the start key. The value is set.</div><p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p></div></div>	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	Leading edge registration for memory image printing	-47 to 47	47	0.042 mm
Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step						
Leading edge registration for memory image printing	-47 to 47	47	0.042 mm						

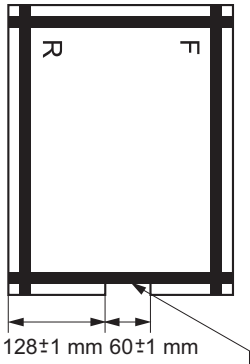
TONER


www.tonerplus.com.ua

Maintenance item No.	Description																											
U411	<p>Adjusting the scanner automatically</p> <p>Description Uses a specified original and automatically adjusts the following items in the scanner and the DP scanning sections.</p> <p>Purpose To perform automatic adjustment of various items in the scanner and the DP scanning sections. To adjust scanner automatically when initializing the machine using the maintenance item U020 or U022.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Select the item. The screen for executing is displayed. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Original to be used for adjustment (P/N)</th></tr><tr><td>SCANNER</td><td>Automatic adjustment in the scanner section</td><td>302FZ56990</td></tr><tr><td>DP</td><td>Automatic adjustment in the DP scanning section</td><td>2AC68241</td></tr></table> <p>Method: SCANNER</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Select [SCANNER].2. Enter the target values which are shown on the specified original (P/N: 302FZ56990) executing maintenance item U425.3. Set a specified original (P/N: 302FZ56990) on the platen.4. Select the item. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>ALL</td><td>Automatic adjustment using the platen for: original size magnification/leading edge timing/center line, input gamma, chromatic aberration filter, MTF filter, matrix, input gamma in monochrome mode and MTF filter in monochrome mode</td></tr><tr><td>INPUT</td><td>Automatic adjustment using the platen for: original size magnification/leading edge timing/center line</td></tr><tr><td>GAMMA</td><td>Automatic adjustment using the platen for: input gamma</td></tr><tr><td>C.A.</td><td>Automatic adjustment using the platen for: chromatic aberration filter</td></tr><tr><td>MTF</td><td>Automatic adjustment using the platen for: MTF filter</td></tr><tr><td>MATRIX</td><td>Automatic adjustment using the platen for: matrix</td></tr><tr><td>MONO GAMMA</td><td>Automatic adjustment using the platen for: input gamma in monochrome mode</td></tr><tr><td>MONO MTF</td><td>Automatic adjustment using the platen for: MTF filter in monochrome mode</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none">5. Press the start key. Auto adjustment starts. When automatic adjustment has normally completed, [RESULT OK 00] is displayed. If a problem occurs during auto adjustment, [ERROR XX] (XX is replaced by an error code) is displayed and operation stops. Should this happen, determine the details of the problem and either repeat the procedure from the beginning, or adjust the remaining items manually by running the corresponding maintenance items.6. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop key.	Display	Description	Original to be used for adjustment (P/N)	SCANNER	Automatic adjustment in the scanner section	302FZ56990	DP	Automatic adjustment in the DP scanning section	2AC68241	Display	Description	ALL	Automatic adjustment using the platen for: original size magnification/leading edge timing/center line, input gamma, chromatic aberration filter, MTF filter, matrix, input gamma in monochrome mode and MTF filter in monochrome mode	INPUT	Automatic adjustment using the platen for: original size magnification/leading edge timing/center line	GAMMA	Automatic adjustment using the platen for: input gamma	C.A.	Automatic adjustment using the platen for: chromatic aberration filter	MTF	Automatic adjustment using the platen for: MTF filter	MATRIX	Automatic adjustment using the platen for: matrix	MONO GAMMA	Automatic adjustment using the platen for: input gamma in monochrome mode	MONO MTF	Automatic adjustment using the platen for: MTF filter in monochrome mode
Display	Description	Original to be used for adjustment (P/N)																										
SCANNER	Automatic adjustment in the scanner section	302FZ56990																										
DP	Automatic adjustment in the DP scanning section	2AC68241																										
Display	Description																											
ALL	Automatic adjustment using the platen for: original size magnification/leading edge timing/center line, input gamma, chromatic aberration filter, MTF filter, matrix, input gamma in monochrome mode and MTF filter in monochrome mode																											
INPUT	Automatic adjustment using the platen for: original size magnification/leading edge timing/center line																											
GAMMA	Automatic adjustment using the platen for: input gamma																											
C.A.	Automatic adjustment using the platen for: chromatic aberration filter																											
MTF	Automatic adjustment using the platen for: MTF filter																											
MATRIX	Automatic adjustment using the platen for: matrix																											
MONO GAMMA	Automatic adjustment using the platen for: input gamma in monochrome mode																											
MONO MTF	Automatic adjustment using the platen for: MTF filter in monochrome mode																											

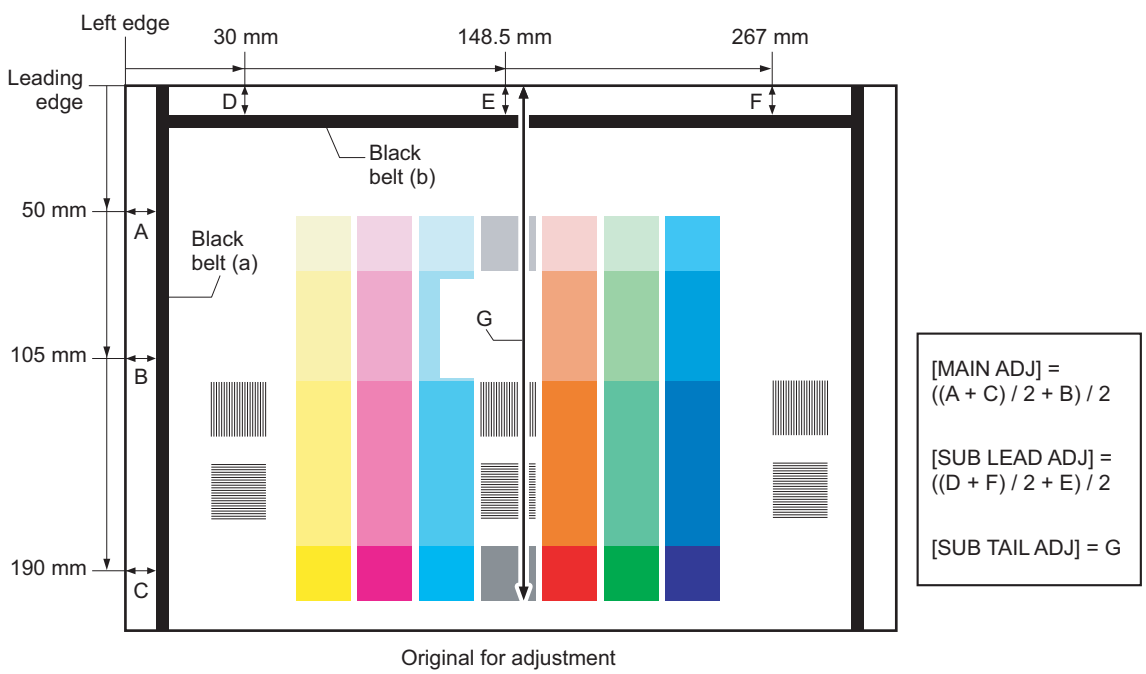
TONER

www.tonerplus.com.ua

Maintenance item No.	Description				
U411	<p>Method: DP</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select [DP]. 2. Set a specified original (P/N: 2AC68241) in the DP. Cut the trailing edge of the original.  <p style="text-align: center;">Cut with the edge of black belt.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Figure 1-3-22</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. Press [INPUT]. <table border="1" style="width: 100%;"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>INPUT</td><td>Automatic adjustment of first page using the DP for: original size magnification/leading edge timing/center line</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4. Press the start key. Auto adjustment starts. When automatic adjustment has normally completed, [RESULT OK 00] is displayed. If a problem occurs during auto adjustment, [ERROR XX] (XX is replaced by an error code) is displayed and operation stops. Should this happen, determine the details of the problem and either repeat the procedure from the beginning, or adjust the remaining items manually by running the corresponding maintenance items. 5. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop key. 	Display	Description	INPUT	Automatic adjustment of first page using the DP for: original size magnification/leading edge timing/center line
Display	Description				
INPUT	Automatic adjustment of first page using the DP for: original size magnification/leading edge timing/center line				

Maintenance item No.	Description	
U411	Error Codes	
	Codes	Description
	ERROR 01	Black belt detection error (scanner leading edge registration)
	ERROR 02	Black belt detection error (scanner center line)
	ERROR 03	Black belt detection error (scanner main scanning direction magnification)
	ERROR 04	Black belt is not detected (scanner leading edge registration)
	ERROR 05	Black belt is not detected (scanner center line)
	ERROR 06	Black belt is not detected (scanner main scanning direction magnification)
	ERROR 07	Black belt is not detected (scanner auxiliary scanning direction magnification)
	ERROR 08	Black belt is not detected (DP main scanning direction magnification far end)
	ERROR 09	Black belt is not detected (DP main scanning direction magnification near end)
	ERROR 0a	Black belt is not detected (DP auxiliary scanning direction magnification leading edge)
	ERROR 0b	Black belt is not detected (DP auxiliary scanning direction magnification leading edge original check)
	ERROR 0c	Black belt is not detected (DP auxiliary scanning direction trailing edge)
	ERROR 0d	Black belt is not detected (DP auxiliary scanning direction trailing edge 2)
	ERROR 0e	DMA time out
	ERROR 0f	Auxiliary scanning direction magnification error
	ERROR 10	Auxiliary scanning direction leading edge detection error
	ERROR 11	Auxiliary scanning direction trailing edge detection error
	ERROR 12	Auxiliary scanning direction skew 1.5 error
	ERROR 13	Maintenance request error
	ERROR 14	Main scanning direction center line error
	ERROR 15	Main scanning direction skew 1.5 error
	ERROR 16	Main scanning direction magnification error
	ERROR 17	Carriage error
	ERROR 18	Service call error
	ERROR 19	DP status error
	ERROR 1a	DP open error
	ERROR 1b	Original is not detected
	ERROR ff	Other error
	ERROR 65	Memory over error
	Completion	
	Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item is displayed.	
		

Maintenance item No.	Description																																		
U425	<p>Setting the target</p> <p>Description Enters the lab values that is indicated on the back of the chart (P/N: 302FZ56990) used for adjustment.</p> <p>Purpose Performs data input in order to correct for differences in originals during automatic adjustment.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Select the item to be set. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>N875</td><td>Setting the N875 patch for the original for adjustment</td></tr><tr><td>N475</td><td>Setting the N475 patch for the original for adjustment</td></tr><tr><td>N125</td><td>Setting the N125 patch for the original for adjustment</td></tr><tr><td>CYAN</td><td>Setting the cyan patch for the original for adjustment</td></tr><tr><td>MAGENTA</td><td>Setting the magenta patch for the original for adjustment</td></tr><tr><td>YELLOW</td><td>Setting the yellow patch for the original for adjustment</td></tr><tr><td>RED</td><td>Setting the red patch for the original for adjustment</td></tr><tr><td>GREEN</td><td>Setting the green patch for the original for adjustment</td></tr><tr><td>BLUE</td><td>Setting the blue patch for the original for adjustment</td></tr><tr><td>ADJUST ORIGINAL</td><td>Setting the main and auxiliary scanning directions</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none">3. Select the item to be set. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th></tr><tr><td>L</td><td>Setting the L value</td><td>0.0 to 100.0</td></tr><tr><td>a</td><td>Setting the a value</td><td>-200.0 to 200.0</td></tr><tr><td>b</td><td>Setting the b value</td><td>-200.0 to 200.0</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none">4. Enters the value that is indicated on the back of the chart using the cursor +/- keys or numeric keys.5. Press the start key. The value is set.6. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop key. <p>Setting the main and auxiliary scanning directions</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Measure the distance from the left edge to the black belt (a) of the original at A, B and C. Measurement procedure<ol style="list-style-type: none">1) Measure the distance from the edge to the black belt (a) of the original at A (50 mm from the leading edge), B (105 mm from the leading edge) and C (190 mm from the leading edge), respectively.2) Apply the following formula for the values obtained: $((A + C) / 2 + B) / 2$2. Enter the values solved using the +/- keys in [MAIN ADJ].3. Press the start key. The value is set.4. Measure the distance from the leading edge to the black belt (b) of the original at D, E and F. Measurement procedure<ol style="list-style-type: none">1) Measure the length from the edge to the black belt (b) of the original at D (30 mm from the left edge), E (148.5 mm from the left edge) and F (267 mm from the left edge), respectively.2) Apply the following formula for the values obtained: $((D + F) / 2 + E) / 2$5. Enter the values solved using the +/- keys in [SUB LEAD ADJ].6. Press the start key. The value is set.7. Measure the length (G) from the leading edge to the bottom of the N475 patch of the original.8. Enter the measured value using the +/- keys in [SUB TAIL ADJ].9. Press the start key. The value is set.10. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop key.	Display	Description	N875	Setting the N875 patch for the original for adjustment	N475	Setting the N475 patch for the original for adjustment	N125	Setting the N125 patch for the original for adjustment	CYAN	Setting the cyan patch for the original for adjustment	MAGENTA	Setting the magenta patch for the original for adjustment	YELLOW	Setting the yellow patch for the original for adjustment	RED	Setting the red patch for the original for adjustment	GREEN	Setting the green patch for the original for adjustment	BLUE	Setting the blue patch for the original for adjustment	ADJUST ORIGINAL	Setting the main and auxiliary scanning directions	Display	Description	Setting range	L	Setting the L value	0.0 to 100.0	a	Setting the a value	-200.0 to 200.0	b	Setting the b value	-200.0 to 200.0
Display	Description																																		
N875	Setting the N875 patch for the original for adjustment																																		
N475	Setting the N475 patch for the original for adjustment																																		
N125	Setting the N125 patch for the original for adjustment																																		
CYAN	Setting the cyan patch for the original for adjustment																																		
MAGENTA	Setting the magenta patch for the original for adjustment																																		
YELLOW	Setting the yellow patch for the original for adjustment																																		
RED	Setting the red patch for the original for adjustment																																		
GREEN	Setting the green patch for the original for adjustment																																		
BLUE	Setting the blue patch for the original for adjustment																																		
ADJUST ORIGINAL	Setting the main and auxiliary scanning directions																																		
Display	Description	Setting range																																	
L	Setting the L value	0.0 to 100.0																																	
a	Setting the a value	-200.0 to 200.0																																	
b	Setting the b value	-200.0 to 200.0																																	

Maintenance item No.	Description						
U425	<div><p>The diagram shows a color calibration target with various color patches and grayscale steps. Dimensions are provided for the target's size and the positions of specific features. Adjustment formulas are listed on the right side of the diagram.</p><p>Left edge 30 mm 148.5 mm 267 mm</p><p>Leading edge</p><p>50 mm A</p><p>105 mm B</p><p>190 mm C</p><p>Black belt (a)</p><p>Black belt (b)</p><p>G</p><p>Original for adjustment</p><p>$[MAIN\ ADJ] = ((A + C) / 2 + B) / 2$</p><p>$[SUB\ LEAD\ ADJ] = ((D + F) / 2 + E) / 2$</p><p>$[SUB\ TAIL\ ADJ] = G$</p></div>						
U510	<p>Setting the enterprise mode</p> <p>Description Sets whether or not the enterprise mode setting is enabled.</p> <p>Purpose According to user request, changes the setting.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Select ON or OFF. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>ON</td><td>Enterprise mode setting is enabled</td></tr><tr><td>OFF</td><td>Enterprise mode setting is disabled</td></tr></table> <p>Initial setting: ON (Inch specifications)/OFF (Metric specifications)</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">3. Press the start key. The setting is set. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	ON	Enterprise mode setting is enabled	OFF	Enterprise mode setting is disabled
Display	Description						
ON	Enterprise mode setting is enabled						
OFF	Enterprise mode setting is disabled						

Maintenance item No.	Description														
U901	<p>Checking/clearing copy counts by paper feed locations</p> <p>Description Displays or clears copy counts by paper feed locations.</p> <p>Purpose To check the time to replace consumable parts. Also to clear the counts after replacing the consumable parts.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The counts by paper feed locations are displayed.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Paper feed locations</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>MP TRAY</td><td>MP tray</td></tr> <tr> <td>CASSETTE 1</td><td>Cassette 1</td></tr> <tr> <td>CASSETTE 2</td><td>Cassette 2</td></tr> <tr> <td>CASSETTE 3</td><td>Optional cassette 3</td></tr> <tr> <td>CASSETTE 4</td><td>Optional cassette 4</td></tr> <tr> <td>DUPLEX</td><td>Duplex section</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>When an optional paper feed device is not installed, the corresponding count is not displayed.</p> <p>Clearing</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select the count to be cleared. To clear all counts, press the clear key. 2. Press the start key. The count is cleared. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Paper feed locations	MP TRAY	MP tray	CASSETTE 1	Cassette 1	CASSETTE 2	Cassette 2	CASSETTE 3	Optional cassette 3	CASSETTE 4	Optional cassette 4	DUPLEX	Duplex section
Display	Paper feed locations														
MP TRAY	MP tray														
CASSETTE 1	Cassette 1														
CASSETTE 2	Cassette 2														
CASSETTE 3	Optional cassette 3														
CASSETTE 4	Optional cassette 4														
DUPLEX	Duplex section														
U903	<p>Checking/clearing the paper jam counts</p> <p>Description Displays or clears the jam counts by jam locations.</p> <p>Purpose To check the paper jam status. Also to clear the jam counts after replacing consumable parts.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item. The screen for executing is displayed. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>COUNT</td><td>Displays/clears the jam counts</td></tr> <tr> <td>TOTAL COUNT</td><td>Displays the total jam counts</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Method: Displays/clears the jam counts</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select [COUNT]. The count for jam detection by type is displayed. 2. Change the screen using the cursor up/down keys. 3. Select the counts for all jam codes and press the clear key. 4. Press the start key. The count is cleared. The individual counter cannot be cleared. 5. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop key. <p>Method: Displays the total jam counts</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select [TOTAL COUNT]. The total number of jam counts by type is displayed. 2. Change the screen using the cursor up/down keys. The total number of jam count cannot be cleared. 3. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop key. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	COUNT	Displays/clears the jam counts	TOTAL COUNT	Displays the total jam counts								
Display	Description														
COUNT	Displays/clears the jam counts														
TOTAL COUNT	Displays the total jam counts														

Maintenance item No.	Description						
U904	<p>Checking/clearing the service call counts</p> <p>Description Displays or clears the service call code counts by types.</p> <p>Purpose To check the service call code status by types. Also to clear the service call code counts after replacing consumable parts.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item. The screen for executing is displayed. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>COUNT</td><td>Displays/clears the service call counts</td></tr> <tr> <td>TOTAL COUNT</td><td>Displays the total service call counts</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Method: Displays/clears the service call counts</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select [COUNT]. The count for service call detection by type is displayed. 2. Change the screen using the cursor up/down keys. 3. Select the counts for all service call codes and press the clear key. 4. Press the start key. The count is cleared. The individual counter cannot be cleared. 5. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop key. <p>Method: Displays the total service call counts</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select [TOTAL COUNT]. The total number of service call counts by type is displayed. 2. Change the screen using the cursor up/down keys. The total number of service call count cannot be cleared. 3. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop key. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	COUNT	Displays/clears the service call counts	TOTAL COUNT	Displays the total service call counts
Display	Description						
COUNT	Displays/clears the service call counts						
TOTAL COUNT	Displays the total service call counts						

Maintenance item No.	Description																		
U905	<p>Checking/clearing counts by optional devices</p> <p>Description Displays or clears the counts of optional DP or finisher.</p> <p>Purpose To check the use of optional DP and finisher. Also to clear the counts after replacing consumable parts.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the device, the count of which is to be checked. The count of the selected device is displayed. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>DP</td><td>Counts of optional DP</td></tr> <tr> <td>FINISHER</td><td>Counts of optional finisher</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>DP</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ADP</td><td>No. of single-sided originals that has passed through the DP</td></tr> <tr> <td>RADP</td><td>No. of double-sided originals that has passed through the DP</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Finisher</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>CP CNT</td><td>No. of copies that has passed</td></tr> <tr> <td>STAPLE</td><td>Frequency the stapler has been activated</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Clearing</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select the item to be cleared. To clear the counts for all, press the clear key. 2. Press the start key. The count is cleared. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	DP	Counts of optional DP	FINISHER	Counts of optional finisher	Display	Description	ADP	No. of single-sided originals that has passed through the DP	RADP	No. of double-sided originals that has passed through the DP	Display	Description	CP CNT	No. of copies that has passed	STAPLE	Frequency the stapler has been activated
Display	Description																		
DP	Counts of optional DP																		
FINISHER	Counts of optional finisher																		
Display	Description																		
ADP	No. of single-sided originals that has passed through the DP																		
RADP	No. of double-sided originals that has passed through the DP																		
Display	Description																		
CP CNT	No. of copies that has passed																		
STAPLE	Frequency the stapler has been activated																		
U906	<p>Resetting partial operation control</p> <p>Description Resets the service call code for partial operation control.</p> <p>Purpose To be reset after partial operation is performed due to problems in the cassettes or other sections, and the related parts are serviced.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Press [EXECUTE] on the touch panel. 3. Press the start key to reset partial operation control. <p>The maintenance mode is exited, and the machine returns to the same status as when the main power switch is turned on.</p>																		

Maintenance item No.	Description
U908	<p>Checking the total counter value</p> <p>Description Displays the total counter value.</p> <p>Purpose To check the total counter value.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The screen for total count value is displayed.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>
U910	<p>Clearing the black ratio data</p> <p>Description Clears the accumulated black ratio data for A4 sheet.</p> <p>Purpose To clear data as required at times such as during maintenance service.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Press [EXCUTE] on the touch panel. 3. Press the start key. The accumulated black ratio data is cleared. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>
U911	<p>Checking/clearing copy counts by paper sizes</p> <p>Description Displays and clears the paper feed counts by paper sizes.</p> <p>Purpose To check or clear the counts after replacing consumable parts.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The screen for the paper feed counts by paper size is displayed.</p> <p>Clearing</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select the paper size. To clear all counts, press the clear key. 2. Press the start key. The count is cleared. <p>Completion Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>

Maintenance item No.	Description
U920	<p>Checking the copy counts</p> <p>Description Checks the copy counts.</p> <p>Purpose To check the copy counts.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The current counts of copy counter, printer counter and fax counter are displayed.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>
U927	<p>Clearing the all copy counts and machine life counts (one time only)</p> <p>Description Resets all of the counts back to 0.</p> <p>Purpose To start the counters with value 0 when installing the machine.</p> <p>Supplement The total account counter and the machine life counter can be cleared only once if all count values are 1000 or less.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Press [EXECUTE] on the touch panel. 3. Press the start key. All copy counts and machine life counts are cleared. [CANNOT EXECUTE] is displayed if the count cannot be cleared. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>

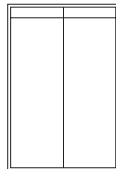
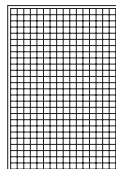
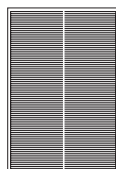
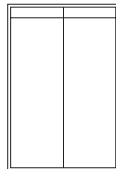
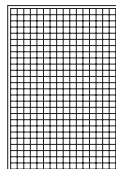
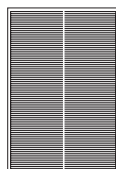
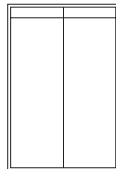
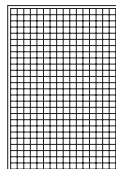
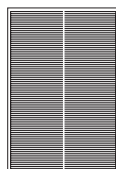
Maintenance item No.	Description						
U928	<p>Checking machine life counts</p> <p>Description Displays the machine life counts.</p> <p>Purpose To check the machine life counts.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The current machine life counts is displayed.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>						
U931	<p>Setting the automatic toner install</p> <p>Description Sets automatic toner installation on or off when power is turned on.</p> <p>Purpose Changed to off when deactivating automatic toner installation.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Select ON or OFF. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ON</td><td>Automatic toner install function ON</td></tr> <tr> <td>OFF</td><td>Automatic toner install function OFF</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: OFF</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. Press the start key. The setting is set. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	ON	Automatic toner install function ON	OFF	Automatic toner install function OFF
Display	Description						
ON	Automatic toner install function ON						
OFF	Automatic toner install function OFF						

Maintenance item No.	Description										
U933	<p>Setting the fax backup kit</p> <p>Description Initializes optional fax backup kit (memory card) and restore the backup data.</p> <p>Purpose To initialize the memory card when call for service (C0700) occurs. Also, to restore data when the hard disk has been damaged.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>INITIALIZE CF</td><td>Initializes the fax backup kit and backs up the job accounting data in the hard disk into the fax backup kit.</td></tr> <tr> <td>FAX IMAGE</td><td>Prints the fax reception data backed up in the fax backup kit.</td></tr> <tr> <td>JOB ACCOUNTING</td><td>Restores the job accounting data stored in the fax backup kit to the hard disk.</td></tr> <tr> <td>RECOVERY CF</td><td>Rewrites the serial number of memory card to put it in active when the call for service C0700 occurs.</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Method: Restoring the backup data when replacing the HDD</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select [FAX IMAGE]. 2. Press [EXECUTE]. 3. Press the start key. The fax reception data is printed out. 4. Select [JOB ACCOUNTING]. 5. Press the start key. The job accounting data is restored. 6. Select [INITIALIZE CF]. 7. Press the start key. Memory card is initialized. 8. Turn the main power switch off and on. <p>Method: When call for service C0700 occurred</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select [RECOVERY CF]. 2. Press the start key. 3. Turn the main power switch off and on. 4. Select [FAX IMAGE]. 5. Press [EXECUTE]. 6. Press the start key. Prints the fax images if the images remain in the memory card. 7. Select [INITIALIZE CF]. 8. Press the start key. Memory card is initialized. 9. Turn the main power switch off and on. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	INITIALIZE CF	Initializes the fax backup kit and backs up the job accounting data in the hard disk into the fax backup kit.	FAX IMAGE	Prints the fax reception data backed up in the fax backup kit.	JOB ACCOUNTING	Restores the job accounting data stored in the fax backup kit to the hard disk.	RECOVERY CF	Rewrites the serial number of memory card to put it in active when the call for service C0700 occurs.
Display	Description										
INITIALIZE CF	Initializes the fax backup kit and backs up the job accounting data in the hard disk into the fax backup kit.										
FAX IMAGE	Prints the fax reception data backed up in the fax backup kit.										
JOB ACCOUNTING	Restores the job accounting data stored in the fax backup kit to the hard disk.										
RECOVERY CF	Rewrites the serial number of memory card to put it in active when the call for service C0700 occurs.										

Maintenance item No.	Description															
U935	<p>Relay board maintenance</p> <p>Description Sets the mode when call for service (C0060) occurs.</p> <p>Purpose Sets the machine status temporarily when call for service (C0060) occurs. However, after the setting, call for service (C0060) occurs again when progress of period.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Select the item. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>MODE 0</td><td>Setting mode: OFF</td></tr><tr><td>MODE 1</td><td>Setting mode: ON (Usable up to three times of use)</td></tr></table> <p>Initial setting: 0</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">3. Press the start key. The setting is set.4. Turn the main power switch off and on. <p>Supplement After removing the cause of the problem, be sure to change the setting in OFF.</p>	Display	Description	MODE 0	Setting mode: OFF	MODE 1	Setting mode: ON (Usable up to three times of use)									
Display	Description															
MODE 0	Setting mode: OFF															
MODE 1	Setting mode: ON (Usable up to three times of use)															
U942	<p>Setting of deflection for feeding from DP</p> <p>Description Adjusts the deflection generated when the optional DP is used.</p> <p>Purpose Use this mode if an original non-feed jam, oblique feed or wrinkling of original occurs when the DP is used.</p> <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Select the item to be adjusted. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr><tr><td>FEED MOT</td><td>Deflection in the original feed motor</td><td>-31 to 31</td><td>0</td><td>0.098 mm</td></tr><tr><td>REV MOT</td><td>Deflection in the original switchback motor</td><td>-31 to 31</td><td>0</td><td>0.098 mm</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none">3. Press the system menu key.4. Place an original on the DP and press the start key to make a test copy.5. Press the system menu key.6. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys. The greater the value, the larger the deflection; the smaller the value, the smaller the deflection. If an original non-feed jam or oblique feed occurs, increase the setting value. If wrinkling of original occurs, decrease the value.7. Press the start key. The setting is set. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	FEED MOT	Deflection in the original feed motor	-31 to 31	0	0.098 mm	REV MOT	Deflection in the original switchback motor	-31 to 31	0	0.098 mm
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step												
FEED MOT	Deflection in the original feed motor	-31 to 31	0	0.098 mm												
REV MOT	Deflection in the original switchback motor	-31 to 31	0	0.098 mm												

TONER

Maintenance item No.	Description						
U984	<p>Checking the developing unit number</p> <p>Description Displays the developing unit number.</p> <p>Purpose To check the developing unit number.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. The number is displayed.</p> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>						
U985	<p>Displaying the developing unit history</p> <p>Description Displays the past record of machine number and the developing counter.</p> <p>Purpose To check the count value machine number and the developing counter.</p> <p>Method Press the start key. Past record of 5 cases is displayed.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>MACHINE No.1 to 5</td><td>Past record of machine number</td></tr> <tr> <td>COUNT 1 to 5</td><td>Past record of developing counter</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	MACHINE No.1 to 5	Past record of machine number	COUNT 1 to 5	Past record of developing counter
Display	Description						
MACHINE No.1 to 5	Past record of machine number						
COUNT 1 to 5	Past record of developing counter						
U989	<p>HDD scandisk</p> <p>Description Restores data in the hard disk by scanning the disk.</p> <p>Purpose If power is turned off while accessing to the hard disk is performed, the control information in the hard disk drive may be damaged. Use this mode to restore the data.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. 2. Press [EXECUTE] on the touch panel. 3. Press the start key. 4. Turn the main power switch off and on. The hard disk is scanned. 5. When the memory indicator is turned off, turn the main power switch off and on. 						
U990	<p>Checking/clearing the time for the exposure lamp to light</p> <p>Description Displays, clears or changes the accumulated time for the exposure lamp to light.</p> <p>Purpose To check duration of use of the exposure lamp. Also to clear the accumulated time for the lamp after replacement.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press the start key. The accumulated time of illumination for the exposure lamp is displayed in minutes. 2. Press the start key. The accumulated time is cleared. <p>Setting</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Enter a accumulated time using the +/- or numeric keys. 2. Press the start key. The time is set. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>						

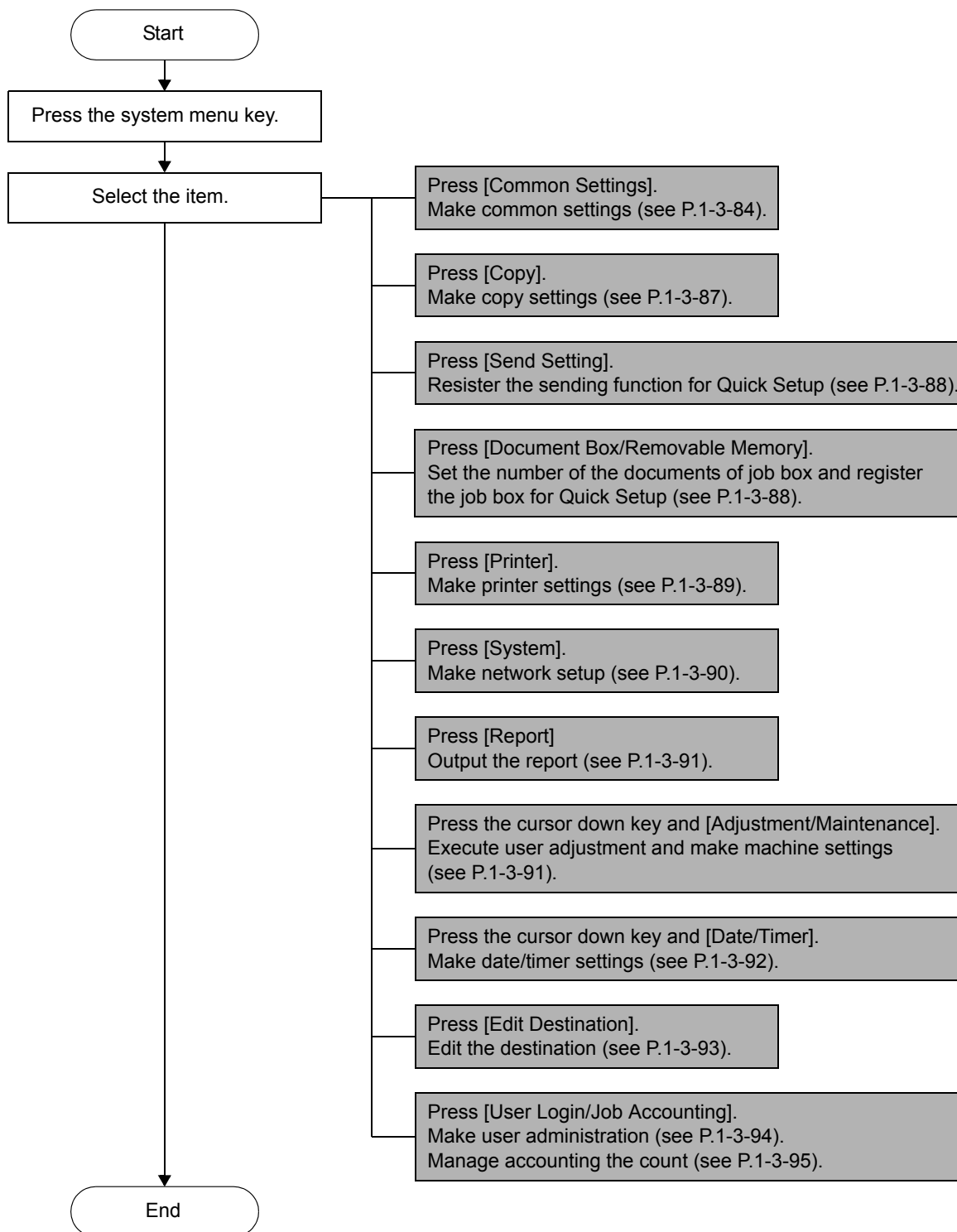
Maintenance item No.	Description												
U991	<p>Checking the scanner count</p> <p>Description Displays the scanner operation count.</p> <p>Purpose To check the status of use of the scanner.</p> <p>Method Press the start key.</p> <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>COPY SCAN CNT</td><td>Scanner operation count for copying</td></tr><tr><td>OTHERS SCAN CNT</td><td>Scanner operation count except for copying</td></tr></table> <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	COPY SCAN CNT	Scanner operation count for copying	OTHERS SCAN CNT	Scanner operation count except for copying						
Display	Description												
COPY SCAN CNT	Scanner operation count for copying												
OTHERS SCAN CNT	Scanner operation count except for copying												
U993	<p>Outputting a VTC-PG pattern</p> <p>Description Selects and outputs a VTC-PG pattern created in the machine.</p> <p>Purpose When performing respective image printing adjustments, used to check the machine status apart from that of the scanner with a non-scanned output VTC-PG pattern.</p> <p>Method</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Press the start key.2. Select the VTC-PG pattern to be output and press the start key. <table><tr><th>Display</th><th>PG pattern to be output</th><th>Purpose</th></tr><tr><td>PG1</td><td></td><td>Leading edge registration adjustment Center line adjustment Margin adjustment</td></tr><tr><td>PG2</td><td></td><td>Lateral squareness adjustment Magnification adjustment</td></tr><tr><td>PG3</td><td></td><td>Driving unevenness of drum</td></tr></table> <ol style="list-style-type: none">3. Press the system menu key.4. Press the start key. A VTC-PG pattern is output.5. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the system menu key. <p>Completion Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	PG pattern to be output	Purpose	PG1		Leading edge registration adjustment Center line adjustment Margin adjustment	PG2		Lateral squareness adjustment Magnification adjustment	PG3		Driving unevenness of drum
Display	PG pattern to be output	Purpose											
PG1		Leading edge registration adjustment Center line adjustment Margin adjustment											
PG2		Lateral squareness adjustment Magnification adjustment											
PG3		Driving unevenness of drum											

TONER

1-3-2 User management

In addition to a maintenance function for service, the machine is equipped with a management function which can be operated by users. In this user management mode, settings such as default settings can be changed.

(1) Using the user management mode



(2) Common settings

Switching the language for display

Select the language displayed on the touch panel.

1. Press [Change] of Language.
2. Press the key for the language to use.
3. Press [OK].
4. Press the power key, and after confirming that the power key/indicator and memory indicator have turned off, turn the main power switch off and on.
5. Turn the main power switch on. Touch panel will be displayed in the selected language.

Default screen

Select the screen appearing right after start-up (default screen).

1. Press [Change] of Default Screen.
2. Select the screen to show.
3. Press [OK].

Sound

Set options for buzzer sound during the machine operations.

1. Press [Next] of Sound and then [Next] of Buzzer.
2. Press [Change] of Volume, Key Confirmation, Job Finish, Ready, or Warning.
3. Select the buzzer volume level, or other sound options.
4. Press [Close].

Original/Paper setup

Register additional types and sizes of originals and paper.

Custom original size setup

Set up frequently-used custom original sizes at maximum. The custom size options are displayed on the screen to select original size.

1. Press [Next] of Original/Paper Setup and then [Next] of Custom Original Size.
2. Press [Change] of Custom 1 to Custom 4 to register the size.
3. Press [On], and enter X (horizontal) and Y (vertical) dimensions using the [+]/[-] or numeric keys.
4. Press [OK].

Adding a custom size and media type for paper to print

Set up four frequently-used custom paper sizes at maximum. The custom size options are displayed on the screen to select paper set in the MP tray.

1. Press [Next] of Original/Paper Setup and then [Next] of Custom Paper Size.
2. Press [Change] of Custom 1 to Custom 4 to register the size.
3. Press [On], and enter X (horizontal) and Y (vertical) dimensions using the [+]/[-] or numeric keys.
4. Press [Media Type] to select the type of paper and press [OK] if necessary.
5. Press [OK].

Paper size and media type setup for cassettes

Select paper size and type of paper for Cassette 1, 2 and optional paper feeders (Cassette 3 and 4).

1. Press [Next] of Original/Paper Setup, [Next] of Cassette Setting, [Next] of Cassette 1 to Cassette 4 to register the size, and then [Change] of Paper Size.
2. To detect paper size automatically, press [Auto] and select Metric or Inch for Paper Size.
To select paper size, press [Standard Sizes 1] or [Standard Sizes 2] for Paper Size.
3. Press [OK].
4. Press [Change] of Media Type to select type of paper and press [OK].

Paper size and media type setup for MP tray

Select size and type of paper for MP Tray. Set up frequently used size and media type before use.

1. Press [Next] of Original/Paper Setup, [Next] of MP Tray Setting and then [Change] of Paper Size.
2. To detect paper size automatically, press [Auto] and select Metric or Inch for Paper Size.
To select paper size, press [Standard Sizes 1], [Standard Sizes 2], [Others] or [Size Entry] for Paper Size.
If you select [Size Entry], enter X (horizontal) and Y (vertical) dimensions using the [+]/[-].
3. Press [OK].
4. Press [Change] of Media Type to select the type of paper and press [OK].

Paper weight

Select weight for each media type.

1. Press [Next] of Original/Paper Setup and then [Next] of Media Type Setting.
2. Press [Next] for the media type to change weight.
3. Press [Change] of Media Weight.
4. Select the weight and press [OK].
5. To change the duplex printing settings for Custom 1 (-8), press [Change] of Duplex, select [Prohibit] or [Permit] and press [OK].
6. To change the name for Custom 1(-8), press [Change] of Name to enter the name and press [OK].

Default paper source

Select the default paper source from Cassette 1-4 and MP tray.

1. Press [Next] of Original/Paper Setup and then [Change] of Default Paper Source.
2. Select default setting for paper cassette.
3. Press [OK].

Automatic detection of originals

Automatically detect originals of special or non-standard size.

1. Press [Next] of Original/Paper Setup and then [Change] of Original Auto Detect.
2. Press [A6] or [Hagaki] of A6/Hagaki.
Press [Off] or [On] of Folio.
Press [Off] or [On] of 11 x 15"
3. Press [OK].

Media for auto selection

Select default media type for auto paper selection.

1. Press [Next] of Original/Paper Setup and then [Change] of Media for Auto Selection.
2. Select media type for paper selection.
3. Press [OK].

Paper source for cover paper

Select paper source for cover from Cassette 1-4 or MP tray.

1. Press [Next] of Original/Paper Setup and then [Change] of Paper Source for Cover.
2. Select the paper source to load cover paper.
3. Press [OK].

Special paper action

To print on Prepunched, Preprint, and Letterhead, punch-holes might fail to be aligned or print direction might be upside down depending on how to set the originals and combination of copying functions. In such a case, select [Adjust Print Direction] to adjust the print direction. When paper orientation is not important, select [Speed Priority].

1. Press [Next] of Original/Paper Setup and then [Change] of Special Paper Action.
2. Press [Adjust Print Direction] or [Speed Priority].
3. Press [OK].

Switching unit of measurement

Select inch or metric for the unit for paper dimensions.

1. Press [Change] of Measurement.
2. Press [mm] for metric or [Inch] for inch.
3. Press [OK].

Error handling

Select whether cancelling or continuing the job when error has occurred.

1. Press [Next] of Error Handling.
2. Press [Change] at the error to change what to do about it.
3. Select what to do about errors and press [OK].

Output tray

Select output tray respectively for copy jobs, print jobs from Custom Box, computers, and FAX RX data.

1. Press [Next] of Output Tray.
2. Press [Change] of Copy/Custom Box, Printer, or FAX Port1 or FAX Port2.
3. Select Output Tray.
For [Finisher Tray], select [Face Up] (print surface up) or [Face Down] (print surface down) for paper orientation at output.
4. Press [OK].

Function defaults

Set the defaults for available settings such as copying and sending. Setting the frequently-used values as defaults makes subsequent jobs easier.

Original orientation

Set the original orientation defaults.

1. Press [Next] of Function Defaults and then [Change] of Original Orientation.
2. Press [Top Edge Top] or [Top Edge Left].
3. Press [OK].

Continuous scan

Set the continuous scan defaults.

1. Press [Next] of Function Defaults and then [Change] of Continuous Scan.
2. Press [Off] or [On].
3. Press [OK].

Original image

Set the default original document type.

1. Press [Next] of Function Defaults and then [Change] of Original Image.
2. Select [Text+Photo], [Text] or [Photo].
3. Press [OK].

Scanner resolution

Select the default scanning resolution.

1. Press [Next] of Function Defaults and then [Change] of Scan Resolution.
2. Select the default resolution.
3. Press [OK].

Color selection

Select the default scanning color setting.

1. Press [Next] of Function Defaults and then [Change] of Color Selection.
2. Select the default color setting.
3. Press [OK].

File format

Select the default file type to send the scanned originals.

1. Press [Next] of Function Defaults and then [Change] of File Format.
2. Select the default file format.
3. Press [OK].

File separation

Select the default file separation setting.

1. Press [Next] of Function Defaults and then [Change] of File Separation.
2. Press [Off] or [Each Page].
3. Press [OK].

Density

Set the default density.

1. Press [Next] of Function Defaults and then [Change] of Density.
2. Press [Manual (Normal 0)] or [Auto].
3. Press [OK].

Zoom

Select the enlarged/reduced default when paper size/sending size changed after the originals set.

1. Press [Next] of Function Defaults and then [Change] of Zoom.
2. Press [100%] or [Auto].
3. Press [OK].

File name entry

Set an automatically entered name (default) for jobs. Additional information such as Date and Time and Job No. can also be set.

1. Press [Next] of Function Defaults, cursor down key and then [Change] of File Name Entry.
2. Press [File Name] to enter the file name in not more than 30 characters.
3. Press [OK].
4. Press [Date and Time] to add the date/time to the job, or press [Job No.] to add the job number to the job. The added information will be displayed in Additional Info..
5. Press [OK].

E-mail subject/body

Set the subject and body automatically entered (default subject and body) when sending the scanned originals by E-mail.

1. Press [Next] of Function Defaults, cursor down key, and then [Change] of E-mail Subject/Body.
2. Press [Subject] to enter an E-mail subject not more than 60 characters.
3. Press [OK].
4. Press [Body] to enter an E-mail body not more than 500 characters.
5. Press [OK].
6. Check if the entries are correct and press [OK].

Border erase default

Set the default border width to be erased.

1. Press [Next] of Function Defaults, cursor down key and then [Change] of Border Erase Default.
2. Press [+] or [-] for the Border and Gutter width to erase.
3. Press [OK].

Margin default

Set the default margin.

1. Press [Next] of Function Defaults, cursor down key and then [Change] of Margin Default.
2. Press [+] or [-] for the Left/Right and Top/Bottom width margin.)
3. Press [OK].

Collate/Offset

Set the defaults for Collate/Offset.

1. Press [Next] of Function Defaults, cursor down key and then [Change] of Collate/Offset.
2. Select the defaults.
3. Press [OK].

**Auto image rotation**

Select the default Auto Image Rotation setting.

1. Press [Next] of Function Defaults, cursor down key and then [Change] of Auto Image Rotation.
2. Press [Off] or [On].
3. Press [OK].

Form overlay (copy)

Select the default form and form density from Form Box for form overlay for copy jobs.

1. Press [Next] of Function Defaults, cursor down key and then [Change] of Form Overlay (Copy).
2. Press [Select Stored Form].
3. Press [+] or [-] to enter the form density.
4. Press [Select Form].
5. Select the form and press [OK].
6. Press [OK].

Form overlay (box)

Select the default form and form density from Custom Box for form overlay for box print jobs.

1. Press [Next] of Function Defaults, cursor down key and [Change] of Form Overlay (Box).
2. Press [Select Stored Form].
3. Press [+] or [-] to enter the form density.
4. Press [Select Form].
5. Select the Box where the Form is stored and press [Open].
6. Select the form and press [OK].
7. Press [OK].

EcoPrint

Select the EcoPrint default.

1. Press [Next] of Function Defaults, cursor down key and then [Change] of EcoPrint.
2. Press [Off] or [On].
3. Press [OK].

PDF/TIFF/JPEG image

Select the default PDF/TIFF/JPEG file quality.

1. Press [Next] of Function Defaults. Press cursor down key twice and then [Change] of PDF/TIFF/JPEG Image.
2. Select the default image quality from [1 Low Quality (High Comp.) to [5 High Quality (Low Comp.)].
3. Press [OK].

High Comp. PDF image

Select the default High Comp.

1. Press [Next] of Function Defaults. Press cursor down key twice and [Change] of High Comp. PDF Image.
2. Select the default for [Compression Ratio Priority], [Standard], or [Quality Priority].
3. Press [OK].

Repeat copying

Select the repeat copy default.

1. Press [Next] of Function Defaults. Press cursor down key twice and [Change] of Repeat Copy.
2. Press [Off] or [On].
3. Press [OK].

Orientation confirmation set

Select whether to display a screen for selecting the orientation of the originals to be placed on the platen.

1. Press [Change] of Orientation Confirmation.
2. Press [Off] or [On].
3. Press [OK].

(3) Copy settings**Border erase to back page**

Select the border erase method for back of page.

1. Press [Change] of Border Erase to Back Page.
2. Press [Same as Front Page] or [Do not Erase].
3. Press [OK].

Paper selection

Set the default paper selection.

1. Press [Change] of Paper Selection.
2. Press [Auto] or [Default Paper Source].
3. Press [OK].

Auto paper selection

When [Auto] is selected for Paper Selection, set the paper size selection method when the zoom changed.

1. Press [Change] of Auto Paper Selection.
2. Press [Most Suitable Size] or [Same as Original Size].
3. Press [OK].

Auto % priority

When a paper source of different size from the original is selected, select whether automatic zoom (reduce/zoom) is performed.

1. Press [Change] of Auto % Priority.
2. Press [Off] or [On].
3. Press [OK].

Preset limit

Restrict the number of copies that can be made at one time.

1. Press [Change] of Preset Limit.
2. Enter the number of copies using [+] / [-] or numeric keys.
3. Press [OK].

Quick setup registration

Select the copying functions to be registered for Quick Setup.

Six keys of the Quick Setup screen are allocated to typical functions but can be changed as necessary.

1. Press [Next] of Quick Setup Registration.
2. Press [Change] of the function to be registered in Quick Setup.
3. Select a key (1-6) allocated on the Quick Setup Registration screen.
Press [Off] to delete a key from the Quick Setup.
4. Press [OK].

Reserve next priority setting

Select the operation of the reserve copy and interrupt copy functions and for canceling jobs.

1. Press [Change] of Reserve Next Priority.
2. Press [Off] or [On].
3. Press [OK].

(4) Sending settings**Quick setup registration**

Select the sending functions to be registered for Quick Setup.

Six keys of the Quick Setup screen are allocated to typical functions but can be changed as necessary.

1. Press [Next] of Quick Setup Registration.
2. Press [Change] of the function to be registered in Quick Setup.
3. Select a key (1-6) allocated on the Quick Setup Registration screen. Press [Off] to delete a key from the Quick Setup.
4. Press [OK].

High-compression PDF auto color

When documents are sent as highly compressed PDF files, the color and monochrome are automatically detected.

1. Press [Change] of High Comp. PDF Auto Color.
2. Press [Off] or [On].
3. Press [OK].

(5) Document box/Removable memory settings**Quick setup registration**

Select the Storing in Box, Sending from Box, Printing from Box functions to be registered for Quick Setup. Six keys of the Quick Setup screen are allocated to typical functions but can be changed as necessary.

1. Press [Next] of Quick Setup Registration.
2. Press [Next] of Store File, Send, or Print.
3. Press [Change] of the function to be registered in Quick Setup.
4. Select a key (1-6) allocated on the Quick Setup screen. Press [Off] to delete a key from the Quick Setup.
5. Press [OK].

Quick copy/Proof and hold print box

Quick Copy/Proof and Hold Box stores the print data which is printed by using the printer driver as a Quick Copy or Hold after Proof Print job.

1. Press [Next] of Job Box, then [Change] of Quick Copy Job Retention.
2. Enter the maximum number of stored jobs using the [+]/[-].
3. Press [OK].

Repeat copy box

Change the maximum number of Repeat Copy jobs to retain in the document box.

1. Press [Next] of Job Box.
2. Press [Change] of Repeat Copy Retention Number.
3. Enter the maximum number of stored jobs using the [+]/[-].
4. Press [OK].

(6) Printer settings

Emulation

Selection of emulation

Select the emulation for operating this machine by the command for other printers.

1. Press [Change] of Emulation.
2. Select the desired emulation.
3. Press [OK].
4. Press the power key, and after confirming that the power key/indicator and memory indicator have turned off, turn the main power switch off and on.

Setting of alternative emulation

When you have selected [KPD L (Auto)] as emulation mode, you can switch KPD L and another emulation mode (alternative emulation) automatically according to the data to print.

1. Press [Change] of Emulation, [KPD L (Auto)] and [Alt Emulation].
2. Select the desired alternative emulation.
3. Press [OK].
4. Press the power key, and after confirming that the power key/indicator and memory indicator have turned off, turn the main power switch off and on.

Setting of KPD L error report

When an error has occurred during printing in KPD L emulation mode, set whether or not the error report is output.

1. Press [Change] of Emulation, [KPD L] or [KPD L (Auto)], [KPD L Error Report]
2. Press [On] or [Off].
3. Press [OK].
4. Press the power key, and after confirming that the power key/indicator and memory indicator have turned off, turn the main power switch off and on.

Setting of page size and pen

When you have selected KC-GL as emulation mode, you can set the page size, eight kinds of pens, and thickness of each pen.

1. Press [Change] of Emulation, [KC-GL] and [Page Set].
2. Select the paper size.
3. Press [OK].
4. Press [Pen Adjust], [Change] of the pen to change its thickness (1 to 8).
5. Press [+] or [-] to set the pen thickness.
6. Press [OK].
7. Press the power key, and after confirming that the power key/indicator and memory indicator have turned off, turn the main power switch off and on.

Resolution

Select default resolution.

1. Press [Change] of Resolution.
2. Select default resolution.
3. Press [OK].

EcoPrint

EcoPrint conserves toner when printing.

1. Press [Change] of EcoPrint.
2. Press [Off] or [On].
3. Press [OK].

KIR

The machine is equipped with the smoothing KIR functions, which realizes exquisite output resolution of about 2400 dpi x 600 dpi.

1. Press [Change] of KIR.
2. Press [On] or [Off].
3. Press [OK].

Override A4/Letter

Select whether treating A4 size and Letter, which are similar in size, as the same size when printing.

1. Press [Change] of Override A4/Letter.
2. Press [Off] or [On].
3. Press [OK].

Duplex

Select binding orientation for duplex mode.

1. Press [Change] of Duplex.
2. Select [1-sided], [2-sided Bind ShortEdge], or [2-sided Bind LongEdge].
3. Press [OK].

Copies

Set the default number of copies.

1. Press [Change] of Copies.
2. Set the default number of copies using the [+] / [-] or numeric keys.
3. Press [OK].

Orientation

Set the default orientation.

1. Press [Change] of Orientation.
2. Press [Portrait] or [Landscape].
3. Press [OK].

Wide A4

Increase the number of characters per line for A4 paper.

1. Press [Change] of Wide A4.
2. Press [Off] or [On].
3. Press [OK].

Form feed timeout

Receiving print data from the computer, the machine may sometimes have to wait if there is no information identifying the last page has no data any more to be printed. When the preset timeout passes, the machine automatically prints paper.

1. Press cursor down key and [Change] of Form Feed Timeout.
2. Press [+] or [-] to set the form feed timeout.
3. Press [OK].

LF action

Set the line feed action when the machine receives the line feed code.

1. Press the cursor down key and [Change] of LF Action.
2. Select [LF Only], [LF and CR] or [Ignore LF].
3. Press [OK].

CR action

Set the character return action when the machine receives the character return code.

1. Press the cursor down key and [Change] of CR Action.
2. Select [CR Only], [LF and CR] or [Ignore CR].
3. Press [OK].

(7) Network setup

TCP/IP setup by entering IP addresses

Set up TCP/IP to connect to the Windows network. Set the IP addresses, subnet masks, and gateway addresses.

1. Press [Next] of Network and then [Change] of TCP/IP.
2. Press [On] on the left side of the touch panel.
3. Press [Off] of DHCP.
4. Press [IP Address] and enter the address using the numeric keys.
5. Press [Subnet Mask] and enter the address using the numeric keys.
6. Press [Default Gateway] and enter the address using the numeric keys.
7. Check if all the address entries are correct and press [OK].
8. Press the power key and confirm that the power key/indicator and the memory indicator are off. After that, turn the main power switch off and on.

TCP/IP setup (Equipped with DHCP server)

Set up TCP/IP when the network is equipped with the DHCP server.

1. Press [Next] of Network and then [Change] of TCP/IP.
2. Press [On] on the left side of the touch panel.
3. Press [On] of DHCP.
4. Press [OK].
5. Press the power key and confirm that the power key/indicator and the memory indicator are off. After that, turn the main power switch off and on.

Netware setup

Select the NetWare network connection.

1. Press [Next] of Network and then [Change] of NetWare.
2. Press [On].
3. Select the frame type.
4. Press [OK].
5. Press the power key and confirm that the power key/indicator and the memory indicator are off. After that, turn the main power switch off and on.

AppleTalk setup

1. Press [Next] of Network and then [Change] of Apple Talk.
2. Press [On].
3. Press [OK].
4. Press the power key and confirm that the power key/indicator and the memory indicator are off. After that, turn the main power switch off and on.

(8) Printing reports/Sending notice

Printing reports

Print reports to check the machine settings and status. Default settings for printing the result reports can also be configured.

1. Press [Next] of Report Print.
2. Press [Print] to print.
3. Printing starts.

Send result reports

Automatically print a report of transmission results when the transmission is complete.

1. Press [Next] of Result Report Setting, [Next] of Send Result Report and then [Change] of E-mail/Folder.
2. Select [Off], [On], or [Error Only].
3. Press [OK].

(9) Adjustment/Maintenance

Copy density adjustment

Adjust copy density.

1. Press [Next] of Copy Density Adjustment.
2. Press [Change] of Auto for auto density mode or of Manual for manual density mode.
3. Press the key to adjust density.
4. Press [OK].

Print density

Adjust print density.

1. Press [Change] of Print Density.
2. Press the key to adjust density.
3. Press [OK].

Send/Box density adjust

Adjust scan density when sending or storing the data in document box.

1. Press [Next] of Send/Box Density Adjust..
2. Press [Change] of Auto for auto density mode or of Manual for manual density mode.
3. Press the key to adjust density.
4. Press [OK].

Auto drum refresh

Set the duration of time to execute Auto Drum Refresh.

1. Press [Change] of Auto Drum Refresh.
2. Select [Off], [On(Low)] or [On(High)].
3. Press [OK].

Drum refresh

Refresh the drum when image blur or white spots appear on images in copies.

1. Place A3/11x17" on MP tray.
2. Press [Execute] of Drum Refresh1 or Drum Refresh2.
3. Press [Yes].
Drum Refresh starts.

Correcting fine black line

Correct fine black lines (black streaks caused by contamination), which may appear on the copies, when the optional document processor used.

1. Press [Change] of Correcting Black Line.
2. Select [Off], [On (Low)] or [On (High)].
3. Press [OK].

Display brightness

Set the brightness of the touch panel.

1. Press [Change] of Display Brightness.
2. Press the key to adjust brightness.
3. Press [OK].

Silent mode

Make the machine run more quietly. Select this mode when the running noise is uncomfortable.

1. Press [Change] of Silent Mode.
2. Press [Off] or [On].
3. Press [OK].

Auto color correction

Adjust the detection level used by the machine to determine whether the original is color or monochrome during sending.

1. Press [Change] of Auto Color Detection Level.
2. Press the key to set the detection level.
3. Press [OK].

System initialization

Initialize the hard disk mounted on the machine to return to the default mode.

CAUTION: System initialization will erase Custom Document Boxes, data stored in Document Box, addresses in the Address Book, user property, account information, and settings.

1. Press [Execute] of System Initialization.
2. When user login administration is invalid, the user authentication screen is displayed. Enter a login user name and password, and press [Login].
Initial setting: 3060 respectively
3. Press [Yes].
4. Once the initialization ends, the message indicating [Task is completed. Turn the main power switch off and on.] appears.
Turn the main power switch off and on.

(10) Date/Timer**Date/Time**

Set the date and time for the location where you use the machine.

1. Press [Change] of Date/Time.
2. Enter the date and time respectively using the [+]/[-].
3. Press [Off] or [On] of Summer Time and press [OK].

Time zone

Set the time difference in the location you are from GMT.

1. Press [Change] of Time Zone.
2. Select the location using the cursor up/down keys.
3. Press [OK].

Date format

Select the display format of year, month, and date.

1. Press [Change] of Date Format.
2. Select [MM/DD/YYYY], [DD/MM/YYYY], or [YYYY/MM/DD].
3. Press [OK].

Auto panel reset

If no job runs for a certain period of time, automatically reset settings and return to the default setting.

Auto panel reset ON/OFF

Select to use auto panel reset or not.

1. Press [Change] of Auto Panel Reset.
2. Press [Off] or [On].
3. Press [OK].

Reset timer

If you select [On] for auto panel reset, set the amount of time to wait before auto panel reset.

1. Press [Change] of Reset Timer.
2. Enter the time using the [+]/[-].
3. Press [OK].

Auto low power mode

Set the amount of time to wait before Auto Low Power Mode.

1. Press [Auto Low Power Mode].
2. Enter the time using the [+]/[-] or numeric keys.
3. Press [OK].

Auto sleep

If no job runs for a certain period of time, automatically enter sleep mode.

Auto sleep ON/OFF

Select whether to use auto sleep or not.

1. Press [Change] of Auto Sleep.
2. Press [Off] or [On].
3. Press [OK].

Sleep timer

If you select [On] for auto sleep, set the amount of time to wait before auto sleep.

1. Press [Change] of Sleep Timer.
2. Enter the time using the [+] / [-] or numeric keys.
3. Press [OK].

Auto error clear

If an error occurs during printing, the print job stops to wait for the next step to be taken by the user. In the auto error clear mode, automatically clear the error after a set amount of time elapses.

Auto error clear ON/OFF

Select whether to use auto error clear or not.

1. Press [Change] of Auto Error Clear.
2. Press [Off] or [On].
3. Press [OK].

Error clear timer

If you select [On] for auto error clear, set the amount of time to wait before automatically clearing errors.

1. Press [Change] of Error Clear Timer.
2. Enter the time using the [+] / [-].
3. Press [OK].

(11) Editing Destination (Address Book/Adding One-Touch Keys)

Save frequently used destinations to Address Book or One-touch Keys and the saved destinations can be changed. The destinations are available for Send as E-mail, Send to Folder, and Fax Transmission (optional).

Adding a destination

Add a new destination to the Address Book.

Adding an individual

1. Press [Register/Edit] of Address Book, [Add], [Contact] and then [Next].
2. Press [Change] of Address Number.
3. Enter a particular address number using the [+] / [-] or numeric keys.
4. Press [OK].
5. Press [Change] of Name.
6. Enter the destination name displayed on the Address Book and press [OK].
7. Press [Address].
8. Select transmission method from E-mail, Folder (FTP), FAX or Folder (SMB) using cursor up/down keys.
9. Press [Change Dest.].

E-mail Address

1. Press [E-mail Address] to enter the Email address and press [OK].
2. Check if the entries are correct and press [OK].

The Folder (FTP) Address

1. Press [Host Name], [Path], [Login User Name], and [Login Password] to enter relevant information respectively and press [OK].
2. Check if the entries are correct and press [OK].

The Folder (SMB) Address

1. Press [Host Name], [Path], [Login User Name], and [Login Password] to enter relevant information respectively and press [OK].
2. Check if the entries are correct and press [OK].

10. Check if the destination entry is correct and press [Register].

Adding a Group

Designations in the group can be added at the same time.

1. Press [Register/Edit] of Address Book, [Add], [Group] and then [Next].
2. Press [Change] of Address Number.
3. Enter a particular Address Number using the [+] / [-].
4. Press [OK].
5. Press [Change] of Name.
6. Enter the group name displayed on the Address Book.
7. Press [Group Member].
8. Press [Add].
9. Select a destination (individual) to add to the group.
10. Press [OK].
11. Check if the selected destination was added to the group and press [Register].

Adding a destination on One-touch Key

Add a new destination (individual or group).

1. Press [Register/Edit] of One-touch Key.
2. Select a One-touch Key number (001 to 100) for the destination. Pressing [No.] enables direct entry of a One-touch Key number.
3. Press [Register/Edit]. The address book appears.
4. Select a destination (individual or group) to add to the One-touch Key number.
5. Press [OK].

(12) User login administration

User login administration specifies how the user access is administered on this machine.

Enabling/Disabling User Login Administration

Enable user login administration.

1. When user login administration is invalid, the user authentication screen is displayed. Enter a login user name and password, and press [Login].
Initial setting: 3060 respectively
2. Press [Next] of User Login Setting and then [Change] of User Login.
3. Select [Off], [Local Authentic.] or [Network Authentic.].
When selecting [Network Authentic.], enter the host name (62 characters or less) and domain name (254 characters or less) for the Authentication Server.
Select [NTLM(WinNT)] or [Kerberos(Win2000/2003)] as the authentication method.
4. Press [OK].

Adding a user

Add a new user.

1. When user login administration is invalid, the user authentication screen is displayed. Enter a login user name and password, and press [Login].
2. Press [Next] of User Login Setting, [Register/Edit] of Local User List, and then [Add].
3. Press [Change] of User Name.
4. Enter the user name and press [OK].
5. Enter the login user name and E-mail address.
6. Press [Change] of Password and then [Password].
7. Enter the password and press [OK].
8. Press [Confirm Password].
9. Enter the same password to confirm and press [OK].
10. Press [Change] of Access Level.
11. Select the user access privilege and press [OK].
12. Press [Change] of Account Name.
13. Select the account and press [OK].
14. Press [Register].

Unknown login user name job

This specifies the behavior for handling the jobs sent with unknown login user names.

1. When user login administration is invalid, the user authentication screen is displayed. Enter a login user name and password, and press [Login].
2. Press [Change] of Unknown ID Job.
3. Press [Reject] or [Permit].
4. Press [OK].

(13) Job accounting

Job accounting Manages the copy/print count incurred by individual accounts by assigning an ID to each account.

Enabling/Disabling job accounting

Enable job accounting.

1. If user login administration is invalid, the user authentication screen is displayed. Enter a login user name and password, and press [Login].
Initial setting: 3060 respectively
2. Press [Next] of Job Accounting Setting, and then [Change] of Job Accounting.
3. Press [On] or [Off].
4. Press [OK].

Adding an account

Add a new account.

1. When user login administration is invalid, the user authentication screen is displayed. Enter a login user name and password, and press [Login].
2. Press [Next] of Job Accounting Setting, [Register/Edit] of Accounting List, and then [Add].
3. Press [Change] of Account Name.
4. Enter the account name and press [OK].
5. Enter the Account ID.
6. Activate or deactivate restriction.
7. Press [Register].

Managing the copy/print counts

Select how the copying and printing page counts are shown -either the total of both or each of copying and printing individually.

1. When user login administration is invalid, the user authentication screen is displayed. Enter a login user name and password, and press [Login].
2. Press [Next] of Job Accounting Setting, [Next] of Default Setting and then [Change] of Copy/Printer Count.
3. Press [Total] or [Split].
4. Press [OK].

Restricting the use of the machine

Restrict the use of the machine by account or the number of sheets available.

1. When user login administration is invalid, the user authentication screen is displayed. Enter a login user name and password, and press [Login].
2. Press [Next] of Job Accounting Setting, [Register/Edit] of Accounting List, and then [Add].
3. Press [Change] of Print Restriction Copier, Print Restriction Printer, Scan Restriction Others, or Fax TX Restriction.
4. Select [Off], [Counter Limit], or [Reject Usage].
When selecting [Counter Limit], enter the number of pages using the [+]/[-] or numeric keys.
5. Press [OK].
6. Repeat steps 3 to 4 for other accounts to be restricted.
7. Press [Register].

Applying limit of restriction

Specify how the machine behaves when the counter has reached the limit of restriction.

1. When user login administration is invalid, the user authentication screen is displayed. Enter a login user name and password, and press [Login].
2. Press [Next] of Job Accounting Setting, [Next] of Default Setting and then [Change] of Apply Limit.
3. Select [Immediately], [Subsequently], or [Alert Only].
4. Press [OK].

Counting the number of pages printed

Counts the number of pages printed. Counts are classified into Total Job Accounting and Each Job Accounting. A new count can also be started after resetting the count data which was stored for a certain period of time.

Total job accounting/Resetting the counter

Count the number of pages for all accounts and resets the counts for those accounts at one time.

1. When user login administration is invalid, the user authentication screen is displayed. Enter a login user name and password, and press [Login].
2. Press [Next] of Job Accounting Setting and then [Next] of Total Job Accounting.
3. Press [Check] at the function to check the count. The results will be displayed.
4. Confirm the count and press [Close].
5. Press [Execute] of Counter Reset to reset the counter.
6. Press [Yes] on the screen to confirm the reset. The counter is reset.

Each job accounting/Resetting the counter

Count the number of pages for each account and resets the counts by account.

1. When user login administration is invalid, the user authentication screen is displayed. Enter a login user name and password, and press [Login].
2. Press [Next] of Job Accounting Setting and [Check] of Each Job Accounting.
3. Select the account to check the count.
4. Press [Detail].
5. Press [Check] at the function to check the count. The results will be displayed.
6. Confirm the count and press [Close].
7. Press [Execute] of Counter Reset to reset the counter.
8. Press [Yes] on the screen to confirm the reset. The counter will be reset.

Counting by paper size

Count the number of pages by paper size (e.g. Letter).

1. When user login administration is invalid, the user authentication screen is displayed. Enter a login user name and password, and press [Login].
2. Press [Next] of Job Accounting Setting, [Next] of Default Setting, [Change] of Count by Paper Size, [Change] of Paper Size 1 to 5 and then [On].
3. Select the paper size.
4. Press [Media Type] to specify paper type.
5. Select the media type and press [OK].
6. Press [OK].

Printing an accounting report

Print out the total pages counted at all relevant accounts as an accounting report.

1. When user login administration is invalid, the user authentication screen is displayed. Enter a login user name and password, and press [Login].
2. Press [Next] of Job Accounting Setting and then [Print] of Print Accounting Report.
3. Press [Yes] on the screen to confirm the printing.

1-4-1 Paper misfeed detection

(1) Paper misfeed indication

When a paper misfeed occurs, the machine immediately stops copying and displays the jam location on the operation panel.

Paper misfeed counts sorted by the detection condition can be checked in maintenance item U903.

To remove paper jammed in the machine, open the front cover, left cover or pull the cassette out.

To remove original jammed in the optional DP, open the document processor top cover.

To remove the jammed paper in optional document finisher, detach the finisher from the machine.

Paper misfeed detection can be reset by opening and closing the respective covers to turn safety switch off and on.

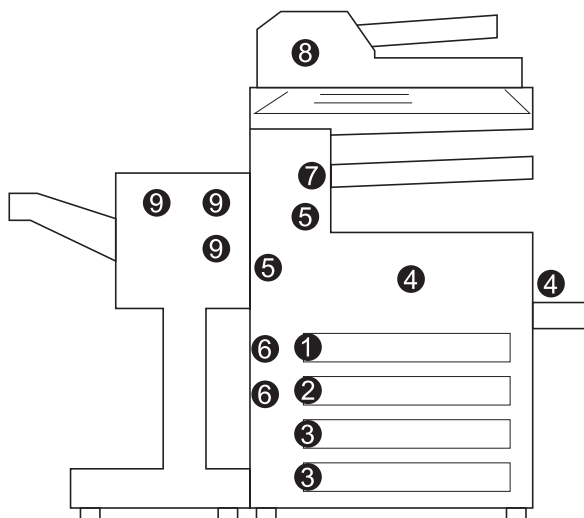


Figure 1-4-1

- (1) Misfeed in cassette 1
- (2) Misfeed in cassette 2
- (3) Misfeed in optional cassette 3 or 4
- (4) Misfeed in MP tray
- (5) Misfeed in duplex unit or left cover 1
- (6) Misfeed in left cover 2 or 3
- (7) Misfeed in optional built-in finisher
- (8) Misfeed in optional DP
- (9) Misfeed in optional document finisher

(2) Paper misfeed detection conditions

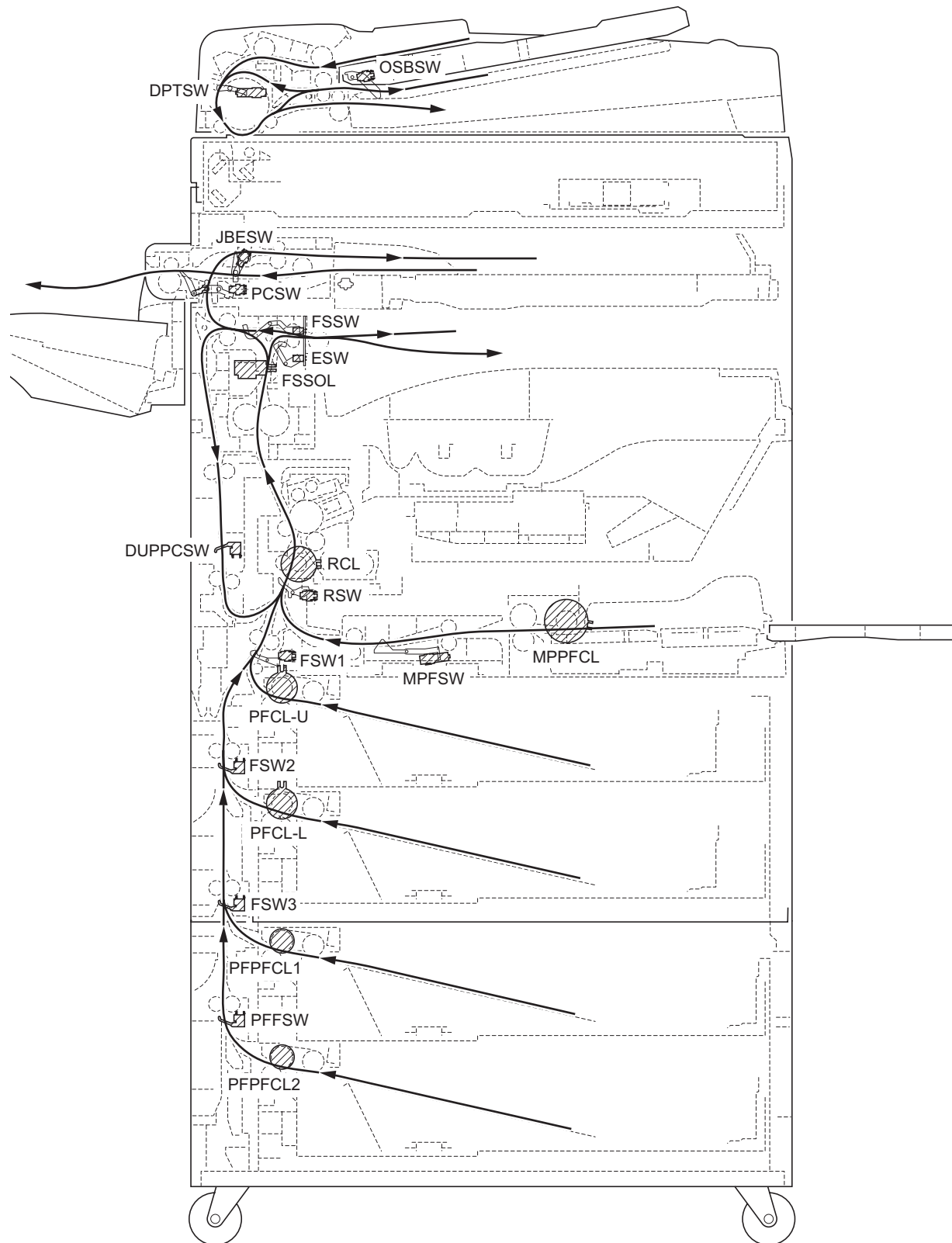


Figure 1-4-2

Section	Description	Conditions	Specified time
System	04 Cover open	Cover is open during copying.	-
	05 Secondary paper feed does not start	Secondary paper feed does not start within specified time of arrival of paper at the registration section.	30 s
Paper feed section	10 No paper feed from cassette 1	Feed switch 1 (FSW1) does not turn on within the specified time of upper paper feed clutch (PFCL-U) turning on; the clutch is then successively turned off for 1 s and turned back on, but the switch again fails to turn on within the specified time.	1864 ms
	11 No paper feed from cassette 2	Feed switch 2 (FSW2) does not turn on within the specified time of lower paper feed clutch (PFCL-L) turning on; the clutch is then successively turned off for 1 s and turned back on, but the switch again fails to turn on within the specified time.	2121 ms
	12 No paper feed from optional cassette 3	Feed switch 3 (FSW3) does not turn on within the specified time of paper feeder paper feed clutch 1 (PFPFCL1) turning on; the clutch is then successively turned off for 1 s and turned back on, but the switch again fails to turn on within the specified time.	-
		Left cover 3 is opened in prior to feed switch 3 (FSW3) is turned on.	-
	13 No paper feed from optional cassette 4	The paper feeder feed switch (PFFSW) does not turn on within the specified time of paper feeder paper feed clutch 2 (PFPFCL2) turning on; the clutch is then successively turned off for 1 s and turned back on, but the switch again fails to turn on within the specified time.	-
		Left cover 3 is opened in prior to the paper feeder feed switch (PFFSW) is turned on.	-
	14 No paper feed from MP tray	The MP feed switch (MPFSW) does not turn on within the specified time of the MP paper feed clutch (MPPFCL) turning on; the clutch is then successively turned off for 1 s and turned back on, but the switch again fails to turn on within the specified time.	993 ms
	18 Misfeed in vertical paper conveying section	Feed switch 1 (FSW1) does not turn off within specified time of feed switch 2 (FSW2) turning on (paper feed from cassette 2).	1314 ms
		Feed switch 1 (FSW1) does not turn on within specified time of feed switch 2 (FSW2) turning on (paper feed from cassette 2).	1314 ms
		Feed switch 1 (FSW1) does not turn off within specified time of feed switch 2 (FSW2) turning on (paper feed from optional cassette 3, 4).	1386 ms
		Feed switch 1 (FSW1) does not turn on within specified time of feed switch 2 (FSW2) turning on (paper feed from optional cassette 3, 4).	1386 ms
		Feed switch 2 (FSW2) does not turn off within specified time of feed switch 3 (FSW3) turning on (paper feed from optional cassette 3, 4).	1686 ms
		Feed switch 2 (FSW2) does not turn on within specified time of feed switch 3 (FSW3) turning on (paper feed from optional cassette 3, 4).	1686 ms

TONER

www.tonerplus.com.ua

Section	Description	Conditions	Specified time
Paper feed section	19 Misfeed in paper feeder vertical paper conveying section	The feed switch 3 (FSW3) does not turn off within specified time of its turning on (paper feed from optional cassette 3).	1429 ms + Paper length
		Feed switch 3 (FSW3) does not turn off within specified time of the paper feeder feed switch (PFFSW) turning on (paper feed from optional cassette 4).	1064 ms
		The feed switch 3 (FSW3) does not turn off within specified time of its turning on (paper feed from optional cassette 4).	1064 ms
		Feed switch 3 (FSW3) does not turn on within specified time of the paper feeder feed switch (PFFSW) turning on (paper feed from optional cassette 4).	2000 ms
	20 Misfeed in MP tray paper conveying section	The registration switch (RSW) does not turn off within specified time of the MP feed switch (MPFSW) turning on.	1686 ms
		The registration switch (RSW) does not turn on within specified time of the MP feed switch (MPFSW) turning on.	1686 ms
	21 Multiple sheets in paper feed section	The feed switch 1 (FSW1) does not turn off within specified time of its turning on (paper feed from cassette 1).	1429 ms + Paper length
		The feed switch 2 (FSW2) does not turn off within specified time of its turning on (paper feed from cassette 2).	1429 ms + Paper length
		The feed switch 3 (FSW3) does not turn off within specified time of its turning on (paper feed from optional cassette 3, 4/detected by the machine).	1429 ms + Paper length
		The feed switch 3 (FSW3) does not turn off within specified time of its turning on (paper feed from optional cassette 3, 4/detected by the paper feeder).	4300 ms
		The feed switch 2 (FSW2) does not turn off within specified time of its turning on (paper feed from optional cassette 3).	1686 ms
		The paper feeder feed switch (PFFSW) does not turn off within specified time of its turning on (paper feed from optional cassette 4).	4300 ms
		The feed switch 1 (FSW1) does not turn off within specified time of the upper paper feed clutch (PFCL-U) turning on.	1864 ms
		The feed switch 2 (FSW2) does not turn off within specified time of the lower paper feed clutch (PFCL-L) turning on.	2121 ms
		The feed switch 3 (FSW3) does not turn off within specified time of the paper feeder paper feed clutch 1 (PFPFCL1) turning on.	2036 ms
	23 Multiple sheets in MP tray conveying section	The MP feed switch (MPFSW) does not turn off within specified time of its turning on.	1429 ms + Paper length

Section	Description	Conditions	Specified time
Paper conveying section	30 Misfeed in registration/ transfer section	The registration switch (RSW) does not turn off within specified time of the feed switch 1 (FSW1) turning off.	1314 ms
		The registration switch (RSW) does not turn off within specified time of the feed switch 1 (FSW1) turning on.	1100 ms
		The registration switch (RSW) does not turn on within specified time of the feed switch 1 (FSW1) turning on.	1100 ms
		The registration switch (RSW) does not turn off within specified time of the MP feed switch (MPFSW) turning off.	1686 ms
Fuser section	40 Misfeed in fuser section (MP tray)	The eject switch (ESW) does not turn on within specified time of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.	2321 ms
	41 Misfeed in fuser section (cassette 1) 42 Misfeed in fuser section (cassette 2) 43 Misfeed in fuser section (optional cassette 3) 44 Misfeed in fuser section (optional cassette 4) 47 Misfeed in fuser section (duplex section)	The feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn on within specified time of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.	1336 ms
Eject section	50 Misfeed in eject section	The eject switch (ESW) does not turn off within specified time of the registration switch (RSW) turning off.	2321 ms
		The eject switch (ESW) does not turn off within specified time of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.	2321 ms
	51 Misfeed in job separator eject section	The job separator eject switch (JBESW) does not turn on within specified time of the feedshift switch (FSSW) turning on.	1350 ms
		The job separator eject switch (JBESW) does not turn off within specified time of the feedshift switch (FSSW) turning off.	714 ms + Paper length
		The job separator eject switch (JBESW) does not turn off within specified time of the feedshift switch (FSSW) turning on.	1350 ms
Feedshift section	52 Misfeed in feedshift section	The feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn on within specified time of the start of eject motor (EM) reverse rotation.	1121 ms
		During paper switchback operation, the feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn off within specified time of the its turning on.	4514 ms
		The feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn off within specified time of the its turning on.	4514 ms
		The feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn off within specified time of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.	2321 ms

Section	Description	Conditions	Specified time
Duplex section	60 Duplex paper conveying section 1	The duplex paper conveying switch (DUPPCSW) does not turn on within specified time of the feedshift switch (FSSW) turning on.	2621 ms
		The duplex paper conveying switch (DUPPCSW) does not turn off within specified time of the feedshift switch (FSSW) turning off.	2629 ms
	61 Duplex paper conveying section 2	The registration switch (RSW) does not turn on within specified time of the duplex paper conveying switch (DUPPCSW) turning on.	1636 ms
		The registration switch (RSW) does not turn off within specified time of the duplex paper conveying switch (DUPPCSW) turning off.	1493 ms
Optional DP	70 No original feed	The DP timing switch (DPTSW) does not turn on within specified time during the first sheet feeding (Retry 5 times).	1468 pulses
		The DP timing switch (DPTSW) does not turn on within specified time during the second sheet feeding (Retry 5 times).	1468 pulses
	71 An original jam in the original conveying section 1	DP timing switch (DPTSW) does not turn off within specified time of the original conveying motor (OCM) turning on.	9900 pulses 30558 pulses for large sizes
	72 An original jam in the original conveying section 2	DP timing switch (DPTSW) turns off within the specified time of period of the original conveying motor (OCM) turning on.	1145 pulses
	73 An original jam in the original switchback section	During original switchback operation, DP timing switch (DPTSW) does not turn off within specified time of the original conveying motor (OCM) turning on.	9900 pulses 30558 pulses for large sizes
	74 An original jam in the original switchback/feed section	DP timing switch (DPTSW) does not turn on within specified time of the original switchback motor (OSBM) turning on.	2300 pulses
	75 An original jam in the original switchback/conveying section	The original switchback switch (OSBSW) does not turn on within specified time of the DP timing switch (DPTSW) turning off.	1815 pulses
	78 Document processor cover open	The document processor or document processor top cover is opened during original feeding. DP timing switch (DPTSW) or original switchback switch (OSBSW) turns on when starting the original paper feed.	-
Optional finisher	80 Finisher timeout jam (built-in finisher only)	Paper ejection is not output from the machine to the document finisher within specified time of the paper conveying switch (PCSW) turning on.	15 s

Section	Description	Conditions	Specified time
Optional finisher	81 Paper entry sensor nonarrival jam	(Document finisher) The paper entry sensor (PES) is not turned on even if a specified time has elapsed after the machine eject signal was received.	2627 ms
		(Built-in finisher) The paper conveying switch (PCSW) is not turned on even if a specified time has elapsed after the machine eject signal was received.	2000 ms
		(Built-in finisher) The paper conveying switch (PCSW) does not turn off within specified time of its turning on when paper is conveyed to the process table from the paper conveying unit.	1429 ms + Paper length
	82 Jam in stapler	(Document finisher) The staple home position sensor (STSPS) is not turned on within the specified time when driving the staple motor (STM).	1000 ms
		(Built-in finisher) The staple home position sensor (STHPS) is not turned on within the specified time when driving the staple motor (STM).	600 ms
	83 Exit sensor stay jam	(Document finisher) In the straight mode, the exit sensor (EXS) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	1680 ms
		(Document finisher) In the offset or staple mode, the exit sensor (EXS) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	5375 ms
		(Built-in finisher) The paper conveying switch (PCSW) does not turn off within specified time of its turning on when paper is ejected to the finisher tray from the process table.	1429 ms + Paper length
	91 Finisher cover open (document finisher only)	The finisher cover becomes open during paper is running. Paper is remaining in paths at power on.	-
	92 Exit sensor non-arrival jam (document finisher only)	In the straight mode, the exit sensor (EXS) is not turned on even if a specified time has elapsed after the paper entry sensor (PES) was turned on.	1770 ms
	93 Reverse sensor jam (document finisher only)	The reverse sensor (REVS) does not turn on within specified time of paper entry sensor (PES) turning on.	1125 ms
		The reverse sensor (REVS) is not turned on within specified time.	Depends on paper size
		The reverse sensor (REVS) does not turn off within specified time of paper entry sensor (PES) turning off.	654 ms
		The reverse sensor (REVS) is not turned off within specified time its turning on.	Depends on paper size

Section	Description	Conditions	Specified time
Optional finisher	94 Paper entry sensor stay/remaining jam (document finisher only)	The paper entry sensor (PES) is not turned off within specified time its turning on.	Depends on paper size
		The paper entry sensor (PES) is not turned off within specified time its turning on.	-
	95 Paper conveying sensor jam (document finisher only)	The paper conveying sensor (PCS) does not turn on within specified time of reverse sensor (REVS) turning on.	-
		The paper conveying sensor (PCS) does not turn off within specified time of reverse sensor (REVS) turning off.	-
	96 Jam between the built-in finisher and machine (built-in finisher only)	The paper conveying switch (PCSW) is not turned on within the specified time when paper is ejected to the finisher tray from the process table.	2000 ms

(3) Paper misfeeds

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(1) A paper jam in the paper feed, conveying or eject section is indicated as soon as the main power switch is turned on.	A piece of paper torn from copy paper is caught around feed switch 1/2/3, registration switch, eject switch or feedshift switch.	Check visually and remove it, if any.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Feed switch 1/2/3, registration switch, eject switch, feedshift switch
(2) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (no paper feed from cassette 1). Jam code 10	Paper is extremely curled.	Change the paper.
	Check if the paper feed pulley, separation pulley or forwarding pulley of the cassette 1 are deformed.	Check visually and replace any deformed pulleys.
	Broken feed switch 1 actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective feed switch 1.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 1 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Check if the upper paper feed clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U032 and select the upper paper feed clutch on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
(3) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (no paper feed from cassette 2). Jam code 11	Electrical problem with the upper paper feed clutch.	Check (see page 1-4-39).
	Paper is extremely curled.	Change the paper.
	Check if the paper feed pulley, separation pulley or forwarding pulley of the cassette 2 are deformed.	Check visually and replace any deformed pulleys.
	Broken feed switch 2 actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective feed switch 2.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 2 on and off manually. Replace feed switch 2 if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Check if the lower paper feed clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U032 and select the lower paper feed clutch on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the lower paper feed clutch.	Check (see page 1-4-39).

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(4) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (no paper feed from optional cassette 3). Jam code 12	Paper is extremely curled.	Change the paper.
	Check if the paper feed pulley, forwarding pulley and separation pulley of optional cassette 3 are deformed.	Check visually and replace any deformed pulleys.
	Broken feed switch 3 actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective feed switch 3.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 3 on and off manually. Replace feed switch 3 if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Check if paper feeder paper feed clutch 1 malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U247 and select paper feeder paper feed clutch 1 on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with paper feeder paper feed clutch 1.	Check (see service manual of paper feeder).
(5) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (no paper feed from optional cassette 4). Jam code 13	Paper is extremely curled.	Change the paper.
	Check if the paper feed pulley, forwarding pulley and separation pulley of optional cassette 4 are deformed.	Check visually and replace any deformed pulleys.
	Broken paper feeder feed switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective paper feeder feed switch.	With 5 V DC present at YC2-8 on the paper feeder main PWB, check if YC2-7 on the paper feeder main PWB remains low when the paper feeder feed switch is turned on and off. If it does, replace the paper feeder feed switch.
	Check if paper feeder paper feed clutch 2 malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U247 and select paper feeder paper feed clutch 2 on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with paper feeder paper feed clutch 2.	Check (see service manual of paper feeder).
(6) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (no paper feed from MP tray). Jam code 14	Paper is extremely curled.	Change the paper.
	Check if the MP paper feed pulley, MP forwarding pulley and MP separation pulley are deformed.	Check visually and replace any deformed pulleys.
	Broken MP feed switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective MP feed switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn MP feed switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Check if the MP paper feed clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U032 and select MP paper feed clutch on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the MP paper feed clutch.	Check (see page 1-4-39).

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(7) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (jam in vertical paper conveying section). Jam code 18	Broken feed switch 1/2/3 actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn following switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Feed switch 1/2/3
	Defective feed pulleys or feed rollers.	Check visually and replace.
(8) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (jam in optional paper feeder vertical paper conveying section). Jam code 19	Broken feed switch 3 actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective feed switch 3.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 3 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Broken paper feeder feed switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective paper feeder feed switch.	With 5 V DC present at YC2-8 on the paper feeder main PWB, check if YC2-7 on the paper feeder main PWB remains low when the paper feeder feed switch is turned on and off. If it does, replace the paper feeder feed switch.
(9) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (jam in MP tray paper conveying section). Jam code 20	Broken MP feed switch or registration switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn following switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. MP feed switch, registration switch
(10) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (multiple sheets in paper feed section). Jam code 21	Broken feed switch 1/2/3 actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Feed switch 1/2/3
	Broken paper feeder feed switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective paper feeder feed switch.	With 5 V DC present at YC2-8 on the paper feeder main PWB, check if YC2-7 on the paper feeder main PWB remains low when the paper feeder feed switch is turned on and off. If it does, replace the paper feeder feed switch.
	Check if the clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U032 and select following clutch on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary. Upper paper feed clutch, lower paper feed clutch
	Electrical problem with clutch.	Check (see page 1-4-39).
	Check if paper feeder paper feed clutch 1 malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U247 and select paper feeder paper feed clutch 1 on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(10) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (multiple sheets in paper feed section). Jam code 21	Electrical problem with paper feeder paper feed clutch 1.	Check (see service manual of paper feeder).
	Defective feed pulleys or feed rollers.	Check visually and replace.
(11) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (multiple sheets in MP tray conveying section). Jam code 23	Broken MP feed switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. MP feed switch
(12) A paper jam in the paper conveying section is indicated during copying (jam in registration/transfer section). Jam code 30	Broken feed switch 1, registration switch or MP feed switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Feed switch 1, registration switch, MP feed switch
	The contact between the right and left registration rollers is not correct.	Check visually and replace.
(13) A paper jam in the fuser section is indicated during copying (jam in fuser section). Jam codes 40 to 44 and 47	Broken eject switch or feed-shift switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Eject switch, feedshift switch
	Check if the registration clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U032 and select the registration clutch on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the registration clutch.	Check (see page 1-4-39).
(14) A paper jam in the eject section is indicated during copying (jam in eject section). Jam code 50	Broken eject switch or registration switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Registration switch, eject switch
	Check if the registration clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U032 and select the registration clutch on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the registration clutch.	Check (see page 1-4-39).

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(15) A paper jam in the eject section is indicated during copying (jam in optional job separator eject section). Jam code 51	Broken feedshift switch or job separator eject switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Feedshift switch, job separator eject switch
(16) A paper jam in the feedshift section is indicated during copying (jam in feedshift section). Jam code 52	Check if the feedshift solenoid malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U033 and select the feedshift solenoid on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the feedshift solenoid.	Check (see page 1-4-40).
	Broken feedshift switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Feedshift switch
	Check if the registration clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U032 and select the registration clutch on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with the registration clutch.	Check (see page 1-4-39).
(17) A paper jam in the duplex section is indicated during copying (jam in duplex paper conveying section 1). Jam code 60	Broken feedshift switch or duplex paper conveying switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Feedshift switch, duplex paper conveying switch
(18) A paper jam in the duplex section is indicated during copying (jam in duplex paper conveying section 2). Jam code 61	Broken duplex paper conveying switch or registration switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Duplex paper conveying switch, registration switch

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(19) An original jams in optional DP is indicated during copying (no original feed). Jam code 70	Defective DP timing switch.	Run maintenance item U244 and turn the DP timing switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Check if the original feed motor malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U243 and select the original feed motor on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
(20) An original jams in optional DP is indicated during copying (a jam in the original conveying section 1). Jam code 71	Defective DP timing switch.	Run maintenance item U244 and turn the DP timing switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
(21) An original jams in optional DP is indicated during copying (a jam in the original conveying section 2). Jam code 72	Defective DP timing switch.	Run maintenance item U244 and turn the DP timing switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Check if the original conveying motor malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U243 and select the original conveying motor on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
(22) An original jams in optional DP is indicated during copying (a jam in the original switchback section). Jam code 73	Defective DP timing switch.	Run maintenance item U244 and turn the DP timing switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Check if the original conveying motor malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U243 and select the original conveying motor on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
(23) An original jams in optional DP is indicated during copying (a jam in the original switchback/feed section). Jam code 74	Defective DP timing switch.	Run maintenance item U244 and turn the DP timing switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Check if the original switchback motor malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U243 and select the original switchback motor on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
(24) An original jams in optional DP is indicated during copying (a jam in the original switchback/conveying section). Jam code 75	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U244 and turn switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. DP timing switch, original switchback switch
(25) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during copying (jam between finisher and machine). Jam code 80	Defective paper entry sensor.	With 5 V DC present at CN14-1 and CN14-3 on the finisher main PWB, check if CN14-2 and CN14-4 on the finisher main PWB remains low or high when the paper entry sensor is turned on and off. If it does, replace the paper entry sensor.

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(26) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during copying (paper jam during paper insertion to the finisher). Jam code 81	Document finisher	
	Extremely curled paper.	Change the paper.
	Defective paper entry sensor.	With 5 V DC present at CN14-1 and CN14-3 on the finisher main PWB, check if CN14-2 and CN14-4 on the finisher main PWB remains low or high when the paper entry sensor is turned on and off. If it does, replace the paper entry sensor.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
	Built-in finisher	
	Extremely curled paper.	Change the paper.
	Defective paper conveying switch.	With 5 V DC present at YC2-23 on the finisher control PWB, check if YC2-21 on the finisher control PWB remains low or high when the paper conveying switch is turned on and off. If it does, replace the paper conveying switch.
	Check if the feedshift roller or feedshift pulley is deformed.	Check and remedy.
(27) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during copying (finisher stapler jam). Jam code 82	Document finisher	
	Defective staple home position sensor.	With 5 V DC present at CN10-2 on the finisher main PWB, check if CN10-5 on the finisher main PWB remains low or high. If it does, replace the stapler section.
	Built-in finisher	
	The stapler is blocked with a staple.	Remove the stapler cartridge, and check the cartridge and the stapling section of the stapler. Remove the staple if any.
	Defective stapler section.	With 5 V DC present at YC2-24 on the finisher control PWB, check if YC2-19 on the finisher control PWB remains low or high. If it does, replace the stapler section.
(28) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during copying (eject sensor stay jam). Jam code 83	Document finisher	
	Defective eject sensor.	With 5 V DC present at CN5-4 on the finisher main PWB, check if CN5-6 on the finisher main PWB remains low or high when the eject sensor is turned on and off. If it does, replace the eject sensor.
	Check if the paper conveying motor malfunctions.	Check and remedy.
	Check if the eject roller and eject pulley contact each other.	Check and remedy.
	Check if the eject guide is deformed.	Check and remedy.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(28) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during copying (eject sensor stay jam). Jam code 83	Built-in finisher	
	Defective paper conveying switch.	With 5 V DC present at YC2-23 on the finisher control PWB, check if YC2-21 on the finisher control PWB remains low when the paper conveying switch is turned on and off. If it does, replace the paper conveying switch.
	Check if the eject roller or eject pulley is deformed.	Check and remedy.
(29) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during copying (eject sensor non-arrival jam). Jam code 92	Defective eject sensor.	With 5 V DC present at CN5-4 on the finisher main PWB, check if CN5-6 on the finisher main PWB remains low or high when the eject sensor is turned on and off. If it does, replace the eject sensor.
	Check if the paper conveying motor malfunctions.	Check.
	Check if the eject roller and eject pulley contact each other.	Check and remedy.
	Check if the eject guide is deformed.	Check and remedy.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
(30) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during copying (reverse sensor jam). Jam code 93	Defective reverse sensor.	With 5 V DC present at CN14-5 on the finisher main PWB, check if CN14-7 on the finisher main PWB remains low or high when the reverse sensor is turned on and off. If it does, replace the reverse sensor.
	Check if the reverse motor malfunctions.	Check.
	Check if the reverse roller and reverse pulley contact each other.	Check and remedy.
	Check if the reverse guide is deformed.	Check and remedy.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
(31) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during copying (paper entry sensor stay jam). Jam code 94	Extremely curled paper.	Change the paper.
	Defective paper entry sensor.	With 5 V DC present at CN14-1 and CN14-3 on the finisher main PWB, check if CN14-2 and CN14-4 on the main PCB remains low or high when the paper entry sensor is turned on and off. If it does, replace the paper entry sensor.
	Check if the paper entry guide is deformed.	Check and remedy.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(32) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during copying (paper conveying sensor jam). Jam code 95	Defective paper conveying sensor.	With 5 V DC present at CN4-4 on the finisher main PWB, check if CN4-6 on the finisher main PWB remains low or high when the paper conveying sensor is turned on and off. If it does, replace the paper conveying sensor.
	Check if the paper conveying motor malfunctions.	Check.
	Check if the paper conveying roller and paper conveying pulley contact each other.	Check and remedy.
	Check if the paper conveying guide is deformed.	Check and remedy.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
(33) A paper jam in optional built-in finisher is indicated during copying (jam between finisher and machine). Jam code 96	Defective paper conveying switch.	With 5 V DC present at YC2-23 on the finisher control PWB, check if YC2-21 on the finisher control PWB remains low when the paper conveying switch is turned on and off. If it does, replace the paper conveying switch.
	Check if the eject roller or eject pulley is deformed.	Check and remedy.

1-4-2 Self-diagnosis

(1) Self-diagnostic function

This unit is equipped with a self-diagnostic function. When a problem is detected, copying is disabled and the problem displayed as a code consisting of C followed by a number, indicating the nature of the problem.

A message is also displayed requesting the user to call for service.

After removing the problem, the self-diagnostic function can be reset by turning the main power switch off and back on.

List of system errors

When an unexpected error is detected for some reason, a system error will be indicated. After a system error is indicated, the error can be cleared by turning the main power switch off and then on. If the error is detected continuously, however, perform the operation shown in Table 1-4-1. If a system error occurs frequently, a fault may have occurred. Check the details of the C call to take proper measures.

System error	Contents	Operation
0420	Optional paper feeder communication problem	System error → service call → partial operation
0440	Optional document finisher/built-in finisher communication problem	System error → service call → partial operation
4200	BD steady-state problem	System error → Normal service call processing
9000	Optional DP communication problem	System error → service call → partial operation

Table 1-4-1

In addition, it is a system error if the following error code is displayed. When an error has occurred, clear the error by turning the main power switch off then on.

CF1XX, CF2XX, CF3XX, CF4XX, CF5XX, CF6XX, CF7XX, CFAXX, CFBXX, 0xFBXX

Partial operation control

If any of the following calls for service is detected, partial operation control will be activated. After taking measures against the cause of trouble, run maintenance item U906 to reset partial operation control.

Code	Contents
C0420	Optional paper feeder communication problem
C0440	Optional document finisher/built-in finisher communication problem
C1010	Upper lift motor error
C1020	Lower lift motor error
C1030	Paper feeder lift motor 1 error (optional paper feeder)
C1040	Paper feeder lift motor 2 error (optional paper feeder)
C2600	Paper feeder drive motor error (optional paper feeder)
C8030	Tray upper limit detection problem (optional document finisher)
C8140	Tray elevation motor problem (optional document finisher)
C8170	Adjustment motor problem (optional document finisher)
	Finisher front side registration motor problem (optional built-in finisher)
C8180	Finisher rear side registration motor problem (optional built-in finisher)
C8190	Finisher trailing edge registration motor problem (optional built-in finisher)
C8210	Stapler problem (optional document finisher)
	Finisher stapler problem (optional built-in finisher)
C8440	Sensor adjusting problem (optional document finisher)
C8460	EEPROM problem (optional document finisher)
C9000	Optional DP communication problem
C9060	DP EEPROM error (optional DP)

Measures against the service codes detecting fuser problems

If one of the following service codes is detected, take actions to clear the cause of the trouble and perform maintenance item U163 to reset the service code.

Code	Contents
C6000	Fuser heater break
C6020	Abnormally high fuser thermistor center temperature
C6050	Abnormally low fuser thermistor center temperature
C6120	Abnormally high fuser thermistor edge temperature
C6150	Abnormally low fuser thermistor edge temperature
C6400	Zero-cross signal error
C6420	Fuser unit fuse cut problem

(2) Self diagnostic codes

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C0060	Main PWB type mismatch error	Defective PWB.	Run maintenance item U935 to contact the Service Administrative Division.
C0120	Drum EEPROM error Reading from or writing to EEPROM cannot be performed.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the engine PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drum unit.	Replace the drum unit.
C0130	Backup memory (EEPROM) device problem (Main PWB) Reading from or writing to EEPROM cannot be performed.	Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
		Device damage of EEPROM.	Contact the Service Administrative Division.
C0150	Backup memory (EEPROM) device problem (Engine PWB) Reading from or writing to EEPROM cannot be performed.	Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
		Device damage of EEPROM.	Contact the Service Administrative Division.
C0160	Backup memory (EEPROM) data problem (Engine PWB) Reading data from EEPROM is abnormal. Read and write data does not match 5 times continuously.	Problem with the backup memory data.	Run maintenance item U022 to initialize the backup memory data.
		Defective engine PWB.	If the C0160 is displayed after initializing the backup memory, replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C0180	Machine number mismatch error Machine number of main PWB and engine PWB does not match.	Data damage of EEPROM.	Contact the Service Administrative Division.
C0320	Power CPU communication problem The engine PWB and the power CPU are unable to communicate with each other.	Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C0420	Optional paper feeder communication problem The engine PWB and the paper feeder are unable to communicate with each other.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC22 on the engine PWB and the connector on the paper feeder main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the engine PWB or paper feeder main PWB and check for correct operation.
C0440	Optional document finisher/built-in finisher communication problem The engine PWB and the document finisher or the built-in finisher are unable to communicate with each other.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC5 on the engine PWB and the connector of the document finisher, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
			Check the connection of connector YC4 on the engine PWB and the connector of the built-in finisher, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the engine PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C0630	DMA problem DMA transmission of compressed, decompressed, rotated, relocated or blanked-out image data does not complete within the specified period of time.	Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
C0640	Hard disk drive problem The hard disk cannot be accessed.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC8 on the main PWB and the connector on the hard disk. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective hard disk.	Run U024 (HDD formatting) without turning the power off to initialize the hard disk. Replace the hard disk drive and check for correct operation if the problem is still detected after initialization.
		Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
C0700	Memory card error for backup Optional fax backup kit (memory card) is not suitable as backup.	Memory card installed incorrectly.	Install memory card correctly.
		Defective memory card.	Run the maintenance item U933 to initialize the memory card (see page 1-3-79).
C0800	Image processing problem JAM05 is detected twice.	Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
C0960	Developing unit EEPROM error Reading from or writing to EEPROM cannot be performed.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the engine PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective developing unit.	Replace the developing unit.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C1010	Upper lift motor error When cassette 1 is inserted, upper lift limit switch does not turn on within 12 s of upper lift motor turning on.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector of upper lift motor and the connector YC23 on the engine PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Broken gears or couplings of upper lift motor.	Replace upper lift motor.
		Defective upper lift motor.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace upper lift motor.
		Defective upper lift limit switch.	Check if YC23-B9 on the engine PWB goes low when upper lift limit switch is turned off. If not, replace upper lift limit switch.
		Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector of upper lift limit switch and the connector YC23 on the engine PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C1020	Lower lift motor error When cassette 2 is inserted, lower lift limit switch does not turn on within 12 s of lower lift motor turning on.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector of lower lift motor and the connector YC23 on the engine PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Broken gears or couplings of lower lift motor.	Replace lower lift motor.
		Defective lower lift motor.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace lower lift motor.
		Defective lower lift limit switch.	Check if YC23-A2 on the engine PWB goes low when lower lift limit switch is turned off. If not, replace lower lift limit switch.
		Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector of lower lift limit switch and the connector YC23 on the engine PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C1030	Paper feeder lift motor 1 error (optional paper feeder) When optional cassette 3 is inserted, paper feeder lift switch 1 does not turn on within 12 s of paper feeder lift motor 1 turning on.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC22 on the engine PWB and the connector on the paper feeder main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Broken gears or couplings of paper feeder lift motor 1.	Replace paper feeder lift motor 1.
		Defective paper feeder lift motor 1.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace paper feeder lift motor 1.
		Defective paper feeder lift switch 1.	Check if YC1-5 on the paper feeder main PWB goes low when paper feeder lift switch 1 is turned off. If not, replace paper feeder lift switch 1.
C1040	Paper feeder lift motor 2 error (optional paper feeder) When optional cassette 4 is inserted, paper feeder lift switch 2 does not turn on within 12 s of paper feeder lift motor 2 turning on.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC22 on the engine PWB and the connector on the paper feeder main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Broken gears or couplings of paper feeder lift motor 2.	Replace paper feeder lift motor 2.
		Defective paper feeder lift motor 2.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace paper feeder lift motor 2.
		Defective paper feeder lift switch 2.	Check if YC1-7 on the paper feeder main PWB goes low when paper feeder lift switch 2 is turned off. If not, replace paper feeder lift switch 2.
C2000	Main motor problem Stable OFF is detected for 1 s continuously after main motor stability.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC10 on the engine PWB and the connector on the main motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drive transmission system.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushings and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective main motor.	Replace the main motor.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C2200	Drum motor problem Stable OFF is detected for 1 s continuously after drum motor stability.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC10 on the engine PWB and the connector on the drum motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drive transmission system.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushings and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective drum motor.	Replace the drum motor.
C2500	Paper feed motor error Stable OFF is detected for 1 s continuously after paper feed motor stability.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC10 on the engine PWB and the connector on the paper feed motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drive transmission system.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushings and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective paper feed motor.	Replace the paper feed motor.
C2600	Paper feeder drive motor error (optional paper feeder) The lock signal of the motor is detected above 500 ms.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC22 on the engine PWB and the connector on the paper feeder main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Paper feeder drive motor does not rotate correctly (the motor is overloaded).	Check the gears and remedy if necessary.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the paper feeder main PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective paper feeder drive motor.	Replace the paper feeder drive motor.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C3100	Scanner carriage problem The home position is not correct when the power is turned on or at the start of copying using the table.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC17 on the engine PWB and the connector on the scanner home position switch, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective scanner home position switch.	Replace the scanner home position switch.
		Defective scanner motor.	Replace the scanner motor.
		The mirror frame, exposure lamp, or scanner wire is defective.	Check if the mirror flames and exposure lamp are on the rail. And check the scanner wire winds correctly.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C3200	Exposure lamp problem After the reading starting, when input value at the time of exposure lamp illumination does not exceed the threshold value between 5 s.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC16 on the engine PWB and the connector on the inverter PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective exposure lamp.	Replace the exposure lamp.
		Incorrect shading position.	Adjust the position of the platen (shading plate). If the problem still occurs, replace the scanner home position switch.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the engine PWB or scanner inverter PWB and check for correct operation.
C3300	CCD AGC problem After AGC, correct input is not obtained at CCD.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC18 on the main PWB and the connector on the CCD PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective exposure lamp.	Replace the exposure lamp.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the main PWB or CCD PWB and check for correct operation.
C3500	Communication error between scanner and SHD An error code is detected.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC18 on the main PWB and the connector on the CCD PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the main PWB or CCD PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C4000	Polygon motor synchronization problem The polygon motor does not reach the stable speed within 20 s of the START signal turning on.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC2 on the engine PWB and laser scanner unit, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective polygon motor.	Replace the laser scanner unit.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C4010	Polygon motor steady-state problem Stable OFF is detected for 5 s continuously after polygon motor stability.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC2 on the engine PWB and laser scanner unit, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective polygon motor.	Replace the laser scanner unit.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C4200	BD steady-state problem ASIC detects a BD error A for 2 s after the polygon motor rotation has been stabilized.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC2 on the engine PWB and laser scanner unit, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective laser scanner unit.	Replace the laser scanner unit.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C6000	Fuser heater break Fuser thermistor 1 detected less than 40°C/104°F for 10 s during warm-up and ready in.	Defective fuser heater M or S.	Replace the fuser heater M or S.
		Installation defectiveness on fuser thermistor 1.	Check the mounting state of the fuser thermistor 1. If any problem is found, repair it.
		Defective fuser thermostat.	Replace the fuser thermostat.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the power source PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C6020	Abnormally high fuser thermistor center temperature Fuser thermistor 2 is detected 230°C/446°F or more for 40 ms.	Installation defectiveness on fuser thermistor 2.	Check the mounting state of the fuser thermistor 2. If any problem is found, repair it.
		Defective fuser thermistor 2.	Replace the fuser thermistor 2.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C6050	Abnormally low fuser thermistor center temperature Fuser thermistor 2 is detected 100°C/212°F less than 1 s continuously during copying.	Defective fuser heater M or S.	Replace the fuser heater M or S.
		Installation defectiveness on fuser thermistor 2.	Check the mounting state of the fuser thermistor 2. If any problem is found, repair it.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the power source PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C6120	Abnormally high fuser thermistor edge temperature Fuser thermistor 1 is detected 230°C/ 446°F or more for 40 ms.	Installation defectiveness on fuser thermistor 1.	Check the mounting state of the fuser thermistor 1. If any problem is found, repair it.
		Defective fuser thermistor 1.	Replace the fuser thermistor 1.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C6150	Abnormally low fuser thermistor edge temperature Fuser thermistor 1 is detected 100°C/ 212°F less than 1 s continuously during copying.	Defective fuser heater M or S.	Replace the fuser heater M or S.
		Installation defectiveness on fuser thermistor 1.	Check the mounting state of the fuser thermistor 1. If any problem is found, repair it.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the power source PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C6400	Zero-cross signal error While fuser heater ON/OFF control is performed, the zero-cross signal is not input within 3 s.	Defective PWB.	Replace the engine PWB or power source PWB and check for correct operation.
C6420	Fuser unit fuse cut problem The fuse cannot be cut, When replacing the fuser unit, the fuse cannot be cut in 3 s after the fuse cut signal is turned on.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC1 on the engine PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Fuser unit connector inserted incorrectly.	Reinsert the fuser unit connector if necessary.
C7000	Toner motor problem A motor over-current signal is detected continuously for 1 s or longer.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC1 on the engine PWB and the connector on the toner feed motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Broken the gear.	Check visually and replace the gear if necessary.
		Defective toner feed motor.	Run maintenance item U135 and check if the toner feed motor operates. If not, replace the toner feed motor.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C7200	Broken inner thermistor wire An abnormal value is detected in the input data to inner thermistor.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC32 on the engine PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective temperature sensor.	Replace the temperature sensor.
C7300	Toner hopper problem Toner emptiness is detected for 300 s, three times during the toner replenishment.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC1 on the engine PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective toner sensor.	Replace the developing unit.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C7400	Developing unit connector insertion problem Absence of the developing unit is detected.	Developing unit connector inserted incorrectly.	Reinsert the developing unit connector if necessary.
		Defective developing unit connector.	Replace the developing unit.
C7410	Drum unit connector insertion problem Absence of the drum unit is detected.	Drum unit connector inserted incorrectly.	Reinsert the drum unit connector if necessary.
		Defective drum unit connector.	Replace the drum unit.
C7800	Broken external thermistor wire The thermistor output value is 4.5 V or more.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC1 on the engine PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective humidity sensor.	Replace the humidity sensor.
C8030	Tray upper limit detection problem (optional document finisher) When the tray elevation motor raises a tray, the ON status of the tray upper limit sensor is detected.	The tray upper limit sensor/push paper sensor/surface view sensor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective tray upper limit sensor/push paper sensor/surface view sensor.	Replace the sensor.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8140	Tray elevation motor problem (optional document finisher) When the tray elevation motor is driving, the ON status of the tray lower limit sensor or surface view sensor cannot be detected even if 10 s passed.	The tray elevation motor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		The tray elevation motor malfunctions.	Replace the tray elevation motor.
		The tray lower limit sensor/push paper sensor/surface view sensor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective tray lower limit sensor/push paper sensor/surface view sensor.	Replace the sensor.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C8170	Adjustment motor problem (optional document finisher) When the adjustment motor is driving, the ON status of the adjustment home position sensor cannot be detected even if a specified time has elapsed. When adjustment operation starts, the ON status of the adjustment home position sensor is not detected.	The adjustment motor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective adjustment motor.	Replace adjustment motor.
		The adjustment home position sensor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective adjustment home position sensor.	Replace the adjustment home position sensor.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
	Finisher front side registration motor problem (optional built-in finisher) When the front-side registration home-position sensor is turned on during initialization, the sensor did not turn on while it has moved by 106 pulses. When the front-side registration home-position sensor is turned off during initialization, the sensor did not turn on in 3 s.	The front side registration motor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective front side registration motor.	Replace front side registration motor.
		The front side registration home position sensor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective front side registration home position sensor.	Replace the front side registration home position sensor.
		Defective finisher control PWB.	Replace the finisher control PWB and check for correct operation.
C8180	Finisher rear side registration motor problem (optional built-in finisher) When the rear-side registration home-position sensor is turned on during initialization, the sensor did not turn on while it has moved by 106 pulses. When the rear-side registration home-position sensor is turned off during initialization, the sensor did not turn on in 3 s.	The rear side registration motor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective rear side registration motor.	Replace rear side registration motor.
		The rear side registration home position sensor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective rear side registration home position sensor.	Replace the rear side registration home position sensor.
		Defective finisher control PWB.	Replace the finisher control PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C8190	Finisher trailing edge registration motor problem (optional built-in finisher) When the trailing edge registration home-position sensor is turned on during initialization, the sensor did not turn on while it has moved by 106 pulses. When the trailing edge registration home-position sensor is turned off during initialization, the sensor did not turn on in 3 s.	The trailing edge registration motor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective trailing edge registration motor.	Replace trailing edge registration motor.
		The trailing edge registration home position sensor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective trailing edge registration home position sensor.	Replace the trailing edge registration home position sensor.
		Defective finisher control PWB.	Replace the finisher control PWB and check for correct operation.
C8210	Stapler problem (optional document finisher) When the stapler motor is driving, the ON status of the stapler home position sensor cannot be detected even if a specified time has elapsed.	The stapler connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		The stapler is blocked with a staple.	Remove the stapler cartridge, and check the cartridge and the stapling section of the stapler.
		The stapler is broken.	Replace the stapler and check for correct operation.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
	Finisher stapler problem (optional built-in finisher) The stapler home position sensor does not change state from nondetection to detection within 200 ms of the start of stapler motor counterclockwise (forward) rotation. During initialization, the stapler home position sensor does not change state from non-detection to detection within 600 ms of the start of stapler motor clockwise (reverse) rotation.	The stapler connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		The stapler is blocked with a staple.	Remove the stapler cartridge, and check the cartridge and the stapling section of the stapler.
		The stapler is broken.	Replace the front stapler and check for correct operation.
		Defective finisher control PWB.	Replace the finisher control PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C8440	Sensor adjusting problem (optional document finisher) The sensor cannot be adjusted within the specified range.	The paper entry sensor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective paper entry sensor.	Replace the paper entry sensor and check for correct operation.
		The optical path of the paper entry sensor is blocked by foreign matter.	Remove the foreign matter.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8460	EEPROM problem (optional document finisher) Reading from or writing to EEPROM cannot be performed.	Defective EEPROM or finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C9000	Optional DP communication problem A communication error is detected.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC24 and YC31 on the engine PWB and the connector of the DP, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective DP main PWB.	Replace the DP main PWB and check for correct operation.
C9060	DP EEPROM error (optional DP) Read and write data does not match. Data in the specified area of the backup memory does not match the specified values.	Defective DP main PWB.	Replace the DP main PWB and check for correct operation.
		Device damage of EEPROM.	Contact the Service Administrative Division.
F000	Operation panel PWB communication error	Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective operation panel PWB.	Replace the operation panel PWB and check for correct operation.
F010	Main PWB checksum error	Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
F020	Memory checksum error	Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective expansion memory.	Replace the expansion memory and check for correct operation.
F030	Main PWB system error	Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
F040	Engine PWB communication error	Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
F041	Scanner communication error	Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
F050	Engine ROM checksum error	Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
F060	Engine RAM error	Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
F070	Flash ROM error	Defective flash ROM.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
F080	Flash ROM error (during download)	Defective flash ROM.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
F090	Fax control PWB communication error	Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
F14F	Power source PWB secondary side error	Defective power source PWB.	Replace the power source PWB and check for correct operation.

1-4-3 Image formation problems

(1) No image appears
(entirely white).



See page 1-4-33.

(2) No image appears
(entirely black).



See page 1-4-33.

(3) Image is too light.



See page 1-4-34.

(4) Background is visible.



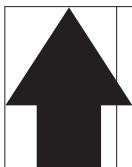
See page 1-4-34.

(5) A white line
appears longitudinally.



See page 1-4-34.

(6) A black line
appears longitudinally.



See page 1-4-35.

(7) A black line
appears laterally.



See page 1-4-35.

(8) One side of the
copy image is
darker than the
other.



See page 1-4-35.

(9) Black dots appear
on the image.



See page 1-4-35.

(10) Image is blurred.



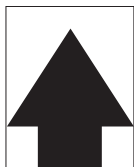
See page 1-4-36.

(11) The leading edge
of the image is
consistently mis-
aligned with the
original.



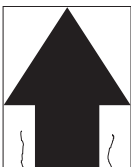
See page 1-4-36.

(12) The leading edge
of the image is
sporadically mis-
aligned with the
original.



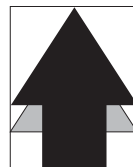
See page 1-4-36.

(13) Paper creases.



See page 1-4-36.

(14) Offset occurs.



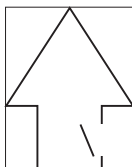
See page 1-4-37.

(15) Image is partly
missing.



See page 1-4-37.

(16) Fusing is poor.



See page 1-4-37.

(17) Image is out of
focus.



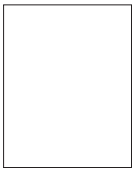
See page 1-4-37.

(18) Image center
does not align with
the original center.




See page 1-4-38.


(1) No image appears (entirely white).

Copy example	Causes		Check procedures/corrective measures
	No transfer charging.	The connector terminals of the high voltage PWB make poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective engine PWB.	Check if YC12-11 on the engine PWB goes low when maintenance item U101 is run. If not, replace the engine PWB.
		Defective high voltage PWB.	Check if transfer charging takes place when CN1-2 on the high voltage PWB goes low while maintenance item U101 is run. If not, replace the high voltage PWB.
	No LSU laser is output.	Defective laser scanner unit.	Replace the laser scanner unit (see page 1-5-30).
		Defective main PWB.	Check if YC21-3 on the main PWB goes low when maintenance item U100 is run. If not, replace the main PWB.
	No developing bias output.	The connector terminals of the high voltage PWB make poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective engine PWB.	Check if YC12-2 on the engine PWB goes low when maintenance item U101 is run. If not, replace the engine PWB.
		Defective high voltage PWB.	Check if developing bias is output when CN1-11 on the high voltage PWB goes low while maintenance item U101 is run. If not, replace the high voltage PWB.

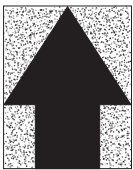
(2) No image appears (entirely black).

Copy example	Causes		Check procedures/corrective measures
	No main charging.	Broken main charger wire.	Replace the main charger unit (see page 1-5-37).
		Leaking main charger housing.	Clean the main charger wire and grid.
		The connector terminals of the high voltage PWB make poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective engine PWB.	Check if YC12-5 on the engine PWB goes low when maintenance item U100 is run. If not, replace the engine PWB.
		Defective high voltage PWB.	Check if main charging takes place when CN1-8 on the high voltage PWB goes low while maintenance item U100 is run. If not, replace the high voltage PWB.
	Exposure lamp fails to light.	Poor contact in the exposure lamp connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective scanner inverter PWB.	Check if the exposure lamp lights when YC1-1 and YC1-6 on the scanner inverter PWB goes low while maintenance item U061 is run. If not, replace the scanner inverter PWB.
		Defective engine PWB.	Check if YC16-1 and YC16-6 on the engine PWB goes low when maintenance item U061 is run. If not, replace the engine PWB.


(3) Image is too light.

Copy example	Causes		Check procedures/corrective measures
	Insufficient toner.		If the display shows the message requesting toner replenishment, replace the container.
	Deteriorated toner.		Perform the drum refresh operation.
	Defective transfer charging output.	The connector terminals of the high voltage PWB make poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective engine PWB.	Check if YC12-11 on the engine PWB goes low when maintenance item U101 is run. If not, replace the engine PWB.
	Defective high voltage PWB.		Check if transfer charging takes place when CN1-2 on the high voltage PWB goes low while maintenance item U101 is run. If not, replace the high voltage PWB.

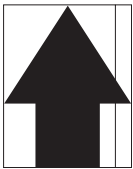
(4) Background is visible.

Copy example	Causes		Check procedures/corrective measures
	Deteriorated toner.		Perform the drum refresh operation.
	Dirty main charger wire.		Clean the wire or, if it is extremely dirty, replace it (see page 1-5-37).


(5) A white line appears longitudinally.

Copy example	Causes		Check procedures/corrective measures
	Foreign matter in the developing unit.		Check if the magnetic brush is formed uniformly. Replace the developing unit if any foreign matter (see page 1-5-39).
	Dirty shading plate.		Clean the shading plate.


(6) A black line appears longitudinally.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Dirty platen.	Clean the platen.
	Dirty or flawed drum.	Perform the drum refresh operation. If the drum is flawed, replace the drum unit (see page 1-5-35).
	Deformed or worn cleaning blade.	Replace the drum unit (see page 1-5-35).
	Dirty scanner mirror.	Clean the scanner mirror.
	Dirty main charger wire.	Clean the wire or, if it is extremely dirty, replace it (see page 1-5-37).


(7) A black line appears laterally.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Flawed drum.	Replace the drum unit (see page 1-5-35).
	Dirty developing section.	Clean any part contaminated with toner in the developing section.
	Leaking main charger housing.	Clean the main charger wire and grid.
	Leaking separation electrode.	Clean the separation electrode.

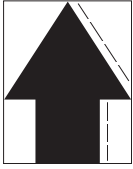
(8) One side of the copy image is darker than the other.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Dirty main charger wire.	Clean the wire or, if it is extremely dirty, replace it (see page 1-5-37).
	Defective exposure lamp.	Check if the exposure lamp light is distributed evenly. If not, replace the exposure lamp (see page 1-5-15).


(9) Black dots appear on the image.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Dirty or flawed drum.	Perform the drum refresh operation. If the drum is flawed, replace the drum unit (see page 1-5-35).
	Dirty platen.	Clean the platen.
	Deformed or worn cleaning blade.	Replace the drum unit (see page 1-5-35).
	Dirty drum separation claws.	Clean the drum separation claws.
	Dirty the heat roller separation claws.	Clean the heat roller separation claws.

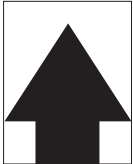
(10) Image is blurred.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Scanner moves erratically.	Check if there is any foreign matter on the front and rear scanner rails. If any, remove it.
	Deformed press roller.	Replace the press roller (see page 1-5-45).
	Paper conveying section drive problem.	Check the gears and belts and, if necessary, grease them.

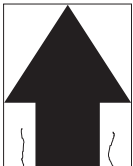
(11) The leading edge of the image is consistently misaligned with the original.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Misadjusted leading edge registration.	Run maintenance mode U034 to readjust the leading edge registration (see page 1-3-20).
	Misadjusted scanner leading edge registration.	Run maintenance mode U066 to readjust the scanner leading edge registration (see page 1-3-28).

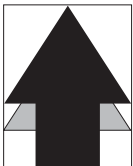
(12) The leading edge of the image is sporadically misaligned with the original.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Feed clutch, paper feed clutch, MP paper feed clutch or registration clutch installed or operating incorrectly.	Check the installation position and operation of each clutch. If any of them operates incorrectly, replace it.


(13) Paper creases.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Paper curled.	Check the paper storage conditions.
	Paper damp.	Check the paper storage conditions.
	Defective pressure springs.	Replace the pressure springs.
	Defective separation.	Check the drum separation claws and heat roller separation claws.

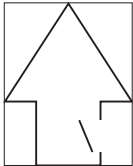
(14) Offset occurs.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Defective cleaning blade.	Replace the drum unit (see page 1-5-35).
	Defective fuser unit.	Check the heat roller and press roller.
	Wrong types of paper.	Check if the paper meets specifications. Replace paper.


(15) Image is partly missing.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Paper damp.	Check the paper storage conditions.
	Paper creased.	Change the paper.
	Drum condensation.	Perform the drum refresh operation.
	Dirty or flawed drum.	Perform the drum refresh operation. If the drum is flawed, replace the drum unit (see page 1-5-35).

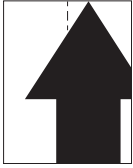
(16) Fusing is poor.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Wrong types of paper.	Check if the paper meets specifications. Replace paper.
	Defective pressure springs.	Replace the pressure springs.
	Flawed press roller.	Replace the press roller (see page 1-5-45).
	Flawed fuser heater.	Replace the fuser heaters (see page 1-5-47).

(17) Image is out of focus.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Defective image scanning unit.	Replace the image scanning unit (see page 1-5-19).
	Drum condensation.	Perform the drum refresh operation.

(18) Image center does not align with the original center.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Misadjusted image center line.	Run maintenance item U034 to readjust the center line of image printing (see page 1-3-21).
	Misadjusted scanner center line.	Run maintenance item U067 to readjust the scanner leading edge registration (see page 1-3-29).
	Original is not placed correctly.	Place the original correctly.

1-4-4 Electric problems

Troubleshooting to each failure must be in the order of the numbered symptoms.

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(1) The machine does not operate when the main power switch is turned on.	1. The power cord is not plugged in properly.	Check the contact between the power plug and the outlet.
	2. No electricity at the power outlet.	Measure the input voltage.
	3. Broken power cord.	Check for continuity. If none, replace the cord.
	4. Defective main power switch.	Check for continuity across the contacts. If none, replace the main power switch.
	5. Defective power source PWB.	With AC present, check for 24 V DC at YC8-4 on the power source PWB and 5 V DC at YC8-1. If none, replace the power source PWB.
(2) The eject motor does not operate.	1. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Defective drive transmission system.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushings and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
	3. Defective eject motor.	Run maintenance item U030 and check if the eject motor operates. If not, replace the eject motor.
	4. Defective engine PWB.	Run maintenance item U030 and check if the eject motor operates. If not, replace the engine PWB.
(3) The toner feed motor does not operate.	1. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Defective drive transmission system.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushings and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
	3. Defective toner feed motor.	Run maintenance item U135 and check if the toner feed motor operates. If not, replace the toner feed motor.
	4. Defective engine PWB.	Run maintenance item U135 and check if the toner feed motor operates. If not, replace the engine PWB.
(4) The scanner motor or cooling fan motor 1 to 8 does not operate.	1. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Broken motor coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the motor.
(5) The upper/lower paper feed clutch, feed clutch 1/2/3, MP paper feed clutch, MP paper feed clutch, registration clutch, duplex feed clutch or toner feed clutch does not operate.	1. Broken clutch coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the clutch.
	2. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	3. Defective engine PWB.	Run maintenance item U032 and check if following terminals on the engine PWB goes low. If not, replace the engine PWB. Upper paper feed clutch: YC8-A13 on the engine PWB Lower paper feed clutch: YC8-A15 on the engine PWB Feed clutch 1: YC8-B8 on the engine PWB Feed clutch 2: YC8-A12 on the engine PWB Feed clutch 3: YC8-A5 on the engine PWB MP paper feed clutch: YC7-9 on the engine PWB MP feed clutch: YC7-11 on the engine PWB Registration clutch: YC8-B15 on the engine PWB Duplex feed clutch: YC8-B9 on the engine PWB Toner feed clutch: YC8-A17 on the engine PWB

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(6) The feedshift solenoid does not operate.	1. Broken solenoid coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the solenoid.
	2. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	3. Defective engine PWB.	Run maintenance item U033 and check if the solenoid operates. If not, replace the engine PWB.
(7) The exposure lamp does not turn on or off.	1. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Defective engine PWB.	Run maintenance item U061 and check if YC16-1 and YC16-6 on the engine PWB goes low. If not, replace the engine PWB.
		If YC16-1 and YC16-6 on the engine PWB is always low, replace the engine PWB.
	3. Defective scanner inverter PWB.	Run maintenance item U061 and check if the exposure lamp turns on with YC1-1 and YC1-6 on the scanner inverter PWB go low. If not, replace the scanner inverter PWB.
		If the exposure lamp does not turn off with YC1-1 and YC1-6 on the scanner inverter PWB high, replace the scanner inverter PWB.
	4. Defective exposure lamp.	Replace the exposure lamp even if checking or correcting other measures.
(8) Main charging is not performed.	1. Broken main charger wire.	(See page 1-4-33.)
	2. Leaking main charger housing.	
	3. The connector terminals of the high voltage PWB make poor contact.	
	4. Defective engine PWB.	
	5. Defective high voltage PWB.	
(9) No developing bias is output.	1. The connector terminals of the high voltage PWB make poor contact.	(See page 1-4-33.)
	2. Defective engine PWB.	
	3. Defective high voltage PWB.	
(10) Transfer charging is not performed.	1. The connector terminals of the high voltage PWB make poor contact.	(See page 1-4-33.)
	2. Defective engine PWB.	
	3. Defective high voltage PWB.	

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(11) The original size is not detected correctly.	1. Original is not placed correctly.	Check the original and correct if necessary.
	2. Poor contact in the original detection switch or original size detection sensor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	3. Defective original detection switch.	If the level of YC17-5 on the engine PWB does not go low when the original detection switch is turned on and off, replace the original detection switch.
	4. Defective original size detection sensor.	Check if sensor operates correctly. If not, replace it.
(12) The touch panel keys do not work.	1. Poor contact in the touch panel connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Defective touch panel or main operation PWB.	If any keys do not work after running the maintenance item U201 to initialize the touch panel, replace the touch panel or main operation unit PWB.
(13) The message requesting paper to be loaded is shown when paper is present on the cassette 1/2 or MP tray.	1. Poor contact in the connector terminals of upper/lower paper switch or MP paper switch.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Defective upper/lower paper switch or MP paper switch.	If the level of following terminal on PWB does not go low when the switch is turned on and off, replace the switch. Upper paper switch: YC23-B12 on the engine PWB Lower paper switch: YC23-A5 on the engine PWB MP paper switch: YC7-6 on the engine PWB
(14) The size of paper on the cassette 1/2 or MP tray is not displayed correctly.	1. Poor contact in the connector terminals of upper/lower paper size length switch, upper/lower paper size width switch, MP paper size length switch or MP paper size width switch.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Defective upper/lower paper size length switch or MP paper size length switch.	If the level of following terminal on PWB does not go low when the switch is turned on and off, replace the switch. Upper paper size length switch: YC23-B2 on the engine PWB Lower paper size length switch: YC23-A12 on the engine PWB MP paper size length switch: YC7-13 on the engine PWB
	3. Defective upper/lower paper size width switch or MP paper size width switch.	If the level of following terminal on PWB does not change when the width guide in the cassette 1/2 or insert guide on the MP tray is moved, replace the switch. Upper paper size width switch: YC22-5, 7, 11 on the engine PWB Lower paper size width switch: YC22-6, 8, 12 on the engine PWB MP paper size width switch: YC7-1, 2, 3 on the engine PWB

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(15) A paper jam in the paper feed, paper conveying, fuser, eject or duplex section is indicated when the main power switch is turned on.	1. A piece of paper torn from copy paper is caught around feed switch 1/2/3, registration switch, feedshift switch, eject switch or duplex paper conveying switch.	Check visually and remove it, if any.
	2. Defective feed switch 1/2/3, registration switch, feedshift switch, eject switch or duplex paper conveying switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn each switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
(16) The message requesting cover to be closed is displayed when the front cover or left cover 1/2 is closed.	1. Poor contact in the connector terminals of safety switch 1/2 or left cover 2 switch.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Defective safety switch 1/2 or left cover 2 switch.	Check for continuity across each switch. If there is no continuity when the switch is on, replace it.
(17) Others.	1. Wiring is broken, shorted or makes poor contact.	Check for continuity. If none, repair.

1-4-5 Mechanical problems

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(1) No primary paper feed.	Check if the surfaces of the following rollers or pulleys are dirty with paper powder: upper/lower forwarding pulleys, upper/lower paper feed pulleys, upper/lower separation pulleys, feed rollers, registration rollers, MP forwarding pulley, MP paper feed pulley and MP separation pulley.	Clean with isopropyl alcohol.
	Check if the upper/lower forwarding pulleys, upper/lower paper feed pulleys or upper/lower separation pulleys is deformed.	Replace the pulley if it is deformed (see page 1-5-3).
	Check if the MP forwarding pulley, MP paper feed pulley or MP separation pulley is deformed.	Replace the pulley if it is deformed (see page 1-5-6).
	Electrical problem with the following clutches: upper/lower paper feed clutches, feed clutches 1/2/3, MP paper feed clutch and MP feed clutch.	See page 1-4-39.
(2) No secondary paper feed.	Check if the surfaces of the right and left registration rollers are dirty with paper powder.	Clean with isopropyl alcohol.
	Electrical problem with the registration clutch.	See page 1-4-39.
(3) Skewed paper feed.	Width guide in a cassette installed incorrectly.	Check the width guide visually and correct or replace if necessary.
	Deformed width guide in a cassette.	Check visually and replace any deformed guide.
	Check if a pressure spring along the paper conveying path is deformed or out of place.	Repair or replace.
(4) The scanner does not travel.	Check if the scanner wire is loose.	Reinstall the scanner wire (see page 1-5-23).
	The scanner motor malfunctions.	See page 1-4-39.
(5) Multiple sheets of paper are fed at one time.	Paper is extremely curled.	Change the paper.
	Check if the upper or lower separation pulley is worn.	Replace the upper or lower separation pulley if it is worn (see page 1-5-3).
	Check if the MP separation pulley is worn.	Replace the MP separation pulley if it is worn (see page 1-5-6).

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(6) Paper jams.	Paper is extremely curled.	Change the paper.
	Deformed guides along the paper conveying path.	Check visually and replace any deformed guides.
	Check if the contact between the right and left registration rollers is correct.	Check visually and remedy if necessary.
	Check if the contact between the feed roller and feed pulley is correct.	Check visually and remedy if necessary.
	Check if the press roller is extremely dirty or deformed.	Clean or replace the press roller.
	Check if the contact between the heat roller and its separation claws is correct.	Repair if any springs are off the separation claws.
	Check if the contact between the eject roller and pulley is correct.	Check visually and remedy if necessary.
	The feedshift solenoid malfunctions.	See page 1-4-40.
	Check if the duplex feed pulley, upper duplex feed roller or lower duplex feed roller is deformed.	Check visually and replace the pulley or roller if deformed.
(7) Toner drops on the paper conveying path.	Check if the developing unit is extremely dirty.	Clean the developing unit.
(8) Abnormal noise is heard.	Check if the pulleys, rollers and gears operate smoothly.	Grease the bearings and gears.
	Check if the following clutches are installed correctly: upper/lower paper feed clutches, feed clutches 1/2/3, MP paper feed clutch and MP feed clutch.	Correct.

1-4-6 Send error code

(1) Scan to SMB error codes

Code	Display	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
1102	Error: User/Password or Shared Name/Folder Name	Domain name is not entered.	Enter the user name with the form of either [Domain¥User], [Domain/User] or [Domain@User].
		Assign disable user/pass-word.	Enter the correct user name/password.
		Assign the user who is not allowed to access to folder.	Enter correct user name/password. Check the access limit of destination folder.
		Assign disable shared name.	Enter the correct shared name. Check if the prohibited letters below are used to shared name. @ () ! & # \$ % ^ ~ []`
		Host name error.	Check if the prohibited letters are used to shared name. " & ' () ` ; < >
1103	Error: Pathname or File Name	Domain name is not enter	Enter the user name with the form of either [Domain¥User], [Domain/User] or [Domain@User].
		Connect to the folder which is not permitted for reference/ writing.	Enter correct user name/password. Check the access limit of destination folder.
		Assign disable folder path.	Enter correct folder path.
1105	Error: Not support protocol	SMB Protocol is set to OFF.	Check ON in the [Scanner]-[SMB] screen in COMMAND CENTER.
2101	Error: Can not connect	Enter the disable host name/ IP address.	Enter the correct host name or IP address.
		Assign the wrong port number.	Enter the correct port number.
		Network is not connected.	Check if the server is operating properly. Check the network connection (cable. network condition within LAN, etc.).
2103	Error: Response wait with timeout	The server is unable to communicate.	Check if the server is operating properly.
2201	Error: Network transfer	Error occurs on the network.	Check the network connection (cable. network condition within LAN, etc.).
2203	Error: Response wait with timeout	Response is not returned from the server above specified time.	Check the network connection (cable. network condition within LAN, etc.).
9181	Error: Page max count over	The number of pages of a send file exceeded 999 pages.	Set the number of pages as 999 or less.

(2) Scan to FTP error codes

Code	Display	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
1101	Error: Host name	Enter the disable host name/ IP address.	Enter the correct host name or IP address.
1102	Error: User/Password	Domain name is not entered.	Enter the user name with the form of either [Domain¥User] or [Domain/User].
		Assign disable user/pass-word.	Enter the correct user name/password.
1103	Error: Pathname or File Name	Connect to the folder which is not permitted for reference/ writing.	Enter correct user name/password. Check the access limit of destination folder.
		Assign disable folder path.	Enter correct folder path.
1105	Error: Not support protocol	FTP Protocol is set to OFF.	Check ON in the [Scanner]-[FTP] screen in COMMAND CENTER.
2101	Error: Can not connect	Enter the disable host name/ IP address.	Enter the correct host name or IP address.
		Assign the wrong port number.	Enter the correct port number.
		Network is not connected.	Check if the server is operating properly. Check the network connection (cable. network condition within LAN, etc.).
2102	Error: Can not connect with timeout	The server is unable to communicate.	Check if the server is operating properly.
		Send the server which does not support FTP server.	Enter the correct host name or IP address.
2103	Error: Response wait with timeout	The server is unable to communicate.	Check if the server is operating properly.
2201	Error: Network transfer	Error occurs on the network.	Check the network connection (cable. network condition within LAN, etc.).
2202	Error: Network transfer with timeout	Error occurs on the network.	Check the network connection (cable. network condition within LAN, etc.).
2203	Error: Response wait with timeout	Response is not returned from the server above specified time.	Check the network connection (cable. network condition within LAN, etc.).
3101	Error: Server response	The server is error status.	Check if the server is working properly.
9181	Error: Page max count over	The number of pages of a send file exceeded 999 pages.	Set the number of pages as 999 or less.

(3) Scan to E-mail error codes

Code	Display	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
1101	Error: Host name	SMTP sever name is not set. Error SMTP server name.	Register [SMTP Server Name] in [Advanced]-[SMTP] -[General] in COMMAND CENTER.
1102	Error: User/Password	User ID for the authentication is not entered or entered wrongly. Wrong authentication password is entered.	Enter the correct user ID/password for authentication at [Advance] in COMMAND CENTER. Enter the password of [Login User Name] of the [POP3] page or the [SMTP] page correctly.
1104	Error: No Recipient address	The destination address is not specified.	Specify the destination address.
1105	Error: Not support protocol	SMTP Protocol is set to OFF.	Check ON [SMTP] in [Advanced]-[SMTP] -[General] in COMMAND CENTER.
1106	Error: No Sender Info	Sender address is not enter	Enter the correct [Sender Address] in [Advanced]-[SMTP] -[General] in COMMAND CENTER.
2101	Error: Can not connect	Select [Other authenticate] when authenticating POP before SMTP.	Select valid POP3 user other than [Other].
		The specified server is not SMTP server.	Enter the correct [SMTP Server Name] in [Advanced]-[SMTP] -[General] in COMMAND CENTER.
		Network is not connected.	Check if the server is operating properly. Check the network connection (cable. network condition within LAN, etc.).
2102	Error: Can not connect with timeout	The server is unable to communicate.	Check if the server is operating properly.
2103	Error: Response wait with timeout	The server is unable to communicate.	Check if the server is operating properly.
2201	Error: Network transfer	Error occurs on the network.	Check the network connection (cable. network condition within LAN, etc.).
2202	Error: Network transfer with timeout	Error occurs on the network.	Check the network connection (cable. network condition within LAN, etc.).
2203	Error: Response wait with timeout	Response is not returned from the server above specified time.	Check the network connection (cable. network condition within LAN, etc.).
2204	Error: E-Mail Size limit	The size of E-mail exceeds its limit.	Change the [E-mail Size Limit] in [Advanced]-[SMTP] -[General]-[E-mail Setting] in COMMAND CENTER.
3101	Error: Server response	The server is error status.	Check if the server is working properly.
		Server setting is not authenticated normally.	Check the settings for client/server authentication.
3201	Error: Not Found Authentication Mechanism	Unsupported SMTP Authentication Mechanism is found.	Check the settings for client/server Authentication Mechanism.
9181	Error: Page max count over	The number of pages of a send file exceeded 999 pages.	Set the number of pages as 999 or less.

(4) Network Twain error codes

Code	Display	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
2202	Error: Network transfer with timeout	Response is not returned from the server above specified time.	Check the network connection (cable, network condition within LAN, etc.).
9181	Error: Page max count over	The number of pages of a send file exceeded 999 pages.	Set the number of pages as 999 or less.

(5) Software trouble error codes

Code	Display	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
5101	Error: Not yet connected	Operation handle error. Error for stored status in the operation handle.	Turn the main power switch off and on.
5102	Error: Already connected	Operation handle error. Error for stored status in the operation handle.	Turn the main power switch off and on.
5103	Error: Not yet opened	Error for stored status in the operation handle.	Turn the main power switch off and on.
5104	Error: Already opened	Error for stored status in the operation handle.	Turn the main power switch off and on.
7101	Error: Memory Allocation	Insufficient memory space.	Turn the main power switch off and on.
7102	Error: Socket Create	Unable to create a communication socket.	Turn the main power switch off and on.
720f	Error: Unknown error	Unable to determine the cause.	Turn the main power switch off and on.

1-5-1 Precautions for assembly and disassembly

(1) Precautions

Before starting disassembly, press the power key on the operation panel to off. Make sure that the power indicator and the Memory indicator are off before turning off the main power switch. And then unplug the power cable from the wall outlet.

Turning off the main power switch before pressing the power key to off may cause damage to the equipped hard disk.

When fax kit is installed, be sure to disconnect the modular code before starting disassembly.

When handling PWBs (printed wiring boards), do not touch parts with bare hands.

The PWBs are susceptible to static charge. Do not touch any PWB containing ICs with bare hands or any object prone to static charge.

Use only the specified parts to replace the fuser unit thermostat. Never substitute electric wires, as the machine may be seriously damaged.

When replacing battery on a PWB, dispose properly according to laws and regulations.

When removing the hook of the connector, be sure to release the hook.

Take care not to get the wire caught.

(2) Drum

Note the following when handling or storing the drum.

When removing the drum unit, never expose the drum surface to strong direct light.

Keep the drum at an ambient temperature between 0°C/32°F and 35°C/95°F and at a relative humidity not higher than 85% RH. Avoid abrupt changes in temperature and humidity.

Avoid exposure to any substance which is harmful to or may affect the quality of the drum.

Do not touch the drum surface with any object. Should it be touched by hands or stained with oil, clean it.

(3) Toner

Store the toner container in a cool, dark place.

Avoid direct light and high humidity.

(4) How to tell a genuine Kyocera Mita toner container

As a means of brand protection, the Kyocera Mita toner container utilizes an optical security technology to enable visual validation. A validation viewer is required to accomplish this.

Hold the validation viewer over the left side part of the brand protection seal on the toner container. Through each window of the validation viewer, the left side part of the seal should be seen as follows:

A black-colored band when seen through the left side window

A shiny or gold-colored band when seen through the right side window

The above will reveal that the toner container is a genuine Kyocera Mita branded toner container, otherwise, it is a counterfeit.

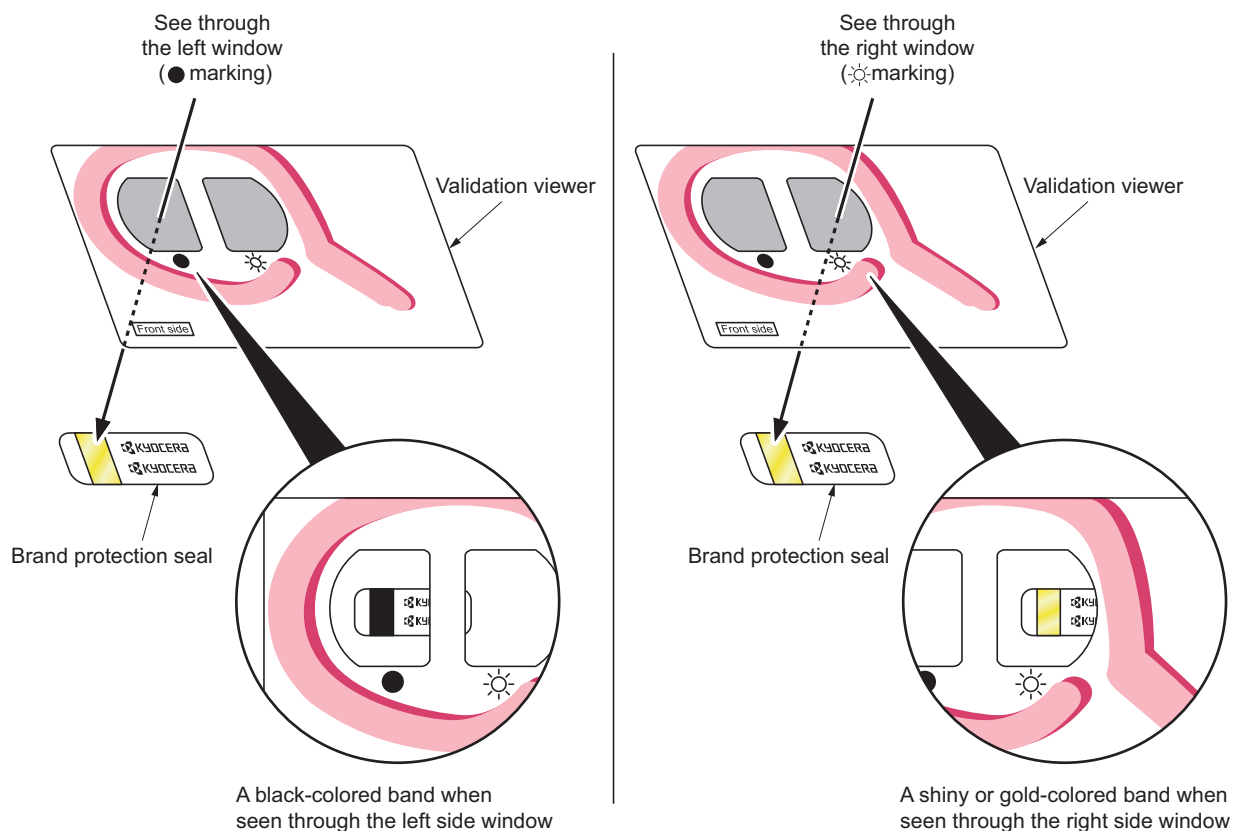


Figure 1-5-1

The brand protection seal has an incision as shown below to prohibit reuse.

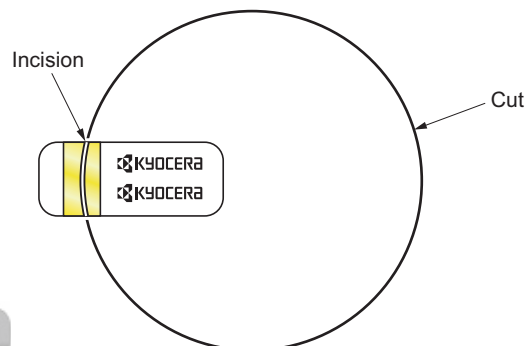


Figure 1-5-2

1-5-2 Paper feed section

(1) Detaching and refitting the forwarding, paper feed and separation pulleys

Follow the procedure below to replace the forwarding, paper feed and separation pulleys.

Procedure

Removing the primary paper feed units

1. Open the front cover and pull out the cassettes 1 and 2.
2. Remove the screw and remove the primary paper feed unit.

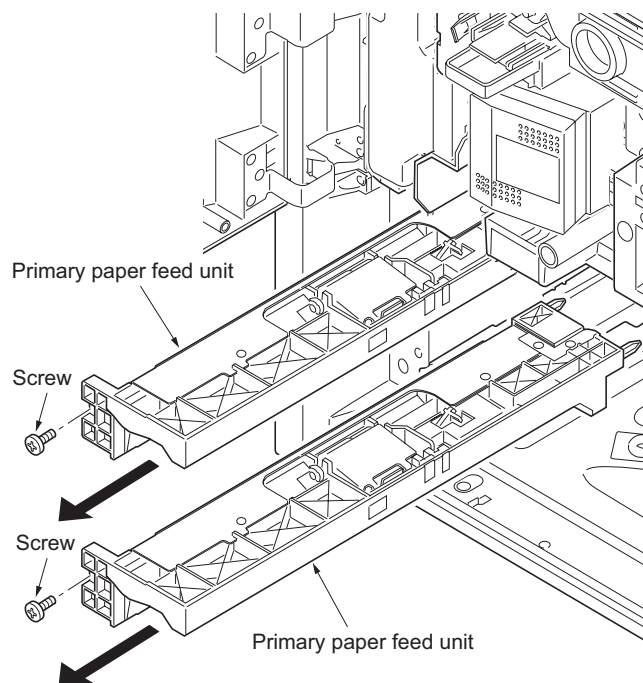


Figure 1-5-3

Removing the forwarding pulley

3. Remove the stopper from the primary paper feed unit.
4. Raise the forwarding pulley retainer in the direction of the arrow, and remove the retainer from the primary paper feed unit.

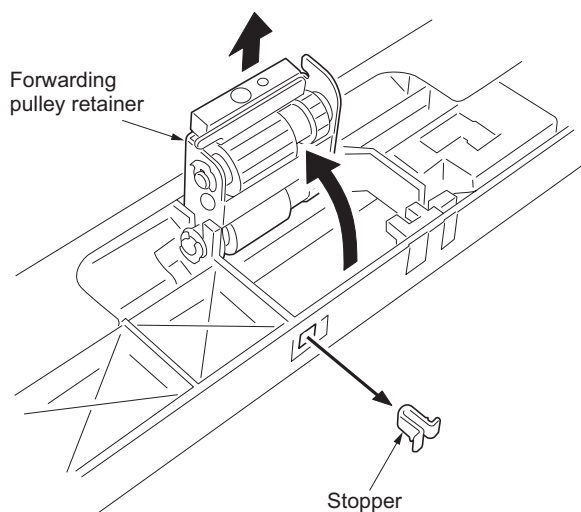


Figure 1-5-4

5. Remove the stop ring from the forwarding pulley retainer.
6. Pull the paper forwarding pulley shaft and remove the forwarding pulley.

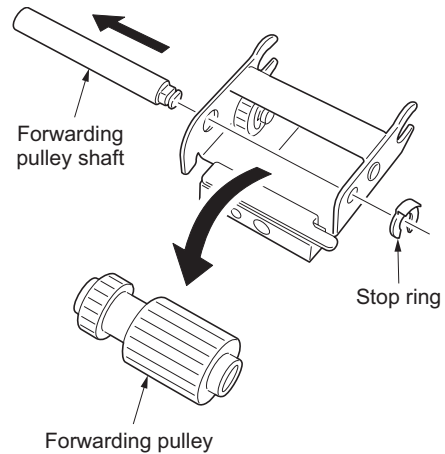


Figure 1-5-5

Removing the paper feed pulley

7. Remove two stop rings from the primary paper feed unit.
8. Pull the paper feed pulley shaft in the direction of the arrow and remove the paper feed pulley.

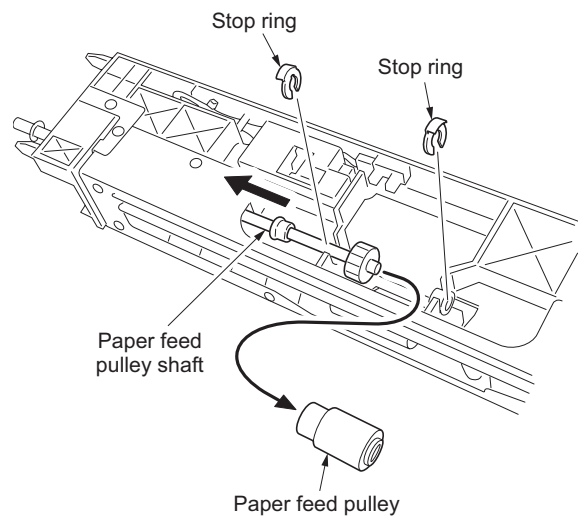


Figure 1-5-6

Removing the separation pulley

9. Remove the stop ring from the primary paper feed unit.
10. Pull the separation pulley shaft in the direction of the arrow and remove the separation pulley.

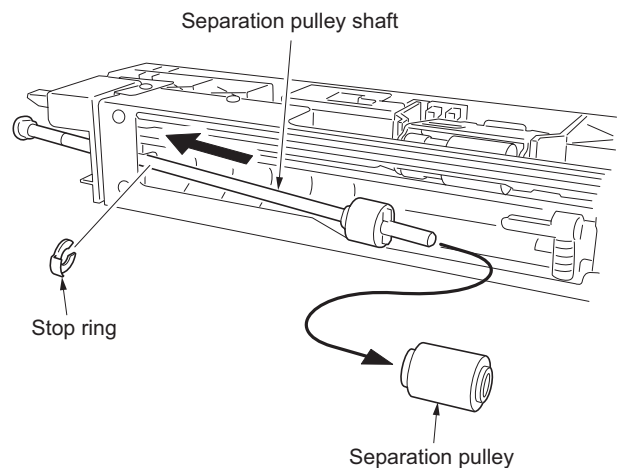
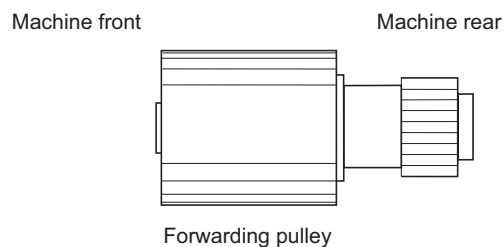


Figure 1-5-7

11. Replace the forwarding, paper feed and separation pulleys.
12. Refit all the removed parts.
When refitting the forwarding pulley, orient it correctly as shown in Figure 1-5-6.
13. When the forwarding pulley, paper feed pulley, separation pulley or the primary paper feed unit is replaced, perform maintenance mode U903 to clear the jam counter (see page 1-3-73).

**Figure 1-5-8**

(2) Detaching and refitting the MP separation, MP paper feed and MP forwarding pulleys

Follow the procedure below to replace the MP separation, MP paper feed and MP forwarding pulleys.

Procedure

Removing the MP unit

1. Remove two screws and remove the scanner right cover.

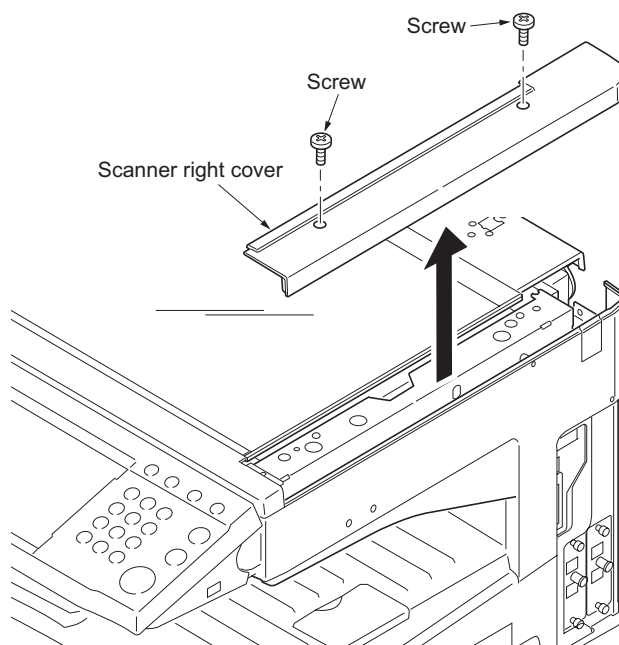


Figure 1-5-9

2. Remove four hooks and remove the right upper cover.

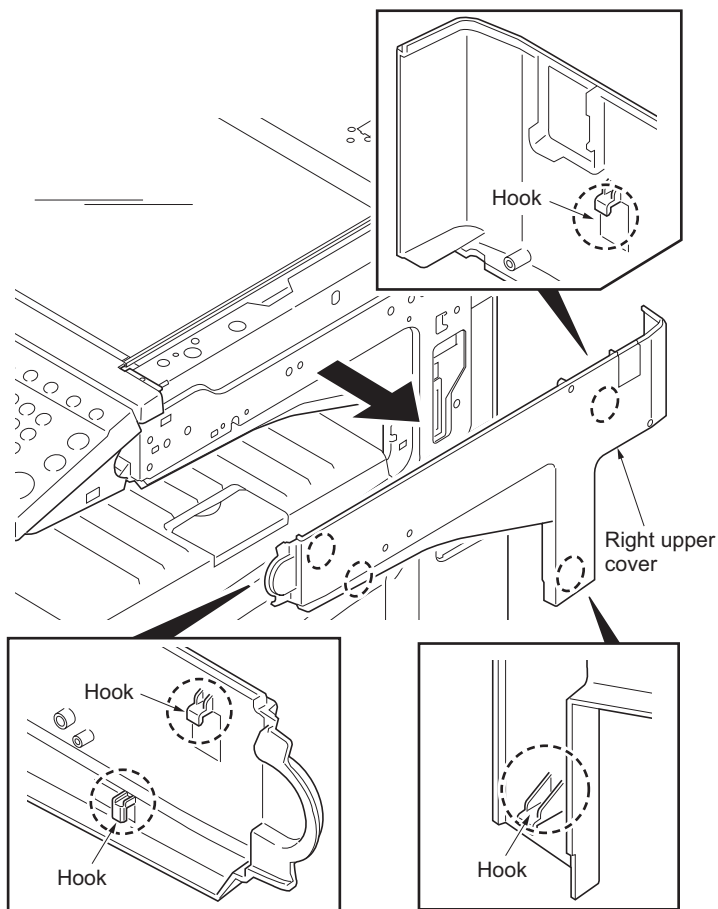


Figure 1-5-10

3. Open the front cover.
4. Remove the screw and remove the front right cover.

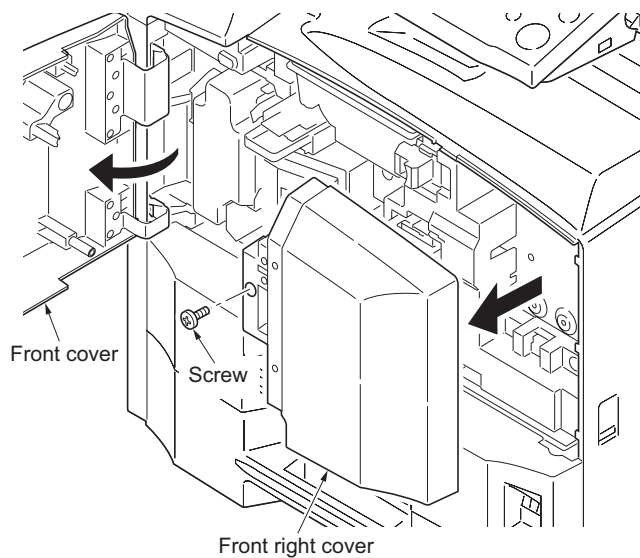


Figure 1-5-11

5. Raise the top tray.
6. Remove ten hooks and remove the right lower cover.

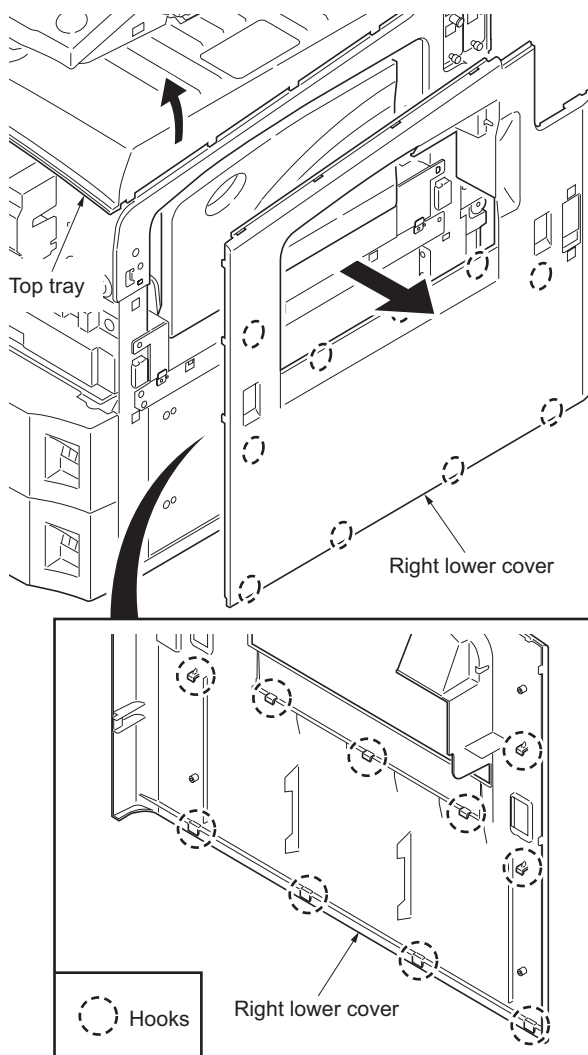


Figure 1-5-12

7. Loosen two screws and remove two MP holder plates.
8. Remove two screws.

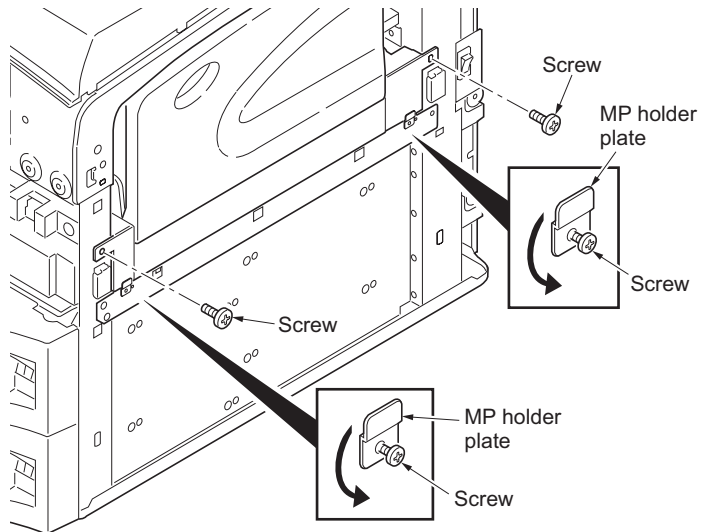


Figure 1-5-13

9. Remove two connectors.
10. Release the clamp.
11. Remove the MP unit.

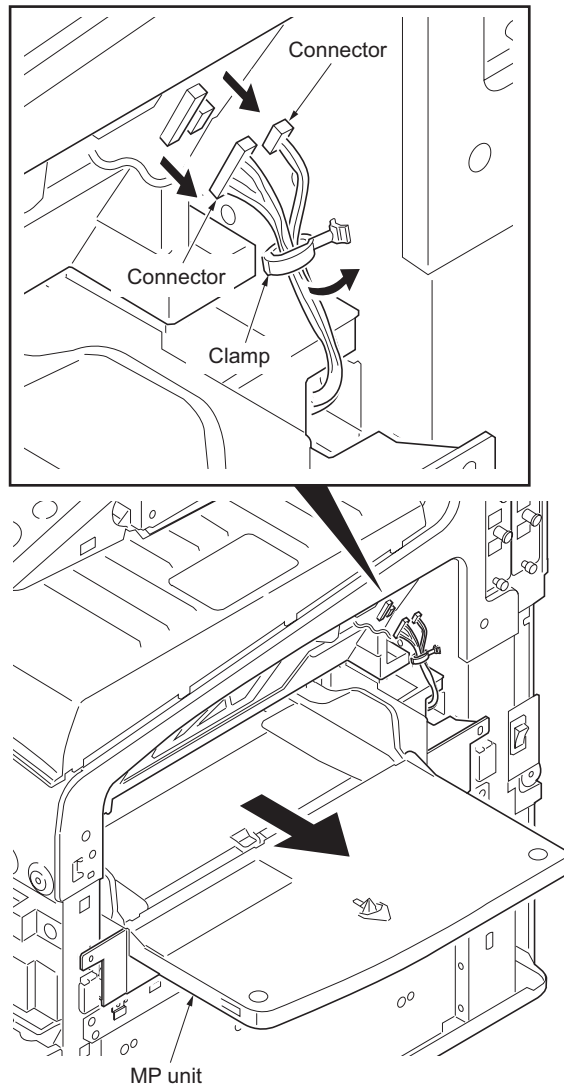
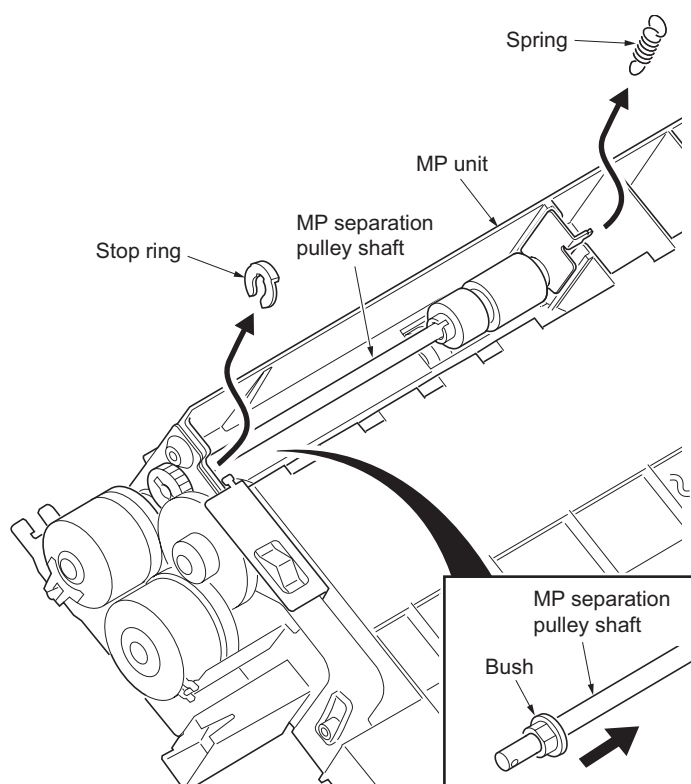


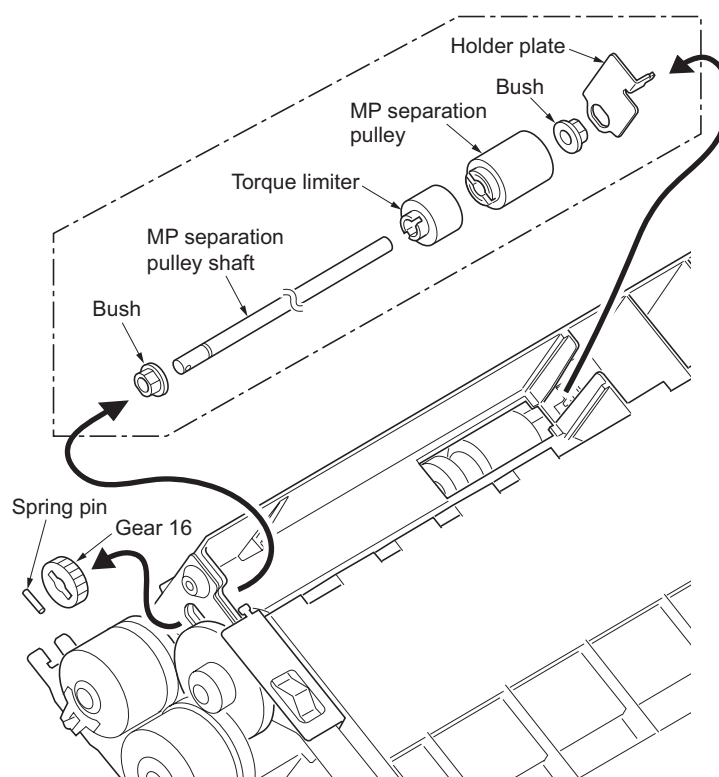
Figure 1-5-14

Removing the MP separation pulley

12. Reverse the MP unit and remove the spring and stop ring from the MP separation pulley shaft.
13. Move the bush inside.

**Figure 1-5-15**

14. Raise the MP separation pulley shaft. Remove the holder plate and the bush, and then remove the MP separation pulley.

**Figure 1-5-16**

Removing the MP paper feed pulley

15. Remove the connector.
16. Release three clamps and remove the wire.

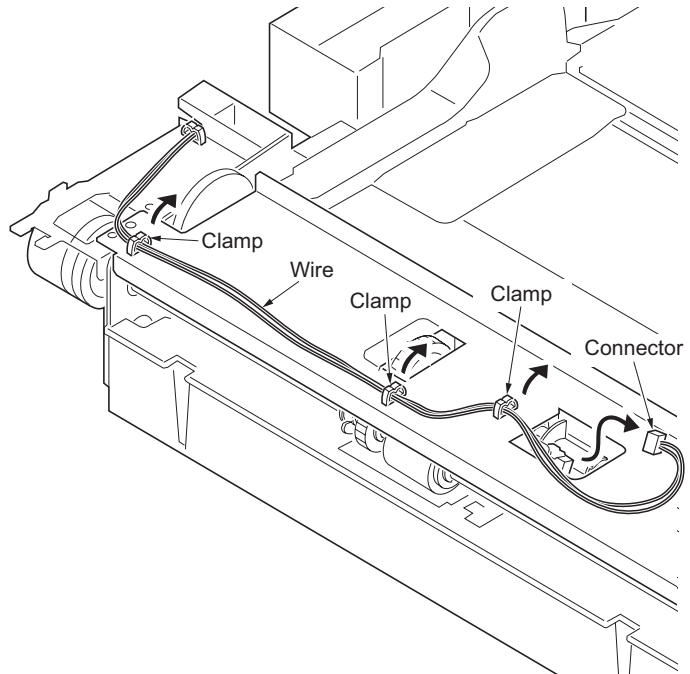


Figure 1-5-17

17. Remove the screw and remove the MP unit cover.

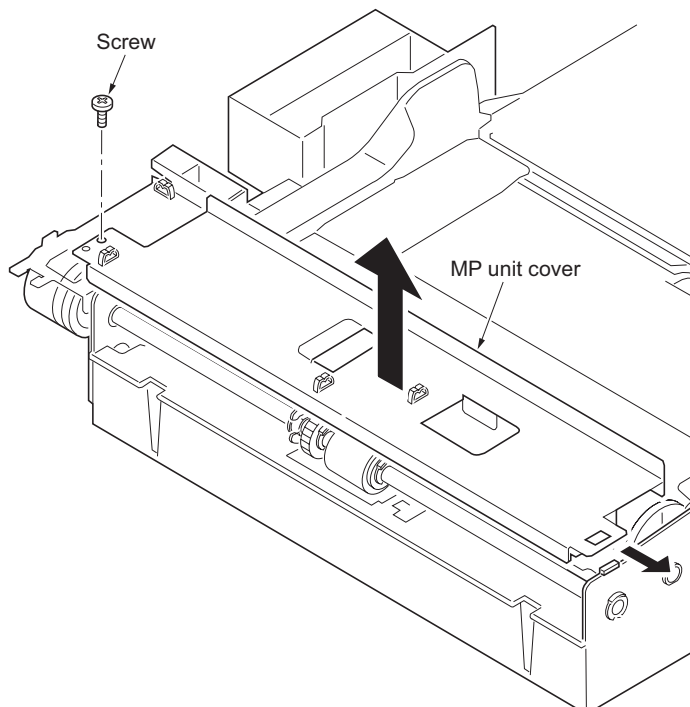


Figure 1-5-18

18. Remove the stop ring and bush.

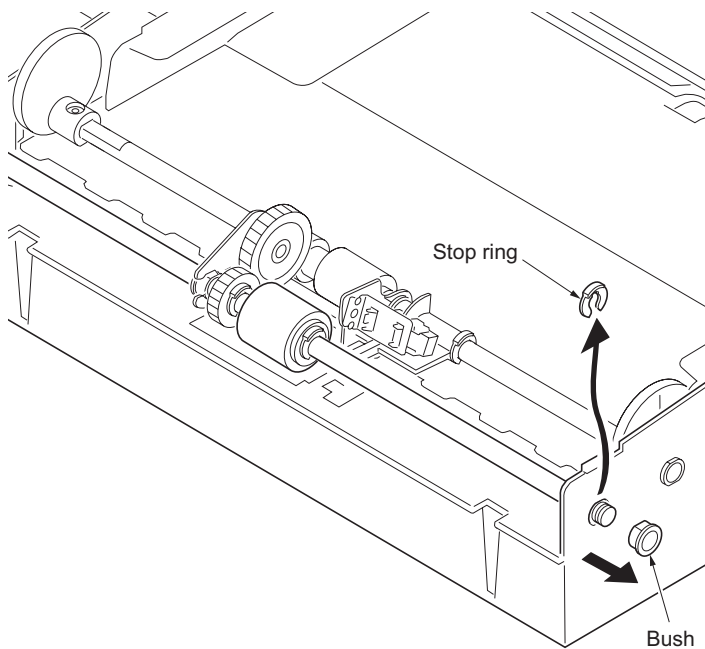


Figure 1-5-19

19. Remove the stop ring.

20. Raise the MP paper feed pulley shaft and remove the MP paper feed pulley.

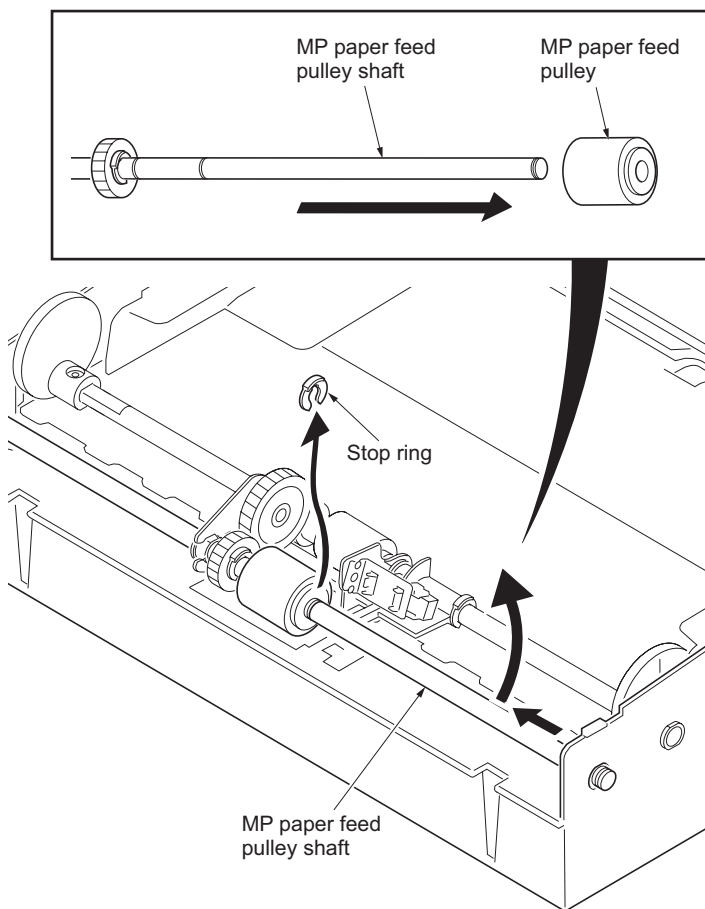


Figure 1-5-20

Removing the MP forwarding pulley

21. Remove the sponge.

22. Remove the stop ring and MP paper feed clutch.

When refitting, insert the cutout in the MP paper feed clutch over the stopper on the machine.

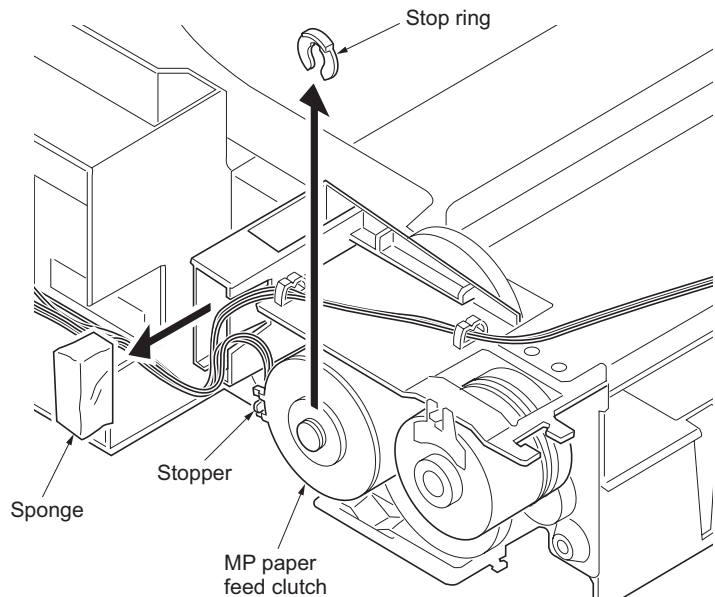


Figure 1-5-21

23. Remove the screw and move the cam and the bush toward the inner side.

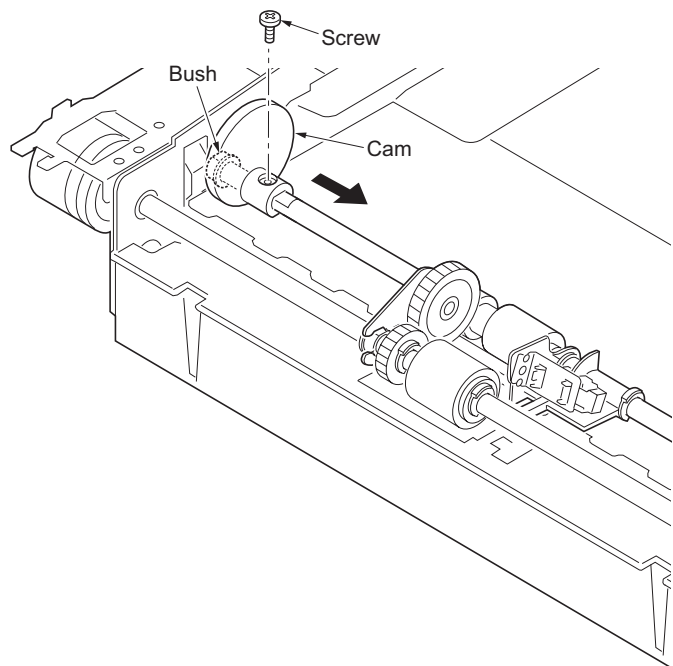


Figure 1-5-22

24. Remove the stop ring and slide the bush in the direction of the arrow.

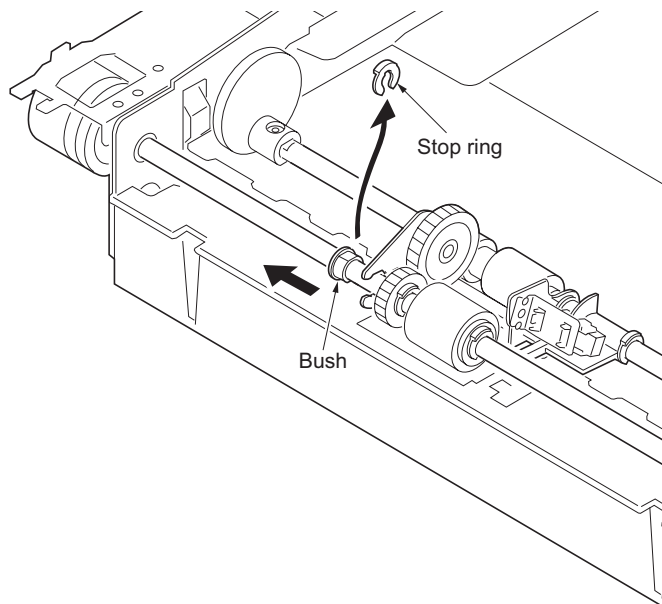


Figure 1-5-23

25. Slide the MP forwarding pulley shaft temporarily toward the rear side and then raise it to remove from the MP unit. Remove the shaft while raising the actuator of the MP paper switch.

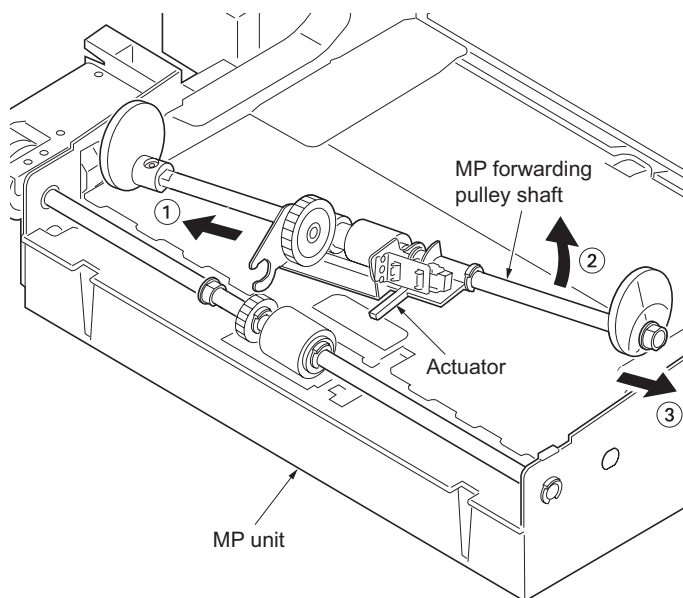


Figure 1-5-24

26. Remove the bush and cam.
27. Remove the stop ring.
28. Slide the MP forwarding pulley with the forwarding pulley retainer from the shaft to remove it.
29. Replace the MP separation, MP paper feed and MP forwarding pulleys.

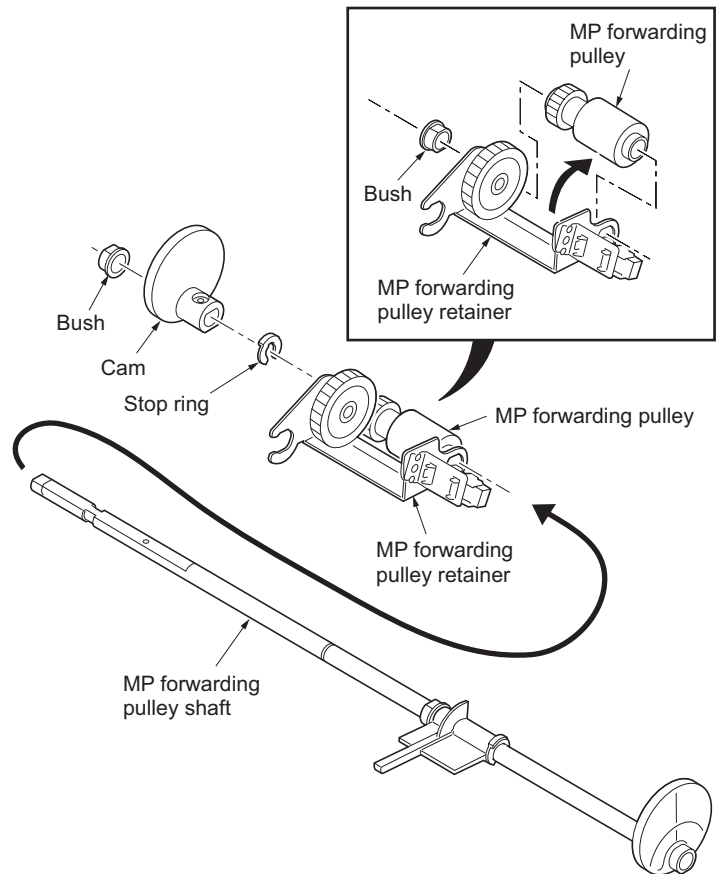


Figure 1-5-25

30. Refit all the removed parts.
When refitting the MP unit cover, the films on the cover are positioned under the MP paper feed pulley shaft.
31. When the MP forwarding pulley, MP paper feed pulley or the MP separation pulley is replaced, perform maintenance mode U903 to clear the jam counter (see page 1-3-73).

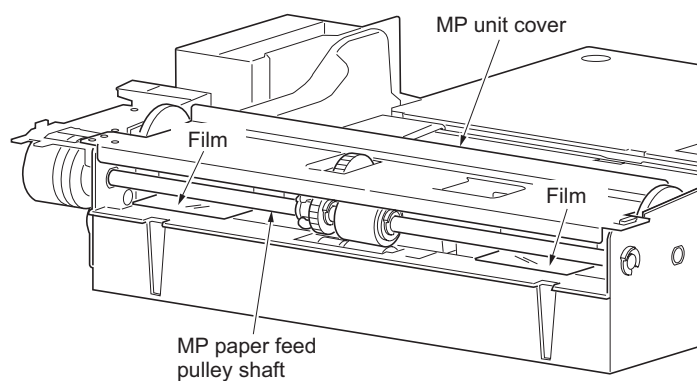


Figure 1-5-26

1-5-3 Optical section

(1) Detaching and refitting the exposure lamp

Follow the procedure below to replace the exposure lamp.

Procedure

1. Remove the original cover or the DP.
2. Remove eleven screws and remove the rear cover.

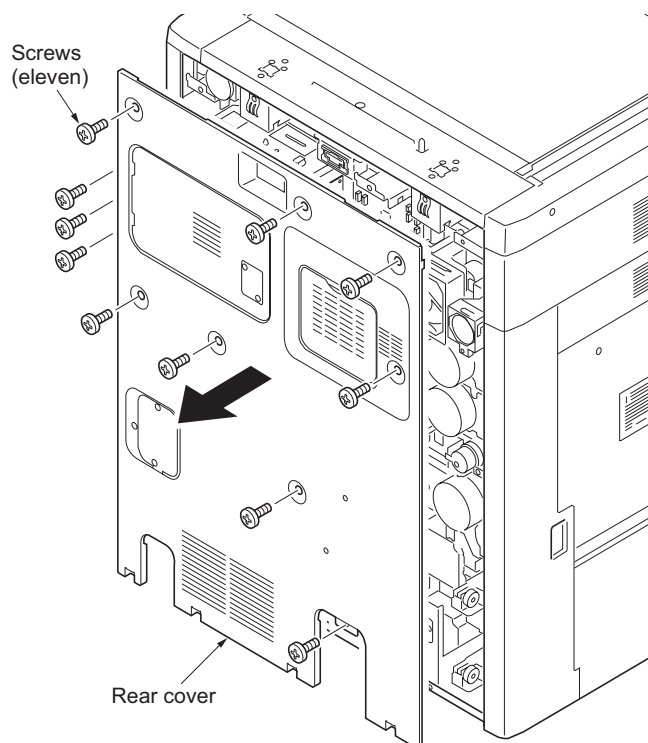


Figure 1-5-27

3. Remove the clip holder.
4. Remove two screws and remove the front left cover.

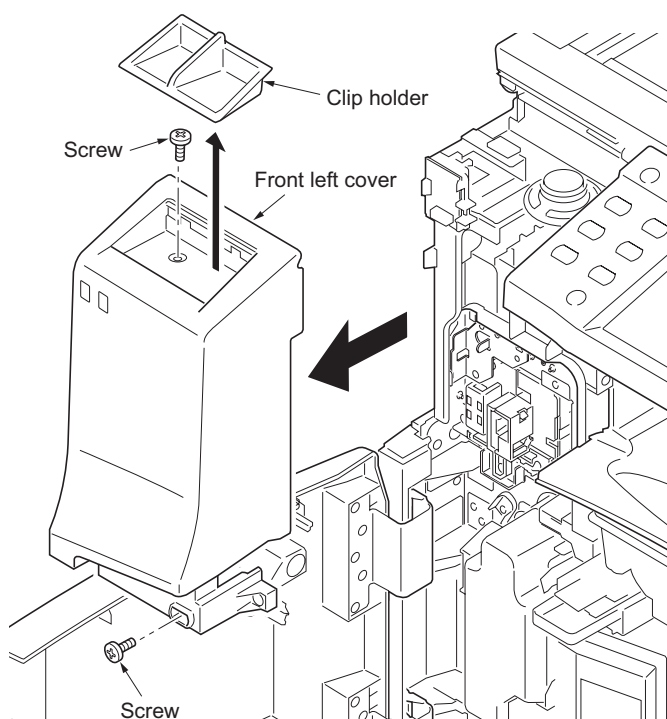


Figure 1-5-28

5. Remove two screws and remove the scanner right cover.
6. Remove the platen.

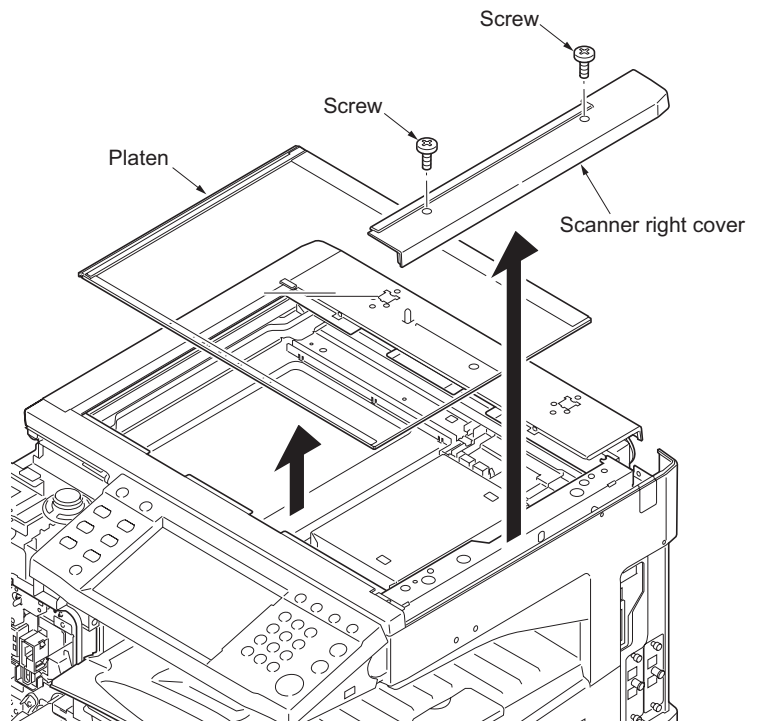


Figure 1-5-29

7. Remove the scanner front cover.
8. Remove the screw and remove the scanner rear cover.

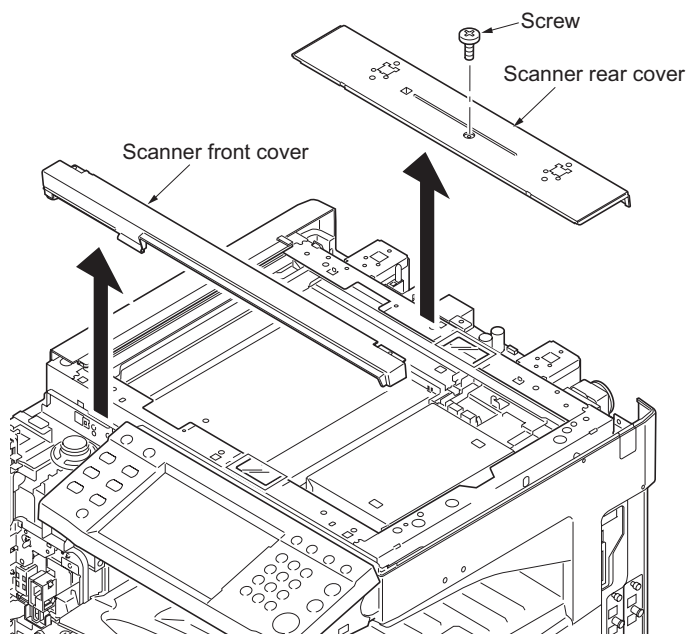


Figure 1-5-30

9. Remove the connector of the scanner inverter PWB.
10. Release the clamp and remove the wire.
11. Pull the connector out from the opening on the rear of the scanner unit.

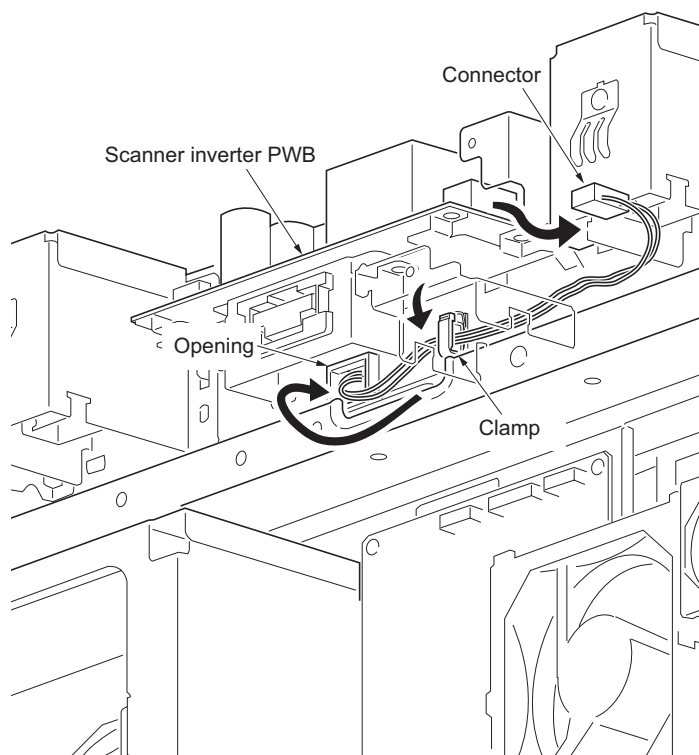


Figure 1-5-31

12. Remove two films.
13. Remove the wire guide lid.
14. Move the mirror 1 frame to notch position.

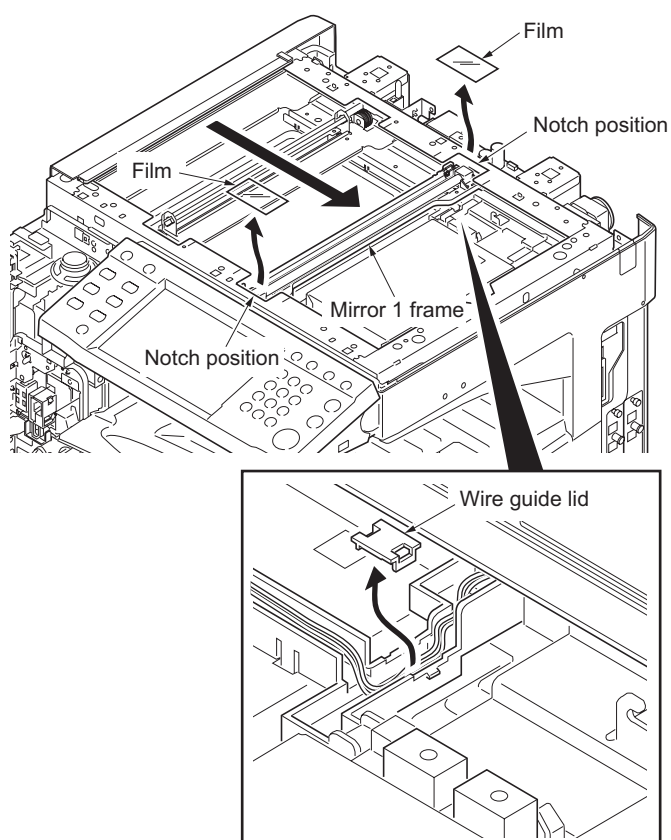


Figure 1-5-32

15. Remove the screw.
16. Open the lamp wire guide lid.

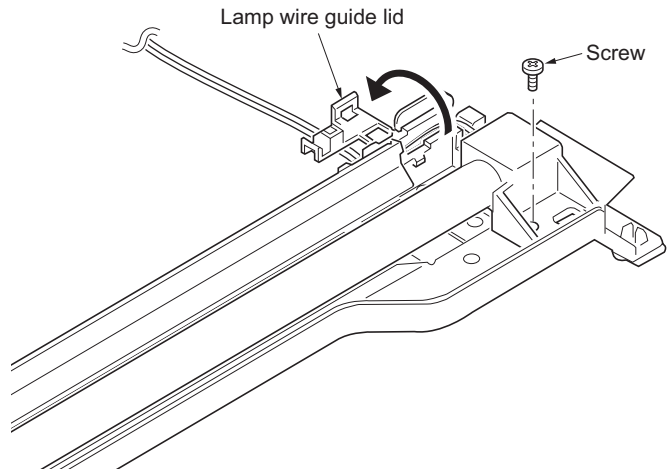


Figure 1-5-33

17. Remove the hook and remove the exposure lamp.
18. Replace the exposure lamp and install the lamp.
19. Refit all the removed parts.

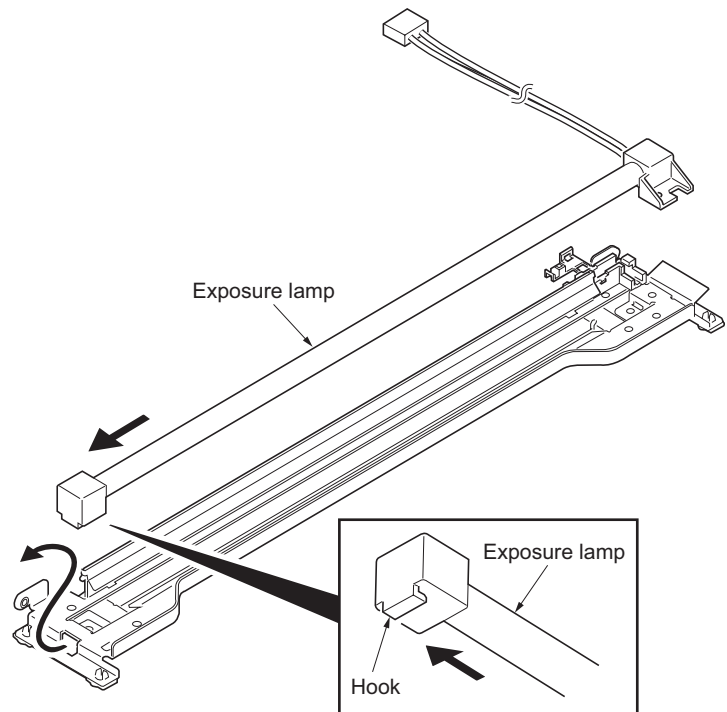


Figure 1-5-34

(2) Detaching and refitting the scanner unit

Follow the procedure below to replace the scanner unit.

Procedure

1. Remove the original cover or the DP.
2. Remove eleven screws and remove the rear cover.

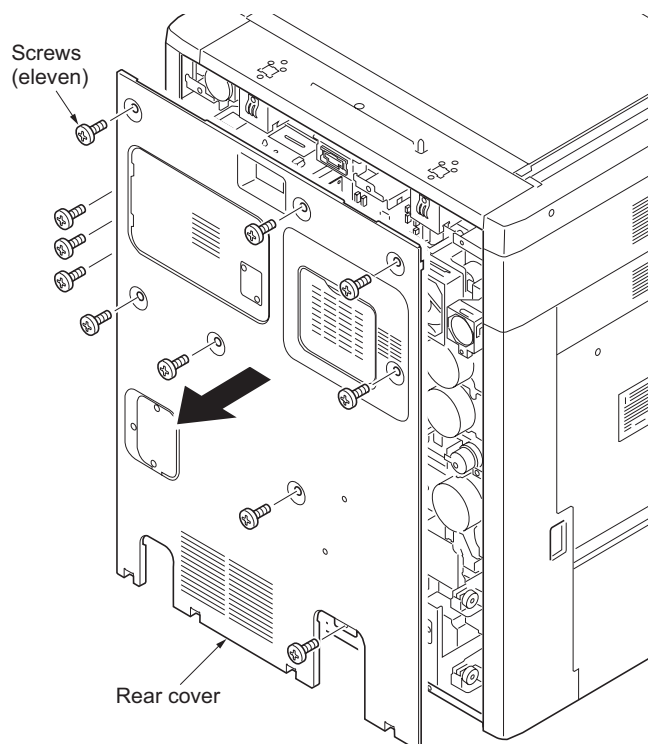


Figure 1-5-35

3. Remove the clip holder.
4. Remove two screws and remove the front left cover.

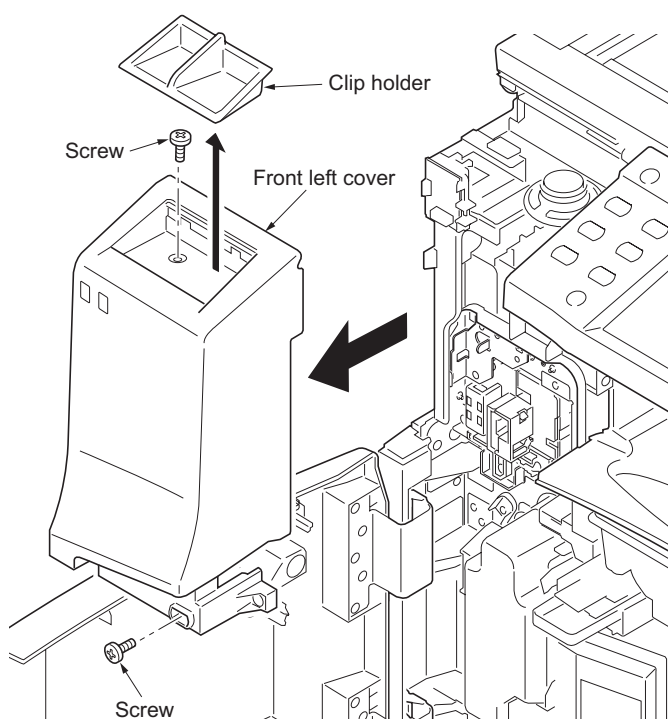


Figure 1-5-36

5. Remove two screws and remove the scanner right cover.
6. Remove the platen.

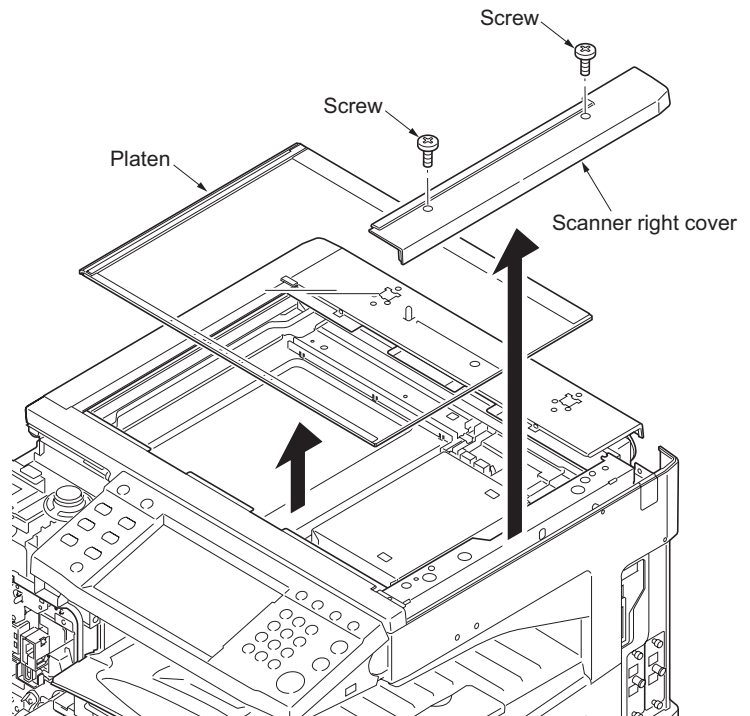


Figure 1-5-37

7. Remove the scanner front cover.
8. Remove the screw and remove the scanner rear cover.

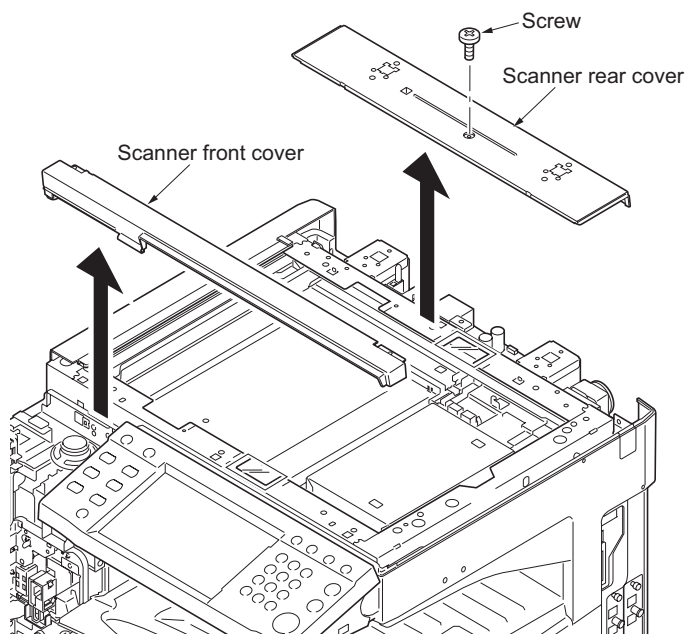


Figure 1-5-38

9. Remove the claw and remove the left upper cover.
10. Remove the scanner left cover.

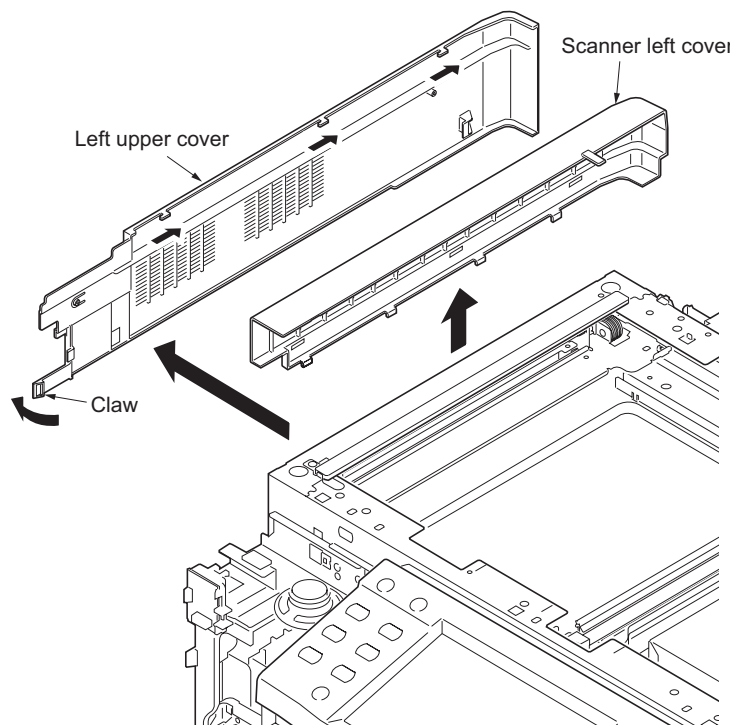


Figure 1-5-39

11. Remove YC24, YC17 and YC31 connectors of the engine PWB.
12. Remove FFC from YC16 connector of the engine PWB.
13. Remove the relay connector.
14. Release the clamp and remove the wire.
15. Remove FFC from YC18 connector of the main PWB.

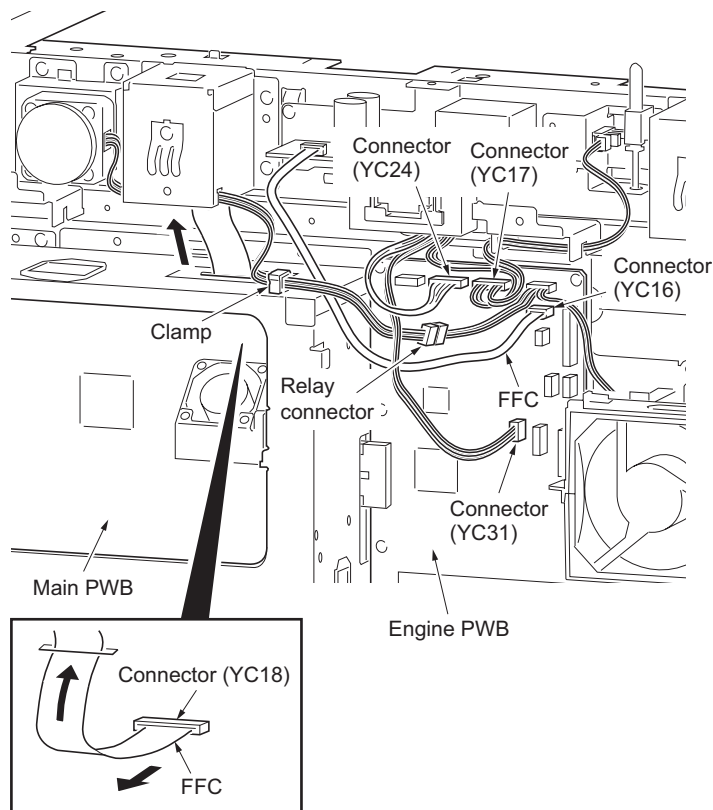


Figure 1-5-40

16. Remove four pins.
17. Remove the scanner unit.

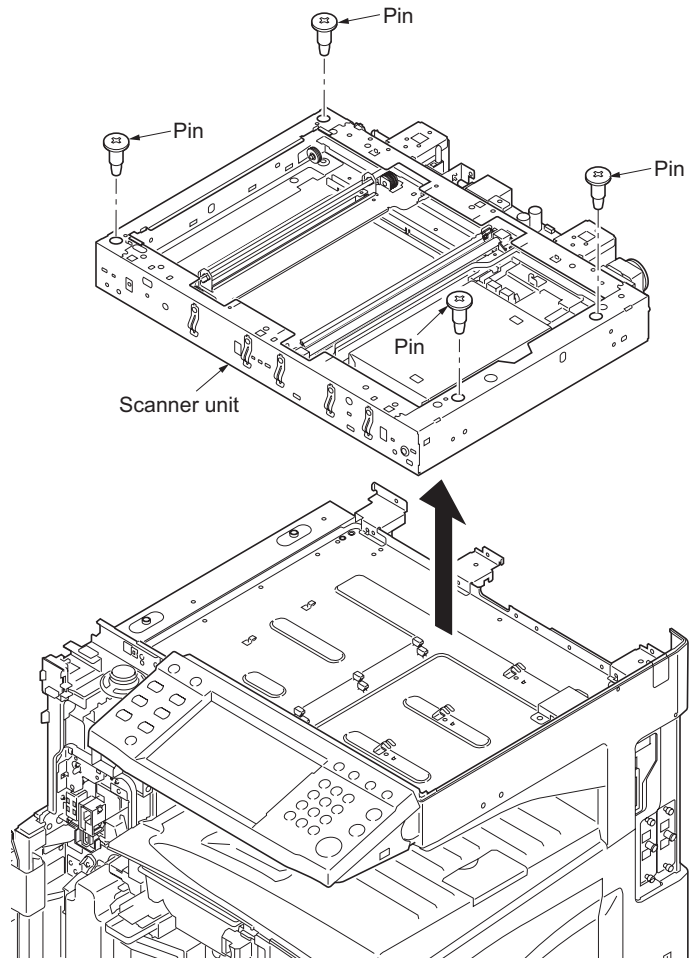


Figure 1-5-41

(3) Detaching and refitting the scanner wires

Take the following procedure when the scanner wires are broken or to be replaced.

(3-1) Detaching the scanner wires

Procedure

1. Remove the scanner unit (see page 1-5-19).
2. Remove the exposure lamp (see page 1-5-15).
3. Remove the screw and remove the slit holder plate.
4. Remove the slit glass.

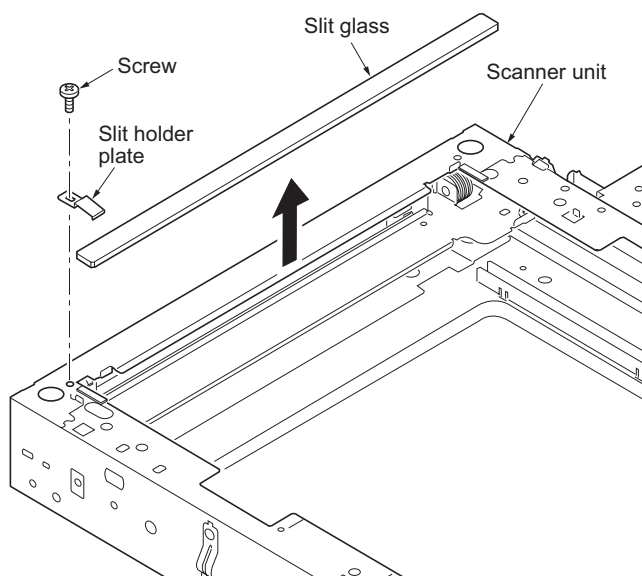


Figure 1-5-42

5. Remove each screw and remove front and rear wire holder plates.
6. Remove the mirror 1 frame from the scanner unit.

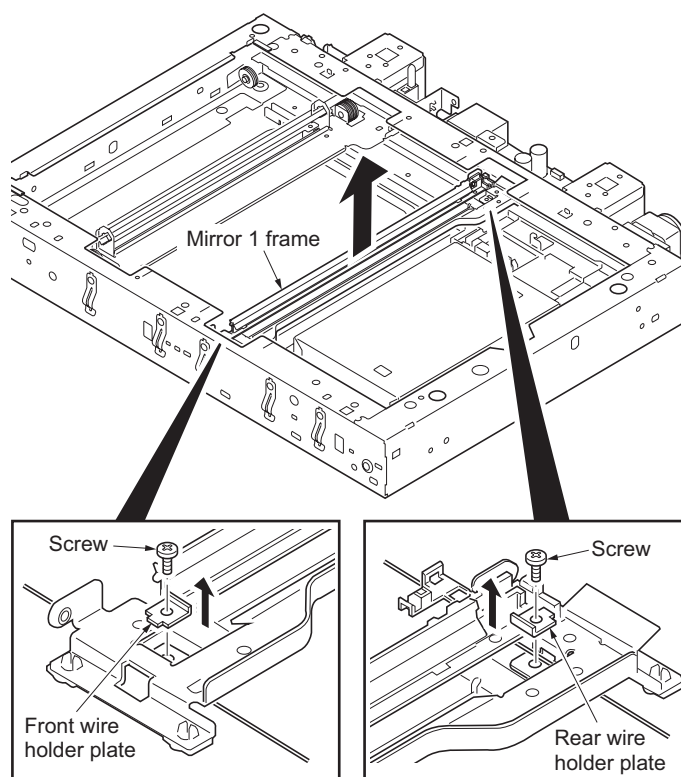


Figure 1-5-43

7. Remove the round terminals from the scanner wire springs.
8. Remove the scanner wires.

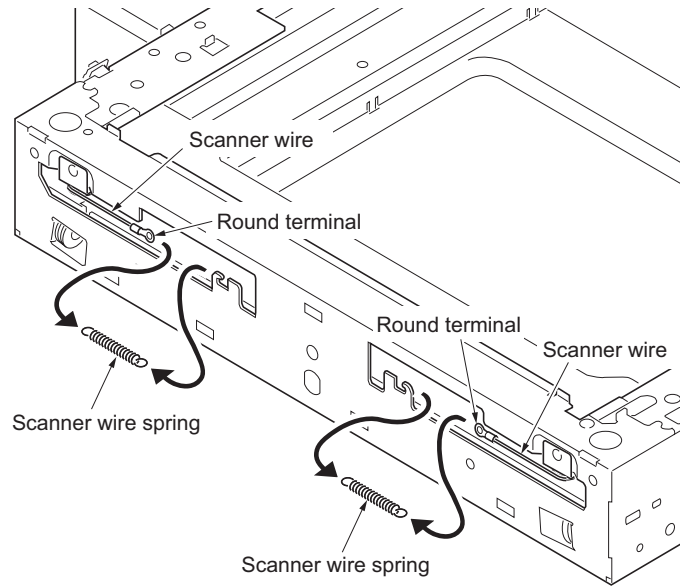


Figure 1-5-44

(3-2) Fitting the scanner wires**NOTE**

When fitting the wires, be sure to use those specified below.

Machine front: (P/N: 2C912360), gray

Machine rear: (P/N: 2C912350), black

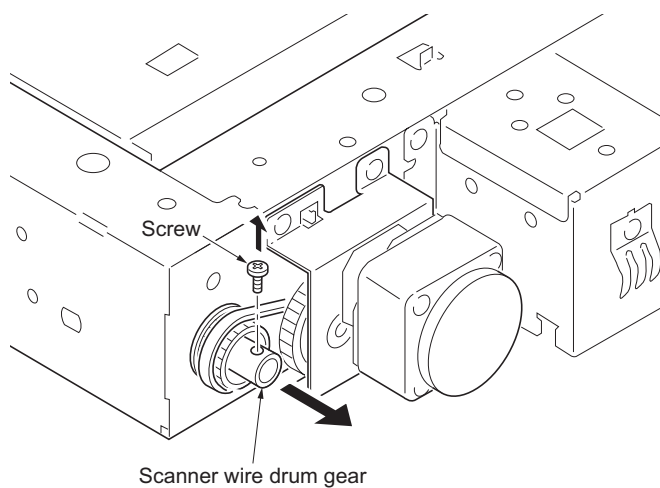
Fitting requires the following tools

Two frame securing tools (P/N 302C968310)

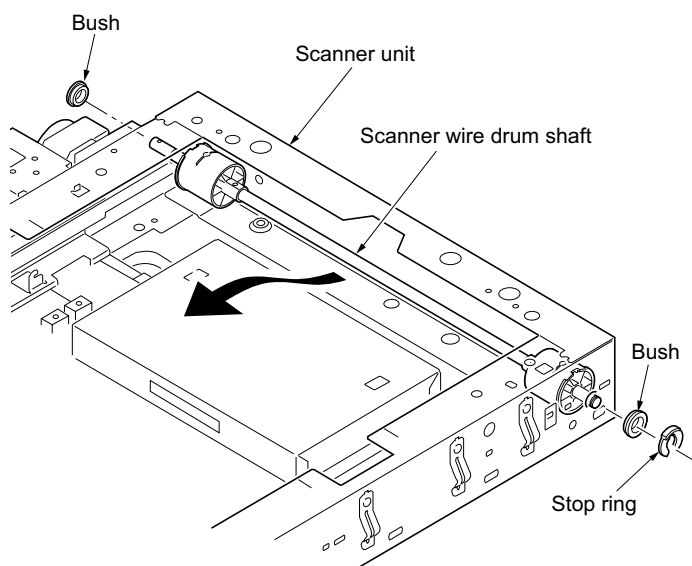
Two scanner wire stoppers (P/N 35968110)

Procedure

1. Remove the screw and remove the scanner wire drum gear.

**Figure 1-5-45**

2. Remove the stop ring and bush from the front of the scanner wire drum shaft.
3. Remove the scanner wire drum shaft from the scanner unit.

**Figure 1-5-46**

4. Insert the locating ball on each of the scanner wires into the hole in the respective scanner wire drum and wind the scanner wire three turns inward and four turns outward.
With the locating ball as the reference point, wind the shorter end of each of the wires outward.
5. Secure the scanner wires using the scanner wire stoppers.

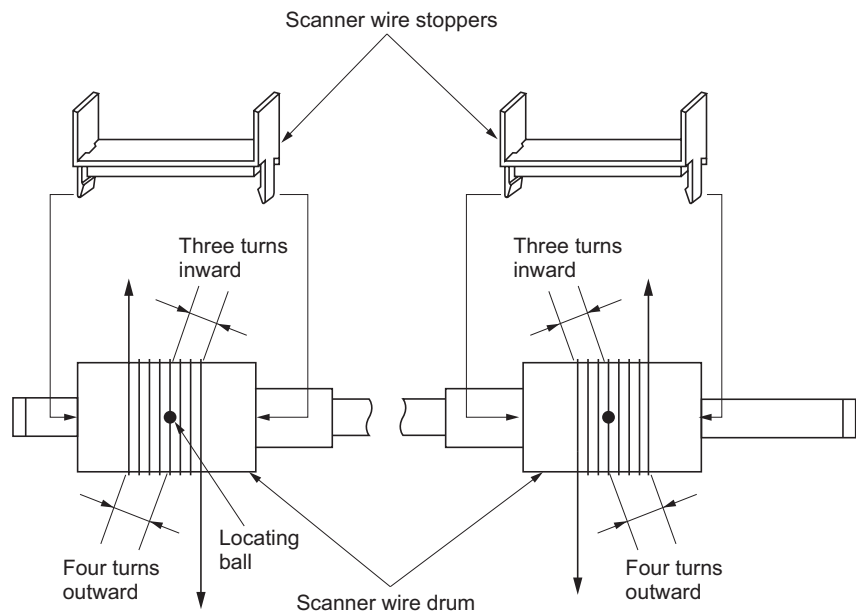


Figure 1-5-47

6. Refit the scanner wire drum shaft to the scanner unit.
7. Insert the two frame securing tools into the positioning holes at the front and rear of the scanner unit to fix the mirror 2 frame in position.

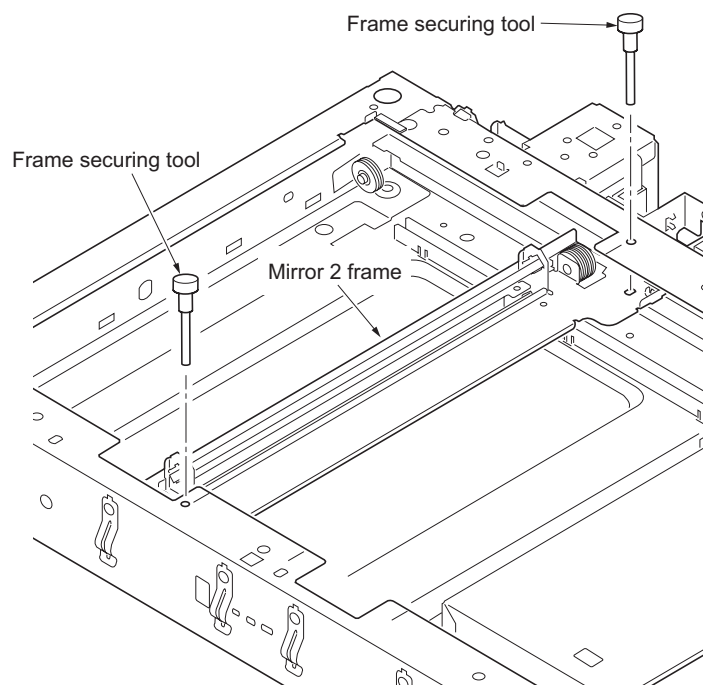


Figure 1-5-48

8. Loop the outer ends of the scanner wires around the outer grooves in the pulleys on the mirror 2 frame, winding from below to above. (1)
9. Hook the round terminals onto the catches inside the scanner unit. (2)
10. Loop the inner ends of the scanner wires around the grooves in the pulleys at the left of the scanner unit, winding from below to above. (3)
11. Loop the scanner wires around the inner grooves in the pulleys on the mirror 2 frame, winding from above to below. (4)
12. Wind the scanner wires around the grooves in the scanner wire guides at the left of the scanner unit. (5)
13. Hook the round terminals onto the scanner wire springs. (6)

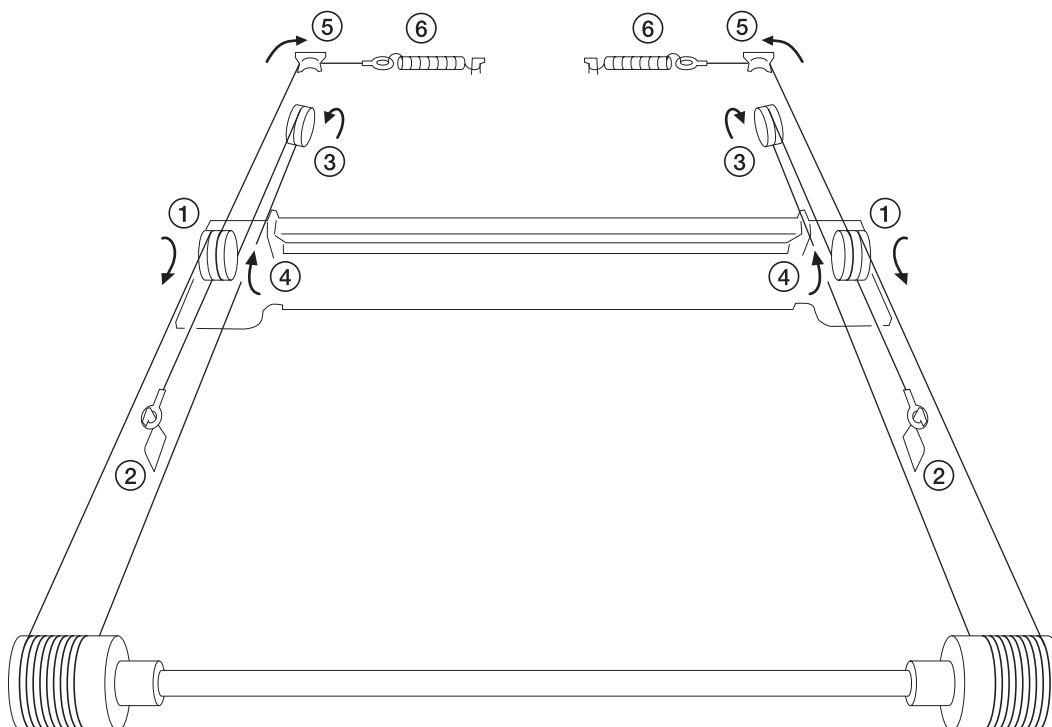


Figure 1-5-49

14. Remove the two scanner wire stoppers and frame securing tools.
15. Focusing on the locating ball of the wire drum, move aside the wires to inside.
16. Move the mirror 2 frame from side to side to correctly locate the wires in position.
17. Refit the mirror 1 frame.
18. Move the mirror 1 and 2 frames to the machine left, and insert the two frame securing tools into the positioning holes at the front and rear of the scanner unit to secure the frames in position.
19. Hold the wires and fix each front and rear wire holder plate to mirror 1 frame with the screw.
20. Remove the two frame securing tools.
21. Refit all the removed parts.

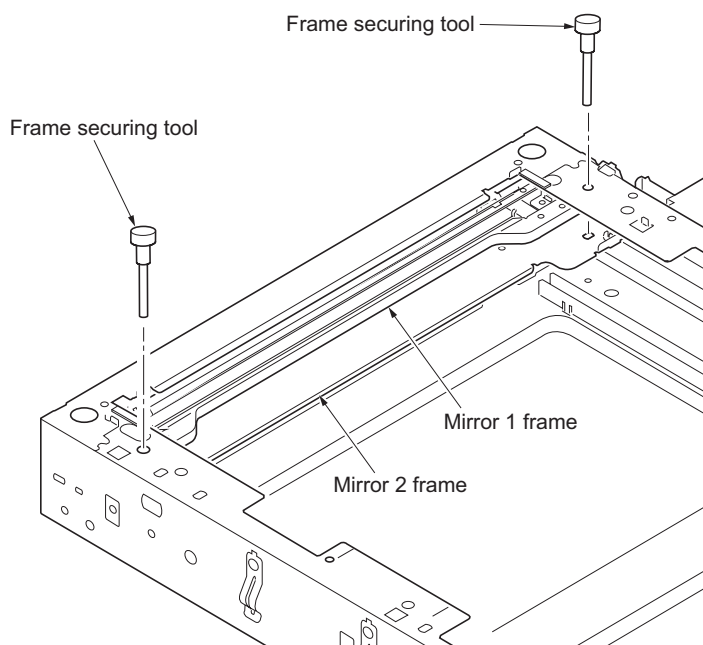


Figure 1-5-50

(4) Detaching and refitting the ISU (reference)

Follow the procedure below to replace the ISU.

Procedure

1. Remove two screws and remove the scanner right cover.
2. Remove the platen.

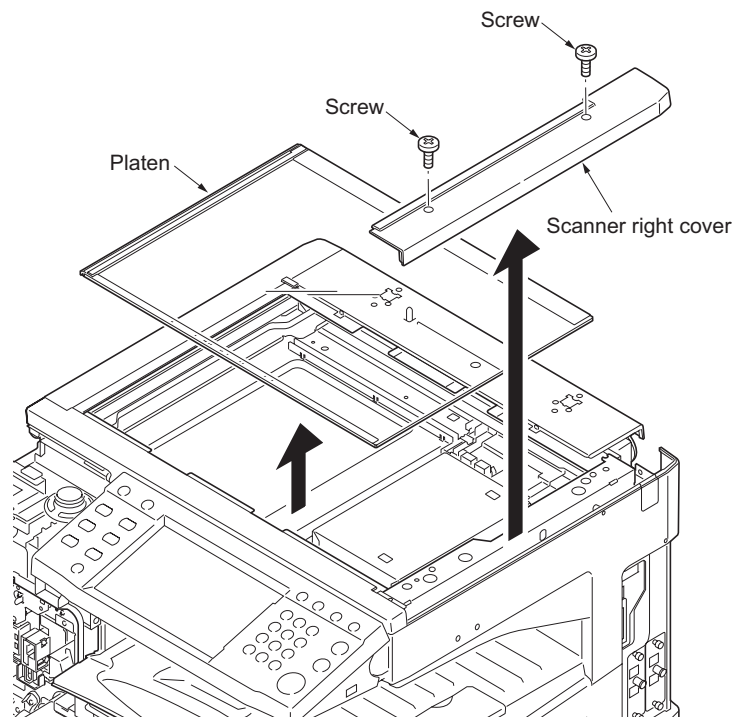


Figure 1-5-51

3. Remove six screws and remove the FFC ground and ISU cover.

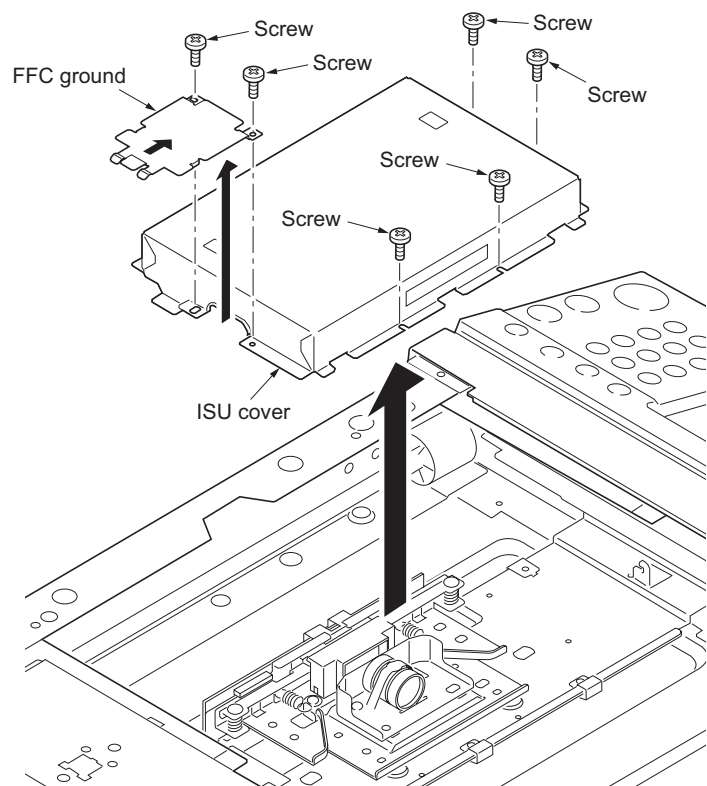
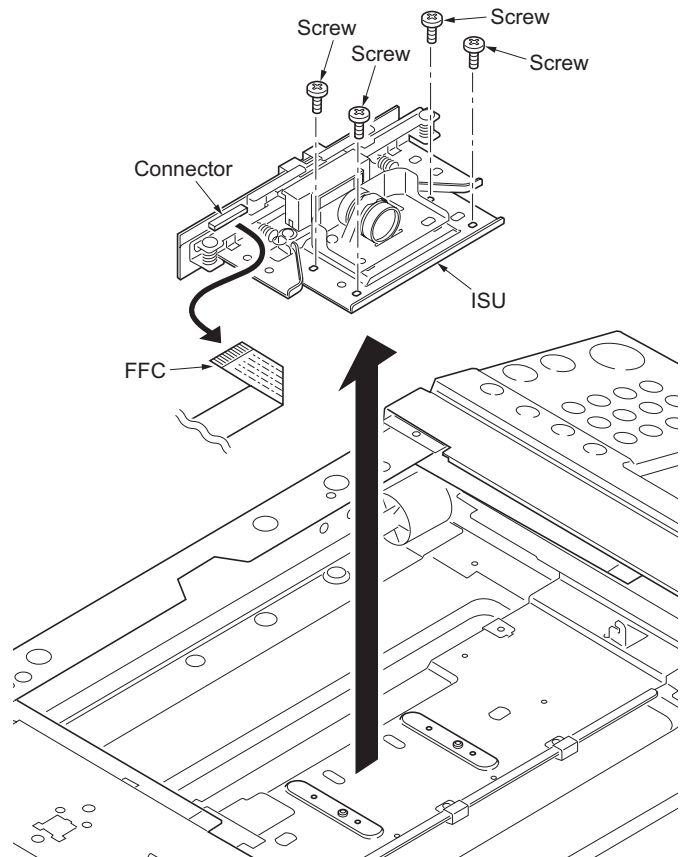


Figure 1-5-52

4. Remove the FFC from the connector.
5. Remove four screws and remove the ISU.
6. Replace the ISU.
7. Refit all the removed parts.

**Figure 1-5-53**

(5) Detaching and refitting the laser scanner unit

Follow the procedure below to replace the laser scanner unit.

Procedure

1. Open the front cover.
2. Remove the toner container.
3. Remove the waste toner box.
4. Remove the screw and remove the front right cover.

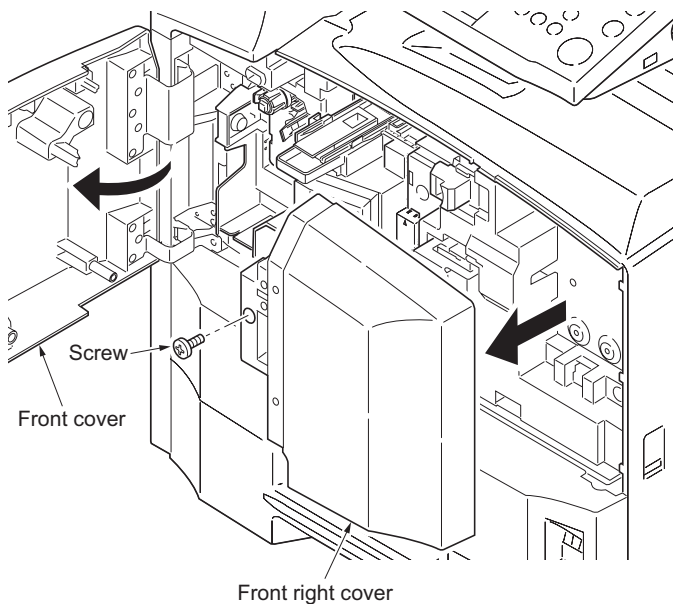


Figure 1-5-54

5. Remove the claw and remove the toner hopper wire cover.

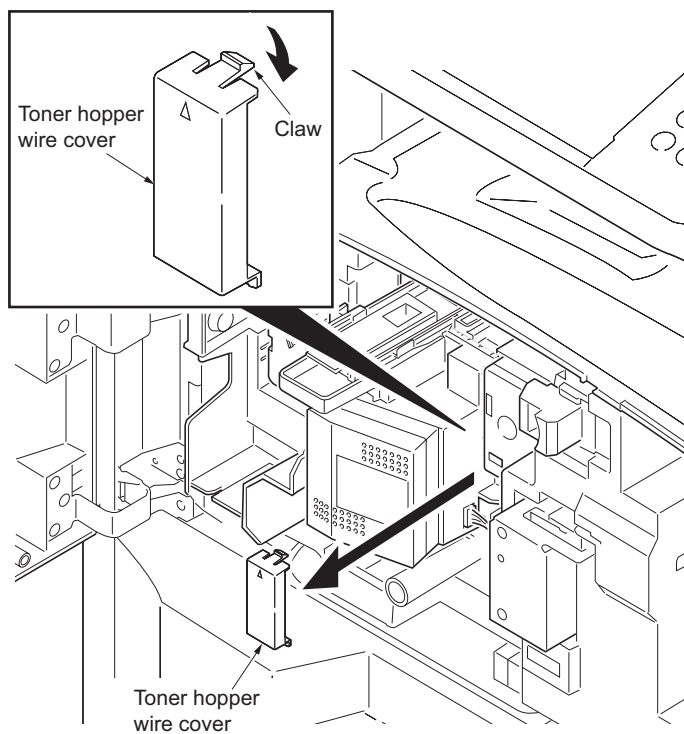
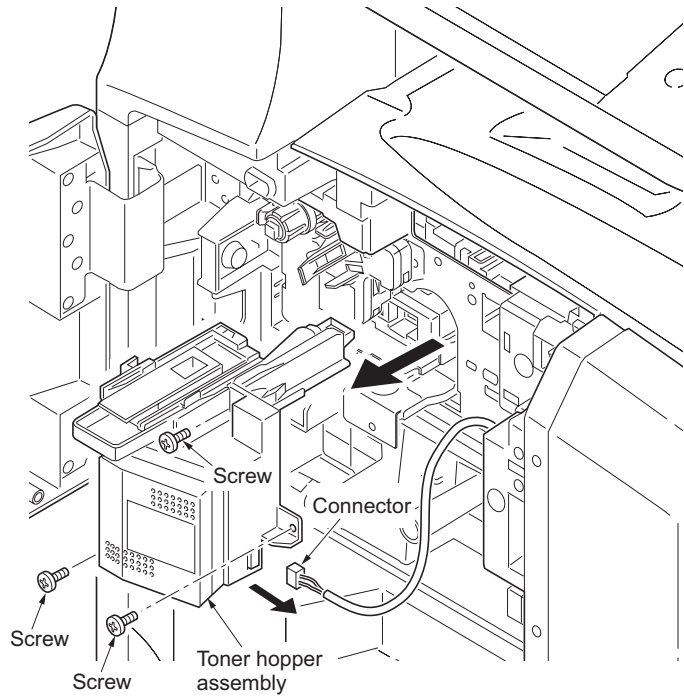
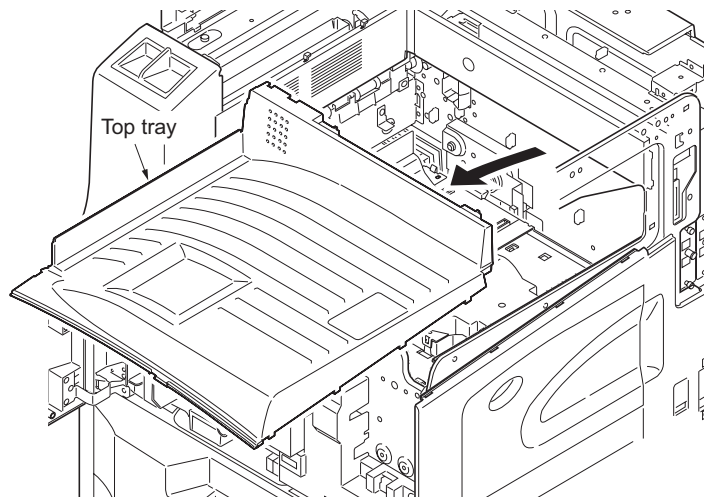


Figure 1-5-55

6. Remove three screws.
7. Remove the connector.
8. Remove the toner hopper assembly.

**Figure 1-5-56**

9. Remove the top tray.

**Figure 1-5-57**

10. Remove four connectors.
11. Release the clamp.

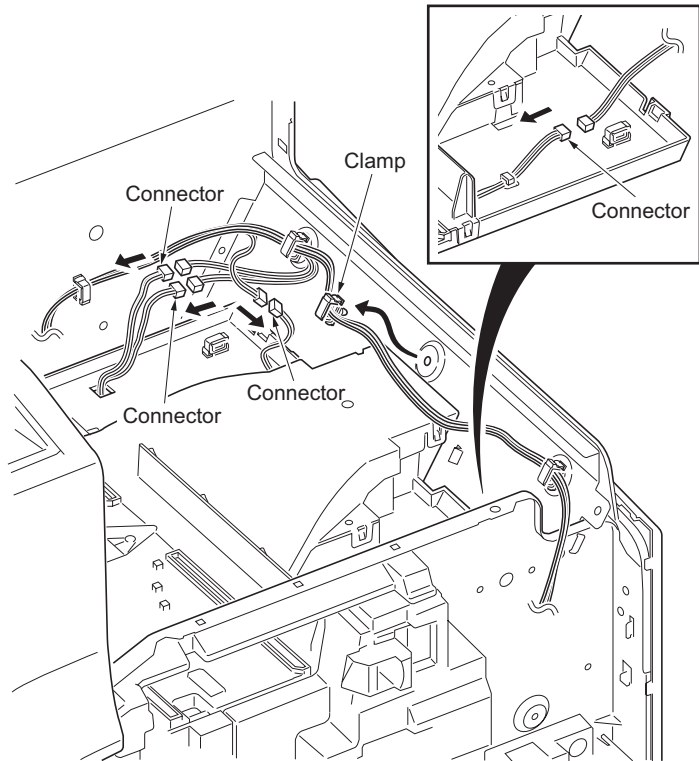


Figure 1-5-58

12. Remove two screws and remove the cooling fan assembly.

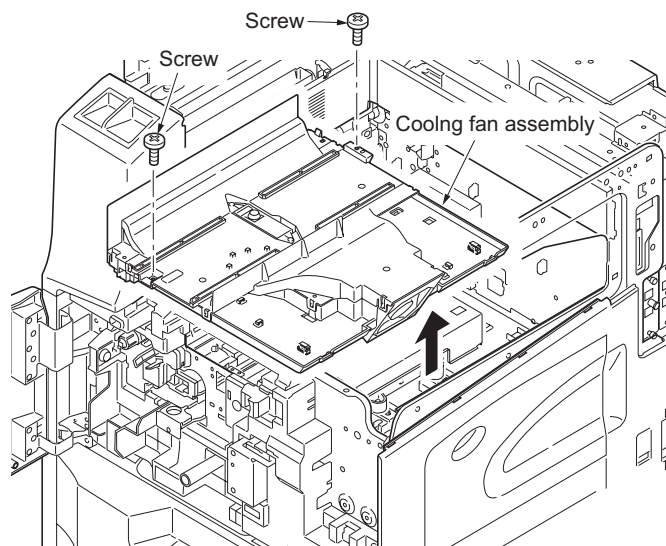


Figure 1-5-59

13. Remove three screws and remove the LSU cover.

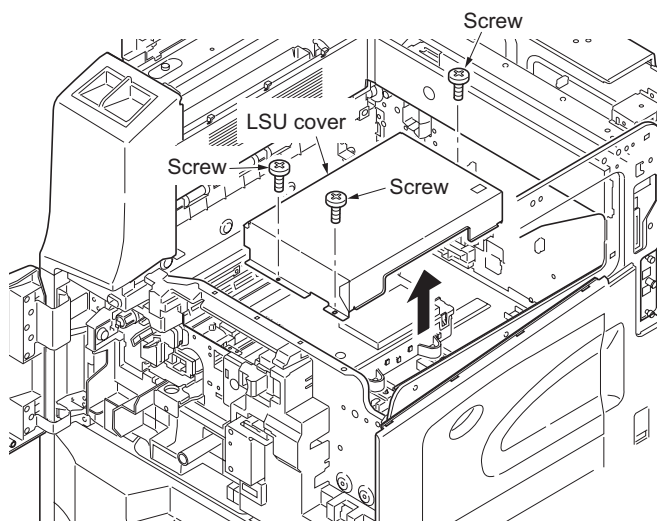


Figure 1-5-60

14. Remove two connectors.
 15. Remove four screws and remove the laser scanner unit.
 16. Replace the laser scanner unit and install the unit.
 17. Refit all the removed parts.

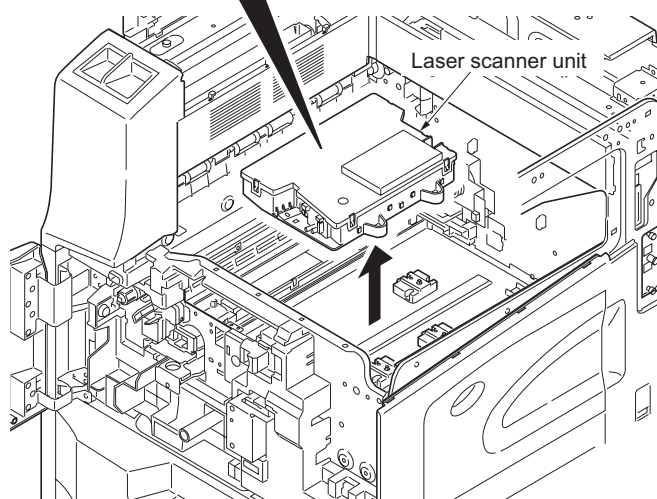
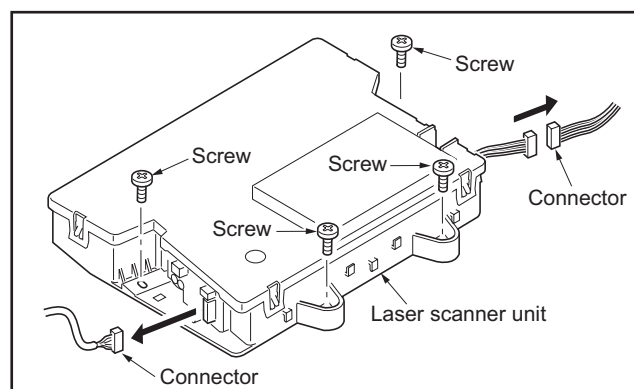


Figure 1-5-61

(6) Adjusting the position of the ISU (reference)

Perform the following adjustment if the leading and trailing edges of the copy image are laterally skewed (lateral squareness not obtained).

Caution:

Adjust the deflection in the paper at the registration roller first (see page 1-3-23). Check for the longitudinal squareness of the copy image, and if it is not obtained, perform the longitudinal squareness adjustment.

Before making the following adjustment, output a VTC-PG2 pattern in maintenance item U993 to use as the original for the adjustment.

Procedure

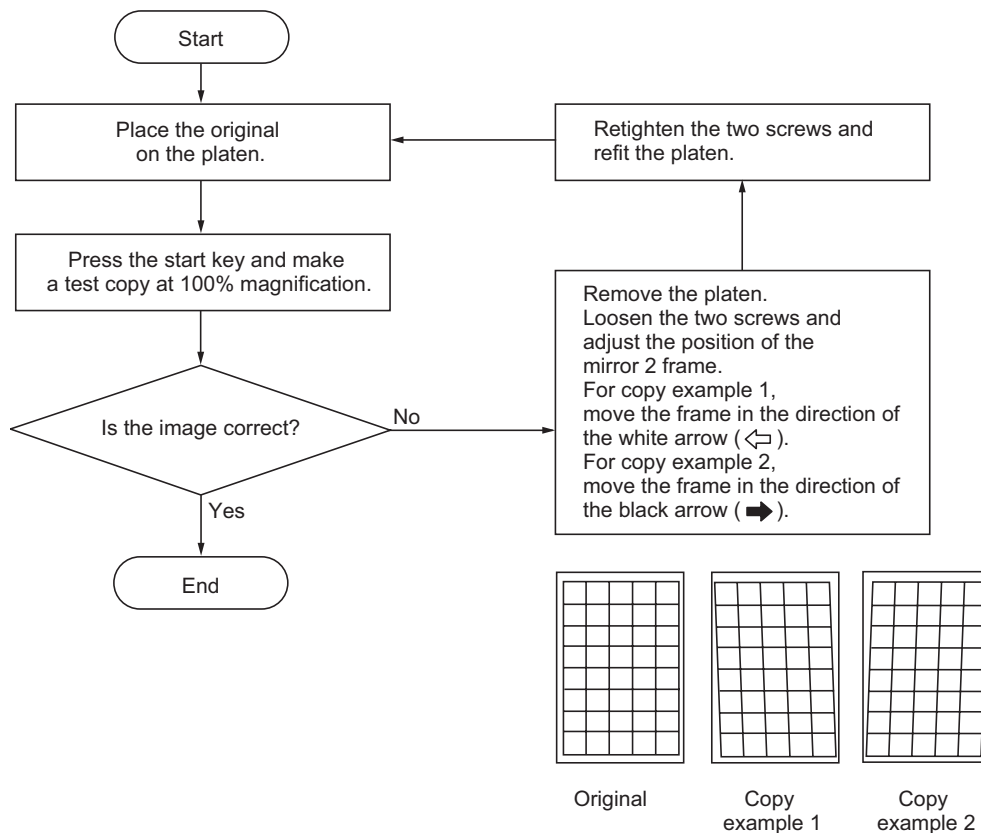


Figure 1-5-62

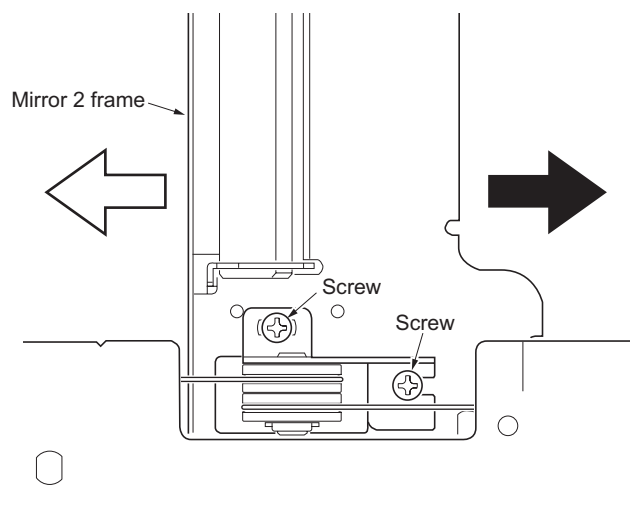


Figure 1-5-63

1-5-4 Drum section

(1) Detaching and refitting the drum unit

Follow the procedure below to replace the drum unit.

Cautions

Avoid direct sunlight or strong light when detaching and refitting the drum unit.
Never touch the drum surface when holding the drum unit.

Procedure

1. Open the left cover 1.
2. Open the front cover.
3. Remove the toner container.
4. Remove the waste toner box.
5. Remove the claw and remove the toner hopper wire cover.

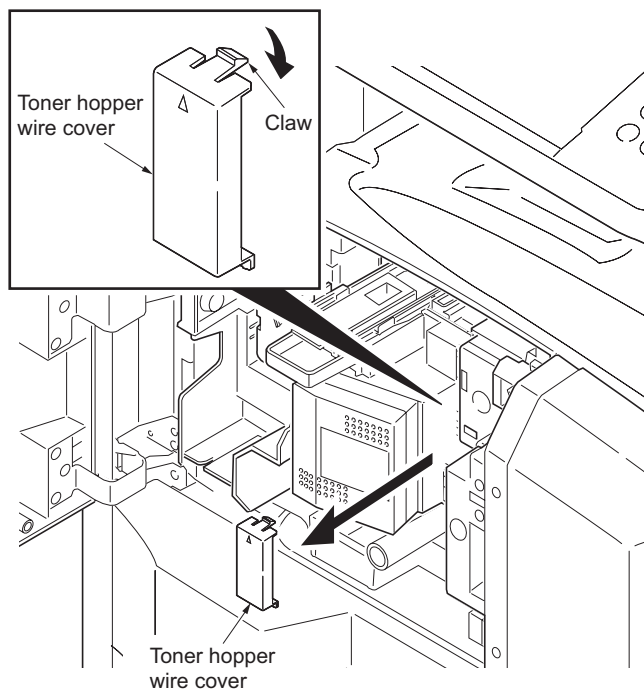


Figure 1-5-64

6. Remove the connector.
7. Remove three screws.
8. Remove the toner hopper assembly.

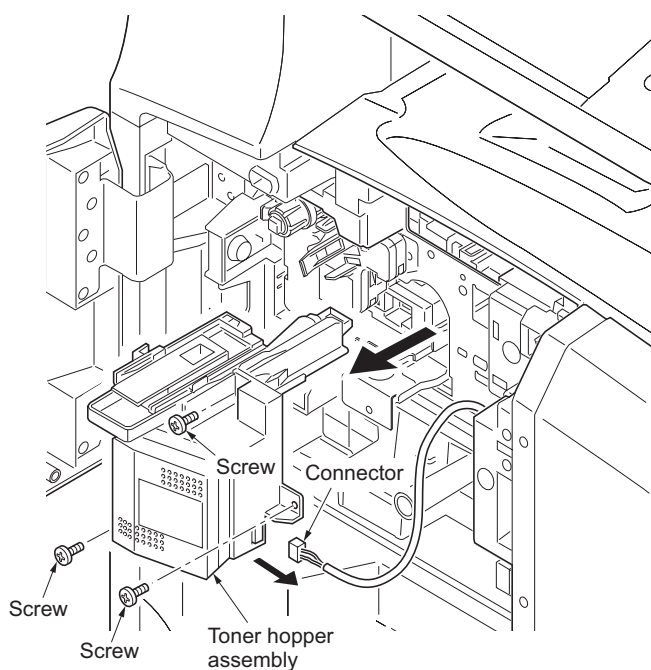


Figure 1-5-65

9. Remove the claw and remove the inner cover lid.
10. Remove three connectors.
11. Pull the developing lever.

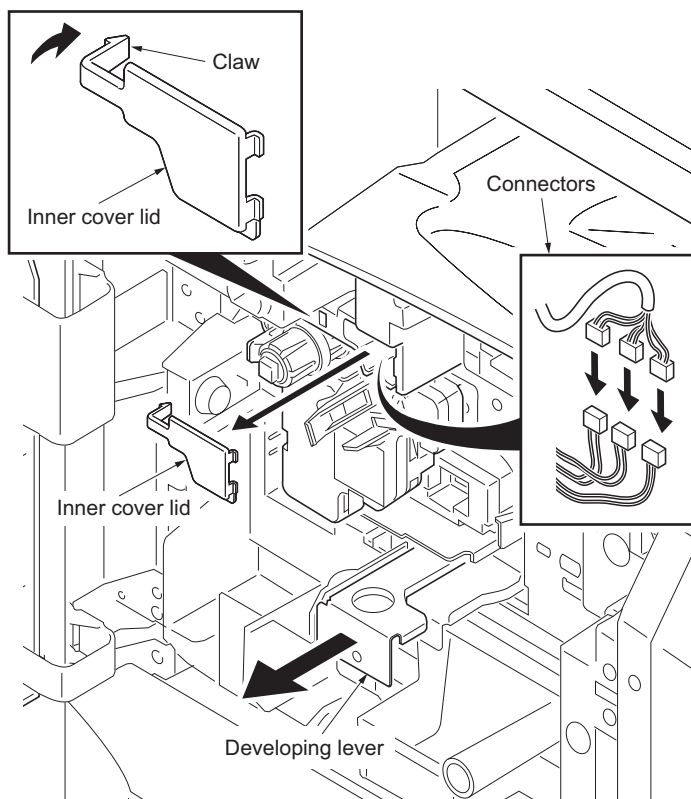


Figure 1-5-66

12. Remove the screw and remove the drum unit.
13. Replace the drum unit and install the unit.

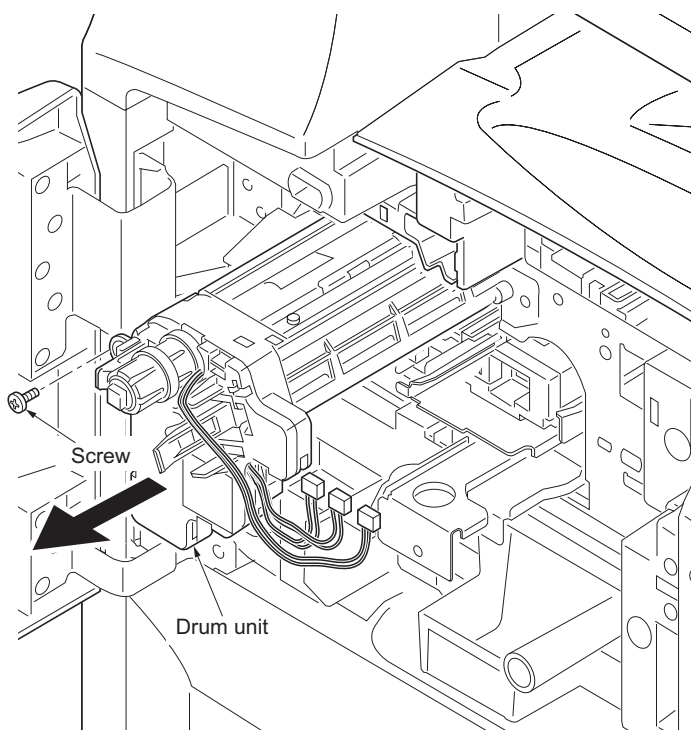


Figure 1-5-67

(2) Detaching and refitting the main charger unit

Follow the procedure below to replace the main charger unit.

Procedure

1. Open the front cover.

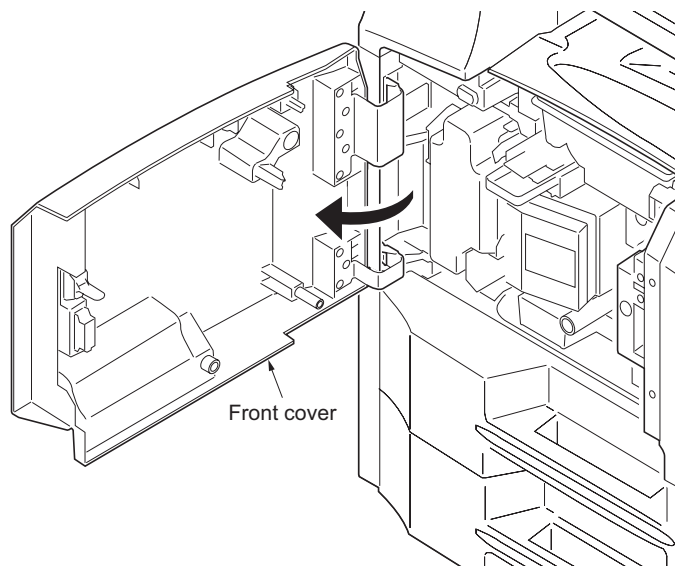


Figure 1-5-68

2. Pull the main charger unit.
3. While pressing the lock lever and remove the main charger unit.
4. Replace the main charger unit and install the unit.
The main charger unit, when fully inserted, must be set aside towards the drum unit.

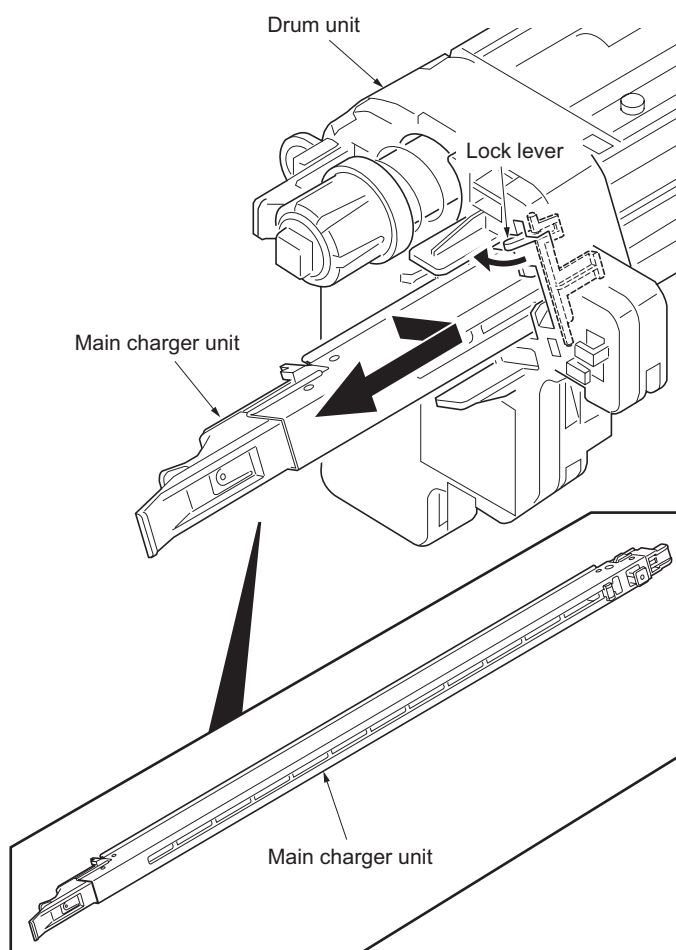


Figure 1-5-69

(3) Detaching and refitting the drum separation claws

Follow the procedure below to replace the drum separation claws.

Procedure

1. Remove the drum unit (see page 1-5-38).
2. Remove two screws and remove the lower cleaning seal.

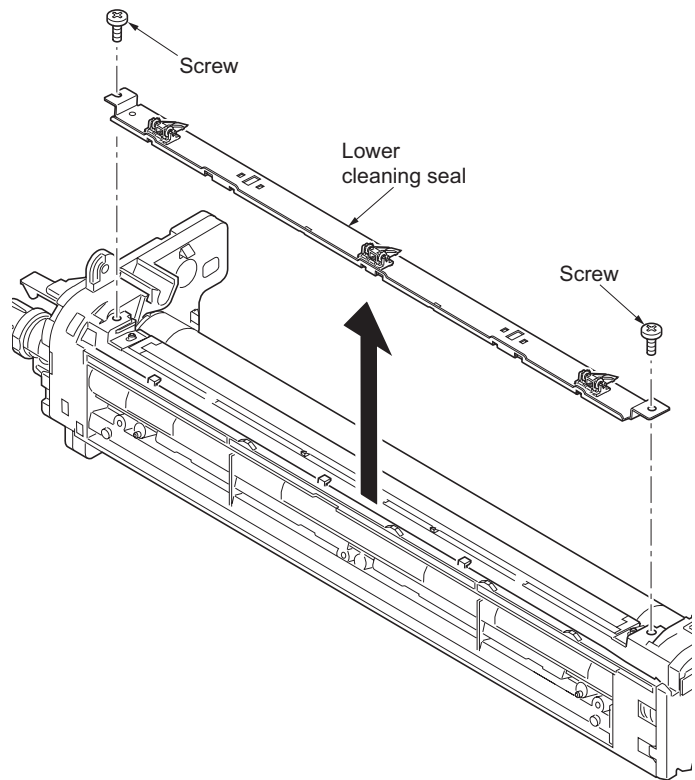


Figure 1-5-70

3. Release the inserted parts and remove the drum separation claws.
4. Replace the drum separation claws and install the claws.
5. Refit all the removed parts.

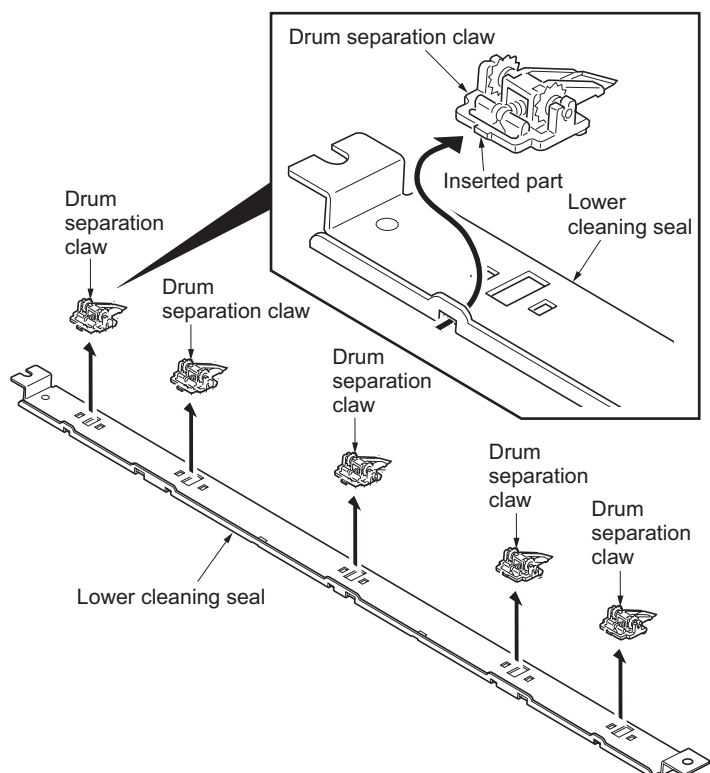


Figure 1-5-71

1-5-5 Developing section

(1) Detaching and refitting the developing unit

Follow the procedure below to replace the developing unit.

Procedure

1. Remove the drum unit (see page 1-5-38).
2. Remove two connectors.

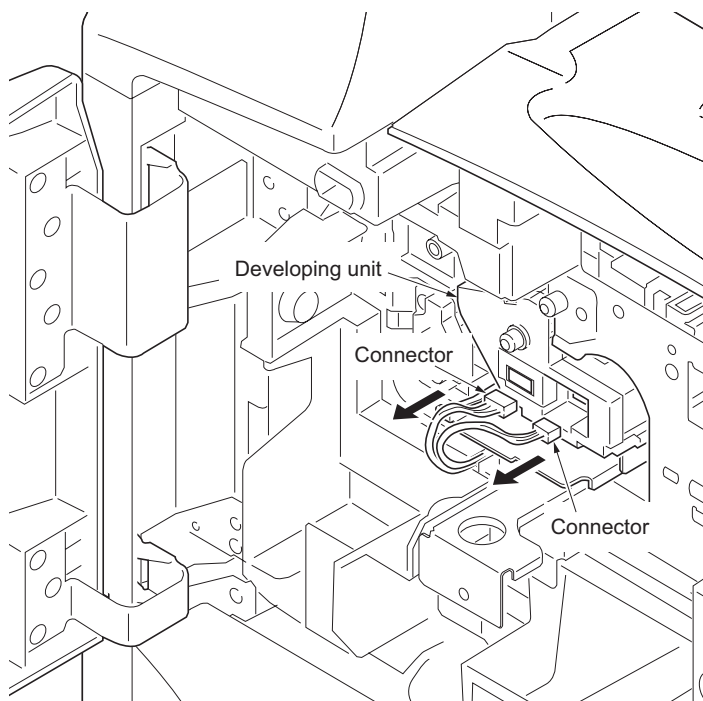


Figure 1-5-72

3. Remove the developing unit.
4. Replace the developing unit and install the unit.
5. Refit all the removed parts.
When the developing unit is replaced, perform maintenance mode U157 to clear the counter value (see page 1-3-47).

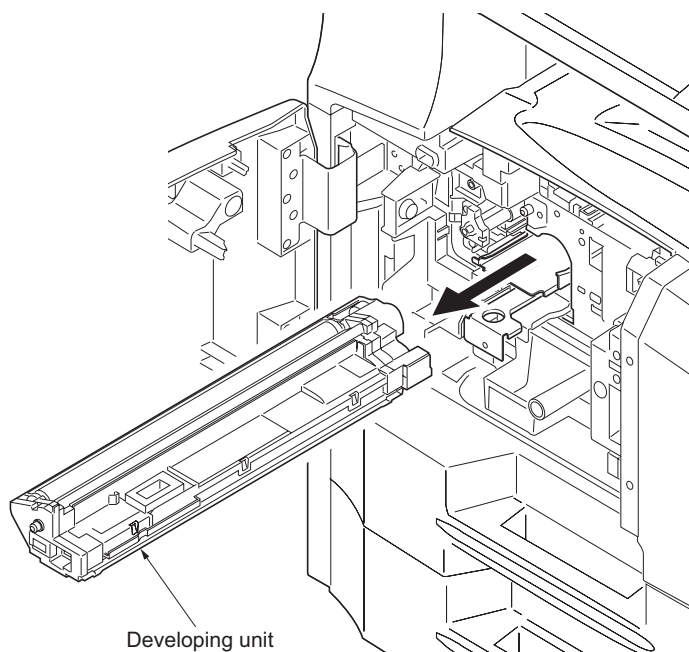


Figure 1-5-73

1-5-6 Transfer section

(1) Detaching and refitting the transfer roller unit

Follow the procedure below to replace the transfer roller unit.

Procedure

1. Open the left cover 1.
2. Remove the claws of the front and rear transfer bushes and remove the transfer roller unit.
3. Replace the transfer roller unit and install the unit.
The front and rear transfer springs must be firmly mounted on the holder.

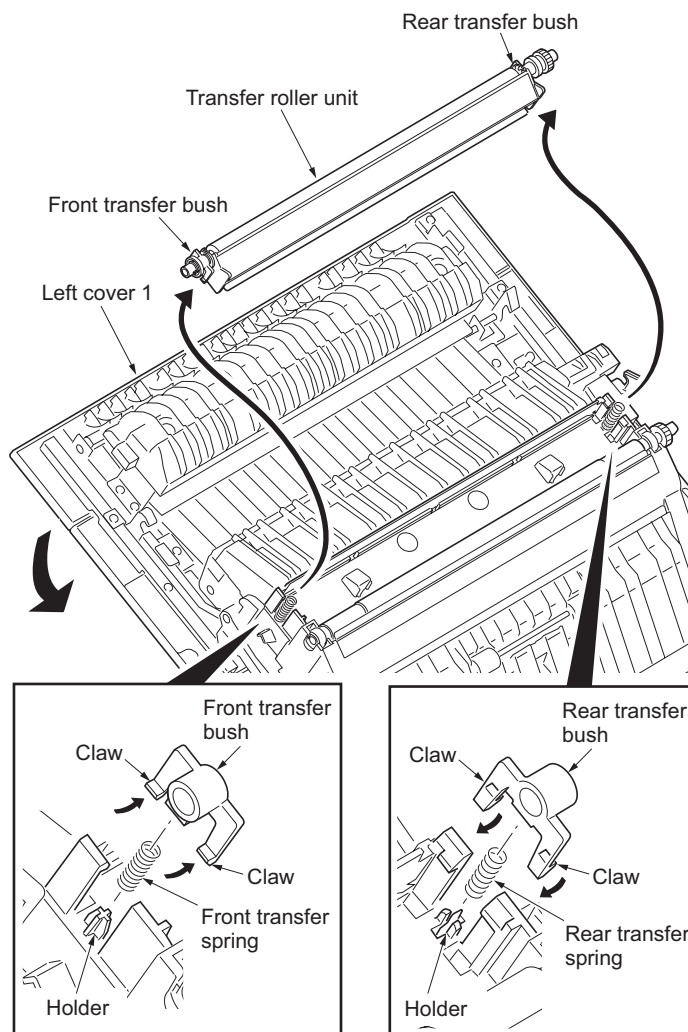


Figure 1-5-74

1-5-7 Fuser section

(1) Detaching and refitting the fuser unit

Follow the procedure below to check or replace the fuser unit.

Procedure

1. Open the front cover.
2. Remove the clip holder.
3. Remove two screws and remove front left cover.

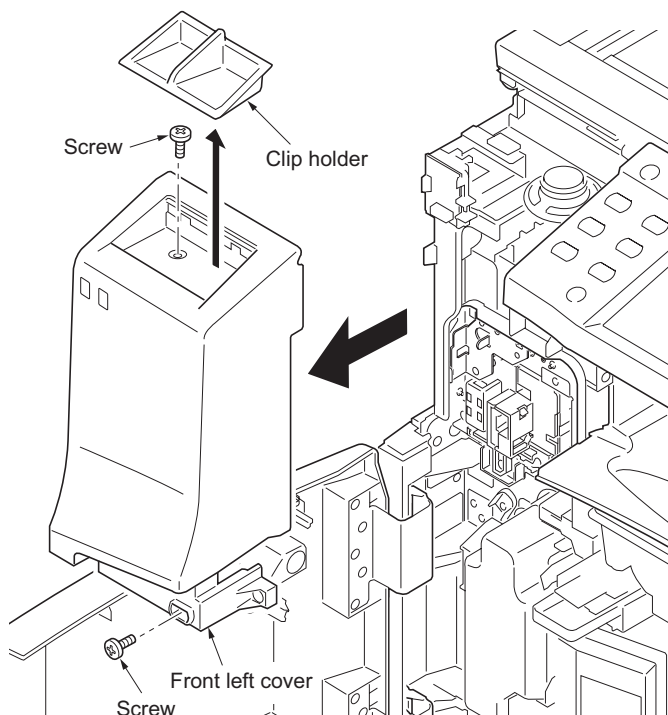


Figure 1-5-75

4. Open the left cover 1.
5. Remove two screws and remove the left cover hook.

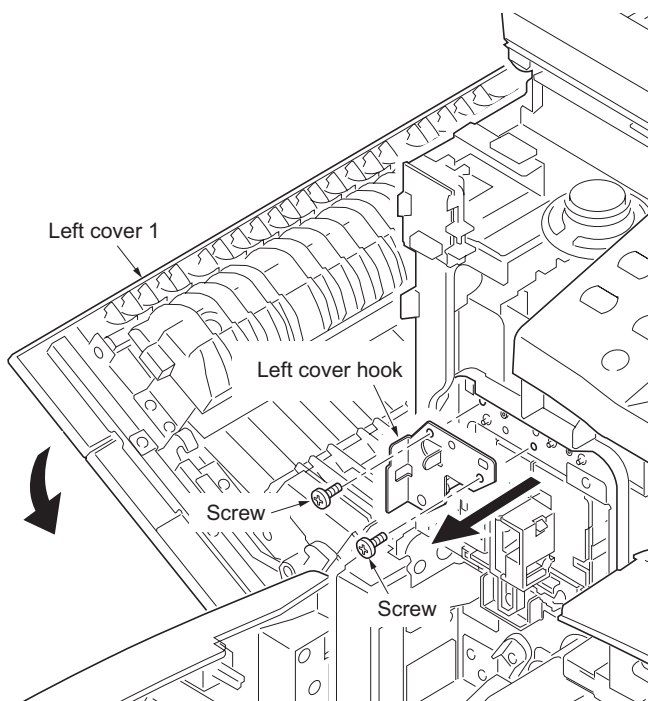


Figure 1-5-76

6. Remove the screw of the front left middle cover.

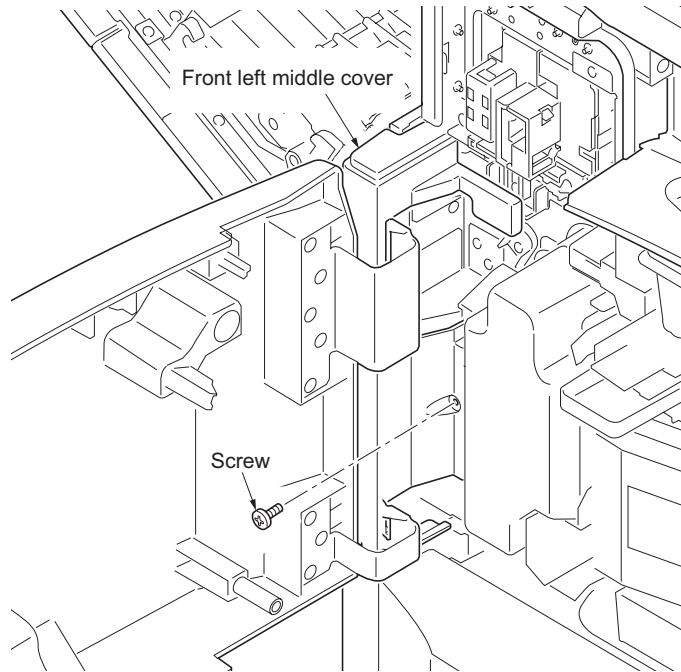


Figure 1-5-77

7. Remove the front left middle cover.

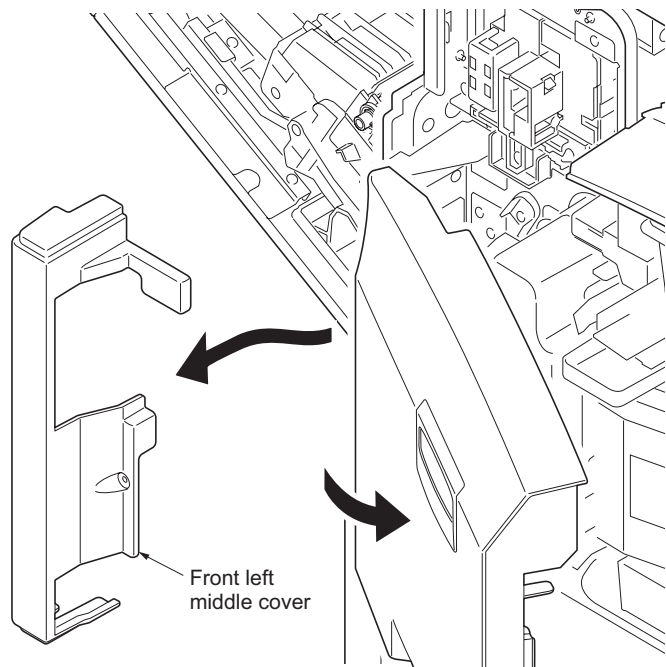


Figure 1-5-78

8. Remove three connectors.

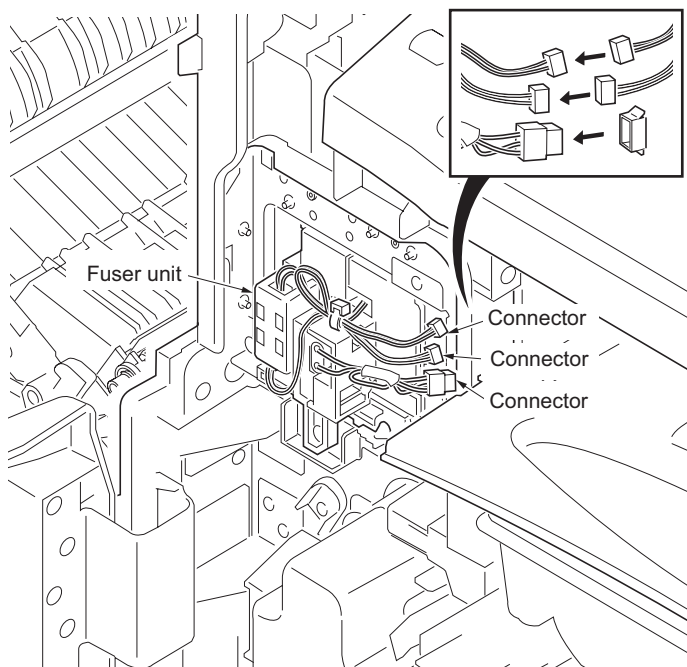


Figure 1-5-79

9. Remove the screw and remove the fuser unit.
 10. Check or replace the fuser unit and install the unit.
 11. Refit all the removed parts.
 When the fuser unit is replaced, perform maintenance mode U167 to clear the counter value (see page 1-3-48).

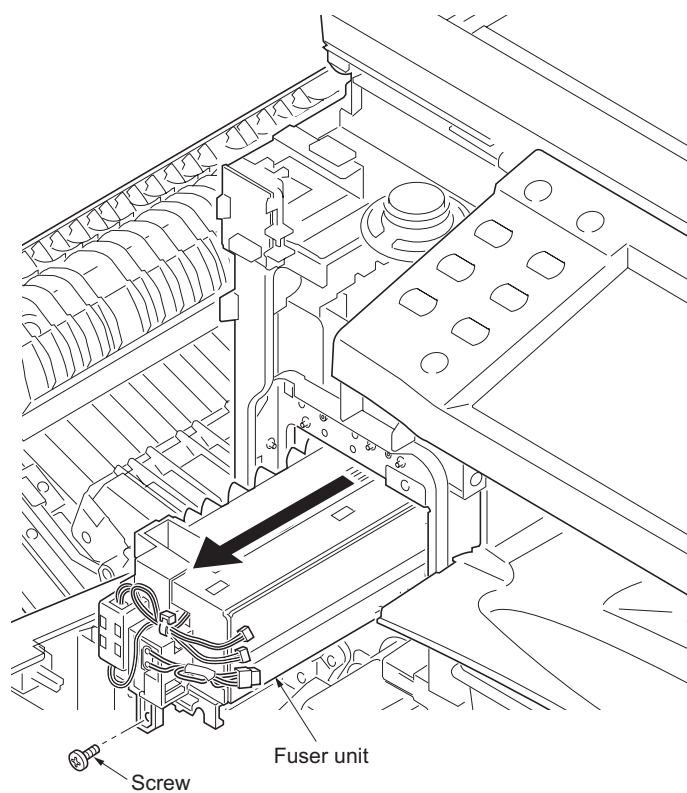


Figure 1-5-80

(2) Detaching and refitting the heat roller separation claws

Follow the procedure below to replace the heat roller separation claws.

Procedure

1. Remove the fuser heater (see page 1-5-47).
2. Remove four screws.
3. Remove four claws and remove the rear fuser guide.

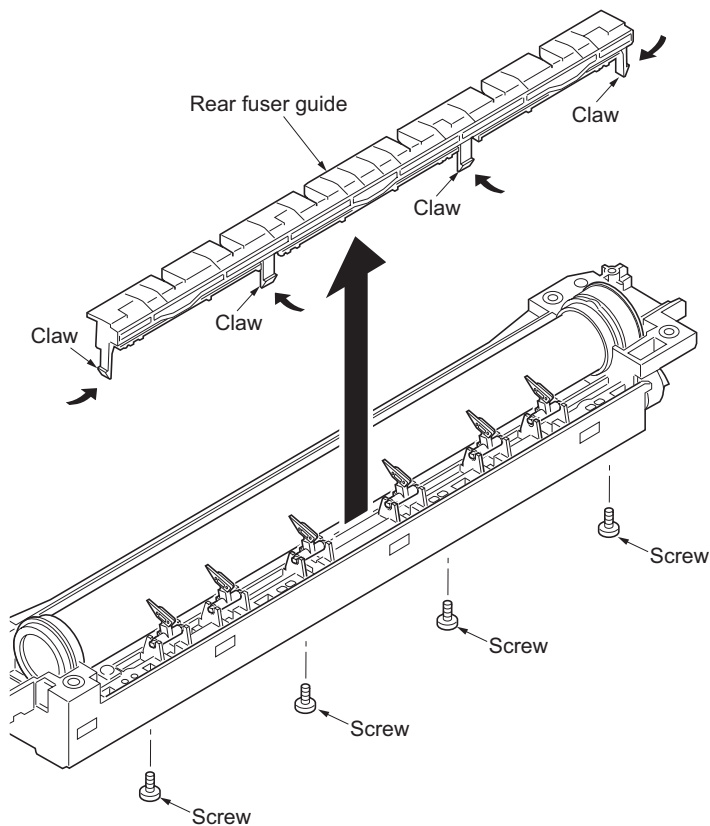


Figure 1-5-81

4. Remove the spring and remove the heat roller separation claws.
5. Replace the heat roller separation claws and install the claws.
6. Refit all the removed parts.

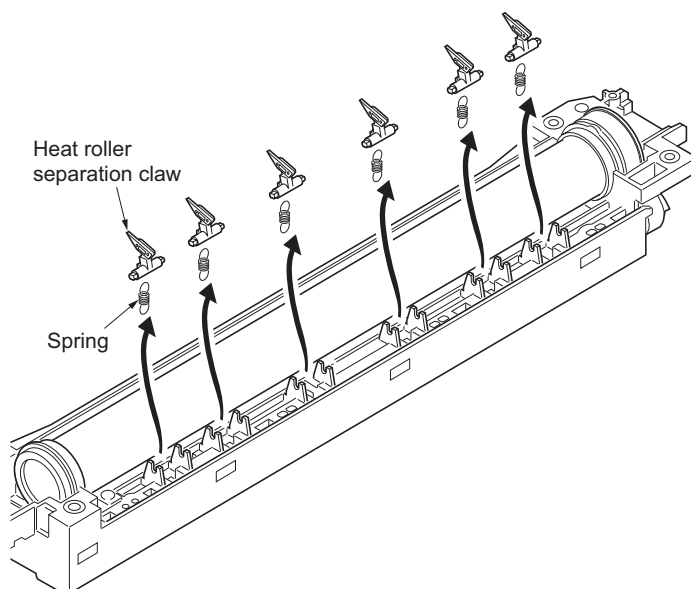


Figure 1-5-82

(3) Detaching and refitting the press roller

Follow the procedure below to replace the press roller.

Procedure

1. Remove the fuser unit (see page 1-5-41).
2. Remove four claws and remove the fuser unit cover.
3. Remove two connectors.

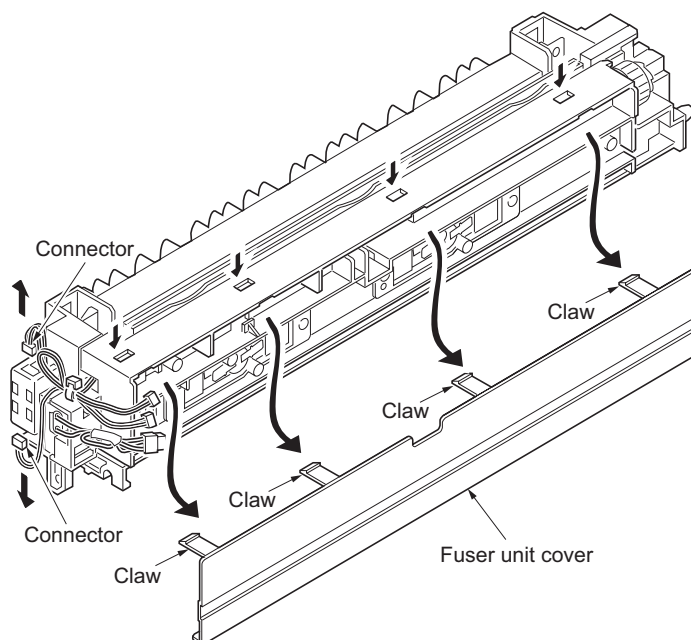


Figure 1-5-83

4. Remove four screws.
5. Separate the right fuser frame and left fuser frame.

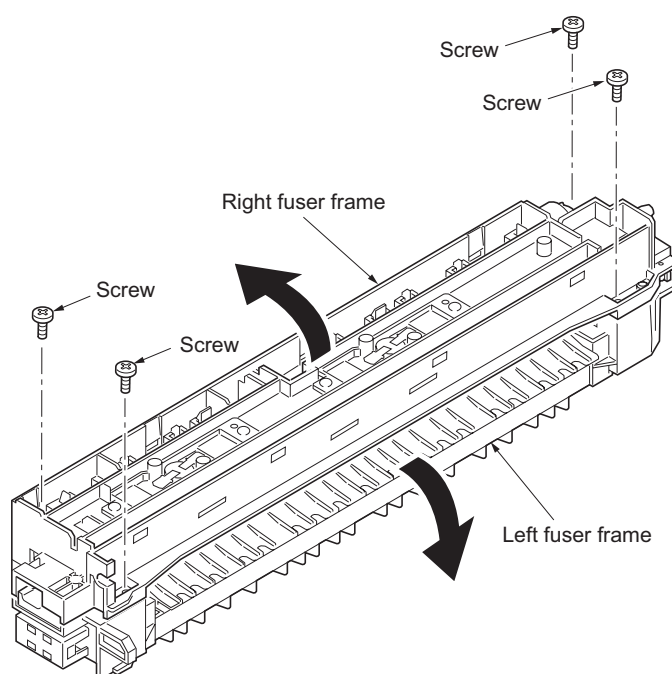


Figure 1-5-84

6. Remove the press roller.
7. Replace the press roller and install the roller.
8. Refit all the removed parts.

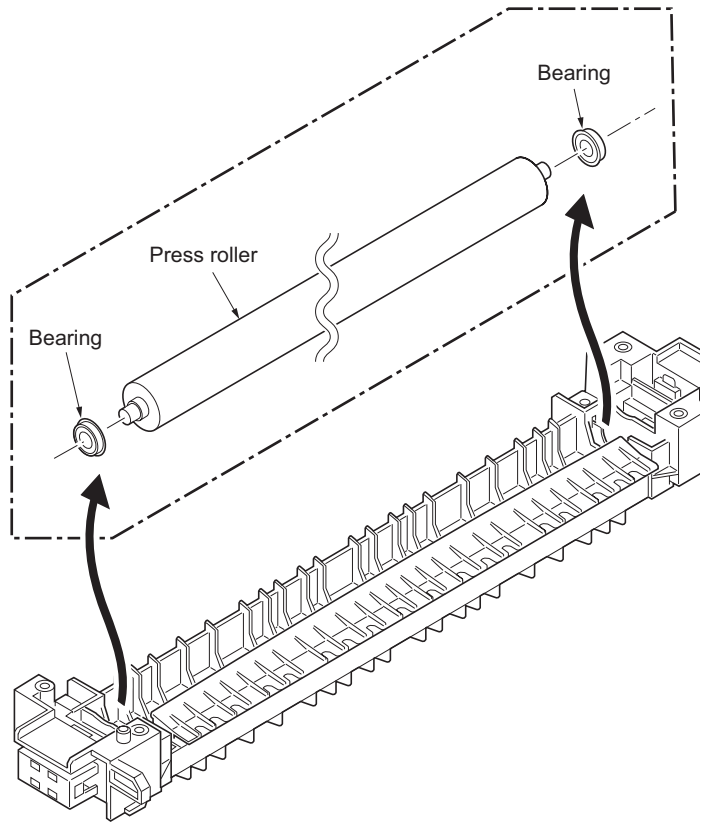


Figure 1-5-85

(4) Detaching and refitting the fuser heater

Follow the procedure below to replace the fuser heater.

Procedure

1. Remove the fuser unit (see page 1-5-41).
2. Remove four claws and remove the fuser unit cover.
3. Remove two connectors.

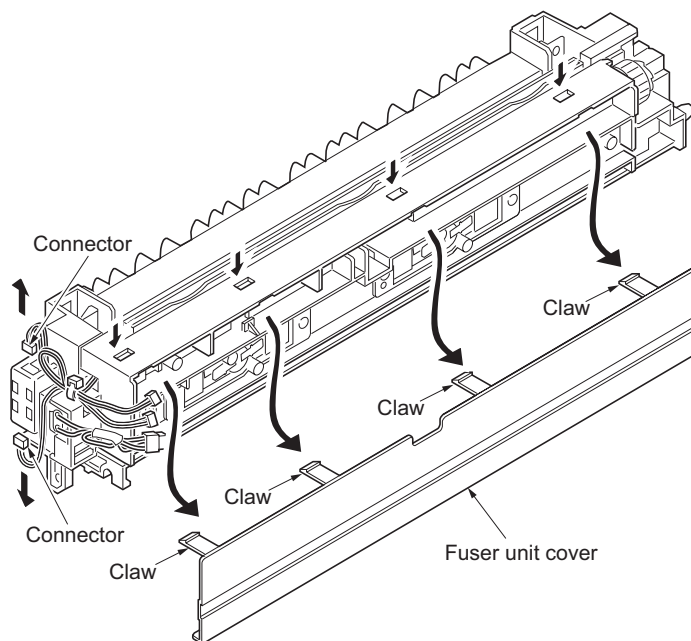


Figure 1-5-86

4. Remove four screws.
5. Separate the right fuser frame and left fuser frame.

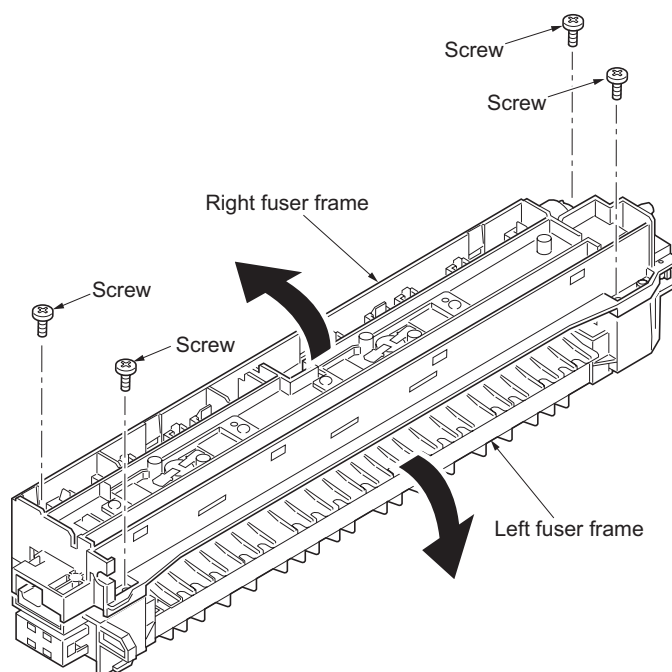


Figure 1-5-87

6. Remove two tabs.

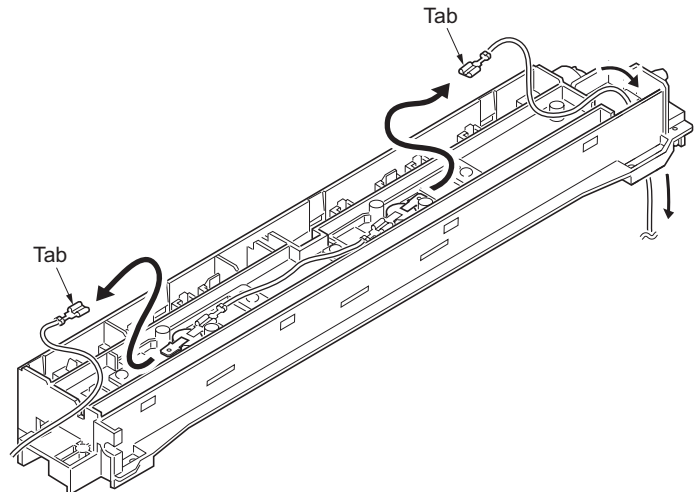


Figure 1-5-88

7. Remove the screw and rear fuser heater cover.
8. Remove the screw and front fuser heater cover.
9. Pull out the fuser heater.
10. Replace the fuser heater and install the heater.
11. Refit all the removed parts.

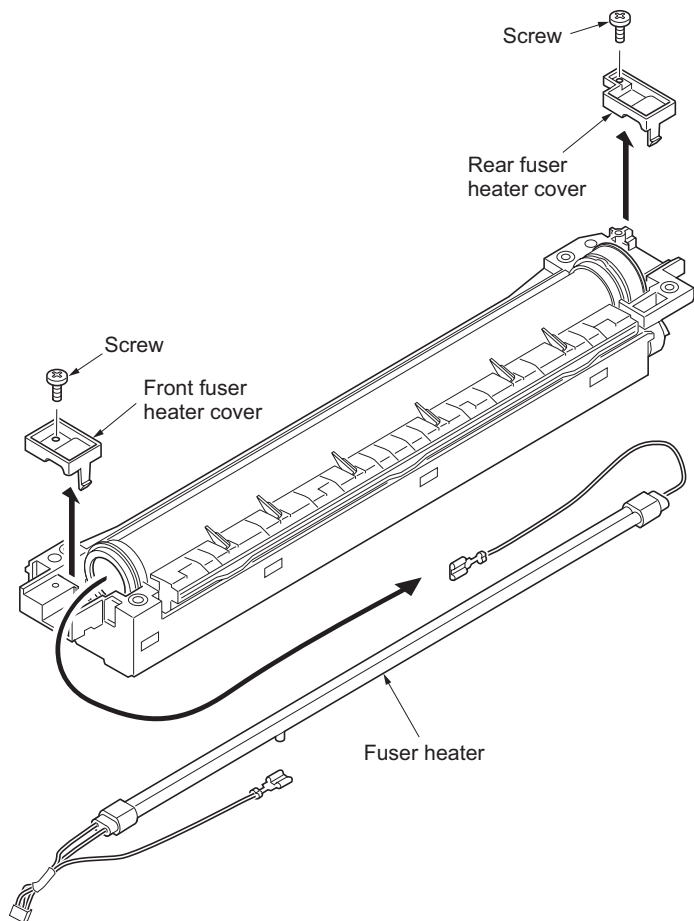


Figure 1-5-89

(5) Detaching and refitting the heat roller

Follow the procedure below to replace the heat roller.

Procedure

1. Remove the fuser heater (see page 1-5-47).
2. Remove the heat roller separation claws (see page 1-5-44).
3. Remove the front and rear heat bushes from right fuser frame.
4. Remove the fuser gear Z46, front and rear heat bushes from heat roller.
5. Replace the heat roller and install the roller
6. Refit all the removed parts.

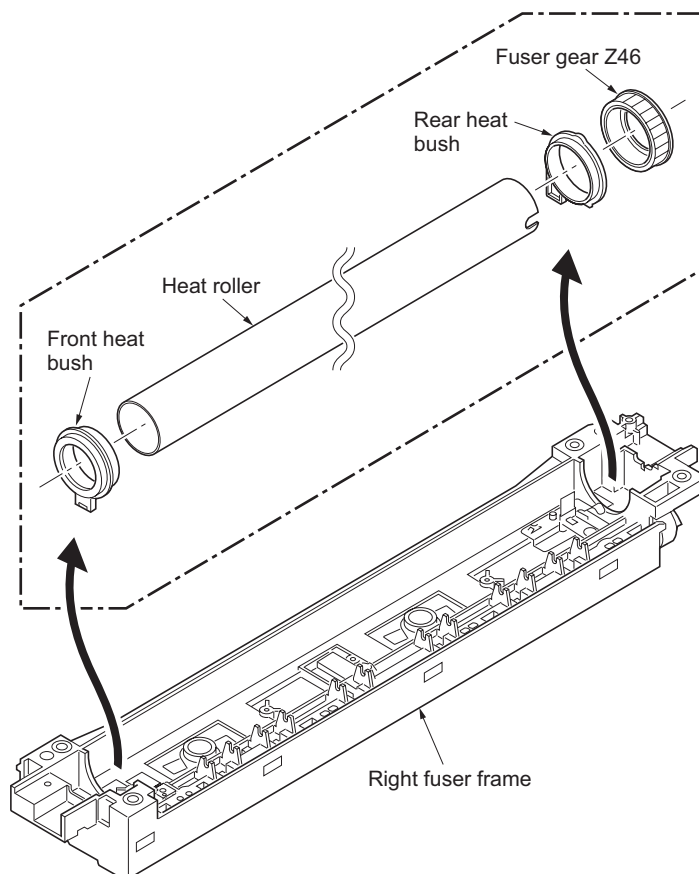


Figure 1-5-90

(6) Detaching and refitting the fuser thermistor 1

Follow the procedure below to replace the fuser thermistor 1.

Procedure

1. Remove the heat roller (see page 1-5-49).
2. Remove the screw and remove the fuser thermistor 1.
3. Replace the fuser thermistor 1 and install the thermistor.
4. Refit all the removed parts.

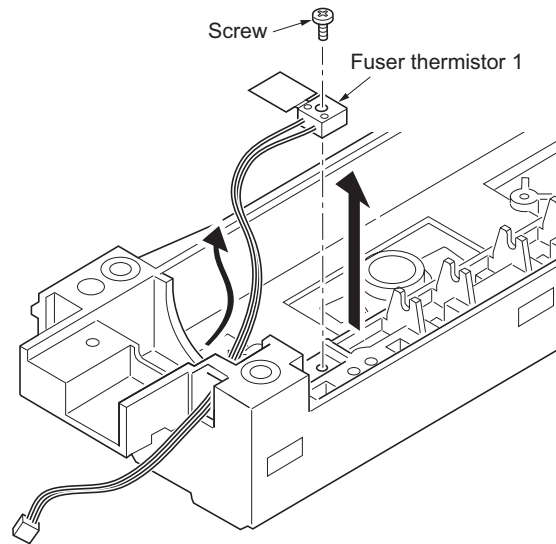


Figure 1-5-91

(7) Detaching and refitting the fuser thermistor 2

Follow the procedure below to replace the fuser thermistor 2.

Procedure

1. Remove the fuser unit (see page 1-5-41).
2. Remove four claws and remove the fuser unit cover.
3. Remove the connector.
4. Remove the band.

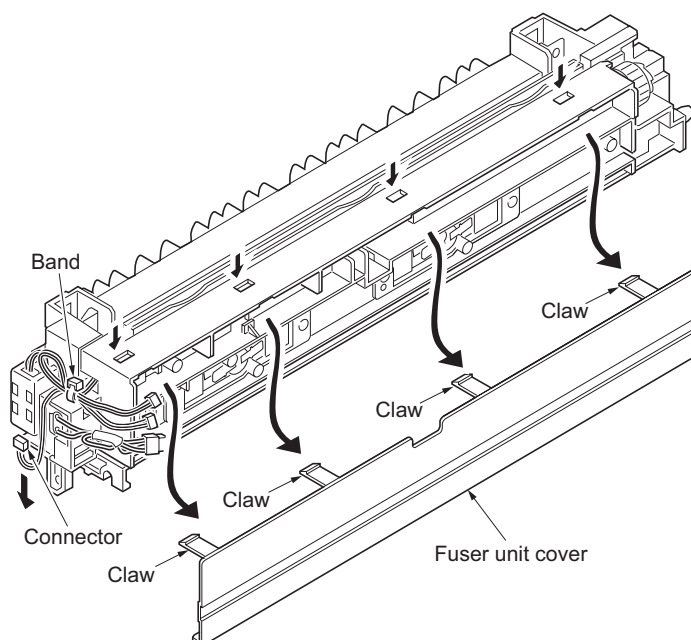


Figure 1-5-92

5. Remove the screw and remove the fuser thermistor 2.
6. Replace the fuser thermistor 2 and install the thermistor.
7. Refit all the removed parts.

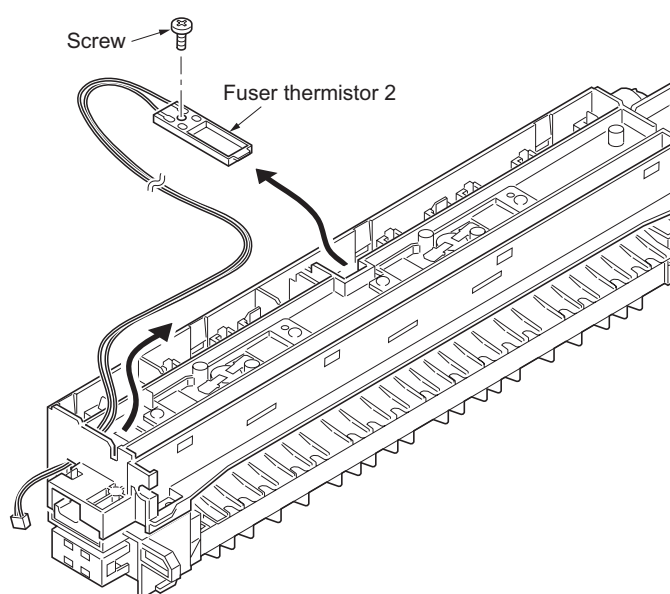


Figure 1-5-93

(8) Detaching and refitting the fuser thermostats 1 and 2

Follow the procedure below to replace the fuser thermostats 1 and 2.

Procedure

1. Remove the fuser unit (see page 1-5-41).
2. Remove four claws and remove the fuser unit cover.

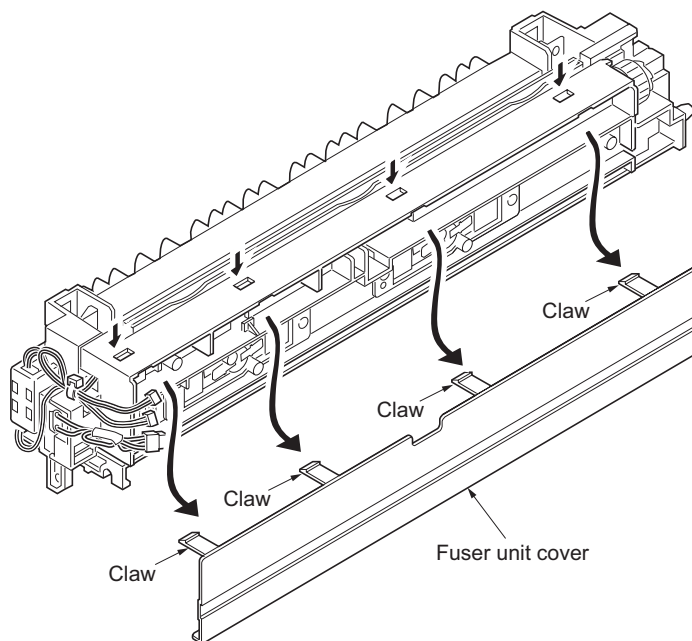


Figure 1-5-94

3. Remove four tabs.

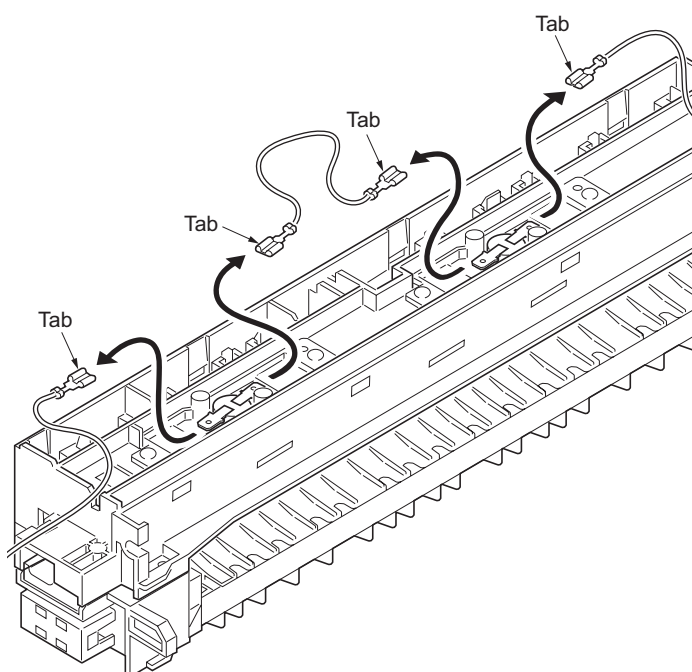


Figure 1-5-95

4. Remove each two screws and remove two fuser thermostat holders.

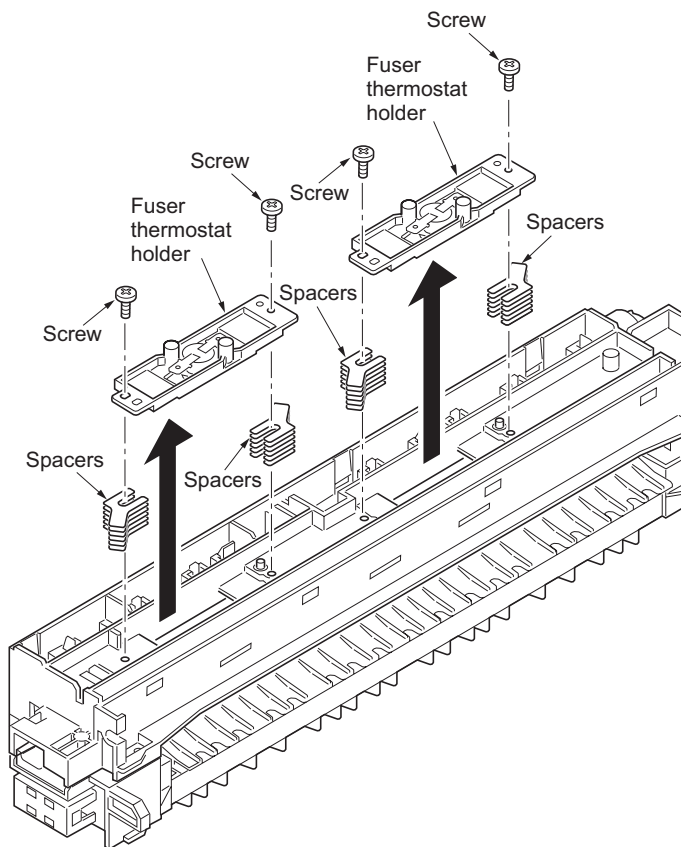


Figure 1-5-96

5. Remove two screws and remove fuser thermostats 1 and 2.
6. Replace the fuser thermostats 1 and 2 and install the thermostats.
7. Refit all the removed parts.

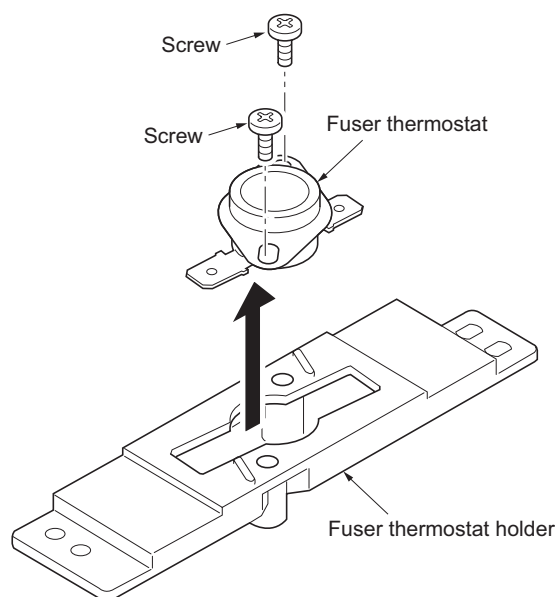


Figure 1-5-97

(9) Adjusting front position of the fuser unit (adjusting lateral squareness)

Follow the procedure below if the drum is not parallel to the fuser unit and therefore paper is not fed straight to the fuser section and the trailing edge of image on either the front or rear side becomes longer.

Procedure

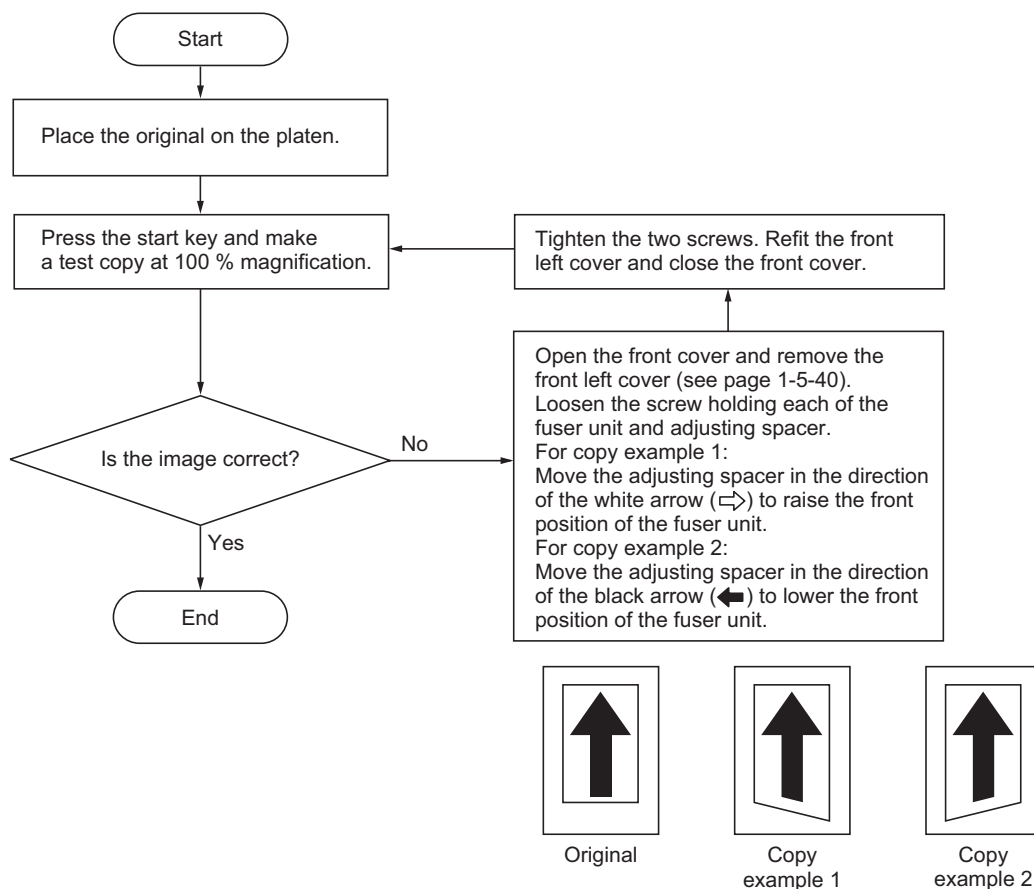


Figure 1-5-98

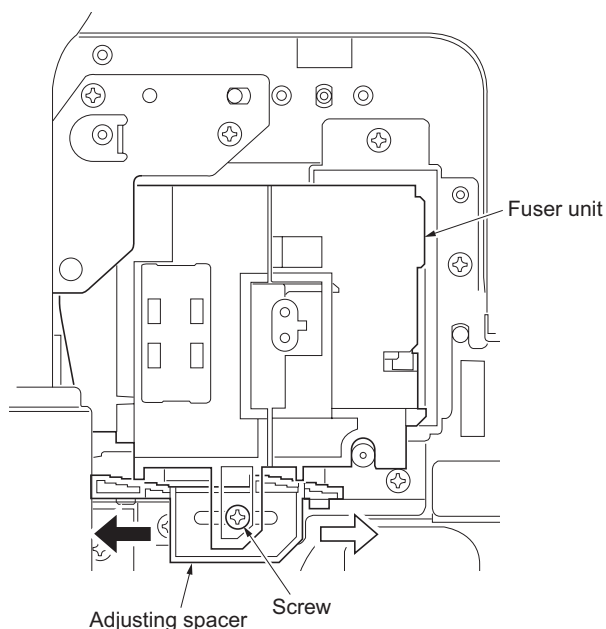


Figure 1-5-99

1-5-8 PWBs

(1) Detaching and refitting the engine PWB

Follow the procedure below to replace the engine PWB.

Procedure

1. Remove eleven screws and remove the rear cover.

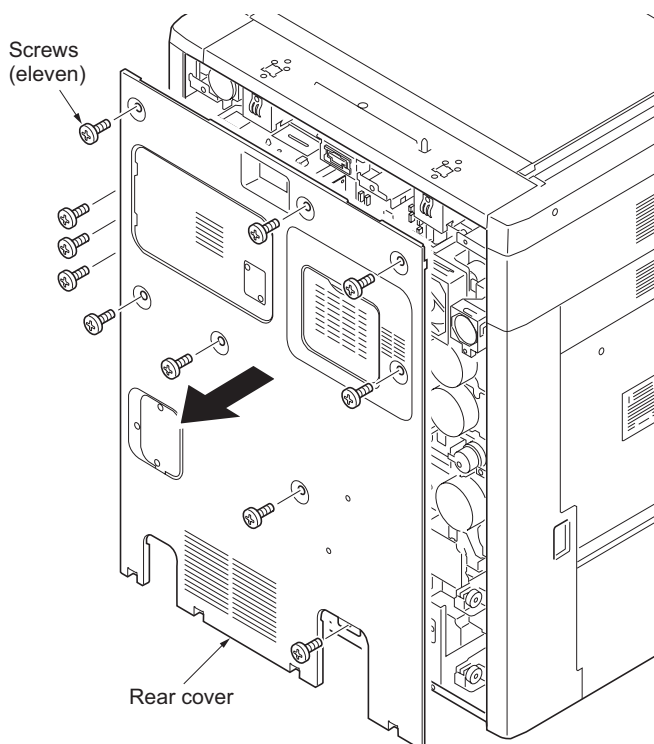


Figure 1-5-100

2. Remove three screws.
3. Remove the claw.
4. Remove the connector.
5. Remove the high voltage PWB.

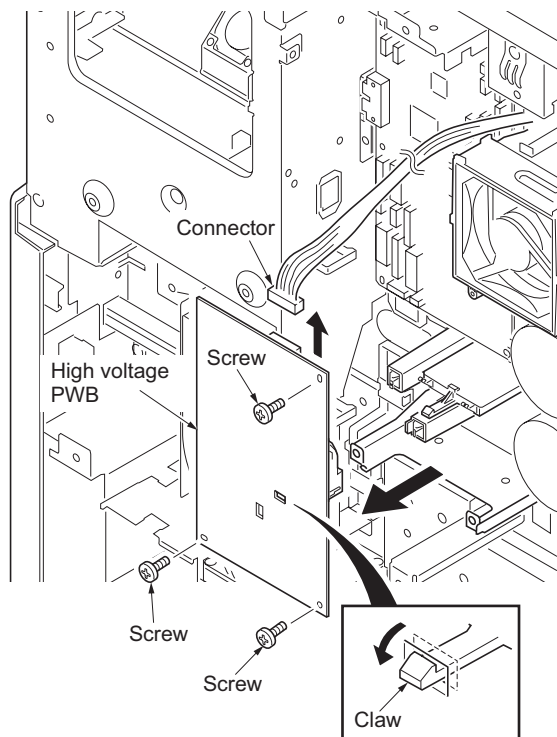


Figure 1-5-101

6. Remove all connectors of engine PWB.
7. Remove six screws and remove the engine PWB.
8. Replace the engine PWB and install the PWB.

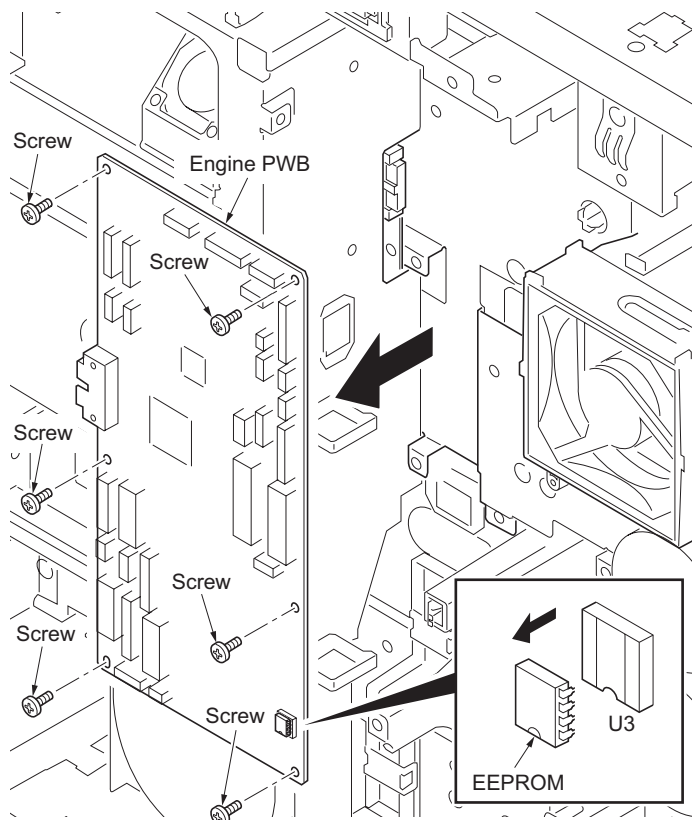


Figure 1-5-102

9. Refit all the removed parts.
When replacing the connectors back in place, be sure not to mistake YC14 and YC20 for each other.
YC14: Wire of the eject motor
YC20: Wire of the key counter

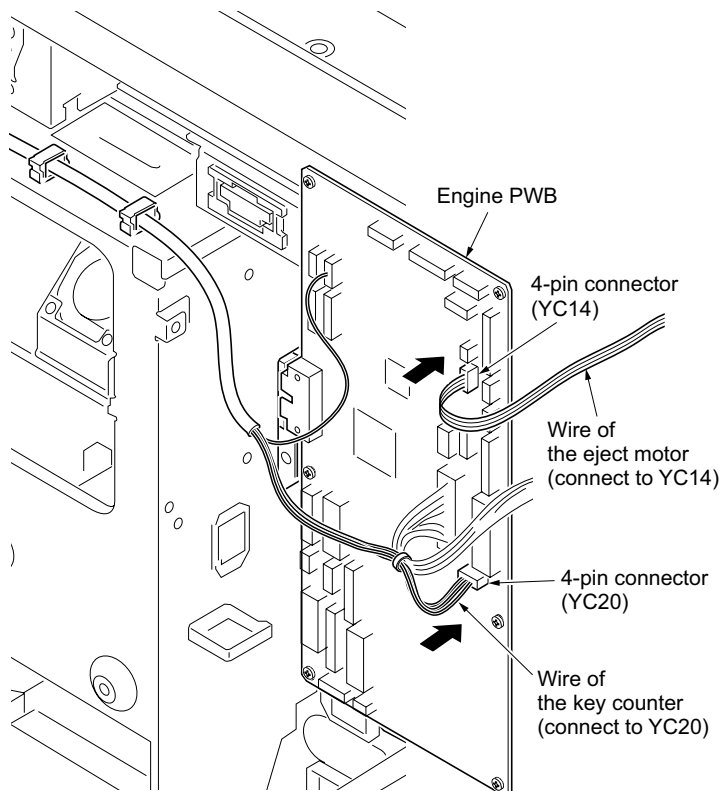


Figure 1-5-103

1-5-9 Others

(1) Detaching and refitting the ozone filter 1

Follow the procedure below to replace the ozone filter 1.

Procedure

1. Open the filter cover.
2. Remove the ozone filter 1.
3. Replace the ozone filter 1 and install the filter.

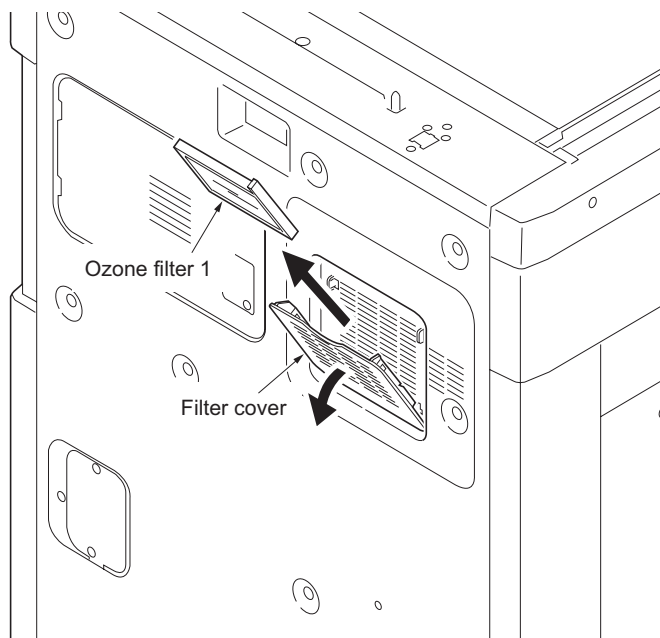


Figure 1-5-104

(2) Detaching and refitting the ozone filter 2

Follow the procedure below to replace the ozone filter 2.

Procedure

1. Remove the filter cover.
2. Remove the ozone filter 2.
3. Replace the ozone filter 2 and install the filter.
4. Refit all the removed parts.

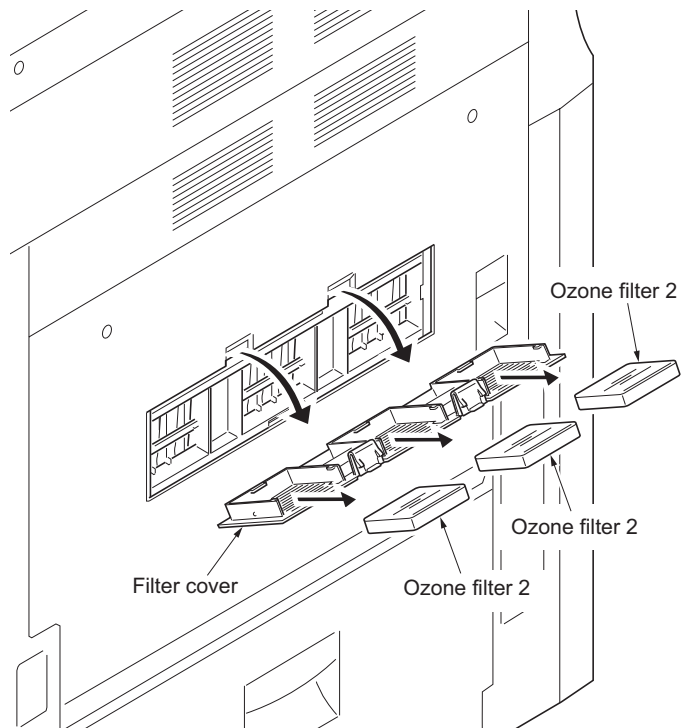


Figure 1-5-105

(3) Detaching and refitting the hard disk

Follow the procedure below to replace the hard disk.

Procedure

1. Remove eleven screws and remove the rear cover.

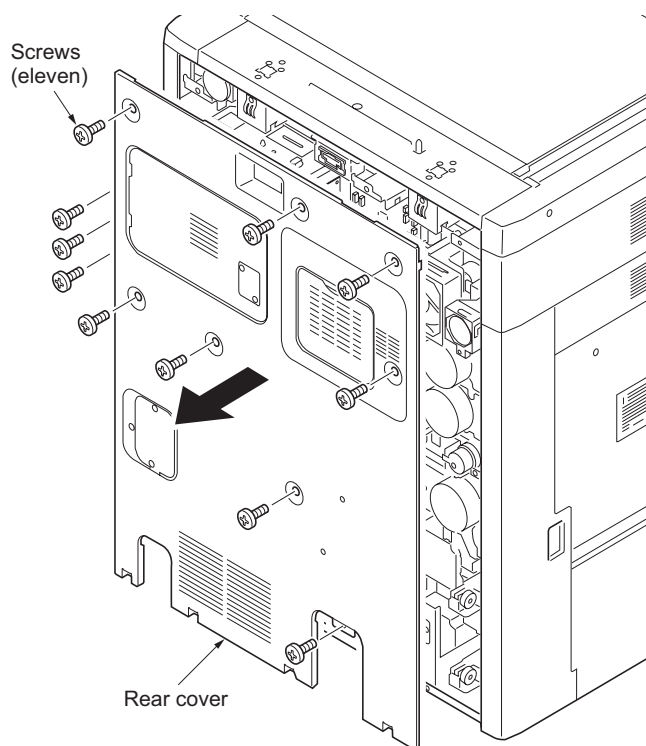


Figure 1-5-106

2. Remove two connectors.
3. Remove three screws and remove the HDD mount.

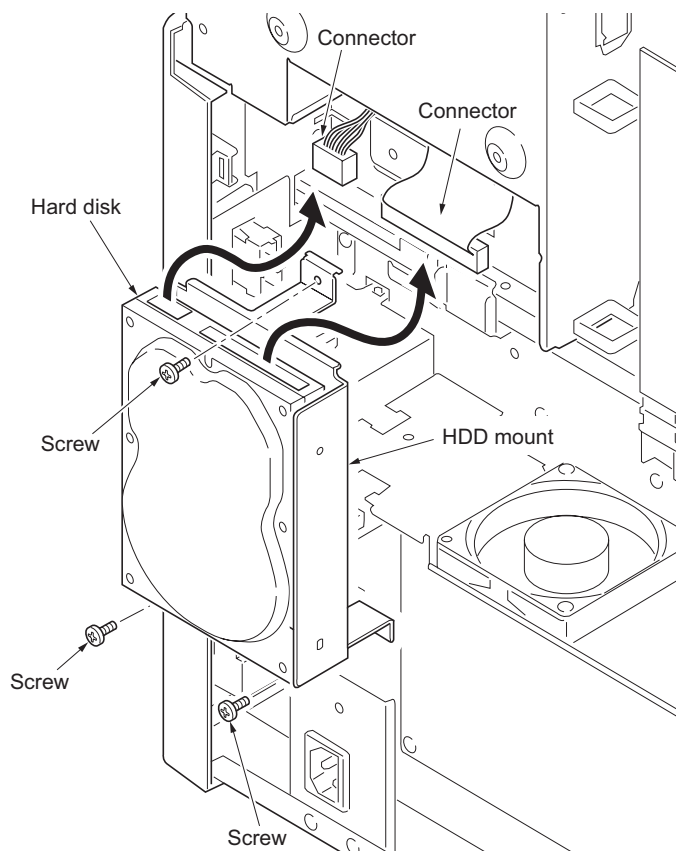


Figure 1-5-107

4. Remove four screws and remove the HDD mount.
5. Replace the hard disk and Install the hard disk.
6. Refit all the removed parts.
7. When the hard disk is replaced, perform maintenance mode U024 to initialize the hard disk (see page 1-3-17).

When the fax backup kit is installed, perform the following procedures (see page 1-3-79).

1. Run maintenance item U933 and press [FAX IMAGE] to print out the FAX image.
2. Run maintenance item U933 and press [JOB ACCOUNTING] to restore the job accounting data to the hard disk.
3. Run maintenance item U933 and press [INITIALIZE CF] to initialize the fax backup kit.

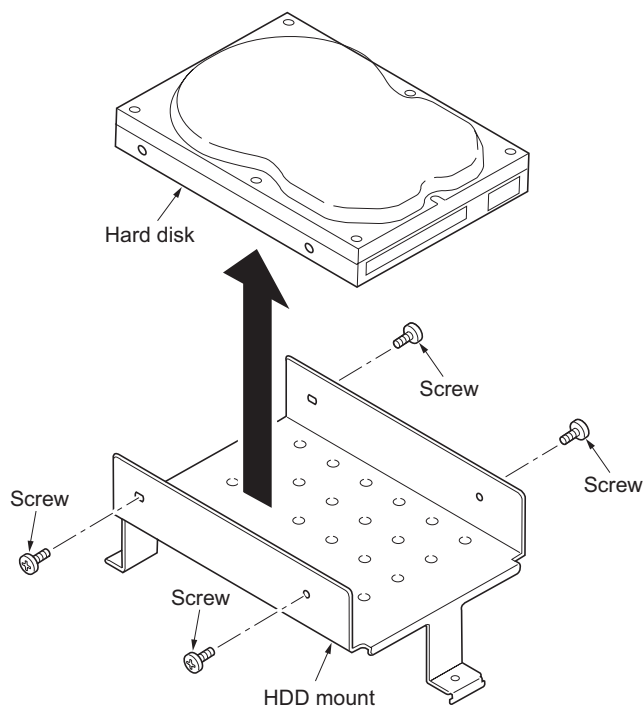


Figure 1-5-108

1-6-1 Upgrading the firmware

Follow the procedure below to upgrade the firmware of main PWB, engine PWB and MMI.

Firmware upgrading requires the following tools:

Compact Flash (Products manufactured by SANDISK are recommended.) or USB memory

NOTE

When writing data to a new Compact Flash from a computer, be sure to format it in advance.

Procedure

1. Press the power key on the operation panel to off. Make sure that the power indicator and the memory indicator are off before turning off the main power switch. And then unplug the power cable from the wall outlet.
2. Insert Compact Flash or USB memory in a notch hole of the machine.
Insert the surface of Compact Flash toward the machine rear.
3. Insert the power plug and turn the main power switch on. Upgrading firmware starts.

Caution:

Never turn the main power switch off during upgrading.

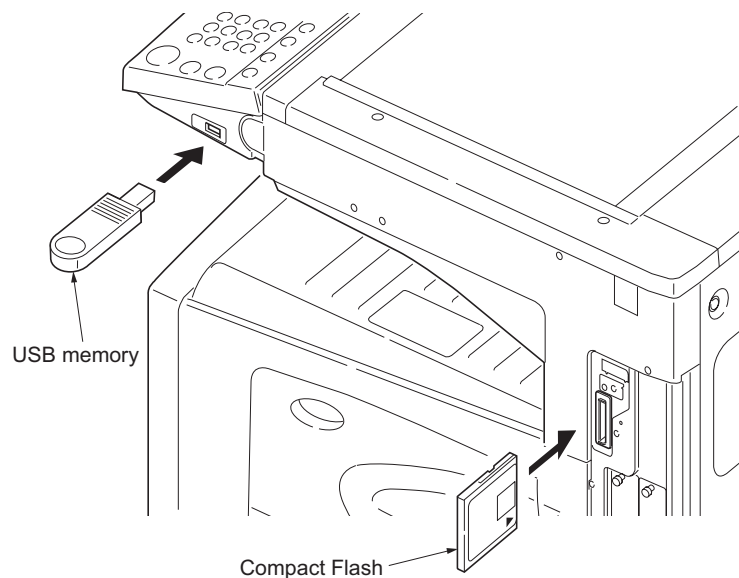


Figure 1-6-1

4. [100% Completed] is displayed on the touch panel when upgrading is complete.
5. Press the power key on the operation panel to off. Make sure that the power indicator and the memory indicator are off before turning off the main power switch. And then unplug the power cable from the wall outlet.
6. Remove Compact Flash or USB memory from the machine.
7. Insert the power plug and turn the main power switch on.

1-6-2 Adjustment-free variable resistors (VR)

The variable resistors listed below are set at the factory prior to shipping and cannot be adjusted in the field.

High voltage PWB: VR101, VR201, VR302, VR303

1-6-3 Remarks on engine PWB replacement

When replacing the engine PWB, remove the EEPROM from the engine PWB that has been removed and then reattach it to the new engine PWB.

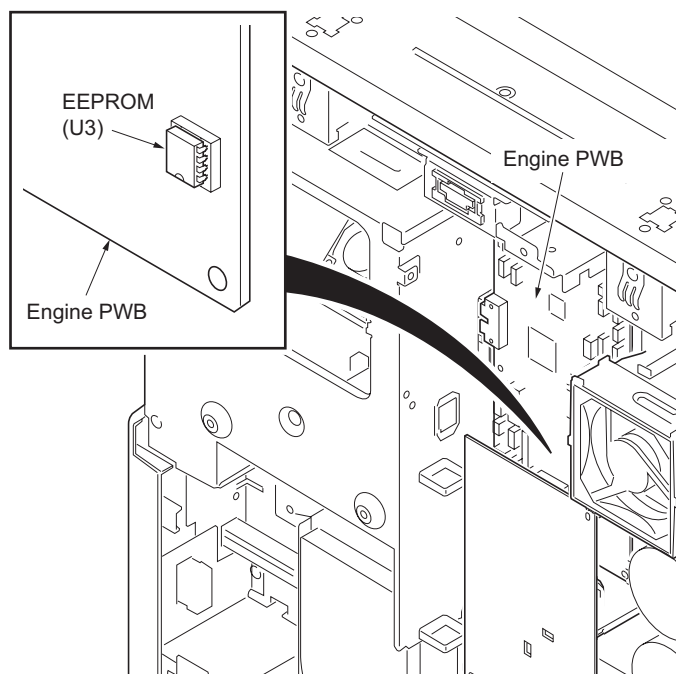


Figure 1-6-2

1-6-4 Remarks on main PWB replacement

When replacing the main PWB, remove the EEPROM from the main PWB that has been removed and then reattach it to the new main PWB.

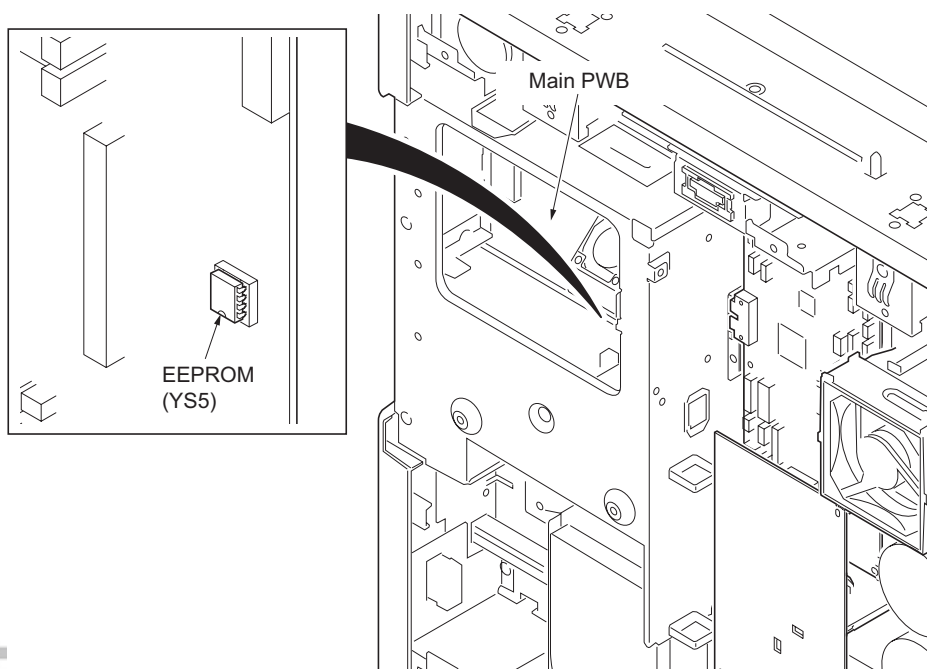


Figure 1-6-3

2-1-1 Paper feed section

(1) Cassette paper feed section

The paper feed section consists of the primary feed and secondary feed subsections. Primary feed conveys paper from the cassettes 1, 2 or MP tray to the left and right registration rollers, at which point secondary feed takes place and the paper travels to the transfer section in sync with the printing timing.

Each cassette consists of a lift driven by the lift motor and other components. Each cassette can hold up to 500 sheets of paper. Paper is fed from the cassette by the rotation of the forwarding pulley and paper feed pulley. The separation pulley prevents multiple sheets from being fed at one time, via the torque limiter.

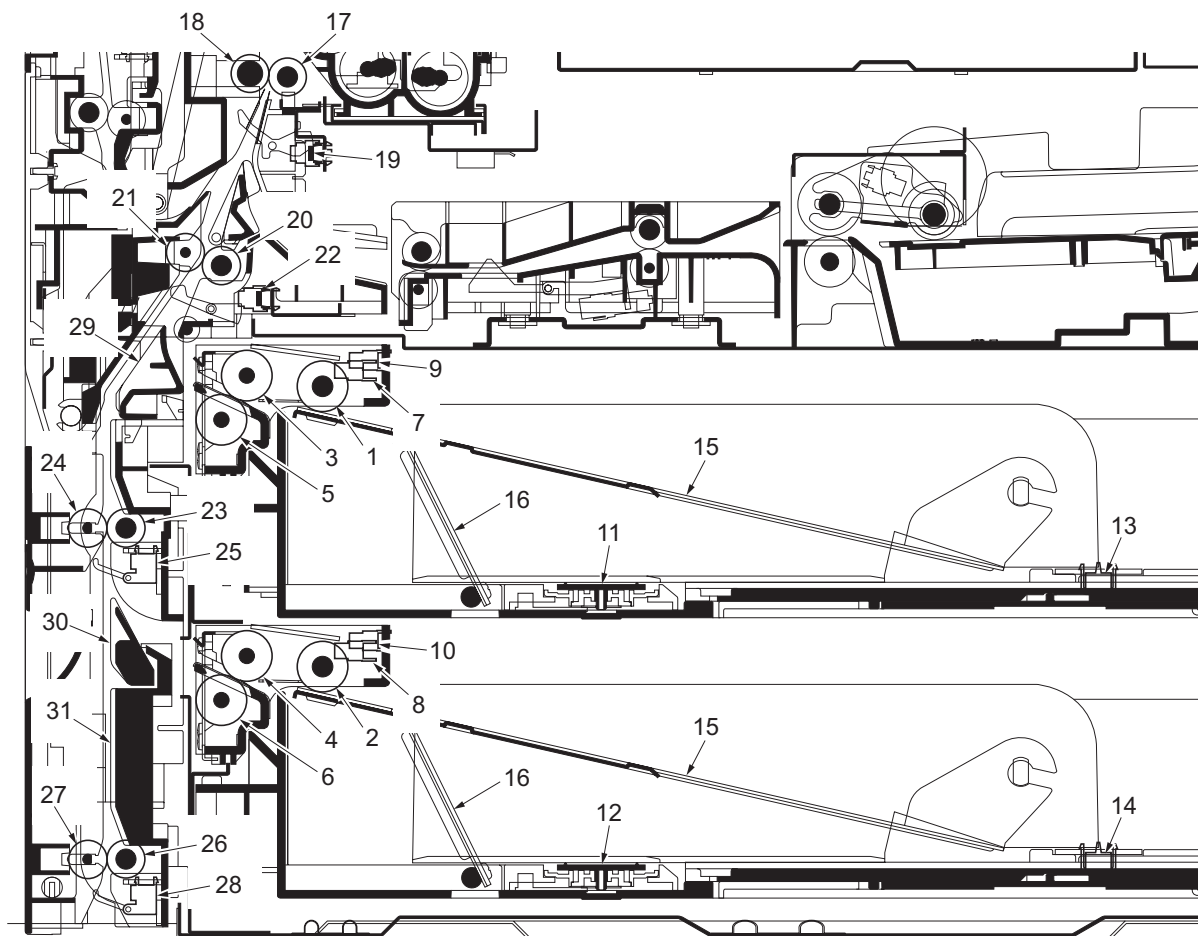


Figure 2-1-1 Cassette paper feed section

- | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| (1) Upper forwarding pulley | (17) Right registration roller |
| (2) Lower forwarding pulley | (18) Left registration roller |
| (3) Upper paper feed pulley | (19) Registration switch (RSW) |
| (4) Lower paper feed pulley | (20) Feed roller 1 |
| (5) Upper separation pulley | (21) Feed pulley |
| (6) Lower separation pulley | (22) Feed switch 1 (FSW1) |
| (7) Upper paper switch (PSW-U) | (23) Feed roller 2 |
| (8) Lower paper switch (PSW-L) | (24) Feed pulley |
| (9) Upper lift limit switch (LICSW-U) | (25) Feed switch 2 (FSW2) |
| (10) Lower lift limit switch (LICSW-L) | (26) Feed roller 3 |
| (11) Upper paper size width switch (PWSW-U) | (27) Feed pulley |
| (12) Lower paper size width switch (PWSW-L) | (28) Feed switch 3 (FSW3) |
| (13) Upper paper size length switch (PLSW-U) | (29) Vertical paper conveying guide |
| (14) Lower paper size length switch (PLSW-L) | (30) Paper conveying guide |
| (15) Cassette bases | (31) Vertical paper conveying frame |
| (16) Lift operation plates | |

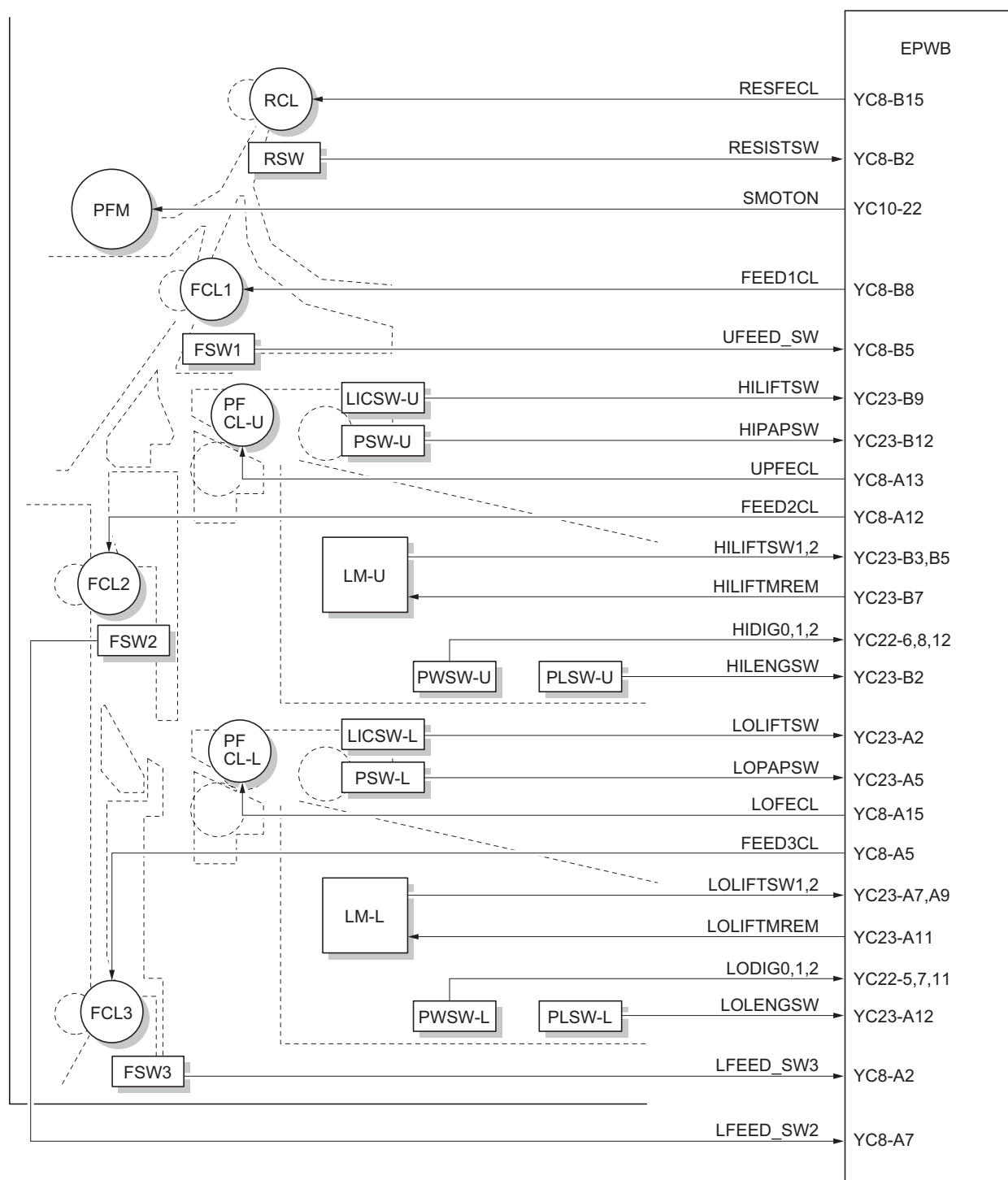


Figure 2-1-2 Cassette paper feed section block diagram

(2) MP tray paper feed section

The MP tray can hold up to 200 sheets of paper at one time. Paper is fed from the MP tray by the rotation of the MP forwarding pulley and MP paper feed pulley. Also during paper feed, the MP separation pulley prevents multiple sheets from being fed at one time by the torque limiter.

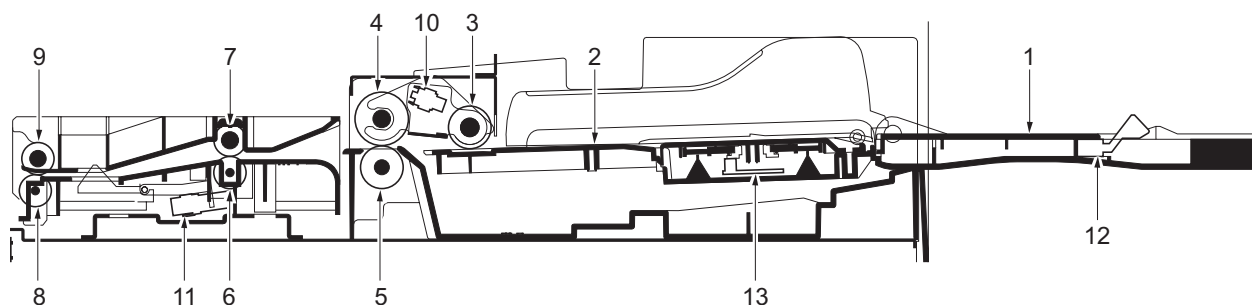


Figure 2-1-3 MP tray paper feed section

- | | |
|--------------------------|---|
| (1) MP tray | (9) MP feed roller 2 |
| (2) MP lift plate | (10) MP paper switch (MPPSW) |
| (3) MP forwarding pulley | (11) MP feed switch (MPFSW) |
| (4) MP paper feed pulley | (12) MP paper size length switch (MPPLSW) |
| (5) MP separation pulley | (13) MP paper size width switch (MPPWSW) |
| (6) MP feed pulley | |
| (7) MP feed roller 1 | |
| (8) MP feed pulley | |

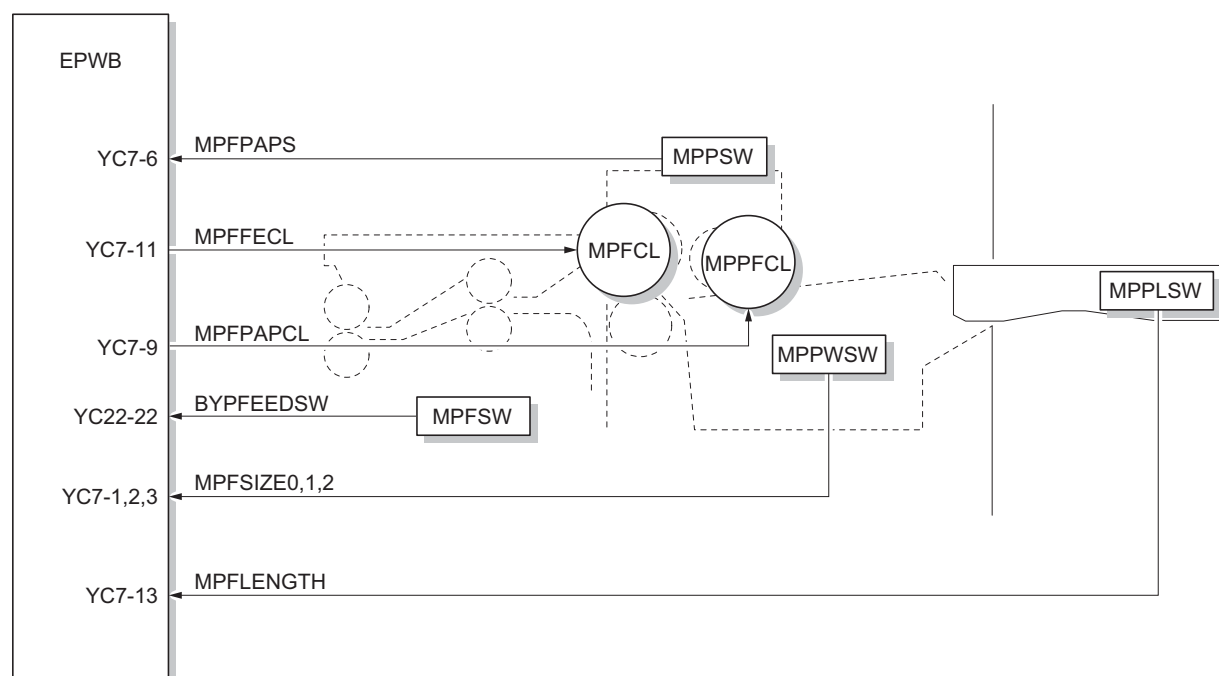


Figure 2-1-4 MP tray paper feed section block diagram

2-1-2 Main charging section

The main charging section consists of the main charger assembly, drum and so on. The drum is electrically charged uniformly by means of a grid to form a latent image on the surface.

The main charger unit charges the drum so that a latent image is formed on the surface, the shield grid ensuring the charge is applied uniformly.

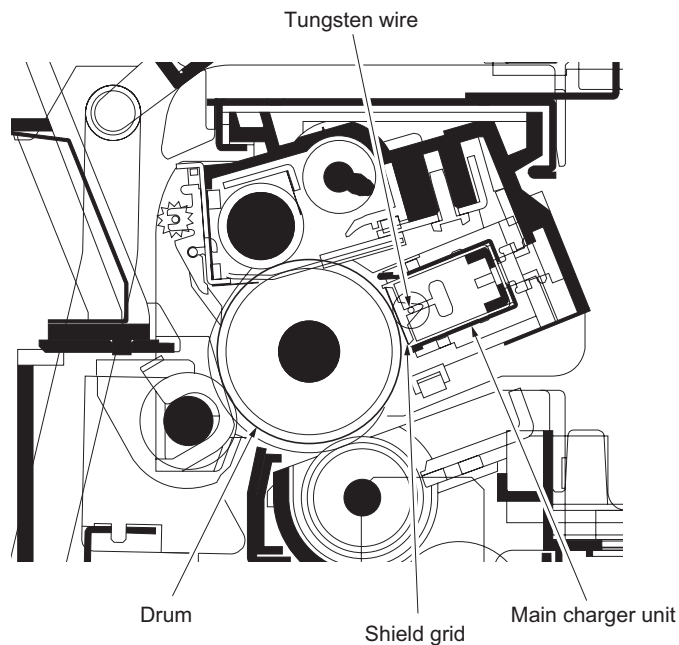


Figure 2-1-5 Main charging section

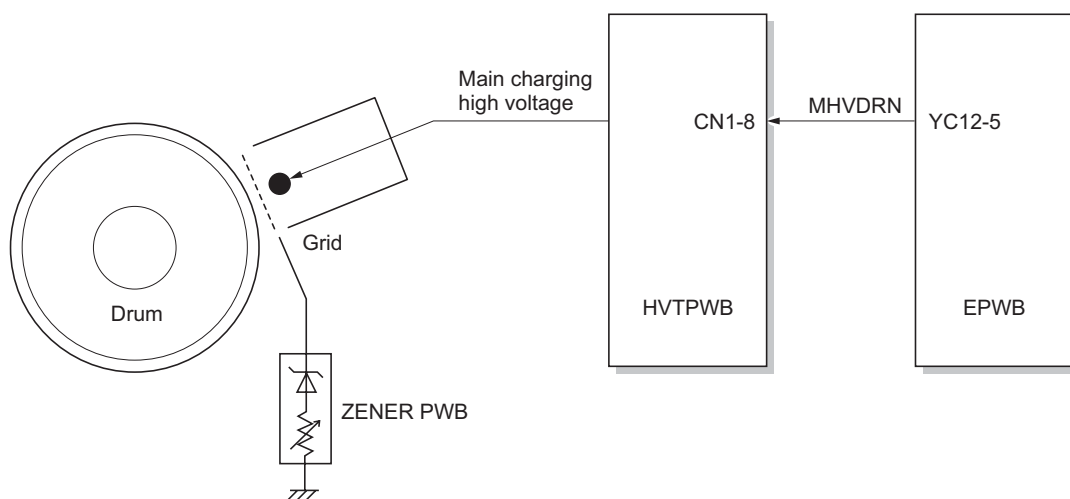


Figure 2-1-6 Main charging section block diagram

2-1-3 Optical section

The optical section consists of the image scanner section for scanning and the laser scanner section for printing.

(1) Image scanner section

The original image is illuminated by the exposure lamp (EL) and scanned by the CCD PWB (CCDPWB) in the image scanning unit via the three mirrors, the reflected light being converted to an electrical signal.

The scanner and mirror frames travel to scan on the optical rails on the front and rear of the machine to scan from side to side. The speed of the mirror frames is half the speed of the scanner.

When the DP is used, the scanner and mirror frames stop at the DP original scanning position to start scanning.

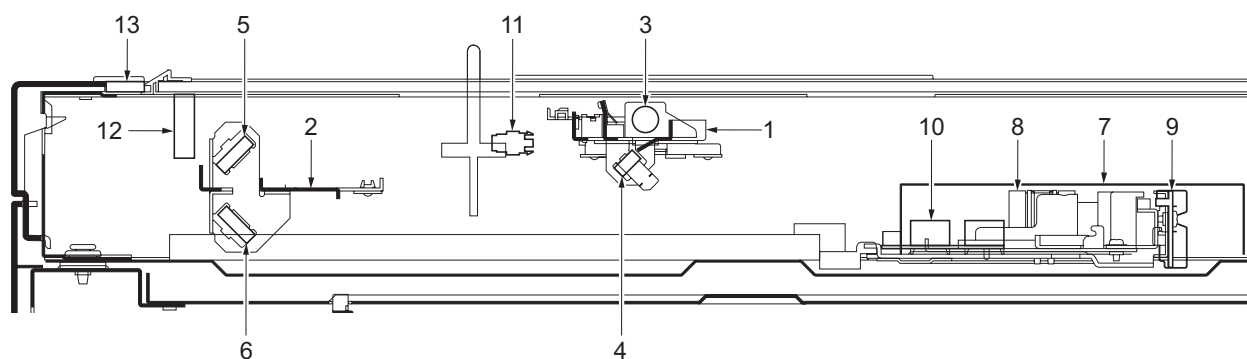


Figure 2-1-7 Image scanner section

- (1) Mirror 1 frame
- (2) Mirror 2 frame
- (3) Exposure lamp (EL)
- (4) Mirror 1
- (5) Mirror 2
- (6) Mirror 3
- (7) ISU
- (8) Lens
- (9) CCD PWB (CCDPWB)
- (10) Original size detection sensor (OSDS)
- (11) Original detection switch (ODSW)
- (12) Scanner home position switch (SHPSW)
- (13) Slit glass

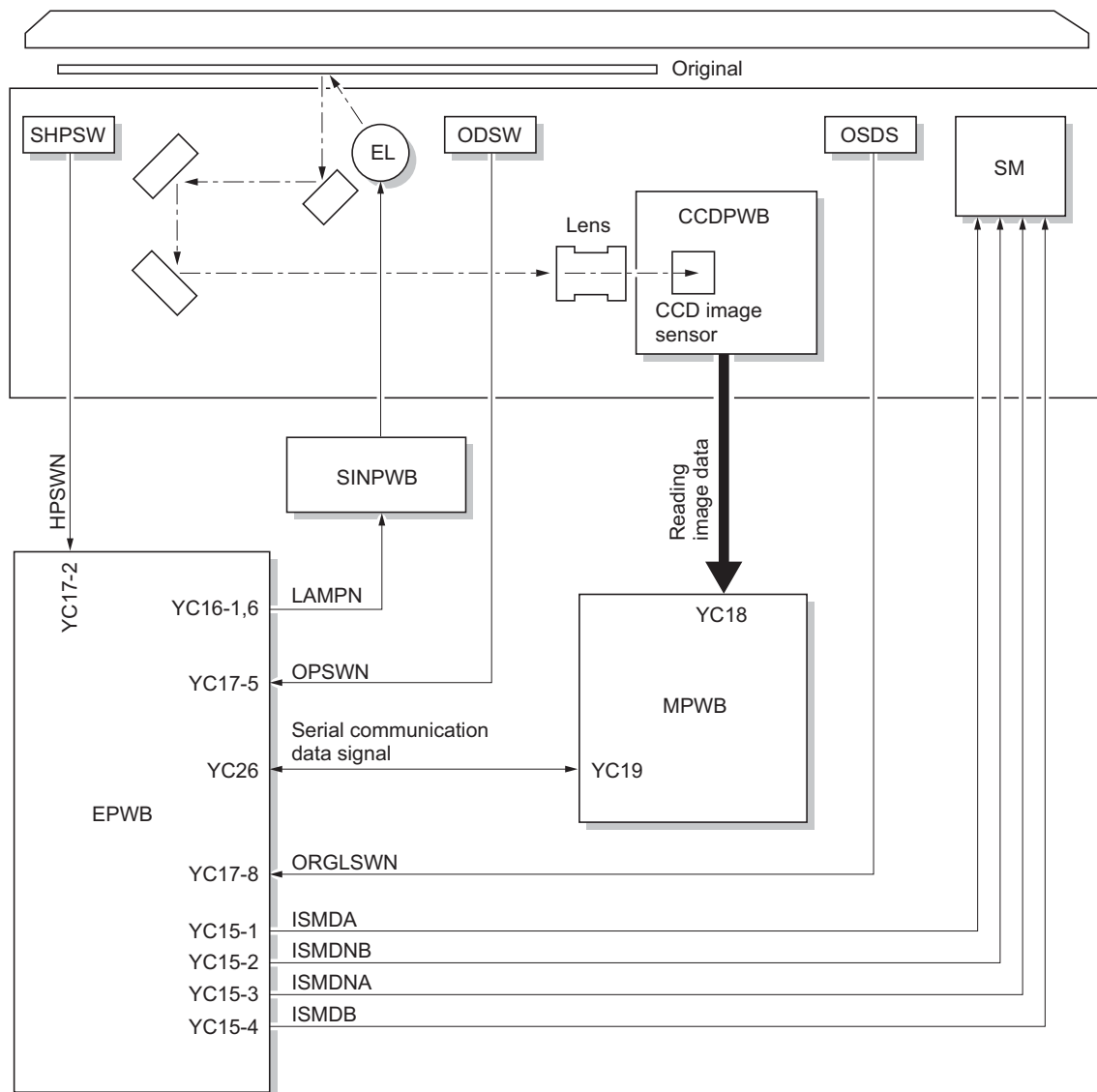


Figure 2-1-8 Image scanner section block diagram

(2) Laser scanner section

The image data scanned by the CCD PWB (CCDPWB) is processed on the main PWB (MPWB) and transmitted as image printing data to the laser scanner unit (LSU). By repeatedly turning the laser on and off, the laser scanner unit forms a latent image on the drum surface.

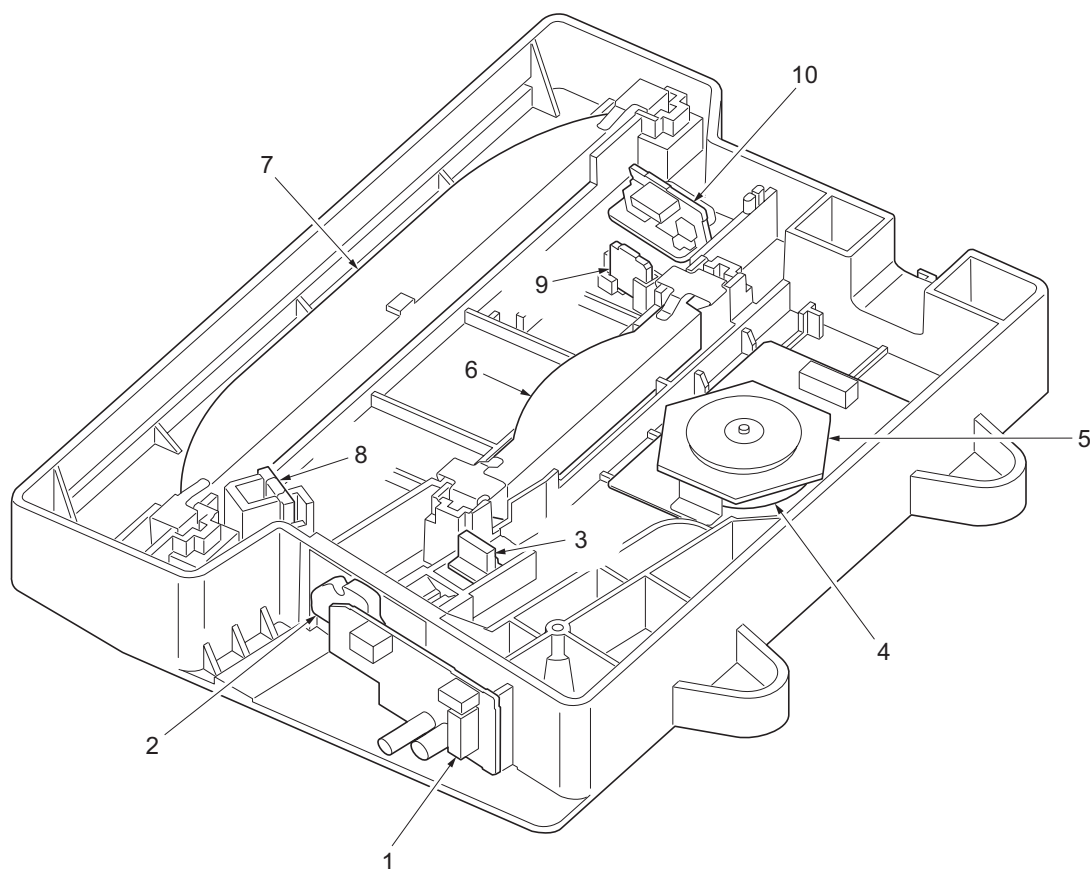


Figure 2-1-9 Laser scanner section

- (1) APC PWB (APCPWB)
- (2) Laser diode
- (3) Cylindrical lens
- (4) Polygon motor (PM)
- (5) Polygon mirror
- (6) fθ lens
- (7) fθ lens
- (8) PD sensor mirror
- (9) Cylindrical correcting lens
- (10) PD PWB (PDPWB)

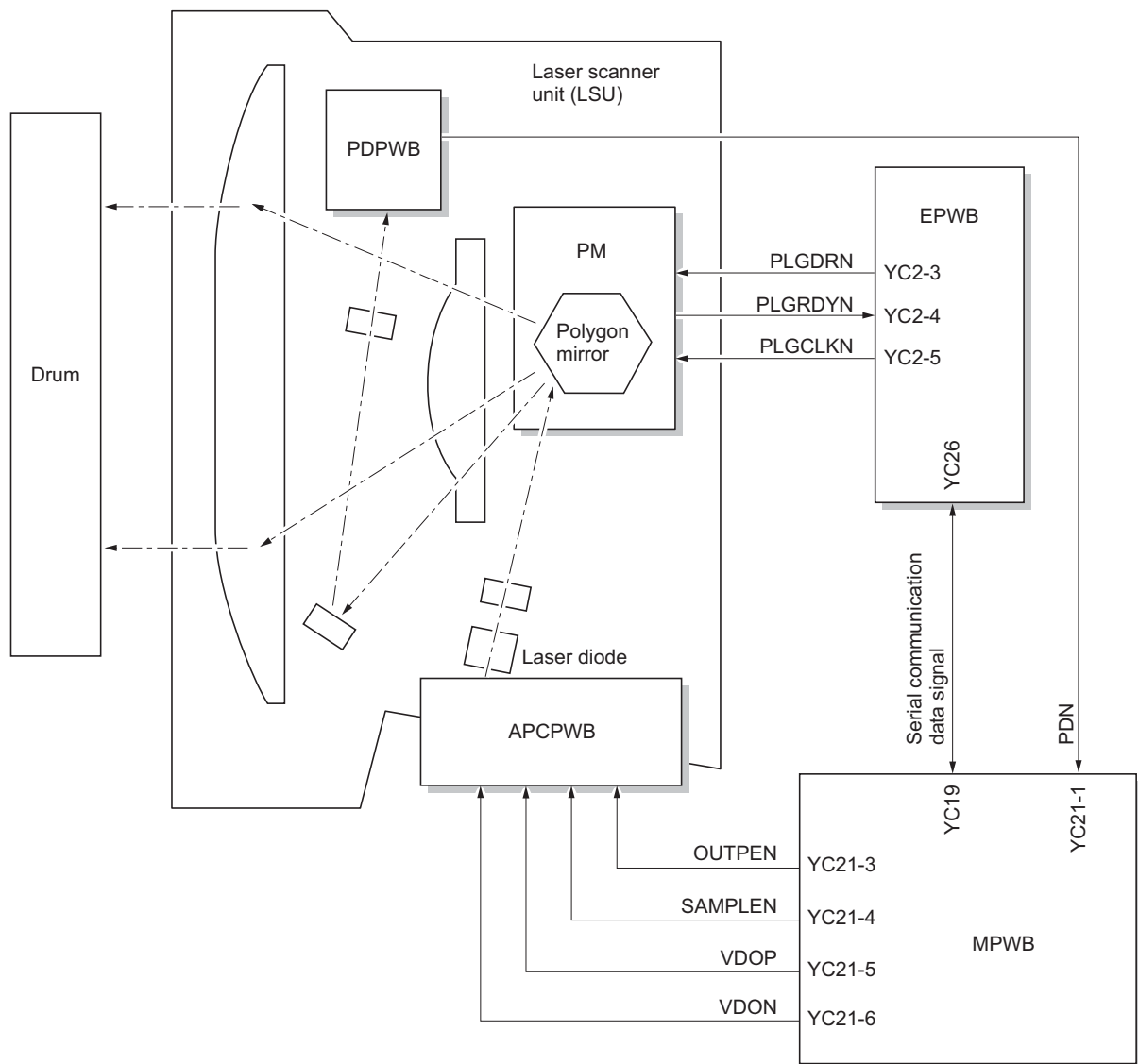


Figure 2-1-10 Laser scanner section block diagram

2-1-4 Developing section

The developing unit consists of the developing sleeve where a magnetic brush is formed, the magnetic toner blade and the developing spirals that agitate the toner.

When the toner sensor (TNS) detects a low toner level in the developing unit, the toner replenishment signal is output to the engine PWB (EPWB). The engine PWB (EPWB) that has received the signal turns on the toner feed motor (TFM) and replenishes toner from the toner container to the developing unit.

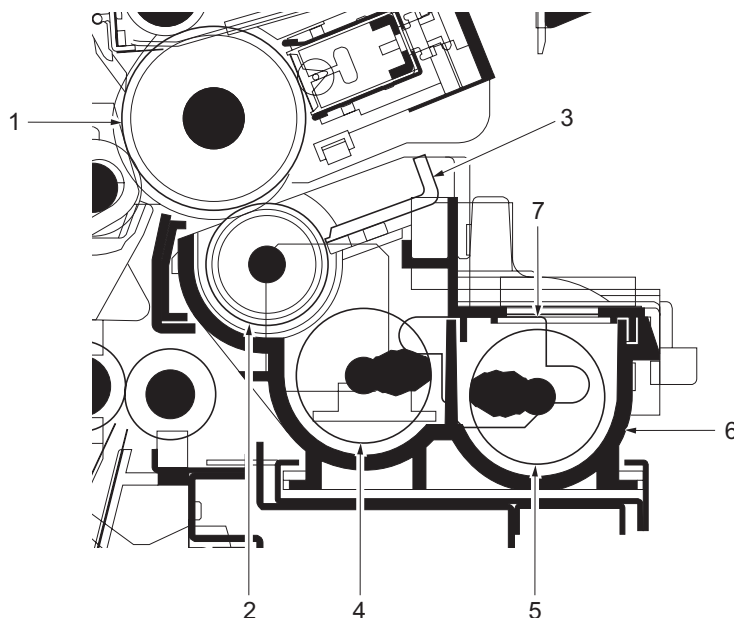


Figure 2-1-11 Developing section

- (1) Drum
- (2) Developing sleeve
- (3) Magnetic toner blade
- (4) Left developing spiral
- (5) Right developing spiral
- (6) Developing housing
- (7) Toner sensor (TNS)

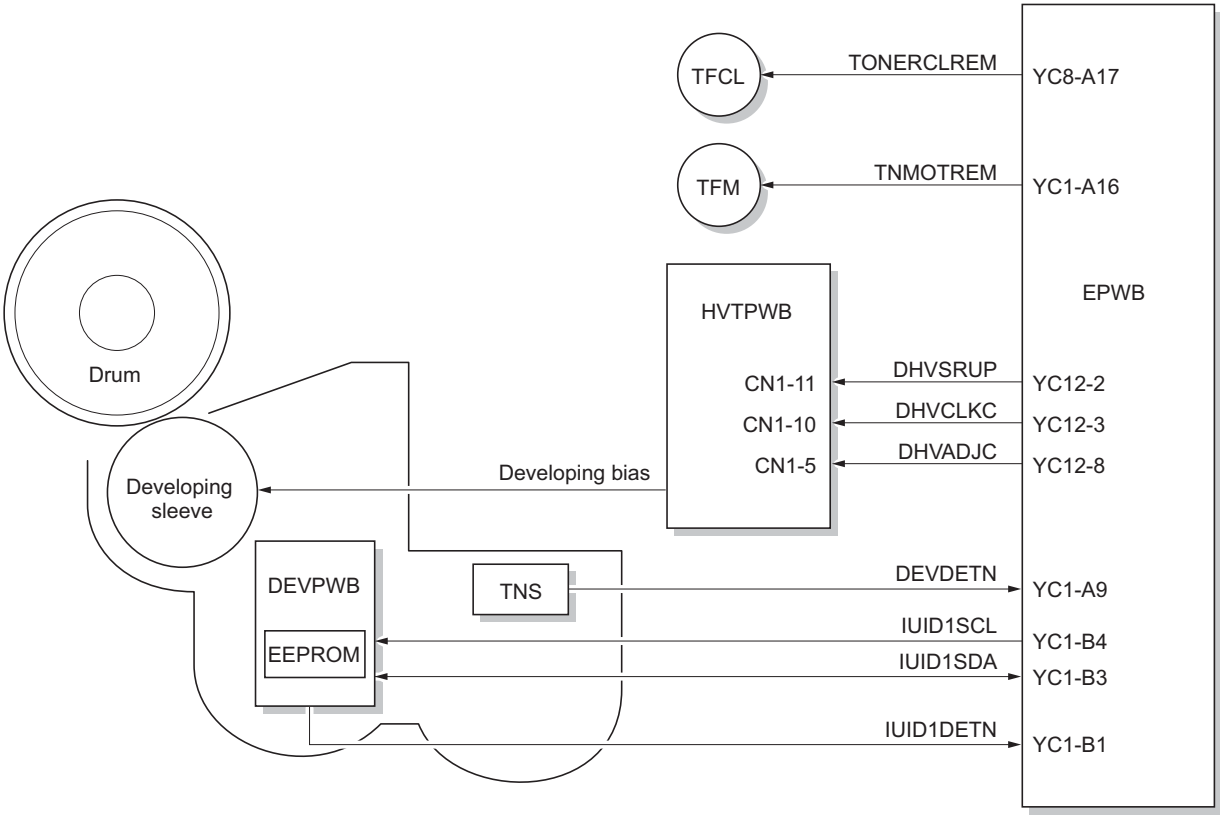


Figure 2-1-12 Developing section block diagram

(1) Single component developing system

This machine uses the single component developing system, and reversal processing is performed with a + charged drum (a-Si) and a + charged magnetic toner.

With the single component developing system, toner is electrically charged by friction with the developing sleeve and + charged when it passes through the magnetic toner blade. The toner that has passed through the magnetic toner blade forms a uniform layer on the developing sleeve. When the toner layer comes to the location where the developing sleeve is the nearest to the drum, toner moves between the drum and the developing sleeve by an electric field of the magnetic pole. Then, when the developing sleeve rotates and passes through the nearest location to the drum, on the portion of the drum that has been exposed to light, toner is attracted toward the drum by potential difference between the developing bias and the drum surface and development is performed. On the other hand, on the portion of the drum that has not been exposed to light, toner is attracted toward the sleeve and development is not performed. When toner comes to an area where the gap between the drum and the developing sleeve is large, an electric field disappears and toner does not leave the developing sleeve. Development is complete.

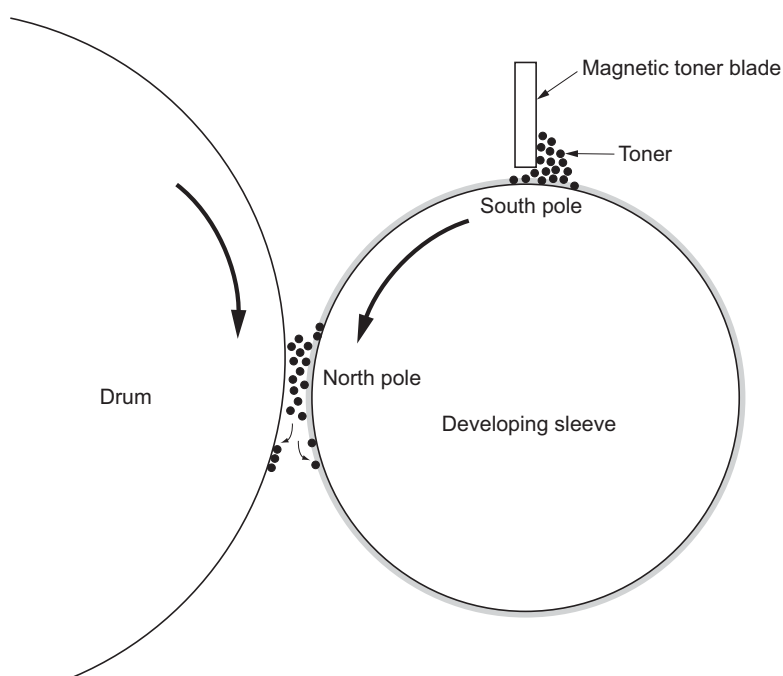


Figure 2-1-13 Single component developing system

2-1-5 Transfer and separation sections

The transfer and separation section consists mainly of the transfer roller, separation electrode and drum separation claws. A high voltage generated by the high voltage PWB (HVTPWB) is applied to the transfer roller for transfer charging. Paper after transfer is separated from the drum by applying separation charging that is output from the high voltage PWB (HVTPWB) to the separation electrode.

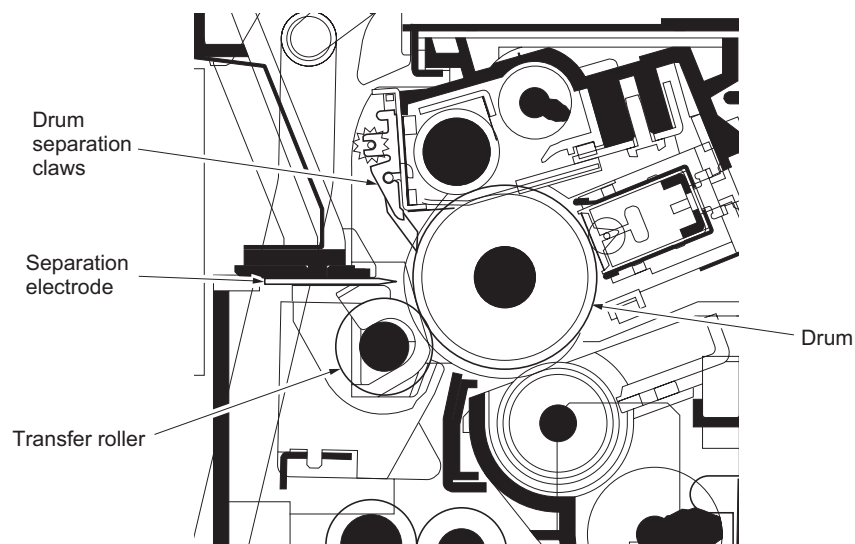


Figure 2-1-14 Transfer and separation sections

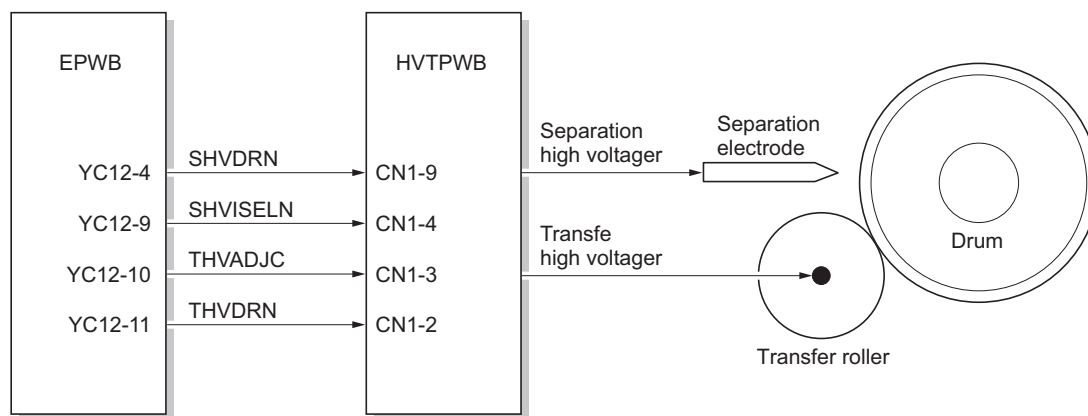


Figure 2-1-15 Transfer and separation sections block diagram

2-1-6 Cleaning and charge erasing sections

The cleaning section consists of the cleaning blade that removes residual toner from the drum surface after the transfer process, and the cleaning spiral that carries the residual toner back to the waste toner box. The cleaning lamp (CL) consists of LEDs and removes residual charge on the drum before main charging. Also the toner quantity in the waste toner box is sensed with the overflow sensor (OFS).

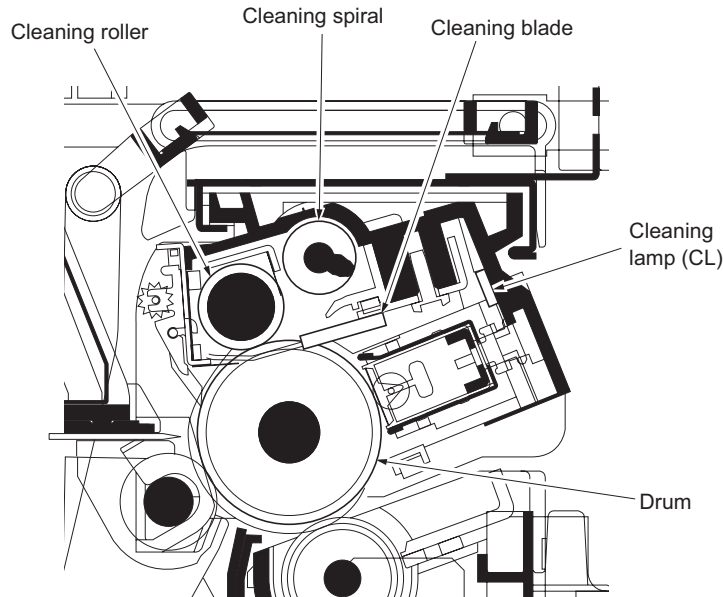


Figure 2-1-16 Cleaning and charge erasing sections

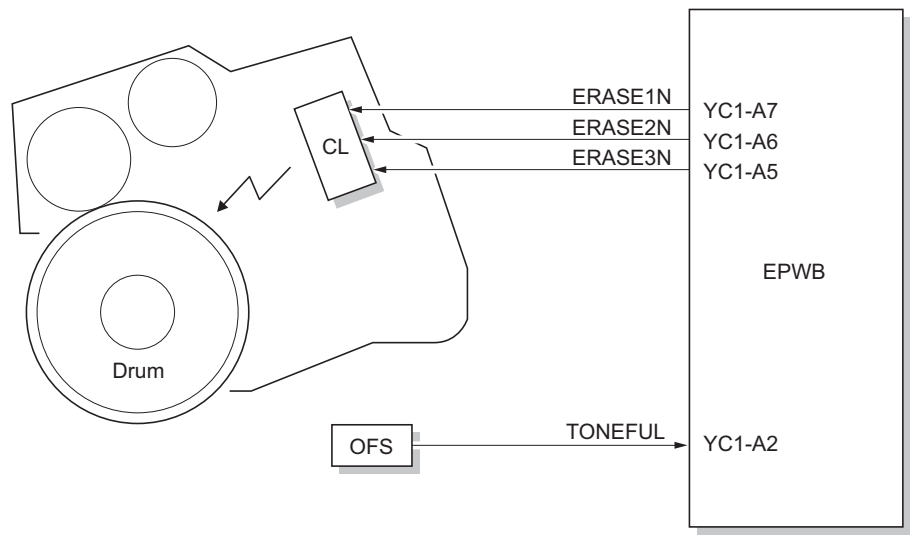


Figure 2-1-17 Cleaning and charge erasing sections block diagram

2-1-7 Fuser section

The fuser section consists of the parts shown in Figure 2-1-18. When paper reaches the fuser section after the transfer process, it passes between the press roller and heat roller, which is heated by fuser heaters M or S (FH-M or FH-S). Pressure is applied by the fuser unit pressure springs so that the toner on the paper is melted, fused and fixed onto the paper. The heat roller is heated by fuser heaters M or S (FH-M or FH-S) inside it; its surface temperature is detected by the fuser thermistor 1 and 2 (FTH1/2), and is regulated by the fuser heaters turning on and off.

If the fuser section becomes abnormally hot, fuser thermostat 1 and 2 (FTS1/2) operates shutting the power to the fuser heaters off. When the fusing process is completed, the paper is separated from the heat roller by its separation claws and is conveyed from the machine to eject and switchback section.

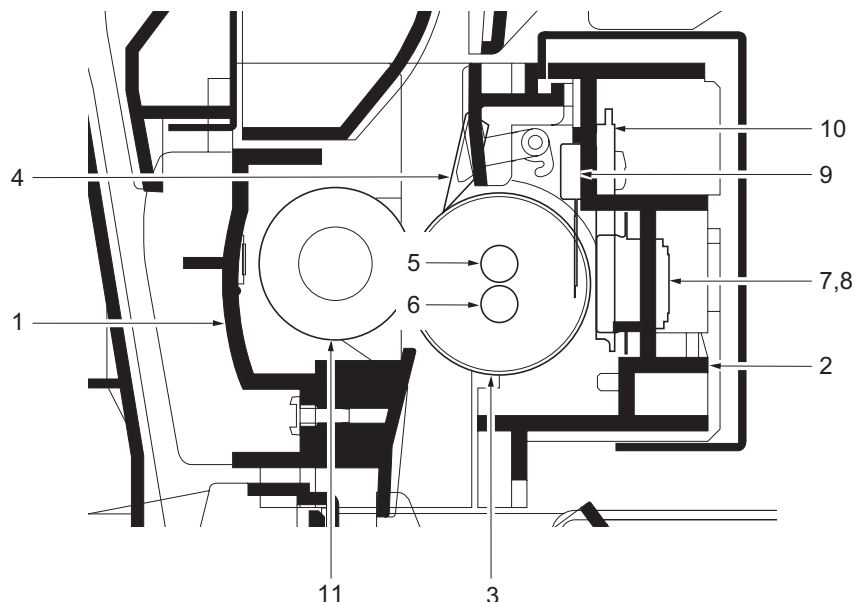


Figure 2-1-18 Fuser section

- (1) Left fuser frame
- (2) Right fuser frame
- (3) Heat roller
- (4) Heat roller separation claws
- (5) Fuser heater M (FH-M)
- (6) Fuser heater S (FH-S)
- (7) Fuser thermostat 1 (FTS1)
- (8) Fuser thermostat 2 (FTS2)
- (9) Fuser thermistor 1 (FTH1)
- (10) Fuser thermistor 2 (FTH2)
- (11) Press roller

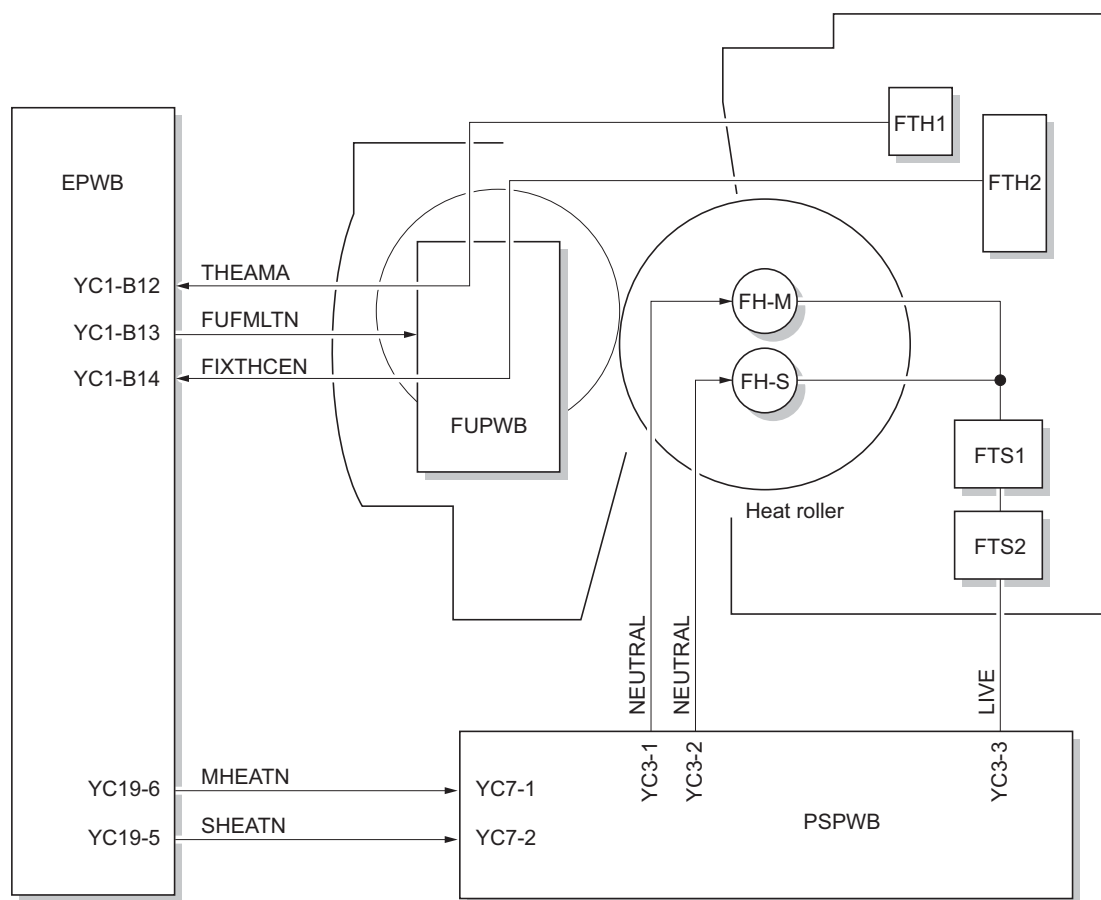


Figure 2-1-19 Fuser section block diagram

2-1-8 Eject and switchback sections

The eject and switchback sections eject paper on which fixing has ended with the eject roller that is rotated by forward rotation of the eject motor.

In duplex copying, paper is turned over by reverse rotation of the eject motor. When paper is transferred to the job separator or the internal finisher, the feedshift solenoid (FSSOL) is turned on to activate the feedshift guide to switch the paper transfer path.

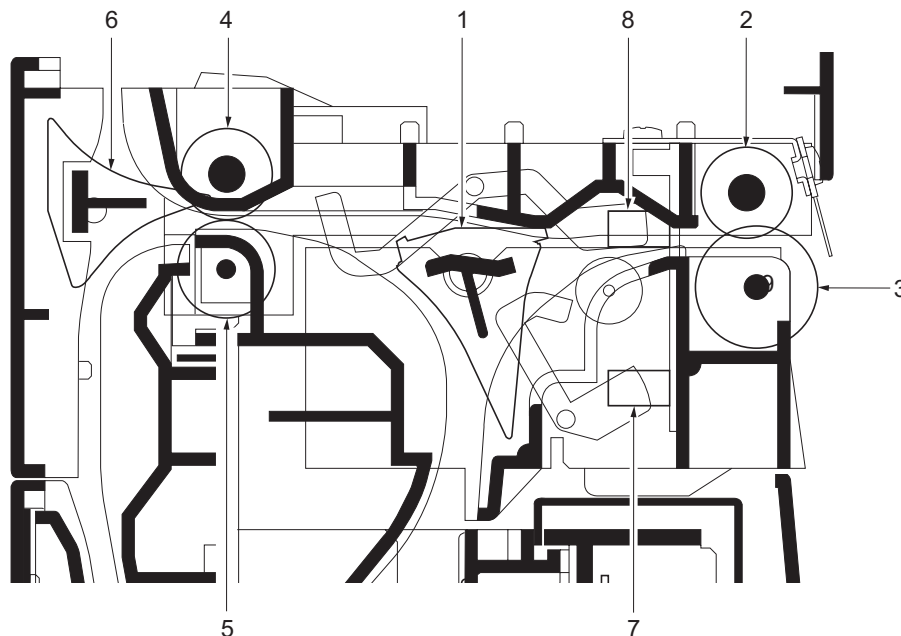


Figure 2-1-20 Eject and switchback sections

- | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| (1) Feedshift guide | (5) Switchback pulley |
| (2) Eject roller | (6) Feedshift guide |
| (3) Eject pulley | (7) Eject switch (ESW) |
| (4) Switchback roller | (8) Feedshift switch (FSSW) |

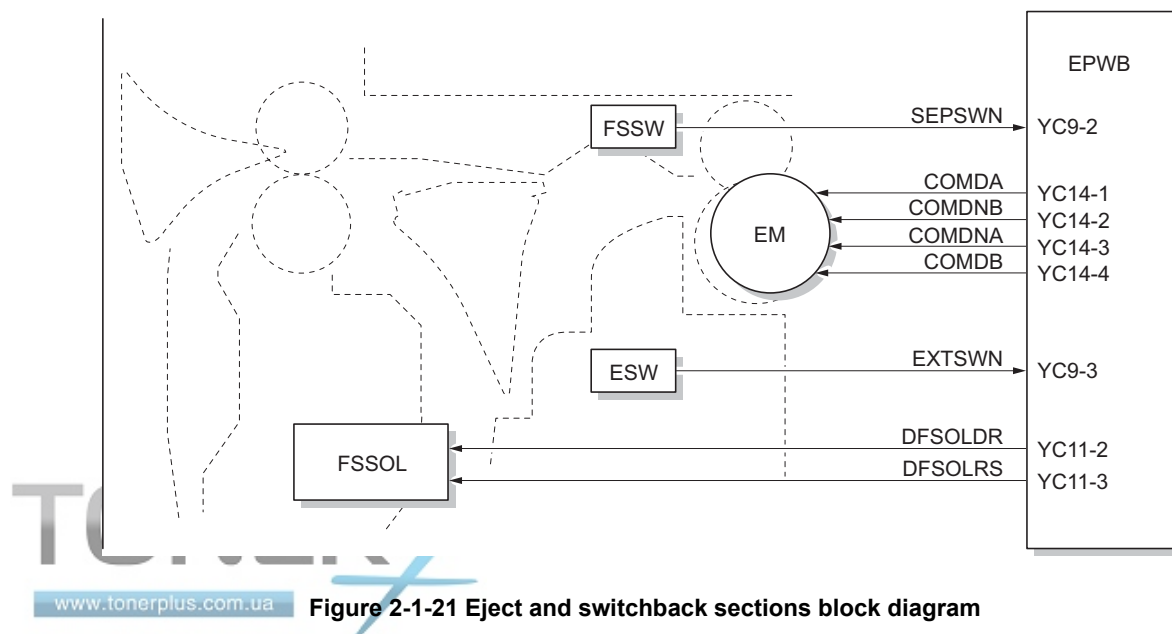


Figure 2-1-21 Eject and switchback sections block diagram

2-1-9 Duplex section

The duplex section consists of the components shown in figure. In duplex mode, after copying on to the reverse face of the paper, the paper is reversed in the switchback section and conveyed to the duplex section. The paper is then conveyed to the paper feed section by the upper and lower duplex feed rollers.

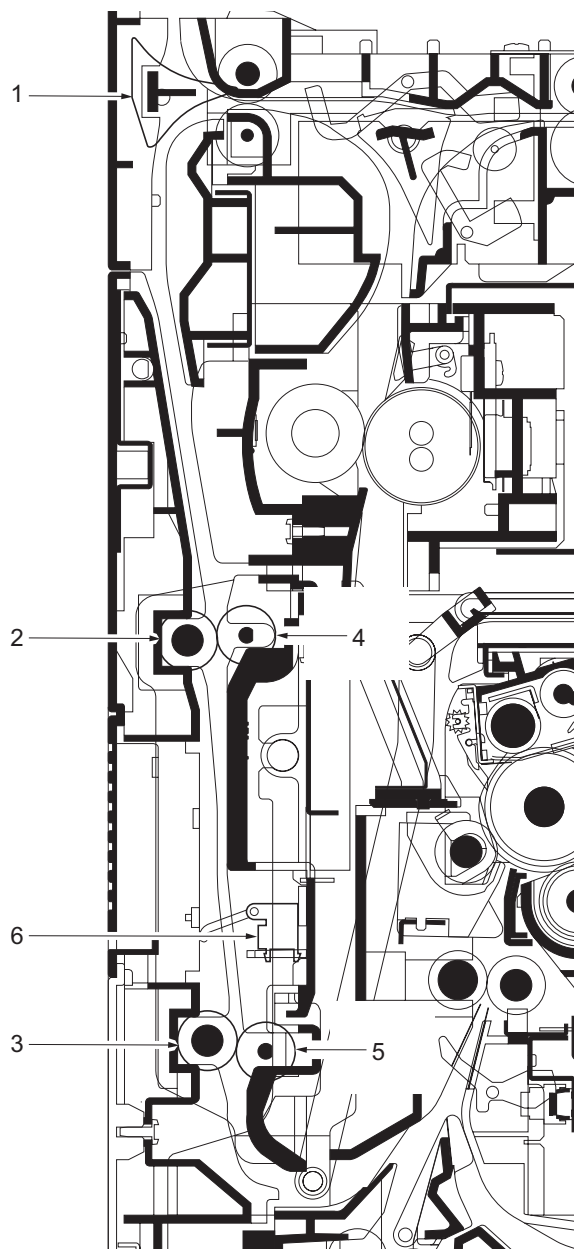


Figure 2-1-22 Duplex section

- (1) Feedshift guide
- (2) Upper duplex feed roller
- (3) Lower duplex feed roller
- (4) Duplex feed pulley
- (5) Duplex feed pulley
- (6) Duplex paper conveying switch (DUPPCSW)

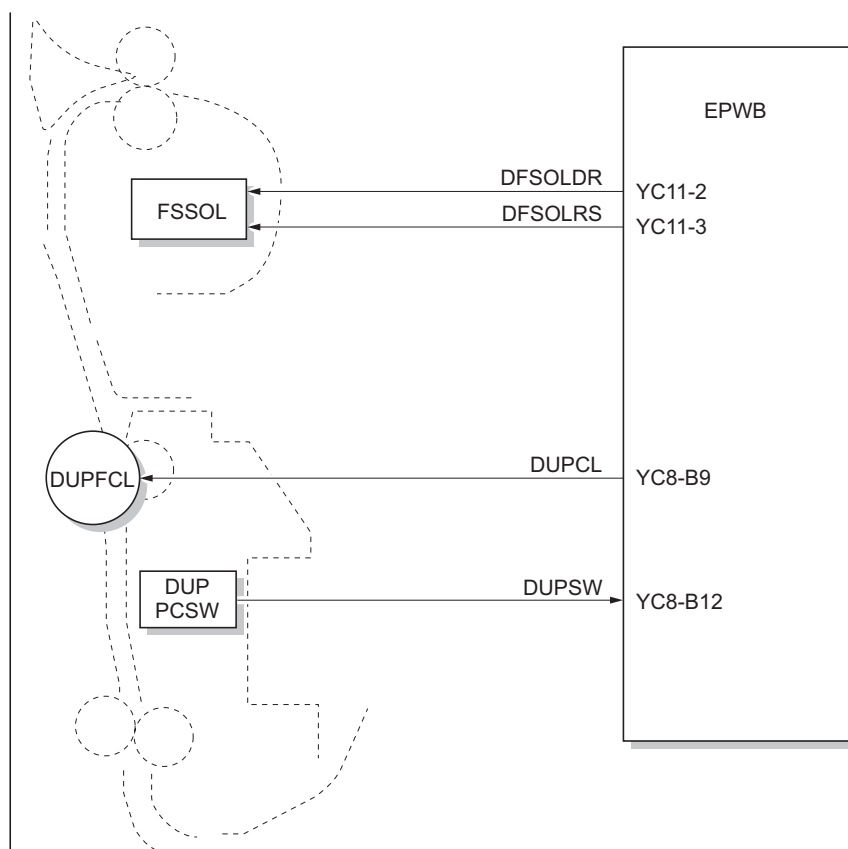


Figure 2-1-23 Duplex section block diagram

(1) Paper conveying operation in duplex copying

Paper of which copying onto the reverse side is complete is conveyed to the switchback section, the eject motor switches from normal rotation to reverse rotation to switch the eject roller to reverse rotation, and the paper conveying direction is reversed. Paper that has been switched back is conveyed to the duplex section via the eject roller and the switchback roller.

Paper that has been conveyed to the duplex section is conveyed to the paper feed section again by rotation of the upper duplex feed roller and the lower duplex feed roller and copying onto the front side is performed.

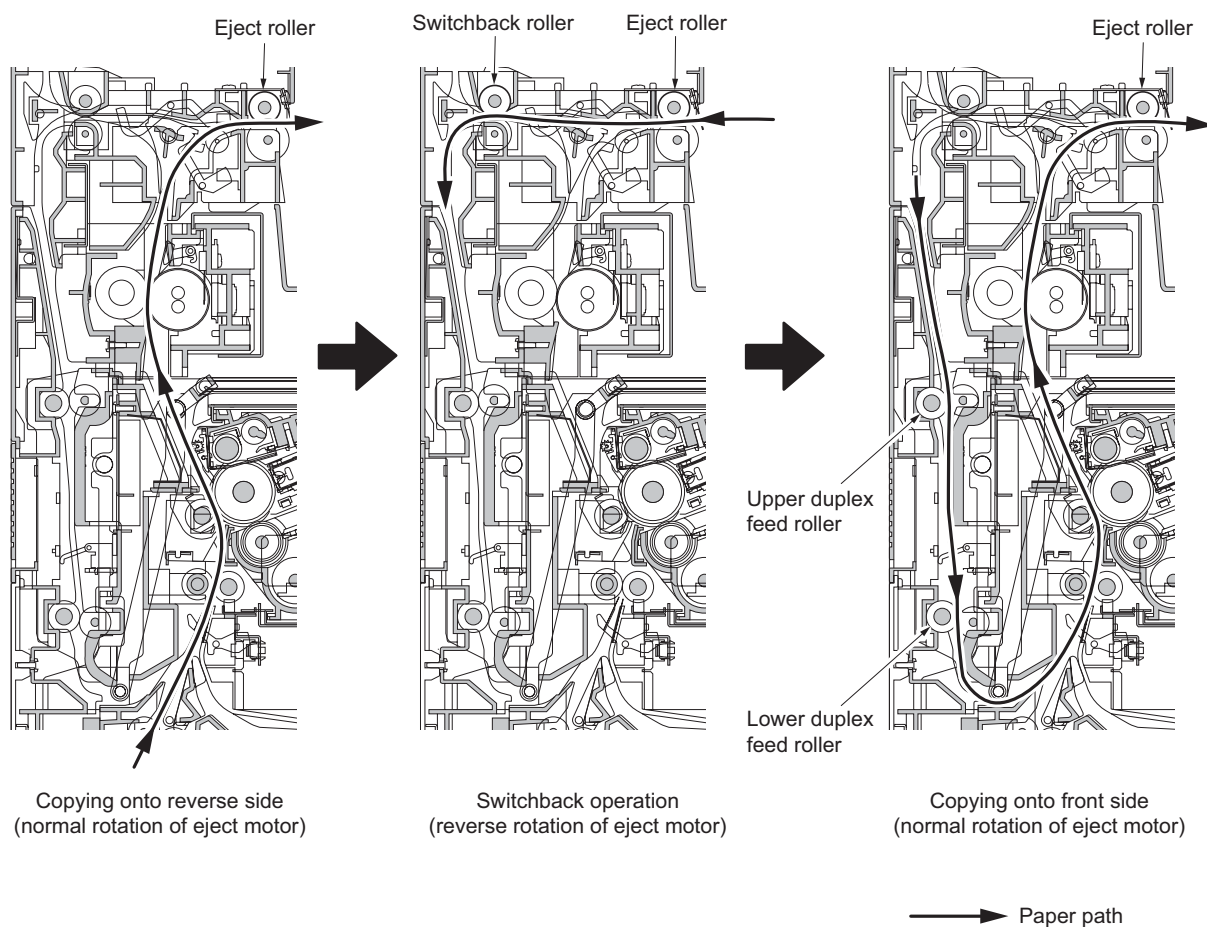


Figure 2-1-24

This page is intentionally left blank.

2-2-1 Electrical parts layout

(1) PWBs

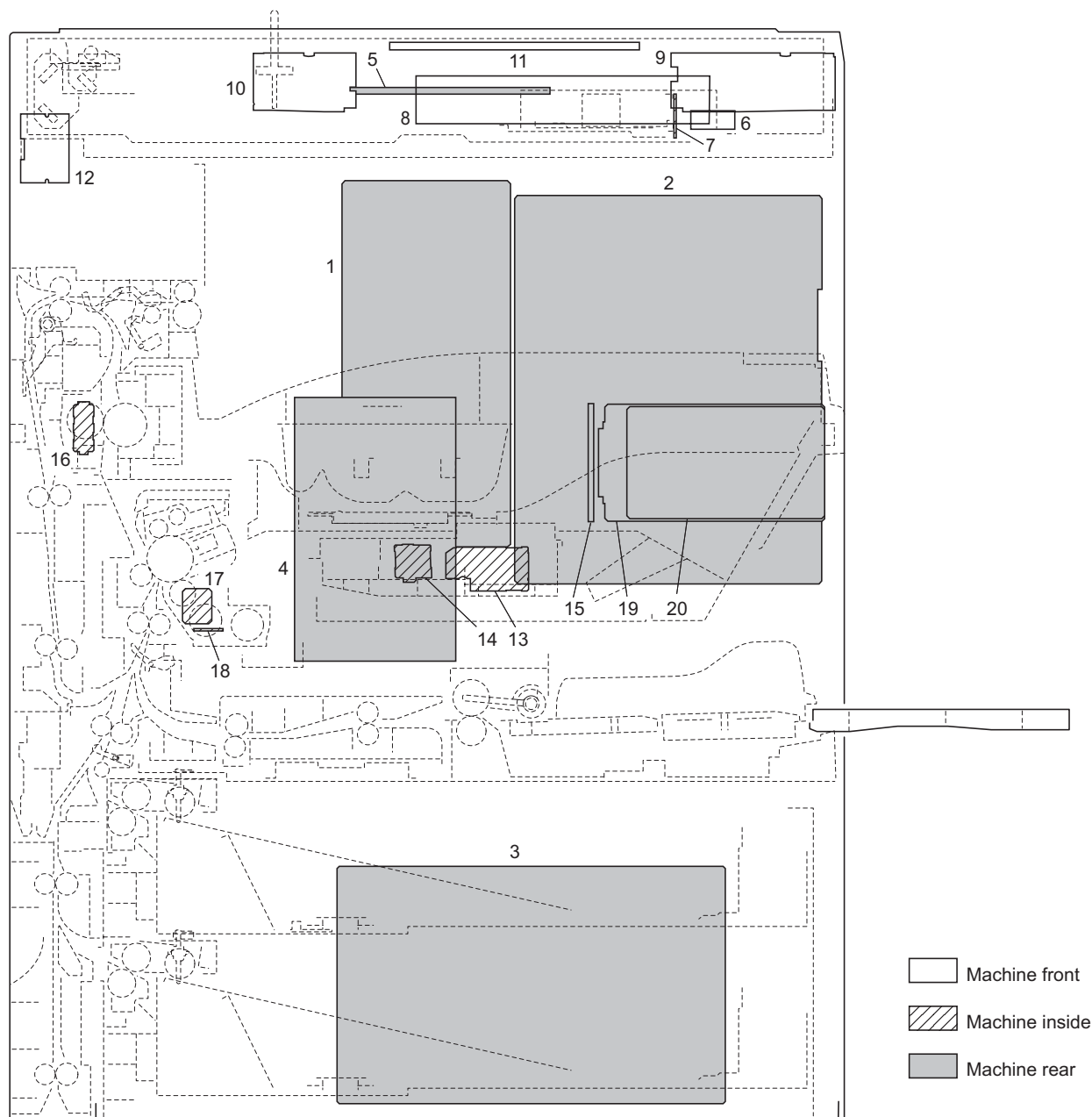


Figure 2-2-1 PWBs

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Engine PWB (EPWB)..... | Controls the other PWBs, electrical components and optional devices. |
| 2. Main PWB (MPWB) | Controls the image processing and operation panel. |
| 3. Power source PWB (PSPWB) | Generates +24 V DC and 5 V DC; controls the fuser heaters. |
| 4. High voltage PWB (HVTWB) | Main charging. Generates developing bias and high voltages for transfer. |
| 5. Scanner inverter PWB (SINPWB) | Controls the exposure lamp. |
| 6. LCD inverter PWB (LINPWB) | Controls LCD indication. |
| 7. CCD PWB (CCDPWB)..... | Reads the image of originals. |
| 8. Main operation unit PWB (OPWB-M)..... | Controls touch panel and LCD indication. |
| 9. Right operation unit PWB (OPWB-R) | Consists of the operation keys and display LEDs. |
| 10. Left operation unit PWB (OPWB-L) | Consists of the operation keys and display LEDs. |
| 11. Upper operation unit PWB (OPWB-U) | Consists of the operation keys and display LEDs. |
| 12. Front operation unit PWB (OPWB-F)..... | Consists of the display LEDs. |

- 13. APC PWB (APCPWB) Generates and controls the laser beam.
- 14. PD PWB (PDPWB) Controls horizontal synchronizing timing of laser beam.
- 15. Interface PWB (IFPWB) Consists of wiring relay circuits.
- 16. Fuser PWB (FUPWB) Consists of wiring relay circuits.
- 17. Drum PWB (DRPWB) Stores the individual drum unit information.
- 18. Developing PWB (DRPWB) Stores the individual developing unit information.
- 19. Fax control PWB (FCPWB)* Modulates, demodulates, compresses, decompresses and smoothes out
image data, and converts resolution of image data.
- 20. NCU PWB (NCUPWB)* Controls connection to the telephone line.

*: Option

(2) Switches and sensors

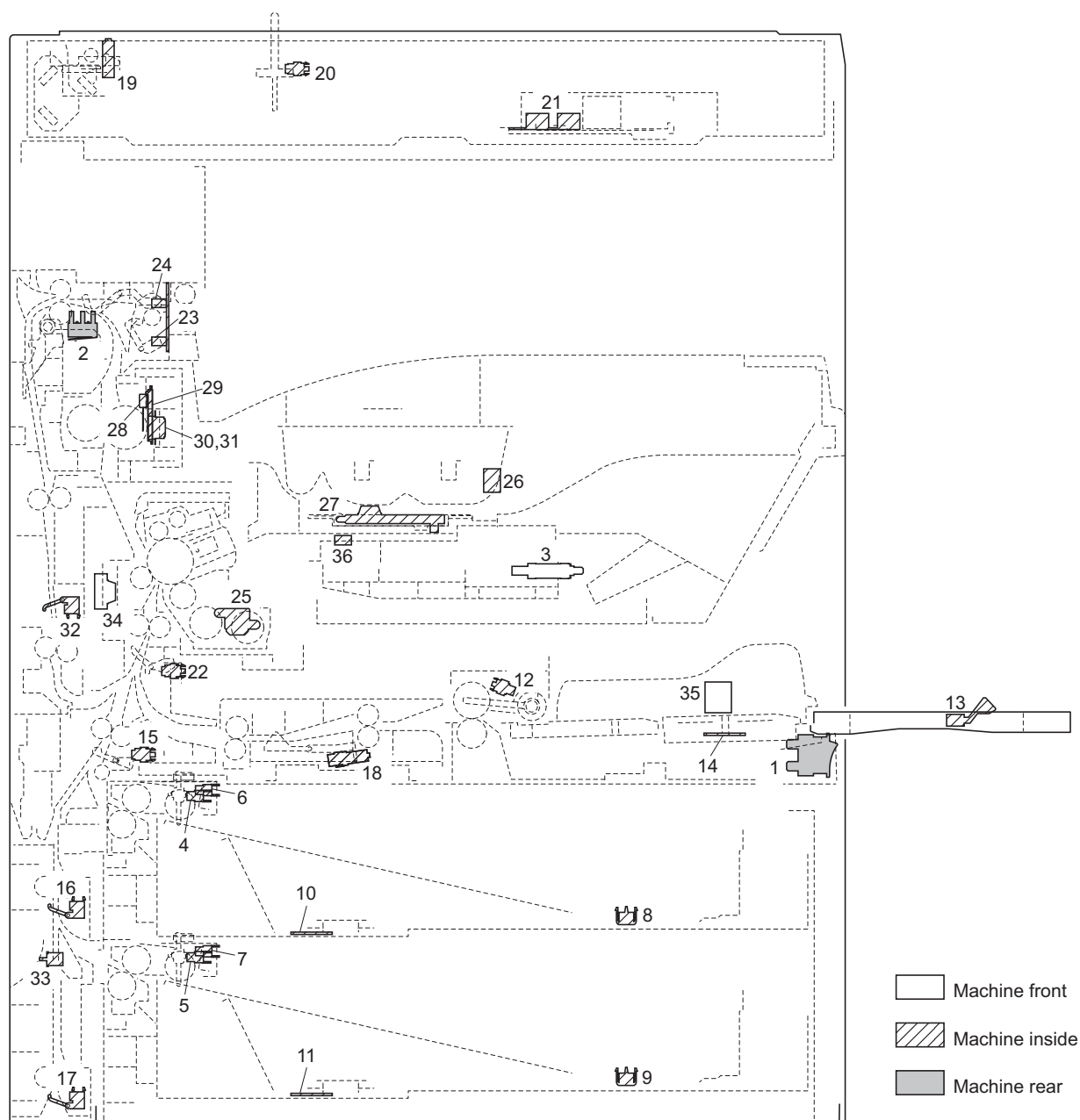
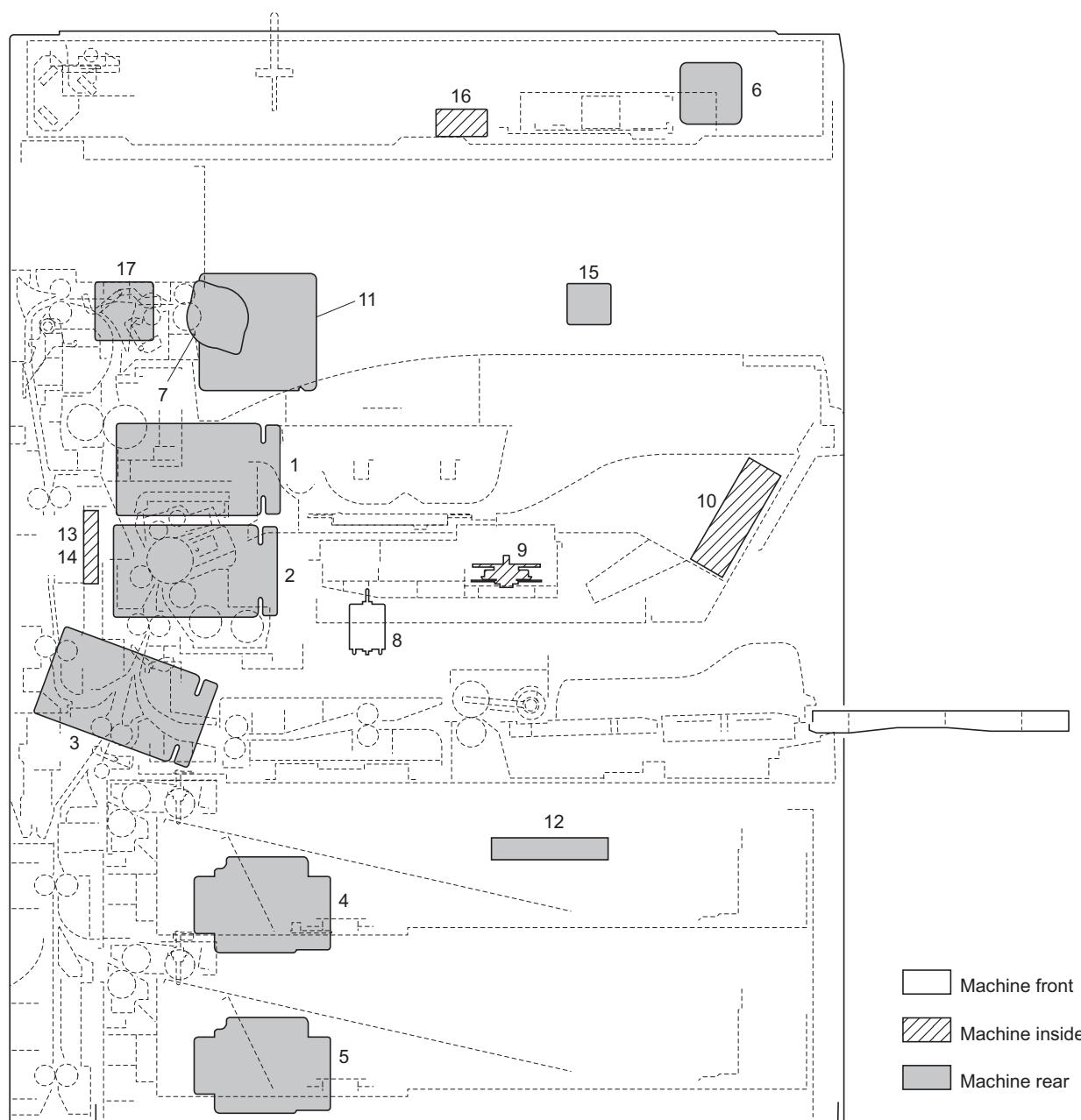


Figure 2-2-2 Switches and sensors

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Main power switch (MSW) | Turns the AC power on and off. |
| 2. Safety switch 1 (SSW1) | Breaks the safety circuit when the left cover 1 is opened. |
| 3. Safety switch 2 (SSW2) | Breaks the safety circuit when the front cover is opened. |
| 4. Upper paper switch (PSW-U) | Detects the presence of paper in the cassette 1. |
| 5. Lower paper switch (PSW-L) | Detects the presence of paper in the cassette 2. |
| 6. Upper lift limit switch (LICSW-U) | Detects the cassette 1 lift reaching the upper limit. |
| 7. Lower lift limit switch (LICSW-L) | Detects the cassette 2 lift reaching the upper limit. |
| 8. Upper paper size length switch (PLSW-U) | Detects the length of paper in the cassette 1. |
| 9. Lower paper size length switch (PLSW-L) | Detects the length of paper in the cassette 2. |
| 10. Upper paper size width switch (PWSW-U) | Detects the width of paper in the cassette 1. |
| 11. Lower paper size width switch (PWSW-L) | Detects the width of paper in the cassette 2. |

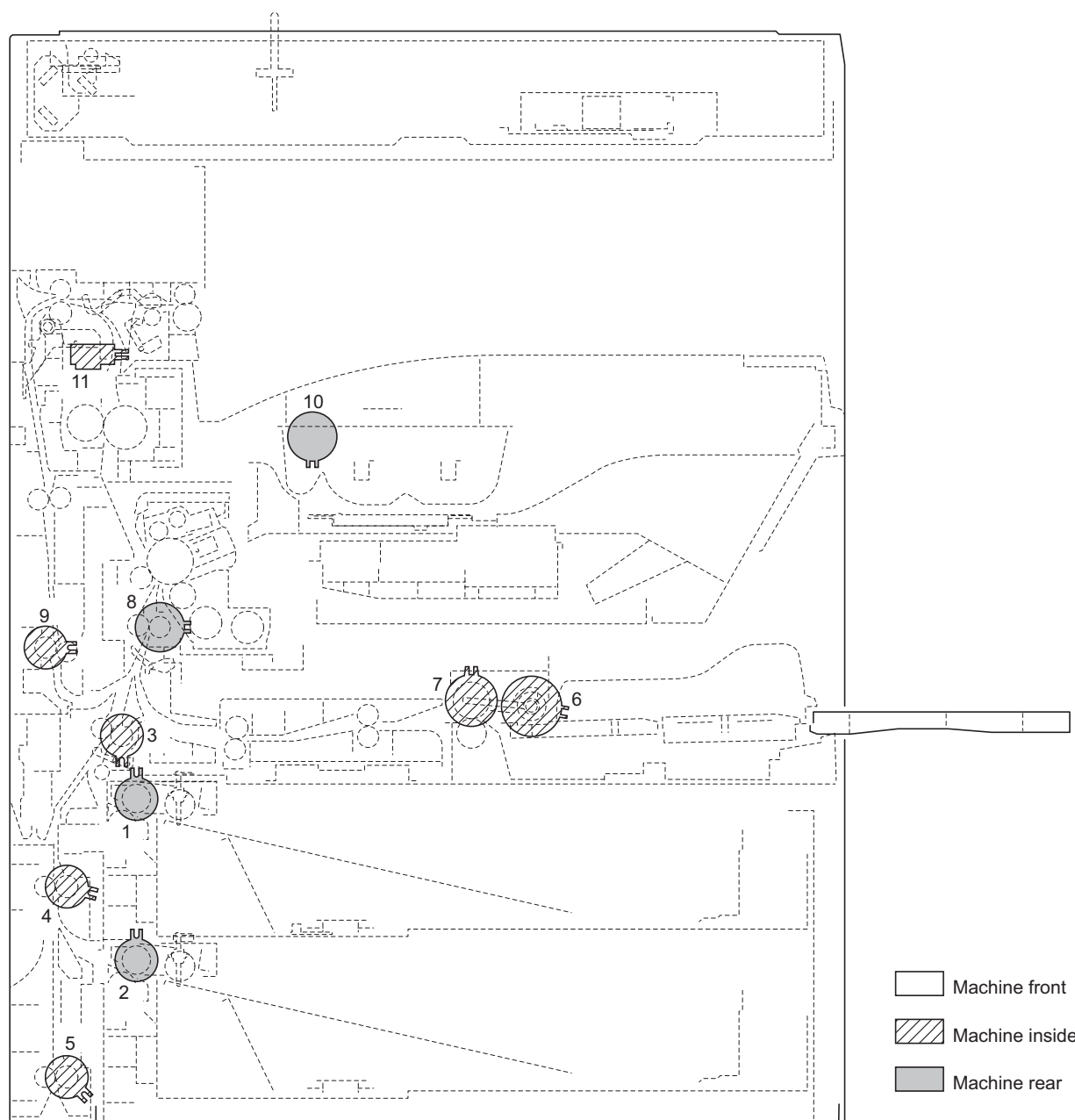
12. MP paper switch (MPPSW) Detects the presence of paper on the MP tray.
13. MP paper size length switch
(MPPLSW) Detects the length of paper on the MP tray.
14. MP paper size width switch
(MPPWSW) Detects the width of paper on the MP tray.
15. Feed switch 1 (FSW1) Controls feed clutch 1 drive timing.
16. Feed switch 2 (FSW2) Controls feed clutch 2 drive timing
17. Feed switch 3 (FSW3) Controls feed clutch 3 drive timing
18. MP feed switch (MPFSW) Controls MP feed clutch drive timing
19. Scanner home position switch (SHPSW) Detects the optical system in the home position.
20. Original detection switch (ODSW) Operates the original size detection sensor.
21. Original size detection sensor (OSDS) Detects the size of the original.
22. Registration switch (RSW) Controls the secondary paper feed start timing.
23. Eject switch (ESW) Detects a paper misfeed in the fuser section.
24. Feedshift switch (FSSW) Detects a paper misfeed in the switchback section in a duplex copy.
25. Toner sensor (TNS) Detects the toner density in the developing unit.
26. Toner container detection switch
(TCDSW) Detects the presence of the toner container.
27. Toner container sensor (TCS) Detects the quantity of toner in a toner container.
28. Fuser thermistor 1 (FTH1) Detects the heat roller temperature.
29. Fuser thermistor 2 (FTH2) Detects the heat roller temperature.
30. Fuser thermostat 1 (FTS1) Prevents overheating in the fuser section.
31. Fuser thermostat 2 (FTS2) Prevents overheating in the fuser section.
32. Duplex paper conveying switch
(DUPPCSW) Detects a paper jam in the duplex section.
33. Left cover 2 switch (LC2SW) Detects the opening and closing of the left cover 2.
34. Overflow sensor (OFS) Detects when the waste toner box is full.
35. Humidity sensor (HUMS) Detects absolute humidity.
36. Temperature sensor (TEMS) Detects inner temperature.

(3) Motors**Figure 2-2-3 Motors**

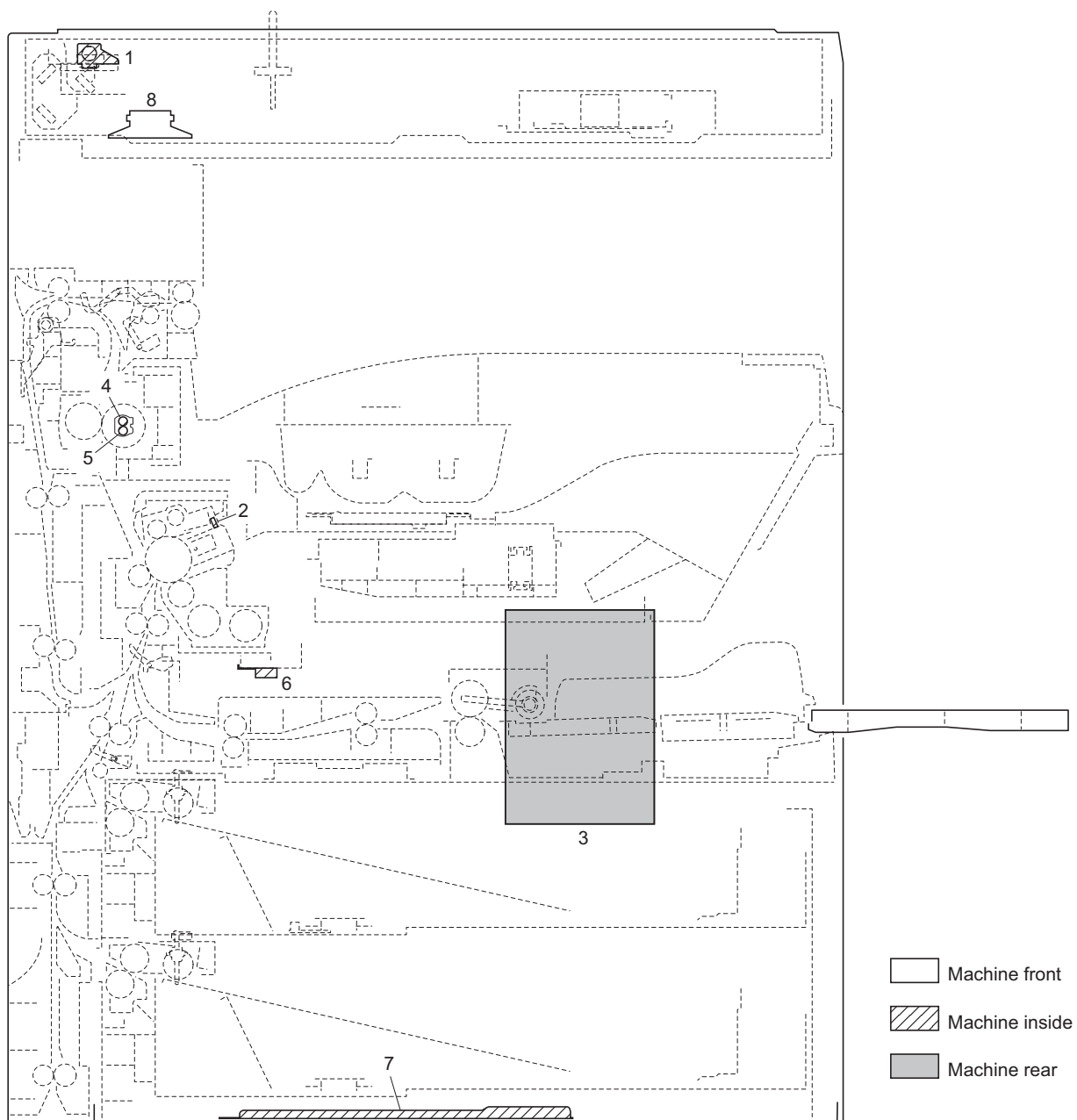
- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| 1. Main motor (MM)..... | Drives developing section and fuser section. |
| 2. Drum motor (DM)..... | Drives the drum. |
| 3. Paper feed motor (PFM)..... | Drives paper feed section. |
| 4. Upper lift motor (LM-U)..... | Drives cassette 1 lift. |
| 5. Lower lift motor (LM-L)..... | Drives cassette 2 lift. |
| 6. Scanner motor (SM)..... | Drives the optical system. |
| 7. Eject motor (EM)..... | Drives the eject section. |
| 8. Toner feed motor (TFM)..... | Replenishes toner. |
| 9. Polygon motor (PM)..... | Drives the polygon mirror. |
| 10. Cooling fan motor 1 (CFM1)..... | Cools the machine interior. |
| 11. Cooling fan motor 2 (CFM2)..... | Cools the machine interior. |
| 12. Cooling fan motor 3 (CFM3)..... | Cools the machine interior (around the power source PWB). |
| 13. Cooling fan motor 4 (CFM4)..... | Cools the machine interior and supports paper transfer for duplex copying. |
| 14. Cooling fan motor 5 (CFM5)..... | Cools the machine interior and supports paper transfer for duplex copying. |
| 15. Cooling fan motor 6 (CFM6)..... | Cools the machine interior (controller box). |

2H0/2HZ

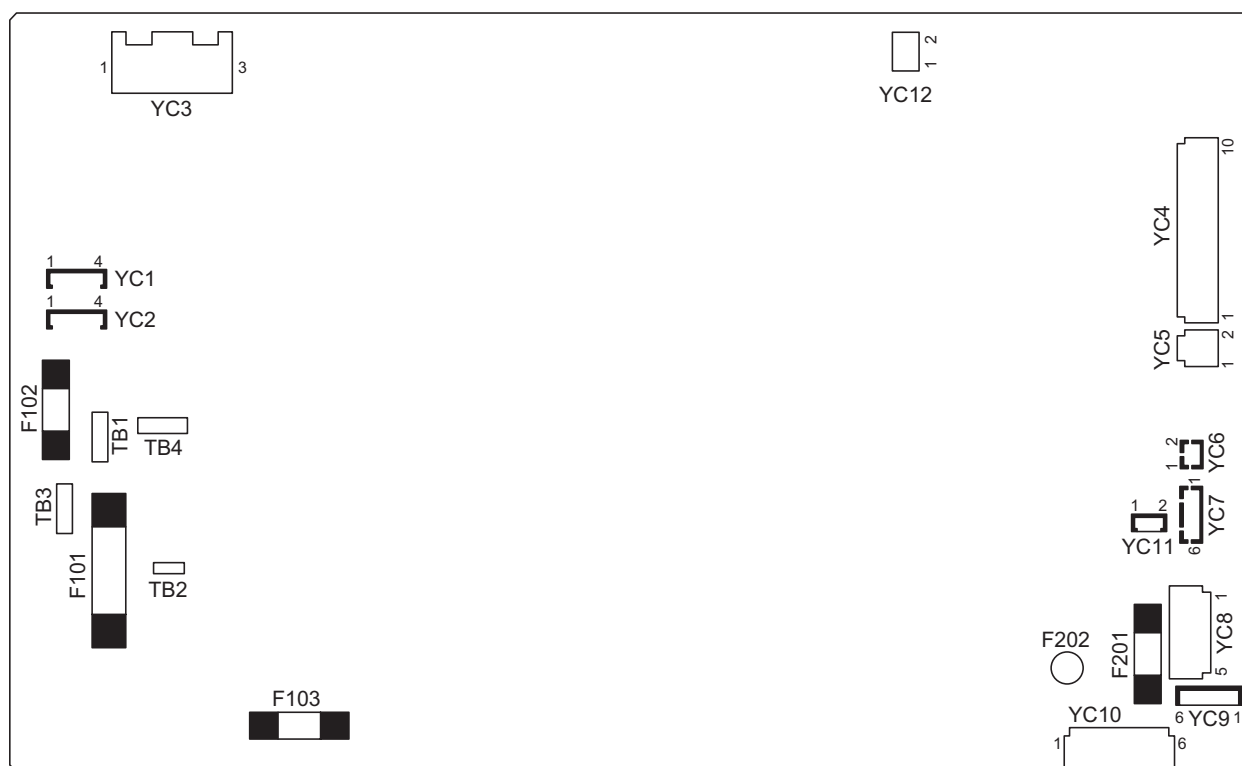
- 16. Cooling fan motor 7 (CFM7) Cools the machine interior (operation panel).
- 17. Cooling fan motor 8 (CFM8) Cools the machine interior (eject section).

(4) Clutches and solenoids**Figure 2-2-4 Clutches and solenoids**

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Upper paper feed clutch (PFCL-U) | Primary paper feed from the cassette 1. |
| 2. Lower paper feed clutch (PFCL-L) | Primary paper feed from the cassette 2. |
| 3. Feed clutch 1 (FCL1) | Controls the drive of feed roller. |
| 4. Feed clutch 2 (FCL2) | Controls the drive of feed roller. |
| 5. Feed clutch 3 (FCL3) | Controls the drive of feed roller. |
| 6. MP paper feed clutch (MPPFCL) | Primary paper feed from the MP tray. |
| 7. MP feed clutch (MPFCL) | Controls the drive of MP feed roller. |
| 8. Registration clutch (RCL) | Secondary paper feed. |
| 9. Duplex feed clutch (DUPFCL) | Controls the drive of the duplex feed roller. |
| 10. Toner feed clutch (TFCL) | Replenishes toner. |
| 11. Feedshift solenoid (FSSOL) | Operates the feedshift guide. |

(5) Other electrical components**Figure 2-2-5 Other electrical components**

- | | |
|--------------------------------|---|
| 1. Exposure lamp (EL) | Exposes originals. |
| 2. Cleaning lamp (CL) | Removes residual charge from the drum surface. |
| 3. Hard disk unit (HDD) | Stores the image data and information of job accounting mode. |
| 4. Fuser heater M (FH-M) | Heats the heat roller. |
| 5. Fuser heater S (FH-S) | Heats the heat roller. |
| 6. Drum heater (DH) | Dehumidifies the image formation section. |
| 7. Cassette heater (CH) | Dehumidifies the cassette section. |
| 8. Speaker (SP) | Outputs buzzer, monitoring and speaker sounds. |

2-3-1 Power source PWB**Figure 2-3-1 Power source PWB silk-screen diagram**

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
TB	TB1	LIVE	I	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power input
Connected to the AC inlet and main power switch	TB2	NEUTRAL	I	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power input
	TB3	LIVE	O	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power output to MSW
	TB4	LIVE	I	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power input from MSW
YC1	1	LIVE	O	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power output
Connected to the cassette heater	2	N.C.	-	-	Not used
	3	N.C.	-	-	Not used
	4	NEUTRAL	O	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power output
YC2	1	LIVE	O	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power output
Connected to the cassette heater	2	N.C.	-	-	Not used
	3	N.C.	-	-	Not used
	4	NEUTRAL	O	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power output
YC3	1	NEUTRAL	O	120/0 V AC 220-240/0 V AC	FH-M: On/Off
Connected to the fuser heater M/S	2	NEUTRAL	O	120/0 V AC 220-240/0 V AC	FH-S: On/Off
	3	LIVE	O	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power output to FM-M/S
YC4	1	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to MPWB
Connected to the main PWB	2	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to MPWB
	3	+5VSL	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to MPWB
	4	+12VSL	O	12 V DC	12 V DC power output to MPWB
	5	+24VSL	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to MPWB
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
	9	GND	-	-	Ground
	10	GND	-	-	Ground
YC5	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to the interface PWB	2	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to IFPWB
YC6	1	FAN3DRN	O	0/24 V DC	CFM3: On/Off
Connected to the cooling fan motor 3	2	+24VSL	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to CFM3

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC7 Connected to the engine PWB	1	MHEATN	I	0/5 V DC	FH-M: On/Off
	2	SHEATN	I	0/5 V DC	FH-S: On/Off
	3	FAN3DRN	I	0/24 V DC	CFM3: On/Off
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	ZCROSSC	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Zero-cross signal
	6	SLEEPN	O	0/5 V DC	Sleep signal: On/Off
YC8 Connected to the engine PWB	1	+5VSL	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to EPWB
	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	+24VSL	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to EPWB
	5	+24VSL	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to EPWB
YC9 Connected to the optional document finisher	1	GND	-	-	Ground
	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
YC10 Connected to the optional paper feeder and optional document finisher	1	+5VSL	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to document finisher
	2	+24VSL	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to document finisher
	3	+24VSL	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to paper feeder
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
YC11 Connected to the main PWB	1	GND	-	-	Ground
	2	+5VSL	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to MPWB
YC12 Connected to the engine PWB	1	N.C.	-	-	Not used
	2	+24VIL	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to EPWB

2-3-2 Engine PWB

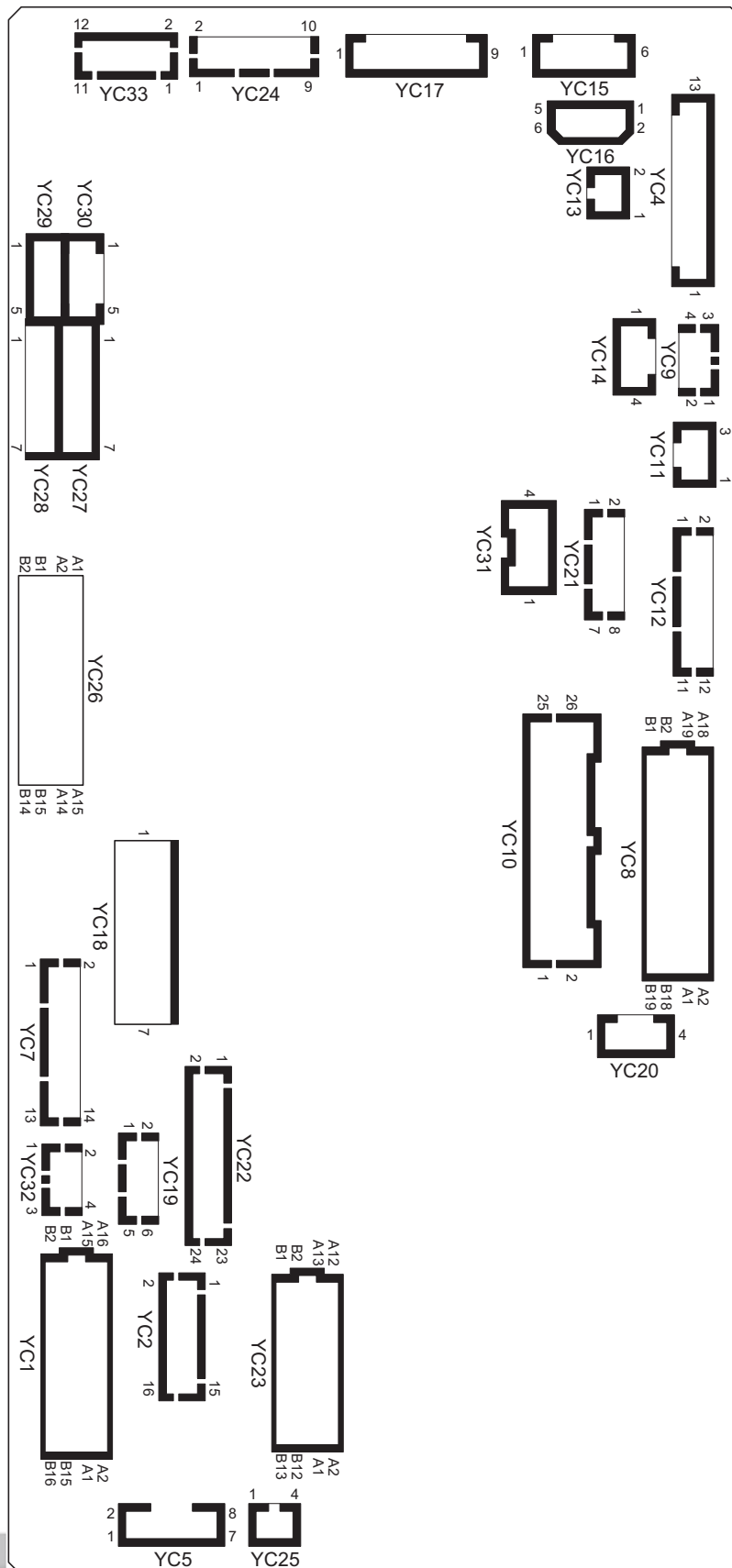


Figure 2-3-2 Engine PWB silk-screen diagram

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC1 Connected to the over-flow sensor, cleaning lamp, toner sensor, humidity sensor, toner feed motor, developing PWB, drum PWB and fuser unit	A1	GND	-	-	Ground
	A2	TONEFUL	I	0/5 V DC	OFS: On/Off
	A3	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to OFS
	A4	+24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to CL
	A5	ERASE3N	O	0/24 V DC	CL: On/Off
	A6	ERASE2N	O	0/24 V DC	CL: On/Off
	A7	ERASE1N	O	0/24 V DC	CL: On/Off
	A8	GND	-	-	Ground
	A9	DEVDET N	I	0/5 V DC	TNS: On/Off
	A10	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to TNS
	A11	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to HUMS
	A12	HUMID_SDA	I/O	Analog	HUMS detection voltage signal
	A13	GND	-	-	Ground
	A14	HUMID_SCL	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	HUMS clock signal
	A15	TNMOT24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to TFM
	A16	TNMOTREM	O	0/24 V DC	TFM: On/Off
	B1	IUID1DET N	I	0/5 V DC	Developing unit detection signal
	B2	GND	-	-	Ground
	B3	IUID1SDA	I/O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Developing unit EEPROM data signal
	B4	IUID1SCL	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Developing unit EEPROM clock signal
	B5	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to developing unit
	B6	IUID2DET N	I	0/5 V DC	Drum unit detection signal
	B7	GND	-	-	Ground
	B8	IUID2SDA	I/O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Drum unit EEPROM data signal
	B9	IUID2SCL	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Drum unit EEPROM clock signal
	B10	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to drum unit
	B11	THEAMA_GND	-	-	Ground
	B12	THEAMA	I	Analog	FTH1 detection voltage signal
	B13	FUFMLTN	O	0/5 V DC	Fuse cut signal
	B14	FIXTHCEN	I	Analog	FTH2 detection voltage signal
	B15	N.C.	-	-	Not used
	B16	+3.3V	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to FUPWB
YC2 Connected to the polygon motor, cooling fan motor 1, toner container sensor and toner container detection switch	1	+24VSL	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to PM
	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	PLGDRN	O	0/24 V DC	PM: On/Off
	4	PLGRDYN	I	0/5 V DC	PM ready signal
	5	PLGCLKN	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	PM clock signal
	6	FAN1 DRN	O	0/24 V DC	CFM1: On/Off
	7	FAN1 POW	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to CFM1
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
	9	COUNTSENS	I	0/5 V DC	TCS: On/Off
	10	+5VSL	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to TCS
	15	CONTSW	I	0/5 V DC	TCDSW: On/Off
	16	GND	-	-	Ground

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC4 Connected to the optional built-in finisher and optional job separator	1	RLSOLN	O	0/24 V DC	FSSOL (return): On/Off
	2	SLSOLN	O	0/24 V DC	FSSOL (activate): On/Off
	3	SCLK	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Built-in finisher/Job separator clock signal
	4	LOPSDI	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Built-in finisher serial communication data signal/Job separator JBESW: On/Off
	5	LOPSDO	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Built-in finisher/Job separator serial communication data signal
	6	LOPRDY	I	0/5 V DC	Built-in finisher ready signal/Job separator EPDSW: On/Off
	7	LOPSEL	O	0/5 V DC	Built-in finisher/Job separator select signal
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
	9	+5VSL	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to built-in finisher/Job separator
	10	GND	-	-	Ground
	11	GND	-	-	Ground
	12	+24VSL	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to built-in finisher/Job separator
	13	+24VSL	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to built-in finisher/Job separator
YC5 Connected to the optional document finisher	1	DET	I	0/5 V DC	Document finisher connection signal
	2	DFSDO	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Document finisher serial communication data signal
	3	DFSDI	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Document finisher serial communication data signal
	4	DFSCCLK	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Document finisher clock signal
	5	DFSEL	O	0/5 V DC	Document finisher select signal
	6	SISEL	-	-	Not used
	7	DFRDY	I	0/5 V DC	Document finisher ready signal
	8	SIRDY	-	-	Not used
YC7 Connected to the MP tray unit	1	MPFSIZE0	I	0/5 V DC	MPPWSW: On/Off
	2	MPFSIZE1	I	0/5 V DC	MPPWSW: On/Off
	3	MPFSIZE2	I	0/5 V DC	MPPWSW: On/Off
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	+5VSL	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to MPPSW
	6	MPFPAPS	I	0/5 V DC	MPPSW: On/Off
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
	8	+24VSL	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to MPPFCL
	9	MPFPAPCL	O	0/24 V DC	MPPFCL: On/Off
	10	+24VSL	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to MPFCL
	11	MPFFECL	O	0/24 V DC	MPFCL: On/Off
	12	+5VSL	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to MPPLSW
	13	MPFLENGTH	I	0/5 V DC	MPPLSW: On/Off
	14	GND	-	-	Ground

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC8 Connected to the feed switch 1/2/3, feed clutch 1/2/3, left cover 2 switch, upper/lower paper feed clutches, toner feed clutch, registration switch, registration clutch, duplex feed clutch, duplex paper conveying switch and cooling fan motor 4/5	A1	GND	-	-	Ground
	A2	LFEED_SW3	I	0/5 V DC	FSW3: On/Off
	A3	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to FSW3
	A4	+24VR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to FCL3
	A5	FEED3CL	O	0/24 V DC	FCL3: On/Off
	A6	GND	-	-	Ground
	A7	LFEED_SW2	I	0/5 V DC	FSW2: On/Off
	A8	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to FSW2
	A9	GND	-	-	Ground
	A10	FECOSW	I	0/5 V DC	LC2SW: On/Off
	A11	+24VR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to FCL2
	A12	FEED2CL	O	0/24 V DC	FCL2: On/Off
	A13	UPFECL	O	0/24 V DC	PFCL-U: On/Off
	A14	+24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to PFCL-U
	A15	LOFECL	O	0/24 V DC	PFCL-L: On/Off
	A16	+24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to PFCL-L
	A17	TONERCLREM	O	0/24 V DC	TFCL: On/Off
	A18	TONERCL+24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to TFCL
	A19	N.C.	-	-	Not used
	B1	GND	-	-	Ground
	B2	RESISTSW	I	0/5 V DC	RSW: On/Off
	B3	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to RSW
	B4	GND	-	-	Ground
	B5	UFEED_SW	I	0/5 V DC	FSW1: On/Off
	B6	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to FSW1
	B7	+24VR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to FCL1
	B8	FEED1CL	O	0/24 V DC	FCL1: On/Off
	B9	DUPCL	O	0/24 V DC	DUPFCL: On/Off
	B10	+24VR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to DUPFCL
	B11	GND	-	-	Ground
	B12	DUPSW	I	0/5 V DC	DUPPCSW: On/Off
	B13	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to DUPPCSW
	B14	+24VR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to RCL
	B15	RESFECL	O	0/24 V DC	RCL: On/Off
	B16	FAN4REM	O	0/24 V DC	CFM4: On/Off
	B17	+24VR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to CFM4
	B18	FAN5REM	O	0/24 V DC	CFM5: On/Off
	B19	+24VR	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to CFM5
YC9 Connected to the feed-shift switch and eject switch	1	GND	-	-	Ground
	2	SEPSWN	I	0/5 V DC	FSSW: On/Off
	3	EXTSWN	I	0/5 V DC	ESW: On/Off
	4	+5V2	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to FSSW/ESW

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC10 Connected to the main motor, drum motor, paper feed motor and drum heater	1	+24VSL	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to MM
	2	+24VSL	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to DM
	3	+24VSL	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to MM
	4	+24VSL	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to DM
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
	9	MMOTLOCK	I	0/5 V DC	MM lock signal
	10	DMOTLOCK	I	0/5 V DC	DM lock signal
	11	MMOTON	O	0/24 V DC	MM: On/Off
	12	DMOTON	O	0/24 V DC	DM: On/Off
	13	MMOTCCW	O	0/5 V DC	MM rotation switch signal
	14	DMOTCCW	O	0/5 V DC	DM rotation switch signal
	15	MMOTCLK	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	MM clock signal
	16	DMOTCLK	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	DM clock signal
	17	+24VSL	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to PFM
	18	+24VSL	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to PFM
	19	GND	-	-	Ground
	20	GND	-	-	Ground
	21	SMOTLOCK	I	0/5 V DC	PFM lock signal
	22	SMOTON	O	0/24 V DC	PFM: On/Off
	23	SMOTCCW	O	0/5 V DC	PFM rotation switch signal
	24	SMOTCLK	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	PFM clock signal
	25	+24VSL	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to DH
	26	DHEATREM	O	0/24 V DC	DH: On/Off
YC11 Connected to the feed-shift solenoid	1	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to FSSOL
	2	DFSOLDR	O	0/24 V DC	FSSOL (activate): On/Off
	3	DFSOLRS	O	0/24 V DC	FSSOL (return): On/Off
YC12 Connected to the high voltage PWB	1	+24VIL2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to HVTPWB
	2	DHVSURUP	O	0/5 V DC	Developing slowup signal
	3	DHVCLKC	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Developing bias clock signal
	4	SHVDRN	O	0/5 V DC	Separation high voltage: On/Off
	5	MHVDRN	O	0/5 V DC	Main charging high voltage: On/Off
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
	8	DHVADJC	O	Analog	Developing bias adjust signal
	9	SHVISELN	O	0/5 V DC	Separation high voltage switch signal
	10	THVADJC	O	Analog	Transfer high voltage adjust signal
	11	THVDRN	O	0/5 V DC	Transfer high voltage: On/Off
	12	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to HVTPWB

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC13 Connected to the cooling fan motor 2	1	FAN2POW	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to CFM2
	2	FAN2DRN	O	0/24 V DC	CFM2: On/Off
YC14 Connected to the eject motor	1	COMDA	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	EM drive control signal (A)
	2	COMDNB	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	EM drive control signal (_B)
	3	COMDNA	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	EM drive control signal (_A)
	4	COMDB	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	EM drive control signal (B)
YC15 Connected to the cooling fan motor 8 and scanner motor	1	ISNDA	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	SM drive control signal (A)
	2	ISMDNB	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	SM drive control signal (_B)
	3	ISMDNA	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	SM drive control signal (_A)
	4	ISMDB	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	SM drive control signal (B)
	5	+24VSL	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to CFM8
	6	SCAN_FAN	O	0/5 V DC	CFM8: On/Off
YC16 Connected to the scanner inverter PWB	1	LAMPN	O	0/24 V DC	EL: On/Off
	2	PGND	-	-	Ground
	3	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to SINPWB
	4	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to SINPWB
	5	PGND	-	-	Ground
	6	LAMPN	O	0/24 V DC	EL: On/Off
YC17 Connected to the scanner home position switch, original detection switch and original size detection sensor	1	+5VSL	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to SHPSW
	2	HPSWN	I	0/5 V DC	SHPSW: On/Off
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	+5VSL	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to ODSW
	5	OPSWN	I	0/5 V DC	ODSW: On/Off
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	+5VSL	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to OSDS
	8	ORGLSWN	I	0/5 V DC	OSDS: On/Off
	9	GND	-	-	Ground
YC18 Connected to the power source PWB	1	+5VSL	I	5 V DC	5 V DC input from PSPWB
	2	+24VSL	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power input from PSPWB
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	+24VIL1_IN	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power input from SSW1
	5	+24VIL1_OUT	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to SSW2
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	+24VIL2	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power input from SSW2
YC19 Connected to the power source PWB	1	SLEEPN	I	0/5 V DC	Sleep signal: On/Off
	2	ZCROSSC	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Zero-cross signal
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	FAN3DRN	O	0/24 V DC	CFM3: On/Off
	5	SHEATN	O	0/5 V DC	FH-S: On/Off
	6	MHEATN	O	0/5 V DC	FH-M: On/Off

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC20 Connected to the key counter	1	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to key counter
	2	KEYCN	O	0/5 V DC	Key counter signal
	3	SGND	-	-	Ground
	4	KEYENBN	I	0/5 V DC	Key counter connection signal
YC22 Connected to the upper/lower paper size length switches, optional paper feeder and MP feed switch	1	+24VIL2PF2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to PWSW-L
	2	+24VIL2PF1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to PWSW-U
	3	+24VIL2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to PWSW-L
	4	+24VIL2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to PWSW-U
	5	LODIG1	I	0/5 V DC	PWSW-L: On/Off
	6	HIDIG1	I	0/5 V DC	PWSW-U: On/Off
	7	LODIG0	I	0/5 V DC	PWSW-L: On/Off
	8	HIDIG0	I	0/5 V DC	PWSW-U: On/Off
	9	GND	-	-	Ground
	10	GND	-	-	Ground
	11	LODIG2	I	0/5 V DC	PWSW-L: On/Off
	12	HIDIG2	I	0/5 V DC	PWSW-U: On/Off
	13	GND	-	-	Ground
	14	+5VSL	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to paper feeder
	15	PFSEL	O	0/5 V DC	Paper feeder select signal
	16	PFCLK	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Paper feeder clock signal
	17	PFSDI	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Paper feeder serial communication data signal
	18	PFSDO	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Paper feeder serial communication data signal
	19	PFREADY	I	0/5 V DC	Paper feeder ready signal
	20	PFSEED	O	0/5 V DC	Paper feeder feed signal
	21	GND	-	-	Ground
	22	BYPFEEDSW	I	0/5 V DC	MPFSW: On/Off
	23	+5VSL	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to MPFSW
	24	N.C.	-	-	Not used
YC23 Connected to the upper/lower lift limit switches, upper/lower paper switches, upper/lower lift motors and upper/lower paper size length switches	A1	GND	-	-	Ground
	A2	LOLIFTSW	I	0/5 V DC	LICSW-L: On/Off
	A3	+5VSL	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to LICSW-L
	A4	GND	-	-	Ground
	A5	LOPAPSW	I	0/5 V DC	PSW-L: On/Off
	A6	+5VSL	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to PSW-L
	A7	LOLIFTSW2	I	0/5 V DC	LM-L paper gauge signal
	A8	GND	-	-	Ground
	A9	LOLIFTSW1	I	0/5 V DC	LM-L paper gauge signal
	A10	GND	-	-	Ground
	A11	LOLIFTREM	O	0/24 V DC	LM-L: On/Off
	A12	LOLENGSW	I	0/5 V DC	PLSW-L: On/Off
	A13	GND	-	-	Ground
	B1	GND	-	-	Ground
	B2	HILENGSW	I	0/5 V DC	PLSW-U: On/Off

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC23 Connected to the upper/lower lift limit switches, upper/lower paper switches, upper/lower lift motors and upper/lower paper size length switches	B3	HILIFTSW2	I	0/5 V DC	LM-U paper gauge signal
	B4	GND	-	-	Ground
	B5	HILIFTSW1	I	0/5 V DC	LM-U paper gauge signal
	B6	GND	-	-	Ground
	B7	HILIFTREM	O	0/24 V DC	LM-U: On/Off
	B8	GND	-	-	Ground
	B9	HILIFTSW	I	0/5 V DC	LICSW-U: On/Off
	B10	+5VSL	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to LICSW-U
	B11	GND	-	-	Ground
	B12	HIPAPSW	I	0/5 V DC	PSW-U: On/Off
	B13	+5VSL	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to PSW-U
YC24 Connected to the optional DP	1	GND	-	-	Ground
	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	ORGVSYNC	I	0/5 V DC	Original scanning interval signal
	6	DP_RDY	I	0/5 V DC	DP ready signal
	7	DP_SEL	O	0/5 V DC	DP select signal
	8	SCLK	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	DP clock signal
	9	SDO	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	DP serial communication data signal
	10	SDI	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	DP serial communication data signal
YC25 Connected to the power source PWB	1	N.C.	-	-	Not used
	2	N.C.	-	-	Not used
	3	N.C.	-	-	Not used
	4	+24VIL	I	24V DC	24 V DC power input from PSPWB
YC26 Connected to the main PWB	A1	+5V1	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to MPWB
	A2	GND	-	-	Ground
	A3	AFESEL	O	0/3.3 V DC	Select signal
	A4	AFERDY	I	0/3.3 V DC	Ready signal
	A5	AFESI	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
	A6	AFESCLKN	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Clock signal
	A7	AFESDO	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
	A8	E2CSDIR	O	0/3.3 V DC	E2CSDIR signal
	A9	E2CSBSY	O	0/3.3 V DC	E2CSBSY signal
	A10	E2CEGSI	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
	A11	E2CSCKN	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Clock signal
	A12	E2CEGSO	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
	A13	SLEEP	I	0/3.3 V DC	Sleep signal: On/Off
	A14	24VDN	O	0/3.3 V DC	24 V DC power shut-off signal
	A15	OPSWN	-	-	Not used
	B1	OVSUNC	O	0/3.3 V DC	Original scanning interval signal
	B2	SCANHLDN	I	0/3.3 V DC	Scanner hold signal
	B3	EGSCANRDY	I	0/3.3 V DC	Printing image interval signal

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC26 Connected to the main PWB	B4	GND	-	-	Ground
	B5	OUTPEN	O	0/3.3 V DC	Laser diode output signal
	B6	GND	-	-	Ground
	B7	E2CEGIRN	O	0/3.3 V DC	E2CEGIRN signal
	B8	GND	-	-	Ground
	B9	EGHLDN	I	0/3.3 V DC	Engine hold signal
	B10	GND	-	-	Ground
	B11	EGRESETN	I	0/3.3 V DC	Reset signal
	B12	GND	-	-	Ground
	B13	PDMASKN	O	0/3.3 V DC	Auxiliary scanning interval signal
	B14	GND	-	-	Ground
	B15	+3.3V_EGN	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to MPWB
YC31 Connected to the optional DP	1	+24VSL	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to DP
	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	+5VSL	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to DP
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
YC32 Connected to the temperature sensor	1	+5VSL	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to TEMS
	2	HUMIDA	I	Analog	TEMS detection voltage signal
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	TEMPA	I	Analog	TEMS detection voltage signal

2-3-3 Main PWB

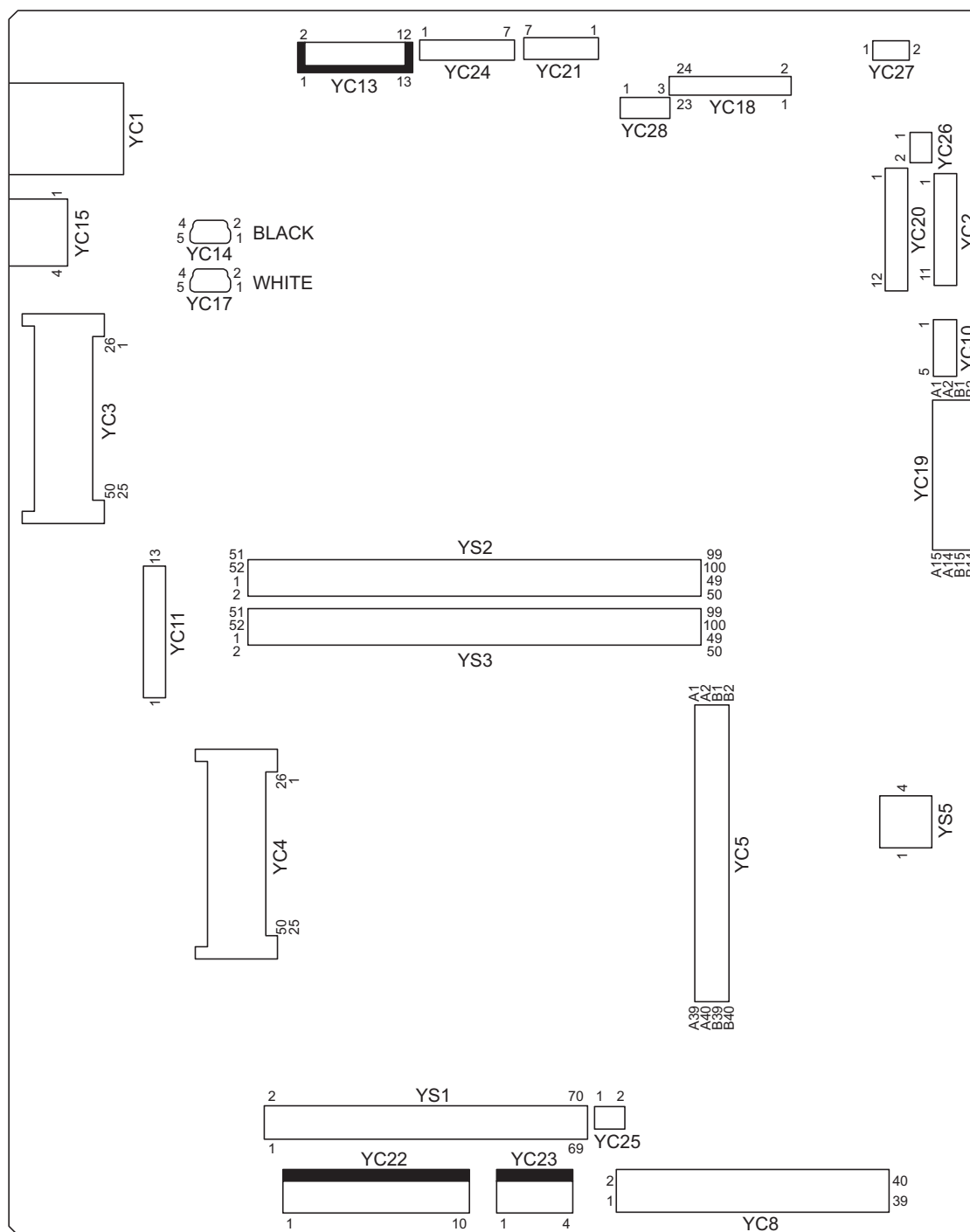


Figure 2-3-3 Main PWB silk-screen diagram

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC13 Connected to the main operation unit PWB	1	FPSTAT	O	0/3.3 V DC	Operation panel status signal
	2	LED_PANEL1	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel Indicator LED drive signal 1
	3	LED_PANEL0	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel Indicator LED drive signal 0
	4	RST_PANELN	O	0/3.3 V DC	OPWB-M reset signal
	5	HLD_PANEL	O	0/3.3 V DC	Operation panel displaying enable signal
	6	SW_FOOTN	-	-	Not used
	7	24V_DOWN	O	0/3.3 V DC	24 V DC power shut-off signal
	8	SPEND_ENTR	O	0/3.3 V DC	Energy save mode control signal
	9	AUDIO_KUIO	O	Analog	Audio output signal
	10	SGND	-	-	Ground
	11	PH_KEY	I	0/5 V DC	Power key: On/Off
	12	SGND	-	-	Ground
	13	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to OPWB-M
YC14 Connected to the main operation unit PWB	1	VBUS	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	2	DATA-	I/O	-	USB data signal
	3	DATA+	I/O	-	USB data signal
	4	N.C.	-	-	Not used
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
YC17 Connected to the USB slot	1	VBUS	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	2	DATA-	I/O	-	USB data signal
	3	DATA+	I/O	-	USB data signal
	4	N.C.	-	-	Not used
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
YC18 Connected to the CCD PWB	1	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to CCDPWB
	2	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to CCDPWB
	3	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to CCDPWB
	4	CCDB	I	Analog	CCD output signal
	5	CCDBN	-	-	Ground
	6	CCDG	I	Analog	CCD output signal
	7	CCDGN	-	-	Ground
	8	CCDR	I	Analog	CCD output signal
	9	CCDRN	-	-	Ground
	10	GND	-	-	Ground
	11	GND	-	-	Ground
	12	SHBW	O	0/3.3 V DC	B/W shift signal
	13	GND	-	-	Ground
	14	SHRGW	O	0/3.3 V DC	Color shift signal
	15	GND	-	-	Ground
	16	SW	O	0/3.3 V DC	Color/B/W switch signal
	17	GND	-	-	Ground
	18	RSN	O	0/3.3 V DC	CCD control signal
	19	GND	-	-	Ground
	20	CCDCLKN	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	CCD clock signal

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC18 Connected to the CCD PWB	21	GND	-	-	Ground
	22	CPN	O	0/3.3 V DC	CCD control signal
	23	N.C.	-	-	Not used
	24	10V	O	10 V DC	10 V DC power output to CCDPWB
YC19 Connected to the engine PWB	A1	+5V1	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power input from EPWB
	A2	GND	-	-	Ground
	A3	AFESEL	I	0/3.3 V DC	Select signal
	A4	AFERDY	O	0/3.3 V DC	Ready signal
	A5	AFESI	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
	A6	AFESCLKN	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Clock signal
	A7	AFESDO	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
	A8	E2CSDIR	I	0/3.3 V DC	E2CSDIR signal
	A9	E2CSBSY	I	0/3.3 V DC	E2CSBSY signal
	A10	E2CEGSI	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
	A11	E2CSCKN	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Clock signal
	A12	E2CEGSO	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
	A13	SLEEP	O	0/3.3 V DC	Sleep signal: On/Off
	A14	24VDN	I	0/3.3 V DC	24 V DC power shut-off signal
	A15	OPSWN	-	-	Not used
	B1	OVSYNC	I	0/3.3 V DC	Original scanning interval signal
	B2	SCANHLDN	O	0/3.3 V DC	Scanner hold signal
	B3	EGSCANRDY	O	0/3.3 V DC	Printing image interval signal
	B4	GND	-	-	Ground
	B5	OUTPEN	I	0/3.3 V DC	Laser diode output signal
	B6	GND	-	-	Ground
	B7	E2CEGIRN	I	0/3.3 V DC	E2CEGIRN signal
	B8	GND	-	-	Ground
	B9	EGHLDN	O	0/3.3 V DC	Engine hold signal
	B10	GND	-	-	Ground
	B11	EGRESETN	O	0/3.3 V DC	Reset signal
	B12	GND	-	-	Ground
	B13	PDMASKN	I	0/3.3 V DC	Auxiliary scanning interval signal
	B14	GND	-	-	Ground
	B15	+3.3V_EGN	I	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power input from EPWB
YC21 Connected to the LSU	1	PDN	I	0/3.3 V DC	Laser sync signal
	2	SGND	-	-	Ground
	3	OUTPEN	O	0/3.3 V DC	Laser diode output signal
	4	SAMPLEN	O	0/3.3 V DC	Sample hold signal
	5	VDOP	O	-	Image data signal
	6	VDON	O	-	Image data signal
	7	+5V1	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to APCPWB

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC22 Connected to the power source PWB	1	+5V	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power input from PSPWB
	2	+5V	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power input from PSPWB
	3	+5VSL	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power input from PSPWB
	4	+12VSL	I	12 V DC	12 V DC power input from PSPWB
	5	+24VSL	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power input from PSPWB
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
	9	GND	-	-	Ground
	10	GND	-	-	Ground
YC23 Connected to the hard disk	1	+12VSL	O	12 V DC	12 V DC power output to HDD
	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	+5VSL	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to HDD
YC24 Connected to the main operation unit PWB	1	+12VSL	O	12 V DC	12 V DC power output to OPWB-M
	2	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to OPWB-M
	3	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to OPWB-M
	4	PGND	-	-	Ground
	5	SGND	-	-	Ground
	6	SGND	-	-	Ground
	7	N.C.	-	-	Not used
YC26 Connected to the cooling fan motor 6	1	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to CFM6
	2	CTL_FAN	O	0/5 V DC	CFM6: On/Off
YC27 Connected to the power source PWB	1	GND	-	-	Ground
	2	+5VSL	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power input from PSPWB

TONER

www.tonerplus.com.ua

2-3-4 Main operation unit PWB

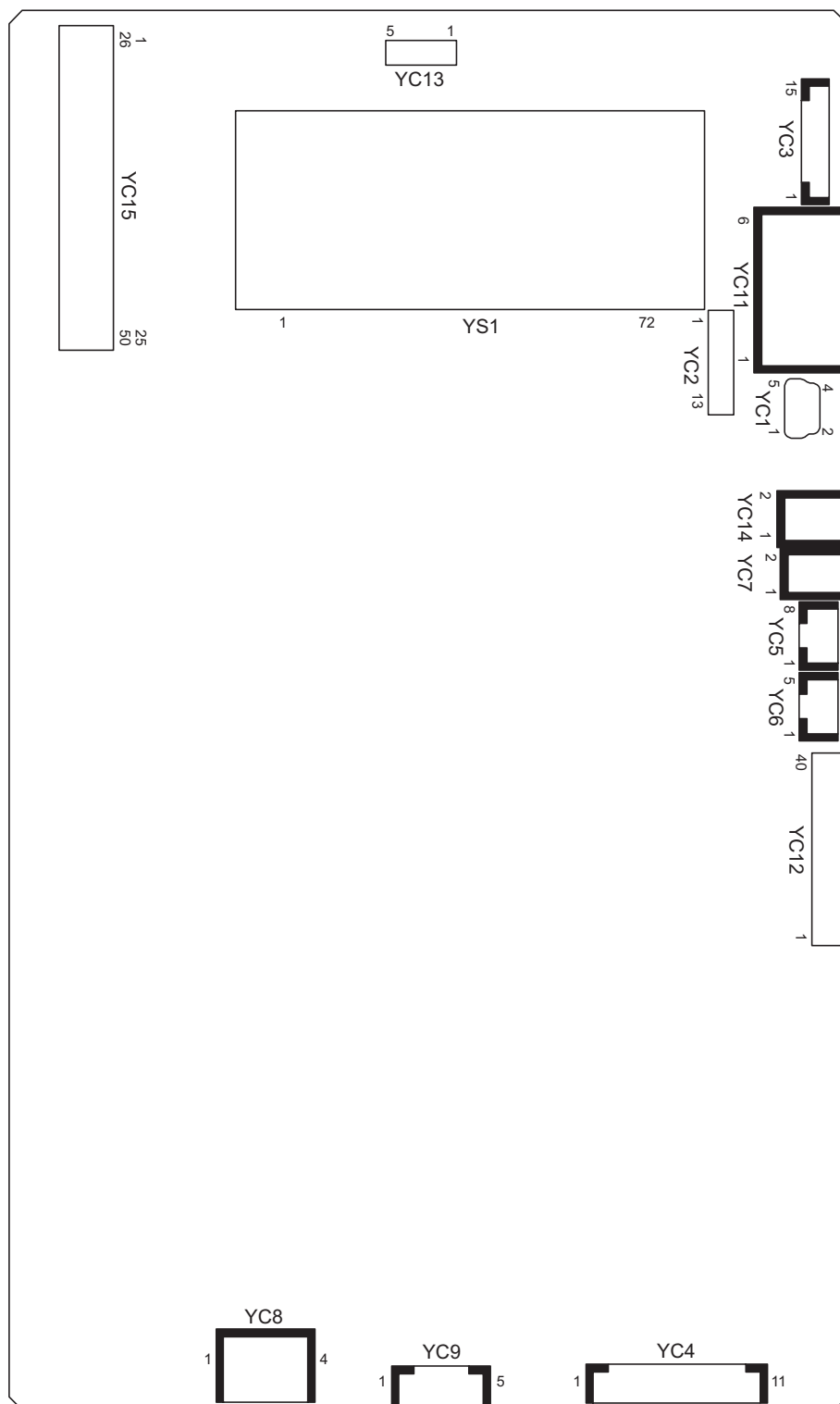


Figure 2-3-4 Main operation unit PWB silk-screen diagram

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC1 Connected to the main PWB	1	VBUS	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power input
	2	DATA-	I/O	-	USB data signal
	3	DATA+	I/O	-	USB data signal
	4	N.C.	-	-	N.C.
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
YC2 Connected to the main PWB	1	+5V	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power input from MPWB
	2	SGND	-	-	Ground
	3	PH_KEY	O	0/5 V DC	Power key: On/Off
	4	SGND	-	-	Ground
	5	AUDIO_KUIO	I	Analog	Audio output signal
	6	SPEND_ENTR	I	0/3.3 V DC	Energy save mode control signal
	7	24V_DOWN	I	0/3.3 V DC	24 V DC power shut-off signal
	8	SW_FOOTN	-	-	Not used
	9	HLD_PANEL	I	0/3.3 V DC	Operation panel displaying enable signal
	10	RST_PANELN	I	0/3.3 V DC	OPWB-M reset signal
	11	LED_PANEL0	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel Indicator LED drive signal 0
	12	LED_PANEL1	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel Indicator LED drive signal 1
	13	FPSTAT	I	0/3.3 V DC	Operation panel status signal
YC3 Connected to the right operation unit PWB	1	KEY0	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal 0
	2	KEY1	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal 1
	3	KEY2	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal 2
	4	KEY3	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal 3
	5	KEY4	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal 4
	6	SCAN0	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 0
	7	SCAN1	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 1
	8	SCAN2	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 2
	9	SCAN3	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 3
	10	SCAN6	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 6
	11	LED0	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel Indicator LED drive signal 0
	12	LED1	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel Indicator LED drive signal 1
	13	Wake Up	I	0/5 V DC	Power key: On/Off
	14	5V_MSWON	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to OPWB-R
	15	SGND	-	-	Ground
YC4 Connected to the left operation unit PWB	1	KEY5	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal 5
	2	KEY6	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal 6
	3	KEY7	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal 7
	4	SCAN0	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 0
	5	SCAN1	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 1
	6	SCAN2	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 2
	7	SCAN3	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 3
	8	LED2	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel Indicator LED drive signal 2
	9	LED3	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel Indicator LED drive signal 3
	10	LED4	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel Indicator LED drive signal 4
	11	SGND	-	-	Ground

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC5 Connected to the upper operation unit PWB	1	SCAN4	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 4
	2	SCAN5	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 5
	3	LED5	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel Indicator LED drive signal 5
	4	LED6	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel Indicator LED drive signal 6
	5	LED7	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel Indicator LED drive signal 7
	6	S_LED0	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel Indicator LED drive signal 0
	7	S_LED1	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel Indicator LED drive signal 1
	8	SGND	-	-	Ground
YC6 Connected to the front operation unit PWB	1	SCAN5	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 5
	2	LED5	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel Indicator LED drive signal 5
	3	LED6	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel Indicator LED drive signal 6
	4	S_LED1	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel Indicator LED drive signal 1
	5	SGND	-	-	Ground
YC7 Connected to the speaker	1	VO2(+)	O	Analog	Speaker sound signal (+)
	2	VO1(-)	O	Analog	Speaker sound signal (-)
YC8 Connected to the touch panel	1	TOP	I	Analog	Touch panel X+ position signal
	2	LEFT	I	Analog	Touch panel Y+ position signal
	3	BOTTOM	I	Analog	Touch panel X- position signal
	4	RIGHT	I	Analog	Touch panel Y- position signal
YC11 Connected to the main PWB	1	SGND	-	-	Ground
	2	SGND	-	-	Ground
	3	PGND	-	-	Ground
	4	+5V	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power input from MPWB
	5	+5V	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power input from MPWB
	6	+12VSL	I	12 V DC	12 V DC power input from MPWB
YC12 Connected to the LCD	1	SGND	-	-	Ground
	2	SGND	-	-	Ground
	3	B5	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal B5
	4	B4	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal B4
	5	B3	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal B3
	6	SGND	-	-	Ground
	7	B2	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal B2
	8	B1	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal B1
	9	B0	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal B0
	10	SGND	-	-	Ground
	11	G5	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal G5
	12	G4	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal G4
	13	G3	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal G3
	14	SGND	-	-	Ground
	15	G2	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal G2
	16	G1	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal G1
	17	G0	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal G0

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC12 Connected to the LCD	18	SGND	-	-	Ground
	19	R5	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal R5
	20	R4	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal R4
	21	R3	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal R3
	22	SGND	-	-	Ground
	23	R2	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal R2
	24	R1	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal R1
	25	R0	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal R0
	26	SGND	-	-	Ground
	27	DE	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal DE
	28	SGND	-	-	Ground
	29	L_R	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to LCD
	30	U_D	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to LCD
	31	SGND	-	-	Ground
	32	DCLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	LCD clock signal
	33	N.C.	-	-	Not used
	34	SGND	-	-	Ground
	35	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to LCD
	36	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to LCD
	37	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to LCD
	38	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to LCD
	39	SGND	-	-	Ground
	40	SGND	-	-	Ground
YC13 Connected to the LCD inverter PWB	1	PGND	-	-	Ground
	2	12V	O	12 V DC	12 V DC power output to LINPWB
	3	BK_ON	O	0/5 V DC	LCD back light: On/Off
	4	ADJUST	O	Analog	LCD back light brightness adjustment signal
	5	SGND	-	-	Ground
YC14 Connected to the cooling fan motor 7	1	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output to CFM7
	2	FAN_REM	O	0/5 V DC	CFM7: On/Off

Maintenance parts list

Maintenance part name		Part No.	Alternative part	Fig. No.	Ref. No.
Name used in service manual	Name used in parts list				
Upper/lower paper feed pulley	PULLEY,PAPER FEED	2AR07220	-	5	2
Upper/lower separation pulley	PULLEY,SEPARATION	2AR07230	-	5	3
Upper/lower forwarding pulley	PULLEY FEED A	2BJ06010	-	5	7
MP paper feed pulley	UPPER PULLEY,BYPASS	61706770	-	6	55
MP separation pulley	PULLEY,SEPARATION	2AR07230	-	6	2
MP forwarding pulley	PULLEY FEED A	2BJ06010	-	6	7
MP feed roller 1	PARTS ROLLER MPF FEED A SP	302H094110	2H094110	7	21
MP feed roller 2	PARTS ROLLER MPF FEED B SP	302H094120	2H094120	7	22
MP feed pulley	PULLEY 15 MPF FEED	302H008220	2H008220	7	14
Left registration roller	PARTS ROLLER REGIST LEFT SP	302H094140	2H094140	9	29
Right registration roller	ROLLER REGIST RIGHT	302H024020	2H024020	9	40
Feed pulley	PULLEY 15 DUPLEX	3HY07120	-	4	32
Feed pulley	PULLEY 15 DUPLEX	3HY07120	-	9	30
Feed roller 1	PARTS PULLEY MID FEED ASSY SP	302H094430	2H094430	8	A02
Feed roller 2	PARTS ROLLER VERTICAL FEED A SP	302H094090	2H094090	4	22
Feed roller 3	PARTS ROLLER VERTICAL FEED B SP	302H094100	2H094100	4	23
Registration cleaner	SPONGE CLEANER REG	302H024240	2H024240	8	19
Laser scanner unit	PARTS LK-670	302H093060	2H093060	11	12
Platen	CONTACT GLASS	2C912250	-	11	6
Slit glass	CONTACT GLASS DP	302H017220	2H017220	11	1
Mirror 1	MIRROR A	302H017150	2H017150	10	46
Mirror 2 and mirror 3	MIRROR B	2AV12160	-	10	2
Reflector	REFLECTOR SCANNER	302H017100	2H017100	10	41
Exposure lamp	PARTS LAMP SCANNER W SP	302H094130	2H094130	10	42
Original size detection switch	SENSOR ORIGINAL	2C927090	-	10	32
Transfer roller unit	PARTS TR-670	302H093050	2H093050	9	A02
Separation electrode	PLATE STA ELIMINATION	2FT17030	-	9	8
Developing unit	PARTS,DV-420,SP	302FT93052	2FT93052	13	1
Drum unit	PARTS DK-670	302H093010	2H093010	12	A01
Main charger unit	PARTS,MC-420,SP	302FT93083	2FT93083	12	A02
Fuser unit	PARTS FK-670(E)	302H093040	2H093040	14	A01
Fuser unit	PARTS FK-670(U)	302H093030	2H093030	14	A01
Heat roller	PARTS ROLLER HEAT SP	302H094160	2H094160	14	30
Press roller	ROLLER PRESS	302H025270	2H025270	14	28
Heat roller separation claw	SEPARATOR ASSY B	302FT20160	2FT20160	14	11
Eject roller	PARTS ROLLER EXIT INNER SP	302H094370	2H094370	20	35
Switchback roller	PARTS ROLLER EXIT FEED SP	302H094360	2H094360	20	34
Eject pulley	PULLEY EXIT B	2BL21450	-	20	1
Feed pulley	PULLEY EXIT FEED	302H028230	2H028230	20	25
Upper duplex feed roller	PARTS DUPLEX A SP	302H094380	2H094380	18	16
Lower duplex feed roller	PARTS DUPLEX B SP	302H094390	2H094390	18	17
Duplex feed pulley	PULLEY 15 DUPLEX	3HY07120	-	18	18

Maintenance part name		Part No.	Alternative part	Fig. No.	Ref. No.
Name used in service manual	Name used in parts list				
Right filter	PARTS HOLDER FILTER A SP	302H094400	2H094400	17	A01
Ozone filter 1	FILTER OZONE B	302H033180	2H033180	1	42
Ozone filter 2	FILTER OZONE A	302H033170	2H033170	19	38
Power source PWB	PARTS LVU 100	302H093280	2H093280	21	54
Power source PWB	PARTS LVU 200	302H093290	2H093290	21	54
Main PWB	PARTS,PWB MAIN ASS'Y,SP	302H094010	2H094010	21	44

Maintenance kits

Maintenance part name		Part No.	Alternative part No.	Fig. No.	Ref. No.
Name used in service manual	Name used in parts list				
Maintenance kit					
<For 120 V specifications>	MK-670/MAINTENANCE KIT	1702H07US0	072H07US	27	-
Upper/lower paper feed pulley	PULLEY,PAPER FEED	-	-	-	-
Upper/lower separation pulley	PULLEY,SEPARATION	-	-	-	-
MP separation pulley	PULLEY,SEPARATION	-	-	-	-
Upper/lower forwarding pulley	PULLEY FEED A	-	-	-	-
MP forwarding pulley	PULLEY FEED A	-	-	-	-
Developing unit	PARTS,DV-420,SP	-	-	-	-
Ozone filter 1	FILTER OZONE B	-	-	-	-
Ozone filter 2	FILTER OZONE A	-	-	-	-
Drum unit	PARTS DK-670	-	-	-	-
Fuser unit	PARTS FK-670(U)	-	-	-	-
Transfer roller unit	PARTS TR-670	-	-	-	-
Right filter	PARTS HOLDER FILTER A SP	-	-	-	-
MP paper feed pulley	UPPER PULLEY,BYPASS	-	-	-	-
<For 220 - 240 V specifications>	MK-670/MAINTENANCE KIT	1702H08NL0	072H08NL	27	-
Upper/lower paper feed pulley	PULLEY,PAPER FEED	-	-	-	-
Upper/lower separation pulley	PULLEY,SEPARATION	-	-	-	-
MP separation pulley	PULLEY,SEPARATION	-	-	-	-
Upper/lower forwarding pulley	PULLEY FEED A	-	-	-	-
MP forwarding pulley	PULLEY FEED A	-	-	-	-
Developing unit	PARTS,DV-420,SP	-	-	-	-
Ozone filter 1	FILTER OZONE B	-	-	-	-
Ozone filter 2	FILTER OZONE A	-	-	-	-
Drum unit	PARTS DK-670	-	-	-	-
Fuser unit	PARTS FK-670(E)	-	-	-	-
Transfer roller unit	PARTS TR-670	-	-	-	-
Right filter	PARTS HOLDER FILTER A SP	-	-	-	-
MP paper feed pulley	UPPER PULLEY,BYPASS	-	-	-	-

Periodic maintenance procedures

Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Test copy and test print	Perform at the maximum copy size	Test copy	Every service		



Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Paper feed section	Upper/lower paper feed pulley	Replace	300K	Replace. (Check and clean with alcohol when user call occurs.)	P.1-5-3
	Upper/lower separation pulley	Replace	300K	Replace. (Check and clean with alcohol when user call occurs.)	P.1-5-3
	Upper/lower forwarding pulley	Replace	300K	Replace. (Check and clean with alcohol when user call occurs.)	P.1-5-3
	MP paper feed pulley	Replace	300K	Replace. (Check and clean with alcohol when user call occurs.)	P.1-5-6
	MP separation pulley	Replace	300K	Replace. (Check and clean with alcohol when user call occurs.)	P.1-5-6
	MP forwarding pulley	Replace	300K	Replace. (Check and clean with alcohol when user call occurs.)	P.1-5-6
	MP feed roller 1	Clean	300K	Clean with alcohol. (Check and clean with alcohol when user call occurs.)	
	MP feed roller 2	Clean	300K	Clean with alcohol. (Check and clean with alcohol when user call occurs.)	
	MP feed pulley	Clean	300K	Clean with alcohol. (Check and clean with alcohol when user call occurs.)	
	Left registration roller	Clean	300K	Clean with alcohol. (Check and clean with alcohol when user call occurs.)	
	Right registration roller	Clean	300K	Clean with alcohol. (Check and clean with alcohol when user call occurs.)	
	Feed pulley	Clean	300K	Clean with alcohol. (Check and clean with alcohol when user call occurs.)	
	Feed roller 1	Clean	300K	Clean with alcohol. (Check and clean with alcohol when user call occurs.)	
	Feed roller 2	Clean	300K	Clean with alcohol. (Check and clean with alcohol when user call occurs.)	
	Feed roller 3	Clean	300K	Clean with alcohol. (Check and clean with alcohol when user call occurs.)	
	Registration cleaner	Clean	Every service	Vacuum.	



Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Optical section	Laser scanner unit	Clean	Every service	Clean the slit glass with a dry cloth.	P.1-5-30
	Platen	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol and then a dry cloth.	
	Slit glass	Clean	Every service	Clean with a dry cloth or alcohol (do not clean with a wet cloth).	
	Mirror 1	Clean	User call	Clean with a wet cloth and then a dry cloth only if vertical black lines appear on the copy image.	
	Mirror 2 and mirror 3	Clean	User call	Clean with a wet cloth and then a dry cloth only if vertical black lines appear on the copy image.	
	Lens	Clean	User call	Clean with a dry cloth only if vertical black lines appear on the copy image.	P.1-5-15
	Reflector	Clean	User call	Clean with a dry cloth only if vertical black lines appear on the copy image.	
	Exposure lamp	Check or replace	User call	Replace if an image problem occurs.	
	Optical rail	Check or Grease	User call	Check noise and shifting and then apply scanner rail grease EM-50L.	
	Original size detection sensor	Check or clean	User call	Clean the sensor emitter and sensor receiver with alcohol or a dry cloth only if there is a problem.	



Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Transfer/separation section	Transfer roller unit	Replace	300K	Replace. (Vacuum or clean with a dry cloth when user call occurs.)	P.1-5-40
	Separation electrode	Check or clean	Every service	Clean with a cleaning brush.	



Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Developing section	Developing unit	Replace	300K	Replace. (Check and replace when user call occurs.)	P.1-5-39



Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Main charging/drum section	Drum unit	Replace	300K	Replace. (Check and replace when user call occurs.)	P.1-5-35
	Main charger unit	Clean	User call	Clean with a wet cloth and then a dry cloth.	P.1-5-37



Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Fuser section	Fuser unit	Replace	300K	Replace. (Check and replace when user call occurs.)	P.1-5-41
	Heat roller	Check or replace	User call	Replace when problem occurs.	P.1-5-49
	Press roller	Check or replace	User call	Replace when problem occurs.	P.1-5-45
	Heat roller separation claw	Check, clean or replace	User call	Check and clean with alcohol. Replace if claw is deformed.	P.1-5-44



Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Eject section	Eject roller	Check or clean	User call	Check and clean with alcohol.	
	Switchback roller	Check or clean	User call	Check and clean with alcohol.	
	Eject pulley	Check or clean	User call	Check and clean with alcohol.	
	Feed pulley	Check or clean	User call	Check and clean with alcohol.	



Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Duplex section	Upper duplex feed roller	Clean	300K	Clean with alcohol. (Check and clean with alcohol when user call occurs.)	
	Lower duplex feed roller	Clean	300K	Clean with alcohol. (Check and clean with alcohol when user call occurs.)	
	Duplex feed pulley	Clean	300K	Clean with alcohol. (Check and clean with alcohol when user call occurs.)	



Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Covers	Covers	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	P.1-5-57
	Right filter	Check or clean	Every service	Vacuum.	
	Ozone filter 1	Replace	300K	Replace. (Check and vacuum when user call occurs.)	
	Ozone filter 2	Replace	300K	Replace. (Check and vacuum when user call occurs.)	

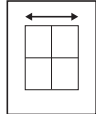
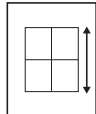
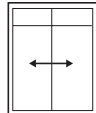
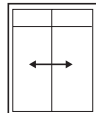
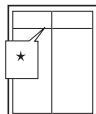
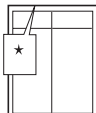
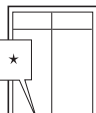
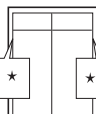
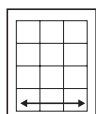
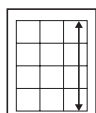


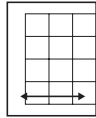
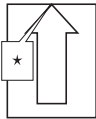
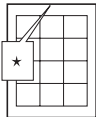
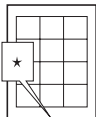
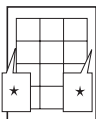
Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
PWBs	Power source PWB	Check or clean	Every service	Clean (do not vacuum).	
	Main PWB	Check or clean	Every service	Clean (do not vacuum).	



Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Other	Image quality	Check and adjust	Every service		

Chart of image adjustment procedures

Adjusting order	Item	Image	Description	Maintenance mode		Original	Page	Remarks
				Item No.	Mode			
1	Adjusting the magnification in the main scanning direction (printing adjustment)		Polygon motor speed adjustment	U053	POLYGON MOTOR	U053 test pattern	P.1-3-24	
2	Adjusting the magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction (printing adjustment)		Drive motor speed adjustment	U053	MAIN MOTOR	U053 test pattern	P.1-3-24	
3	Adjusting the center line (printing adjustment)		Adjusting the LSU print start timing	U034	LSU OUT LEFT	U034 test pattern	P.1-3-21	
4	Adjusting the center line of the cassettes and paper feeder (printing adjustment)		Adjusting the position of the rack adjuster	U034	LSU OUT LEFT	U034 test pattern	-	Adjusts the position of each paper source.
5	Adjusting the leading edge registration (printing adjustment)		Registration clutch turning on timing (secondary paper feed start timing)	U034	LSU OUT TOP	U034 test pattern	P.1-3-20	
6	Adjusting the leading edge margin (printing adjustment)		LSU illumination start timing	U402	LESD	U402 test pattern	P.1-3-64	
7	Adjusting the trailing edge margin (printing adjustment)		LSU illumination end timing	U402	TRAIL TRAIL(DUP) TRAIL(MP)	U402 test pattern	P.1-3-64	To make an adjustment for duplex copying, select TRAIL(DUP). To make an adjustment for MP tray, select TRAIL(MP).
8	Adjusting the left and right margins (printing adjustment)		LSU illumination start/end timing	U402	A C	U402 test pattern	P.1-3-64	
9	Adjusting magnification of the scanner in the main scanning direction (scanning adjustment)		Data processing	U065	MAIN SCAN ADJ	Test chart	P.1-3-27	
10	Adjusting magnification of the scanner in the auxiliary scanning direction (scanning adjustment)		Original scanning speed	U065 U070	SUB SCAN ADJ MAIN ADJ/SUB ADJ	Test chart	P.1-3-27 P.1-3-31	U065: For copying an original placed on the platen. U070: For copying originals from the DP.

Adjusting order	Item	Image	Description	Maintenance mode		Original	Page	Remarks
				Item No.	Mode			
11	Adjusting the center line (scanning adjustment)		Adjusting the original scan data (image adjustment)	U067	ADJUST DATA1/2	Test chart	P.1-3-29	U067: For copying an original placed on the platen. U072: For copying originals from the DP.
				U072	ADJUST DATA1/2		P.1-3-34	
12	Adjusting the leading edge registration (scanning adjustment)		Original scan start timing (image adjustment)	U066	ADJUST DATA1/2	Test chart	P.1-3-28	U066: For copying an original placed on the platen. U071: For copying originals from the DP.
				U071	ADJUST DATA1/2/3/4		P.1-3-32	
13	Adjusting the leading edge margin (scanning adjustment)		Adjusting the original scan data (image adjustment)	U403	B MARGIN	Test chart	P.1-3-65	U403: For copying an original placed on the platen. U404: For copying originals from the DP.
				U404	B MARGIN/		P.1-3-66	
14	Adjusting the trailing edge margin (scanning adjustment)		Adjusting the original scan data (image adjustment)	U403	D MARGIN	Test chart	P.1-3-65	U403: For copying an original placed on the platen. U404: For copying originals from the DP.
				U404	D MARGIN/		P.1-3-66	
15	Adjusting the left and right margins (scanning adjustment)		Adjusting the original scan data (image adjustment)	U403	A MARGIN	Test chart	P.1-3-65	U403: For copying an original placed on the platen. U404: For copying originals from the DP.
				U404	C MARGIN A MARGIN/ C MARGIN/		P.1-3-66	

When maintenance item U411 (Adjusting the scanner automatically) is run using the specified original (P/N 302FZ56990), the following adjustments are automatically made:

Adjusting the scanner magnification (U065)
Adjusting the scanner leading edge registration (U066)
Adjusting the scanner center line (U067)

When maintenance item U411 (Adjusting the scanner automatically) is run using the specified original (P/N 2AC68241), the following adjustments are automatically made:

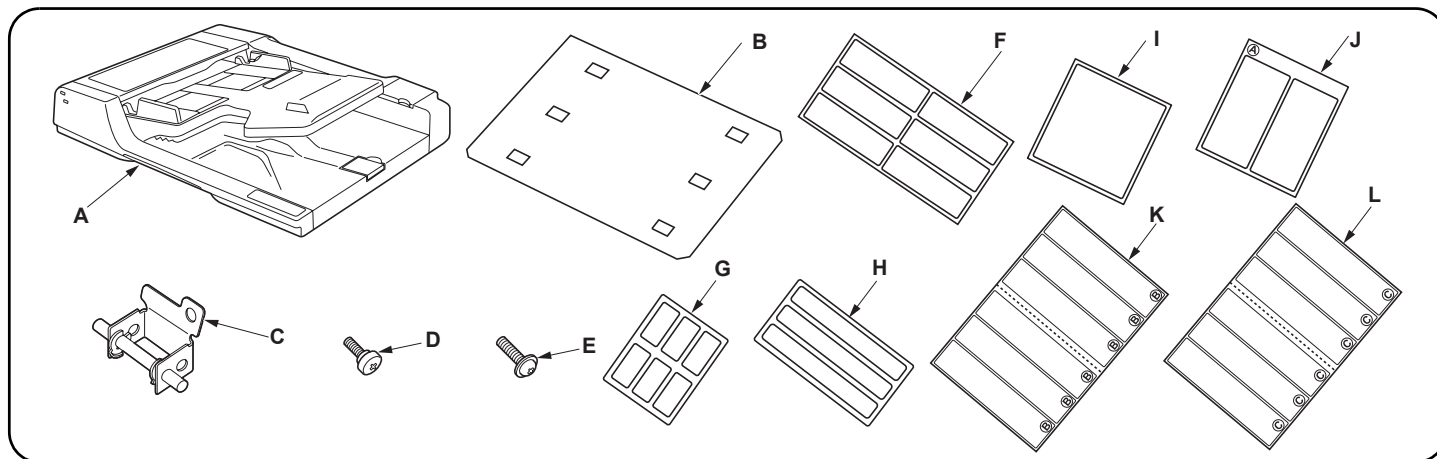
Adjusting the DP magnification (U070)
Adjusting the DP scanning timing (U071)
Adjusting the DP center line (U072)

Image quality

Item	Specifications
100% magnification	Machine: $\pm 0.8\%$ Using DP: $\pm 1.5\%$
Enlargement/reduction	Machine: $\pm 1.0\%$ Using DP: $\pm 1.5\%$
Lateral squareness	Machine: ± 1.5 mm/375 mm Using DP: ± 3.0 mm/375 mm
Leading edge registration	Cassette: ± 2.5 mm MP tray: ± 2.5 mm Duplex mode: ± 2.5 mm
Skewed paper feed	Cassette: 1.5 mm or less MP tray: 1.5 mm or less Duplex mode: 2.0 mm or less
Left-right difference	Cassette: 2.0 mm or less MP tray: 2.0 mm or less Duplex mode: 3.0 mm or less
Curling	Simplex mode: 10.0 mm or less Duplex mode: 10.0 mm or less

INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR DOCUMENT PROCESSOR

Output Connector for Interconnecting Cable is non-LPS.
Output: 357VA max.
Please use the item below Interconnecting Cable/
P/N: 303K546050



English

Supplied parts

A	Document processor (DP)	1
B	Original mat	1
C	Angle adjusting plate	1
D	Pin	2

E	M4 × 14 screw	5
F	Caution label [Do not leave documents at the device.] (except for 100 V specifications)	1
G	Caution label [Face Up] (except for 100 V specifications)	1
H	Label [Operation procedure] (Inch models)	1
I	Label [Operation procedure] (for 100 V specifications)	1

J	Label A [Operation procedure] (Metric models except for 100 V specifications)	1
K	Label B [Operation procedure] (Metric models except for 100 V specifications)	1
L	Label C [Operation procedure] (Metric models except for 100 V specifications)	1

Français

Pièces fournies

A	Chargeur de document (DP)	1
B	Tapis d'original	1
C	Plaque de réglage d'angle	1
D	Goupille	2

E	Vis M4 × 14	5
F	Étiquette de précautions [Veillez à ne pas laisser d'originaux dans le bac d'éjection.] (sauf pour les spécifications 100 V)	1
G	Étiquette de précautions [Face vers le Haut] (sauf pour les spécifications 100 V)	1
H	Étiquette [Procédure d'utilisation] (modèles en pouces)	1

I	Étiquette [Procédure d'utilisation] (pour les spécifications 100 V)	1
J	Étiquette A [Procédure d'utilisation] (modèles en mètres sauf pour les spécifications 100 V)	1
K	Étiquette B [Procédure d'utilisation] (modèles en mètres sauf pour les spécifications 100 V)	1
L	Étiquette C [Procédure d'utilisation] (modèles en mètres sauf pour les spécifications 100 V)	1

Español

Piezas suministradas

A	Procesador de documentos (DP)	1
B	Plancha de originales	1
C	Placa de ajuste de ángulo	1
D	Pasador	2

E	Tornillo M4 × 14	5
F	Etiqueta de precaución [No deje documentos en el equipo.] (excepto especificaciones de 100V)	1
G	Etiqueta de precaución [Cara Arriba] (excepto especificaciones de 100V)	1
H	Etiqueta [Procedimiento de funcionamiento] (modelos de pulgadas)	1
I	Etiqueta [Procedimiento de funcionamiento] (especificaciones de 100V)	1

J	Etiqueta A [Procedimiento de funcionamiento] (modelos métricos excepto especificaciones de 100V)	1
K	Etiqueta B [Procedimiento de funcionamiento] (modelos métricos excepto especificaciones de 100V)	1
L	Etiqueta C [Procedimiento de funcionamiento] (modelos métricos excepto especificaciones de 100V)	1

Deutsch

Gelieferte Teile

A	Vorlageneinzug (DP)	1
B	Originalmatte	1
C	Winkelstellhalter	1
D	Rändelschraube	2

E	M4 × 14 Schraube	5
F	Warnaufkleber [Lassen Sie keine Originale auf dem Gerät liegen.] (außer 100-V-Spezifikationen)	1
G	Warnaufkleber [Vorderseite Oben] (außer 100-V-Spezifikationen)	1
H	Aufkleber [Bedienungsverfahren] (Zoll-Modelle)	1
I	Aufkleber [Bedienungsverfahren] (für 100-V-Spezifikationen)	1

J	Aufkleber A [Bedienungsverfahren] (Metrische Modelle außer 100-V-Spezifikationen)	1
K	Aufkleber B [Bedienungsverfahren] (Metrische Modelle außer 100-V-Spezifikationen)	1
L	Aufkleber C [Bedienungsverfahren] (Metrische Modelle außer 100-V-Spezifikationen)	1

Italiano

Parti di fornitura

A	Alimentatore di originali (DP)	1
B	Coprioriginale	1
C	Piastra di regolazione dell'angolo	1
D	Perno	2

E	Vite M4 × 14	5
F	Etichetta di avvertenza [Non lasciare i documenti sul dispositivo.] (eccetto specifiche per 100 V)	1
G	Etichetta di avvertenza [Faccia Insù] (eccetto specifiche per 100 V)	1
H	Etichetta [Procedura di funzionamento] (modelli in pollici)	1
I	Etichetta [Procedura di funzionamento] (specifiche solo per 100 V)	1

J	Etichetta A [Procedura di funzionamento] (modelli con il sistema metrico eccetto specifiche per 100 V)	1
K	Etichetta B [Procedura di funzionamento] (modelli con il sistema metrico eccetto specifiche per 100 V)	1
L	Etichetta C [Procedura di funzionamento] (modelli con il sistema metrico eccetto specifiche per 100 V)	1

简体中文

同装品

A	送稿器 (DP)	1
B	原稿垫	1
C	调整板	1
D	卡销	2

E	螺丝 M4 × 14	5
F	原稿遗忘注意标签 (220V 规格产品除外)	1
G	原稿设置方向注意标签 (220V 规格产品除外)	1
H	操作标签 (只限英寸规格产品)	1
I	操作标签 (只限 220V 规格产品)	1

J	操作标签 A (只限 220V 规格产品除外的厘米规格产品)	1
K	操作标签 B (只限 220V 规格产品除外的厘米规格产品)	1
L	操作标签 C (只限 220V 规格产品除外的厘米规格产品)	1

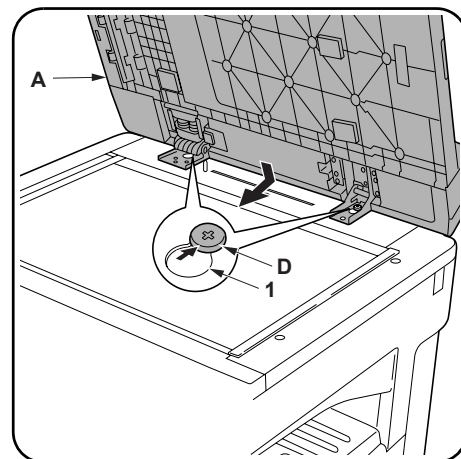
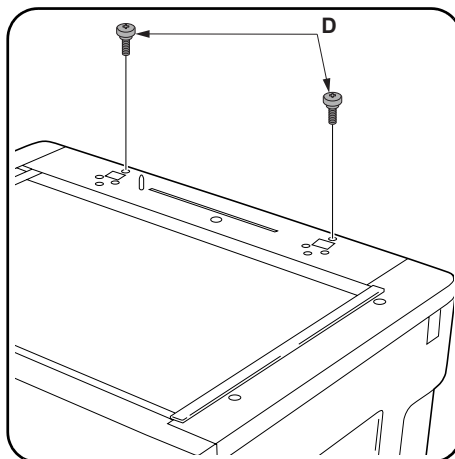
日本語

同梱品

A	原稿送り装置 (DP)	1
B	原稿マット	1
C	調整板	1
D	ピン	2

E	ビス M4 × 14	5
F	原稿忘れ注意ラベル (100V 仕様以外)	1
G	原稿セット向き注意ラベル (100V 仕様以外)	1
H	操作ラベル (インチ仕様のみ)	1
I	操作ラベル (100V 仕様のみ)	1

J	操作ラベル A (100V 仕様以外のセンチ仕様のみ)	1
K	操作ラベル B (100V 仕様以外のセンチ仕様のみ)	1
L	操作ラベル C (100V 仕様以外のセンチ仕様のみ)	1



Precautions

- Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning material from supplied parts.
- Before installing the document processor, be sure to turn the main power switch of the machine off and unplug the power cable from the wall outlet.

Procedure Installing the DP

1. Install two pins (D).

2. Insert the pins (D) into the hinge holes (1) of DP (A) and slide the DP (A) toward the front side to install it.

Précautions

- Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.
- Avant d'installer le chargeur de document, veillez à mettre la machine hors tension et à débrancher le câble d'alimentation de la prise murale.

Procédure Installation du DP

1. Installez deux goupilles (D).

2. Insérez les goupilles (D) dans les orifices de charnière (1) du DP (A), puis faites glisser le DP (A) vers l'avant pour l'installer.

Precauciones

- Asegúrese de despegar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.
- Antes de instalar el procesador de documentos, asegúrese de desconectar el interruptor principal de la máquina y desenchufar el cable eléctrico del tomacorriente de la pared.

Procedimiento Instalación del DP

1. Instale dos pasadores (D).

2. Inserte los pasadores (D) en los orificios de bisagra (1) del DP (A) y deslice el DP (A) hacia el lado frontal para instalar.

Vorsichtsmaßnahmen

- Entfernen Sie Klebeband und/oder Dämpfungsmaterial vollständig von den mitgelieferten Teilen.
- Schalten Sie unbedingt den Betriebsschalter der Maschine aus, und trennen Sie das Netzkabel von der Netzsteckdose, bevor Sie den Vorlageneinzug installieren.

Verfahren Installieren des DP

1. Zwei Rändelschrauben (D) eindrehen.

2. Die Rändelschrauben (D) in die Scharnierlöcher (1) des DP (A) einführen, und den DP (A) zum Installieren nach vorn schieben.

Precauzioni

- Accertarsi di rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/ o il materiale di imbottitura dalle parti fornite.
- Prima di installare l'alimentatore di originali, assicurarsi di spegnere l'interruttore principale di alimentazione della macchina e scollegare la spina del cavo di alimentazione dalla presa a muro della rete elettrica.

Procedura Installazione del DP

1. Inserire due perni (D).

2. Inserire i perni (D) nei fori della cerniera (1) del DP (A) e fare scorrere il DP (A) verso il lato anteriore per installarlo.

注意事項

- 如果在箱內帶有固定膠帶、緩衝材料時務必揭下。
- 安裝 DP 時，必須先關閉機器主機的主電源開關，並拔下電源插頭後，再進行安裝作業。

安裝步驟

安裝 DP

1. 裝上 2 個卡銷 (D)。

2. 將卡銷 (D) 插入 DP (A) 的鉸鏈部孔 (1)，向跟前滑動裝上 DP。

注意事項

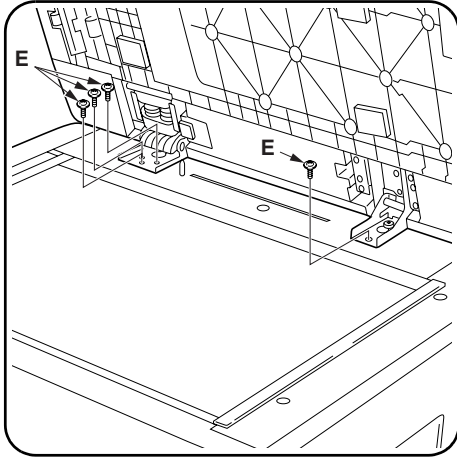
- 同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材が付いている場合は必ず取り外すこと。
- DP を設置する場合は、機械本体の主電源スイッチを OFF にし、電源プラグを抜いてから作業をおこなう。

設置手順

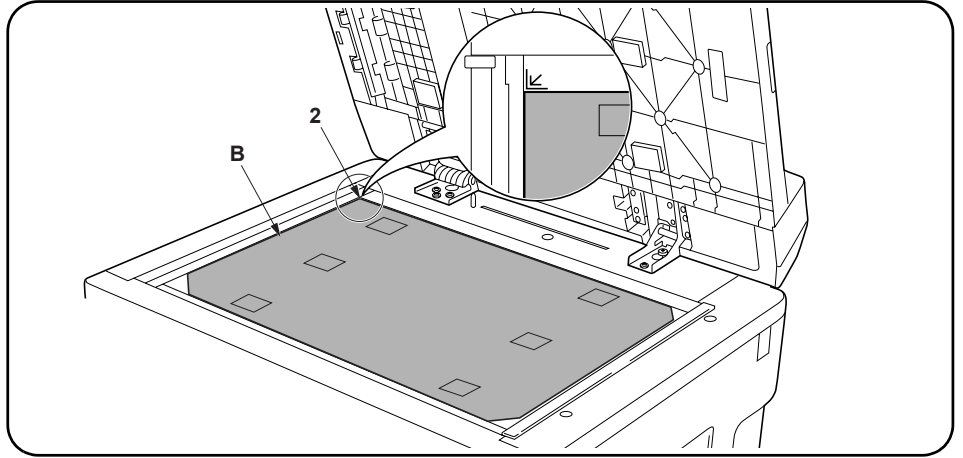
DP の取り付け

1. ビン (D) 2 本を取り付ける。

2. DP (A) のヒンジ部の穴 (1) にピン (D) を挿入し、手前にスライドして DP を取り付ける。



3. Fix the DP using four M4 × 14 screws (E).
Right: One
Left: Three



Attaching the original mat

4. Place the original mat (B) with its hook and loop fasteners up over the platen.
Align the original mat (B) corner that has not been surface cut with the rear left corner (2) of the platen.
5. Close the DP slowly to attach the original mat (B) onto it with the hook and loop fasteners.

3. Fixez le DP à l'aide de quatre vis M4 × 14 (E).
Côté droit: Une
Côté gauche: Trois

Fixation du tapis d'original

4. Placez le tapis d'original (B) sur la glace d'exposition avec son crochet et ses attaches à boucle orientées vers le haut.
Aligner le coin du tapis d'original (B) ne comportant pas de découpe sur le coin arrière gauche (2) de la glace d'exposition.
5. Refermez progressivement le DP pour fixer le tapis d'original (B) sur celui-ci avec le crochet et les attaches à boucle.

3. Fije el DP utilizando cuatro tornillos M4 × 14 (E).
Derecho: Uno
Izquierdo: Tres

Colocación de la plancha de originales

4. Coloque la plancha de originales (B) en su gancho y fijadores de bucle sobre el crystal de exposición.
Alinee la esquina de la plancha de originales (B) que no tenga corte de superficie con la esquina trasera izquierda (2) del crystal de exposición.
5. Cierre lentamente el DP para colocar la plancha de originales (B) con el gancho y fijadores de bucle.

3. Den DP mit vier M4 × 14 Schrauben (E) befestigen.
Rechts: Eine
Links: Drei

Anbringen der Originalmatte

4. Die Originalmatte (B) mit den Klettverschlüssen nach oben auf das Vorlagenglas legen.
Die nicht abgeschnittene Ecke der Originalmatte (B) auf die hintere linke Ecke (2) des Vorlagenglases ausrichten.
5. Den DP langsam schließen, so dass die Originalmatte (B) mit den Klettverschlüssen an ihm haftet.

3. Fissare il DP utilizzando quattro viti M4 × 14 (E).
Destra: Una
Sinistra: Tre

Montaggio del coprioriginale

4. Collocare il coprioriginale (B) sulla lastra di esposizione con il lato provvisto di nastro velcro autoadesivo rivolto verso l'alto.
Allineare l'angolo integro del coprioriginale (B) con l'angolo posteriore sinistro (2) della lastra di esposizione.
5. Chiudere lentamente il DP in modo che il coprioriginale (B) vi si possa fissare mediante il nastro velcro.

3. 用4个螺丝M4 × 14(E)固定DP。
右侧: 1个
左侧: 3个

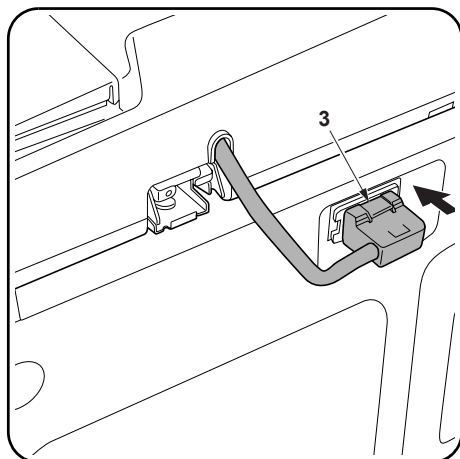
安装原稿垫

4. 将带有尼龙带的原稿垫(B)朝上,放在原稿玻璃板上。
将原稿垫(B)未缺角处对准原稿玻璃板的左角(2)上。
5. 轻轻地放下DP,使原稿垫(B)粘在DP背面上。

3. ビスM4 × 14(E)4本でDPを固定する。
右側: 1本
左側: 3本

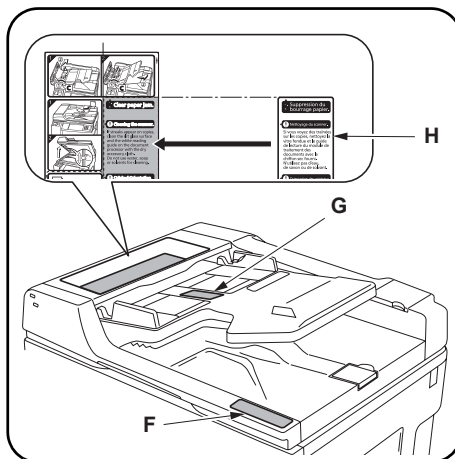
原稿マットの取り付け

4. 原稿マット(B)をマジックテープが付いている面を上にして、原稿ガラス上に置く。
原稿マット(B)は、面カットされていない角を原稿ガラスの左奥(2)に合わせる。
5. DPをゆっくりと下ろし、DP裏面に原稿マット(B)を取り付ける。



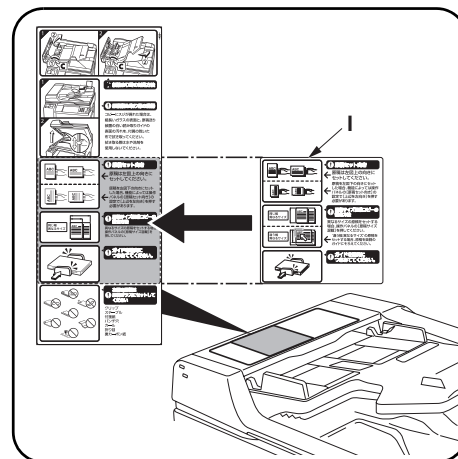
Connecting the signal cable

6. Connect the connector (3) of the signal cable to the machine.



Adhering the labels (Inch models)

7. After cleaning with alcohol, adhere caution label [Do not leave documents at the device.] (F), caution label [Face Up] (G), and label [Operation procedure] (H) of the corresponding language.



(for 100 V specification models with color touch panel)

7. After cleaning with alcohol, adhere label [Operation procedure] (I).

Connexion du câble de signal

6. Branchez le connecteur (3) du câble de signal sur la machine.

Apposition des étiquettes (modèles en pouces)

7. Après avoir nettoyé avec de l'alcool, apposez l'étiquette de précautions [Veillez à ne pas laisser d'originaux dans le bac d'éjection.] (F), l'étiquette de précautions [Face vers le Haut] (G), et l'étiquette [Procédure d'utilisation] (H) dans la langue voulue.

(pour les modèles à spécifications 100 V avec écran tactile couleur)

7. Après avoir nettoyé avec de l'alcool, apposez l'étiquette [Procédure d'utilisation] (I).

Conexión del cable de señal

6. Conecte el conector (3) del cable de señal en la máquina.

Pegado de etiquetas (modelos de pulgadas)

7. Después de limpiar con alcohol, pegue la etiqueta de precaución [No deje documentos en el equipo.] (F), etiqueta de precaución [Cara Arriba] (G) y la etiqueta [Procedimiento de funcionamiento] (H) del correspondiente idioma.

(para modelos de especificaciones de 100V con panel de toque de color)

7. Después de limpiar con alcohol, pegue la etiqueta [Procedimiento de funcionamiento] (I).

Anschließen des Signalkabels

6. Den Stecker (3) des Signalkabels an die Maschine anschließen.

Anbringen der Aufkleber (Zoll-Modelle)

7. Nach der Reinigung der Klebeflächen mit Alkohol den Warnaufkleber [Lassen Sie keine Originale auf dem Gerät liegen.] (F), den Warnaufkleber [Vorderseite Oben] (G) und den Aufkleber [Bedienungsverfahren] (H) der entsprechenden Sprache anbringen.

(für 100-V-Spezifikations-Modelle mit Farb-Sensorbildschirm)

7. Den Aufkleber [Bedienungsverfahren] (I) anbringen, nachdem die Klebefläche mit Alkohol gereinigt wurde.

Collegamento del cavo del segnale

6. Collegare il connettore (3) del cavo del segnale alla macchina.

Applicazione delle etichette (Modelli in pollici)

7. Dopo avere pulito con alcol, applicare l'etichetta di avvertenza [Non lasciare i documenti sul dispositivo.] (F), l'etichetta di avvertenza [Faccia Insù] (G) e l'etichetta [Procedura di funzionamento] (H) redatte nella lingua corrispondente.

(specifiche solo per modelli 100 V con pannello a sfioramento a colori)

7. Dopo aver pulito con alcol applicare l'etichetta [Procedura di funzionamento] (I).

连接信号线

6. 连接信号线的插头 (3)。

贴上标签

(只限英寸规格产品)

7. 用酒精清洁后, 贴上对应语言的原稿遗忘注意标签 (F)、原稿设置方向注意标签 (G) 和操作标签 (H)。

(只限彩色触控式面板复印机 220V 规格产品)

7. 用酒精清洁后, 贴上操作标签 (I)。

信号線の接続

6. 信号線のコネクタ (3) を接続する。

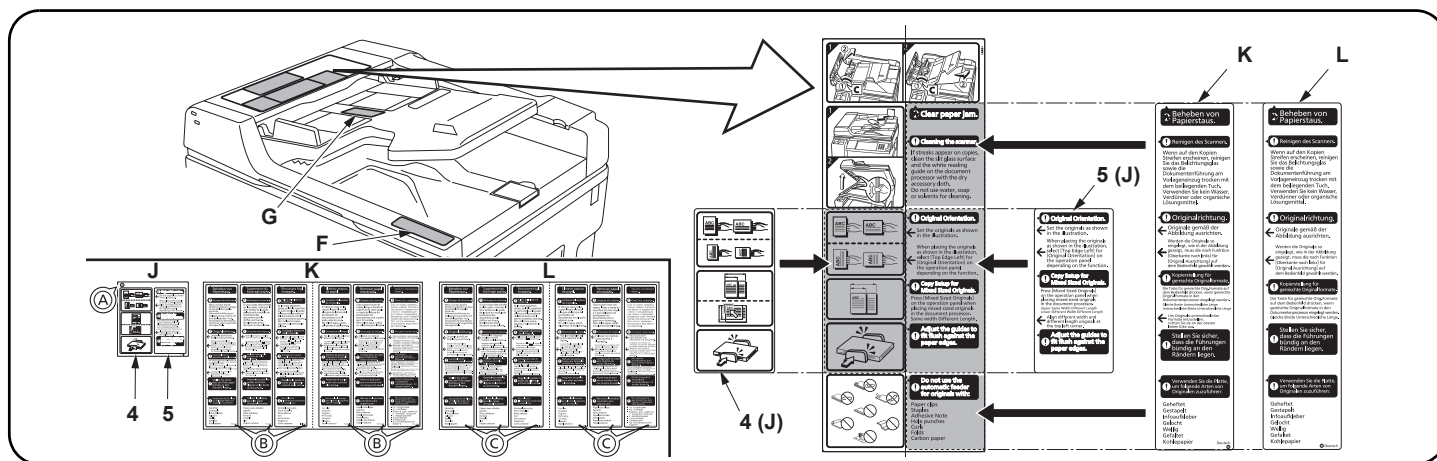
www.tonerplus.com.ua

ラベルの貼り付け (インチ仕様のみ)

7. アルコール清掃後、該当する言語の原稿忘れ注意ラベル (F)・原稿セット向き注意ラベル (G)・操作ラベル (H) を貼り付ける。

(カラータッチパネル機 100V 仕様のみ)

7. アルコール清掃後、操作ラベル (I) を貼り付ける。



(Metric models except for 100 V specifications)

7. After cleaning with alcohol, adhere caution label [Do not leave documents at the device.] (F) and caution label [Face Up] (G) of the corresponding language.

After cleaning with alcohol, adhere label A [Operation procedure] (J), label B [Operation procedure] (K), and/or label C [Operation procedure] (L).

(Models with color touch panel for English):

Adhere both the illustration label (4) and instructions label (5) of label A [Operation procedure] (J), which A is shown.

(Models with color touch panel except for English):

Adhere the illustration label (4) of label A [Operation procedure] (J), which A is shown.

Adhere label B [Operation procedure] (K), which B is shown, of the corresponding language.

(For models with monochrome touch panel):

Adhere label C [Operation procedure] (L), which C is shown, of the corresponding language.

(Modèles en mètres sauf spécifications 100 V)

7. Après avoir nettoyé avec de l'alcool, apposez l'étiquette de précautions [Veillez à ne pas laisser d'originaux dans le bac d'éjection.] (F) et l'étiquette de précautions [Face vers le Haut] (G) dans la langue voulue.

Après avoir nettoyé avec de l'alcool, apposez l'étiquette A [Procédure d'utilisation] (J), l'étiquette B [Procédure d'utilisation] (K), et/ou l'étiquette C [Procédure d'utilisation] (L).

(Modèles avec écran tactile couleur pour l'anglais):

Apposez l'étiquette d'illustrations (4) et l'étiquette d'instructions (5) de l'étiquette A [Procédure d'utilisation] (J), comme montré en A.

(Modèles avec écran tactile couleur sauf pour l'anglais):

Apposez l'étiquette d'illustrations (4) de l'étiquette A [Procédure d'utilisation] (J), comme montré en A.

Apposez l'étiquette B [Procédure d'utilisation] (K), comme montré en B, dans la langue voulue.

(Modèles avec écran tactile monochrome):

Apposez l'étiquette C [Procédure d'utilisation] (L), comme montré en C, dans la langue voulue.

(Modelos métricos excepto especificaciones de 100V)

7. Después de limpiar con alcohol, pegue la etiqueta de precaución [No deje documentos en el equipo.] (F), etiqueta de precaución [Cara Arriba] (G) del correspondiente idioma.

Después de limpiar con alcohol, pegue la etiqueta A [Procedimiento de funcionamiento] (J), la etiqueta B [Procedimiento de funcionamiento] (K) y/o etiqueta C [Procedimiento de funcionamiento] (L).

(Modelos con panel de toque color para inglés):

Pegue ambas etiquetas de ilustración (4) y etiqueta de instrucciones (5) de la etiqueta A [Procedimiento de funcionamiento] (J), donde se muestra A.

(Modelos con panel de toque color excepto inglés):

Pegue la etiqueta de ilustración (4) de la etiqueta A [Procedimiento de funcionamiento] (J) donde se muestra A.

Pegue la etiqueta B [Procedimiento de funcionamiento] (K), donde se muestra B del correspondiente idioma.

(Para los modelos con panel de toque monocromático):

Pegue la etiqueta C [Procedimiento de funcionamiento] (L), donde se muestra C del correspondiente idioma.

(Metrische Modelle außer 100-V-Spezifikationen)

7. Nach der Reinigung der Klebeflächen mit Alkohol den Warenaufkleber [Lassen Sie keine Originale auf dem Gerät liegen.] (F) und den Warenaufkleber [Vorderseite Oben] (G) der entsprechenden Sprache anbringen.

Nach der Reinigung der Klebeflächen mit Alkohol den Aufkleber A [Bedienungsverfahren] (J), den Aufkleber B [Bedienungsverfahren] (K) und/oder den Aufkleber C [Bedienungsverfahren] (L) anbringen.

(Modelle mit Farb-Sensorbildschirm für Englisch):

Den Abbildungsaufkleber (4) und den Anweisungsaufkleber (5) von Aufkleber A [Bedienungsverfahren] (J) (bei A gezeigt) anbringen.

(Modelle mit Farb-Sensorbildschirm außer Englisch):

Den Abbildungsaufkleber (4) von Aufkleber A [Bedienungsverfahren] (J) (bei A gezeigt) anbringen.

Den Aufkleber B [Bedienungsverfahren] (K) (bei B gezeigt) der entsprechenden Sprache anbringen.

(Für Modelle mit Monochrom-Sensorbildschirm):

Den Aufkleber C [Bedienungsverfahren] (L) (bei C gezeigt) der entsprechenden Sprache anbringen.

(Modelli con il sistema metrico eccetto specifiche per 100 V)

7. Dopo avere pulito con alcol, applicare l'etichetta di avvertenza [Non lasciare i documenti sul dispositivo.] (F) e l'etichetta di avvertenza [Faccia Insù] (G) redatte nella lingua corrispondente.

Dopo avere pulito con alcol, applicare l'etichetta A [Procedura di funzionamento] (J), l'etichetta B [Procedura di funzionamento] (K) e/o l'etichetta C [Procedura di funzionamento] (L).

(Modelli con pannello a sfioramento a colori per la lingua inglese):

Applicare entrambe l'etichetta con l'illustrazione (4) e l'etichetta con le istruzioni (5) dell'etichetta A [Procedura di funzionamento] (J), dove c'è la A.

(Modelli con pannello a sfioramento a colori ad eccezione dell'inglese):

Applicare l'etichetta con l'illustrazione (4) dell'etichetta A [Procedura di funzionamento] (J), dove c'è la A.

Applicare l'etichetta B [Procedura di funzionamento] (K), dove c'è la B, redatta nella lingua corrispondente.

(Per modelli con pannello monocromatico a sfioramento):

Applicare l'etichetta C [Procedura di funzionamento] (L), dove c'è la C, redatta nella lingua corrispondente.

(只限 220V 规格产品除外的厘米规格产品)

7. 用酒精清洁后，贴上对应语言的原稿遗忘注意标签 (F) 和原稿设置方向注意标签 (G)。

用酒精清洁后，贴上操作标签 A (J)、操作标签 B (K) 和操作标签 C (L)。

(只限彩色触控式面板复印机 英语)

• 贴上操作标签 A (J) (A 和印刷的标签) 的图画标签 (4) 和测试标签 (5)。

(只限彩色触控式面板复印机 英语除外)

• 贴上操作标签 A (J) (A 和印刷的标签) 的图画标签 (4)。

• 贴上对应语言的操作标签 B (K) (B 和印刷的标签)。

(只限单色触控式面板复印机)

• 贴上对应语言的操作标签 C (L) (C 和印刷的标签)。

(100V 仕様以外のセンチ仕様のみ)

7. アルコール清掃後、該当する言語の原稿忘れ注意ラベル (F)・原稿セット向き注意ラベル (G) を貼り付ける。

アルコール清掃後、操作ラベル A (J)・操作ラベル B (K)・操作ラベル C (L) を貼り付ける。

(カラータッチパネル機 英語のみ)

• 操作ラベル A (J) (A と印刷されているラベル) のイラストラベル (4) とテキストラベル (5) を貼り付ける。

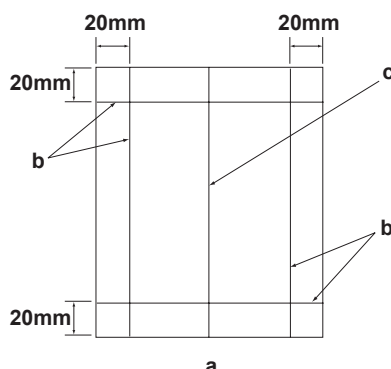
(カラータッチパネル機 英語以外)

• 操作ラベル A (J) (A と印刷されているラベル) のイラストラベル (4) を貼り付ける。

• 該当する言語の操作ラベル B (K) (B と印刷されているラベル) を貼り付ける。

(モノクロタッチパネル機のみ)

• 該当する言語の操作ラベル C (L) (C と印刷されているラベル) を貼り付ける。



Checking the operation

1. To check the machine operation, prepare an A3 size original (a) where four lines (b) are drawn 20 mm from the edges and one line (c) is drawn at the center.
2. Connect the power plug to the wall outlet and turn the main power switch on.
3. Set the original (a) in the DP and make a proof copy to check the operation and the copy example.
4. If the gap between the original (a) and the copy example exceeds the reference value, perform adjustments. For the procedure, see the following pages.

Before checking image from the DP, check and adjust image from the machine. For details, see the service manual of the machine.

Vérification du fonctionnement

1. Pour vérifier le fonctionnement de la machine, préparez un original de format A3 (a) sur lequel quatre lignes (b) ont été tracées à 20 mm des bords, et sur lequel une ligne (c) a été tracée au centre.
2. Insérer la fiche d'alimentation de la machine dans la prise murale et mettre la machine sous tension.
3. Placez l'original (a) dans le DP et effectuez une copie de test pour vérifier le fonctionnement et l'exemple de copie.
4. Si l'écart entre l'original (a) et l'exemple de copie est supérieur à la valeur de référence, effectuez les réglages nécessaires. Pour la marche à suivre, reportez-vous aux pages suivantes.

Avant de vérifier l'image sur le DP, vérifier et régler l'image sur la machine. Pour plus de détails, se reporter au manuel de service de la machine.

Verificación del funcionamiento

1. Para verificar el funcionamiento de la máquina, prepare un original de tamaño A3 (a) donde se dibujan cuatro líneas (b) a 20 mm de los bordes y una línea (c) dibujada en el centro.
2. Conecte el enchufe eléctrico de la máquina en un tomacorriente de la pared y conecte el interruptor principal.
3. Coloque el original (a) en el DP y haga una copia de prueba para verificar el funcionamiento y una copia de muestra.
4. Si la separación entre el original (a) y la copia de muestra supera el valor de referencia, haga los ajustes. Para el procedimiento, vea las siguientes páginas.

Antes de verificar la imagen del DP, verifique y ajuste la imagen desde la máquina. Para detalles, vea el manual de servicio de la máquina.

Überprüfen des Betriebs

1. Um den Betrieb der Maschine zu prüfen, ein A3-Original (a) vorbereiten, das vier Linien (b) im Abstand von 20 mm von den Kanten und eine Linie (c) in der Mitte aufweist.
2. Den Netzstecker der Maschine in die Steckdose stecken und den Betriebsschalter einschalten.
3. Das Original (a) in den DP einlegen und eine Probekopie anfertigen, um den Betrieb und das Kopienmuster zu prüfen.
4. Falls die Abweichung zwischen dem Original (a) und dem Kopienmuster den Bezugswert überschreitet, müssen Einstellungen durchgeführt werden. Das Verfahren ist auf den folgenden Seiten beschrieben.

Bevor das Bild vom DP geprüft wird, ist das Bild von der Maschine zu prüfen und einzustellen. Einzelheiten sind der Wartungsanleitung der Maschine zu entnehmen.

Controllo del funzionamento

1. Per controllare il funzionamento della macchina, preparare un originale di formato A3 (a) dove sono state tracciate quattro linee (b) a 20 mm dai bordi e una linea (c) centrale.
2. Collegare la spina del cavo di alimentazione della macchina alla presa a muro della rete elettrica e accendere l'interruttore principale di alimentazione.
3. Collocare l'originale (a) nel DP e fare una copia di prova per controllare il funzionamento della macchina e l'esempio di copia.
4. Se la differenza tra l'originale (a) e la copia di prova supera il valore di riferimento, eseguire le regolazioni. Per la procedura, leggere le seguenti pagine.

Prima di controllare l'immagine dal DP, controllare e regolare l'immagine dalla macchina. Per ulteriori dettagli, leggere il manuale d'istruzioni della macchina.

操作确认

1. 准备好 A3 尺寸的纸张（在边起 20mm 处划有 4 条线 (b)）和操作确认用原稿 (a)（在纸张中心划有 1 条线 (c)）。
2. 将机器主机上的电源插头插入插座中，打开主电源开关。
3. 将原稿 (a) 放在 DP 上，进行测试复印。
确认操作和测印件的状态。
4. 如果原稿 (a) 和测印件的偏移超过标准值时，需要调整。（调整方法参照下页以后）
确认和调整机器主机的图像后，必须对 DP 图像进行确认。详情请参照机器主机的维修手册。

動作確認

1. A3 サイズの用紙の端から 20mm の位置に線 (b) 4 本と、用紙の中心に線 (c) 1 本を引いた動作確認用の原稿 (a) を用意する。
2. 機械本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、主電源スイッチを ON にする。
3. 原稿 (a) を DP にセットし、テストコピーをおこなう。
動作およびコピーサンプルを確認する。
4. 原稿 (a) とコピーサンプルに基準値以上のずれがある場合は調整をおこなう。（調整方法は、次ページ以降を参照）
機械本体の画像確認および調整をおこなってから、DP の画像確認をおこなうこと。詳細は機械本体のサービスマニュアル参照。

Checking image from the DP

Be sure to adjust in the following order. If not, the adjustment cannot be performed correctly.

For checking the angle of leading edge, see page 8.	<Reference value> Simplex copying: within ± 3.0 mm; Duplex copying: within ± 4.0 mm
For checking the angle of trailing edge, see page 11.	<Reference value> Simplex copying: within ± 3.0 mm; Duplex copying: within ± 4.0 mm
For checking the magnification, see page 15.	<Reference value> Within $\pm 1.5\%$
For checking the leading edge timing, see page 17.	<Reference value> Within ± 2.0 mm
For checking the center line, see page 19.	<Reference value> Simplex copying: within ± 2.0 mm; Duplex copying: within ± 3.0 mm
When using the original for adjustment, automatic adjustment of magnification, leading edge timing and center line can be performed at a time.	
For the automatic adjustment using the original for adjustment, see page 21.	

Vérification de l'image sur le DP

Veillez à effectuer le réglage en procédant dans l'ordre suivant. Sinon, il sera impossible d'obtenir un réglage correct.

Pour vérifier l'angle du bord avant, reportez-vous à la page 8.	<Valeur de référence> Copie recto seul: ± 3.0 mm max.; copie recto verso: ± 4.0 mm max.
Pour vérifier l'angle du bord arrière, reportez-vous à la page 11.	<Valeur de référence> Copie recto seul: ± 3.0 mm max.; copie recto verso: ± 4.0 mm max.
Pour vérifier l'agrandissement, reportez-vous à la page 15.	<Valeur de référence> $\pm 1.5\%$ max.
Pour vérifier la synchronisation du bord avant, reportez-vous à la page 17.	<Valeur de référence> ± 2.0 mm max.
Pour vérifier la ligne médiane, reportez-vous à la page 19.	<Valeur de référence> Copie recto seul: ± 2.0 mm max.; copie recto verso: ± 3.0 mm max.
Lorsque vous utilisez l'original pour effectuer le réglage, vous pouvez effectuer automatiquement le réglage de l'agrandissement, de la synchronisation du bord avant et de la ligne médiane en une seule fois.	
Pour le réglage automatique en utilisant l'original pour effectuer le réglage, reportez-vous à la page 21.	

Verificación de la imagen del DP

Asegúrese de ajustar en el siguiente orden. De lo contrario, el ajuste no puede hacerse correctamente.

Para verificar el ángulo del borde superior, vea la página 8.	<Valor de referencia> Copia simple: dentro de ± 3.0 mm; Copia duplex: dentro de ± 4.0 mm
Para verificar el ángulo del borde inferior, vea la página 11.	<Valor de referencia> Copia simple: dentro de ± 3.0 mm; Copia duplex: dentro de ± 4.0 mm
Para verificar el cambio de tamaño, vea la página 15.	<Valor de referencia> Dentro de $\pm 1.5\%$
Para verificar la sincronización del borde inferior, vea la página 17.	<Valor de referencia> Dentro de ± 2.0 mm
Para verificar la línea central, vea la página 19.	<Valor de referencia> Copia simple: dentro de ± 2.0 mm; Copia duplex: dentro de ± 3.0 mm
Cuando utilice el original para el ajuste, puede hacerse un ajuste automático del cambio de tamaño, sincronización del borde superior y línea central al mismo tiempo. Para el ajuste automático utilizando el original para el ajuste, vea la página 21.	

Überprüfen des Bilds vom DP

Die Einstellung in der folgenden Reihenfolge durchführen. Anderenfalls kann die Einstellung nicht korrekt durchgeführt werden.

Angaben zur Prüfung des Winkels der Vorderkante auf Seite 8.	<Bezugswert> Simplexkopie: innerhalb ± 3.0 mm; Duplexkopie: innerhalb ± 4.0 mm
Angaben zur Prüfung des Winkels der Hinterkante auf Seite 11.	<Bezugswert> Simplexkopie: innerhalb ± 3.0 mm; Duplexkopie: innerhalb ± 4.0 mm
Angaben zur Prüfung der Vergrößerung auf Seite 15.	<Bezugswert> Innerhalb $\pm 1.5\%$
Angaben zur Prüfung des Vorderkanten-Timings auf Seite 17.	<Bezugswert> Innerhalb ± 2.0 mm
Angaben zur Prüfung der Mittellinie auf Seite 19.	<Bezugswert> Simplexkopie: innerhalb ± 2.0 mm; Duplexkopie: innerhalb ± 3.0 mm
Bei Verwendung des Originals für die Einstellung können die automatischen Einstellungen für Vergrößerung, Vorderkanten-Timing und Mittellinie gleichzeitig durchgeführt werden.	
Angaben zur automatischen Einstellung mithilfe des Originals auf Seite 21.	

Controllo di immagine dal DP

Verificare che la regolazione avvenga nel seguente ordine. Altrimenti, la regolazione non potrà essere seguita correttamente.

Per controllare l'angolo del bordo principale, vedere pagina 8.	<Valore di riferimento> Copia simplex: entro ± 3.0 mm; Copia duplex: entro ± 4.0 mm
Per controllare l'angolo del bordo di uscita, vedere pagina 11.	<Valore di riferimento> Copia simplex: entro ± 3.0 mm; Copia duplex: entro ± 4.0 mm
Per controllare l'ingrandimento, vedere pagina 15.	<Valore di riferimento> Entro $\pm 1.5\%$
Per controllare la sincronizzazione del bordo principale, vedere pagina 17.	<Valore di riferimento> Entro ± 2.0 mm
Per controllare la linea centrale, vedere pagina 19.	<Valore di riferimento> Copia simplex: entro ± 2.0 mm; Copia duplex: entro ± 3.0 mm
Quando si utilizza l'originale per la regolazione, la regolazione automatica dell'ingrandimento, della sincronizzazione del bordo principale e della linea centrale possono essere eseguiti contemporaneamente.	
Per la regolazione automatica eseguita con l'originale, vedere pagina 21.	

<< 图像确认 >>

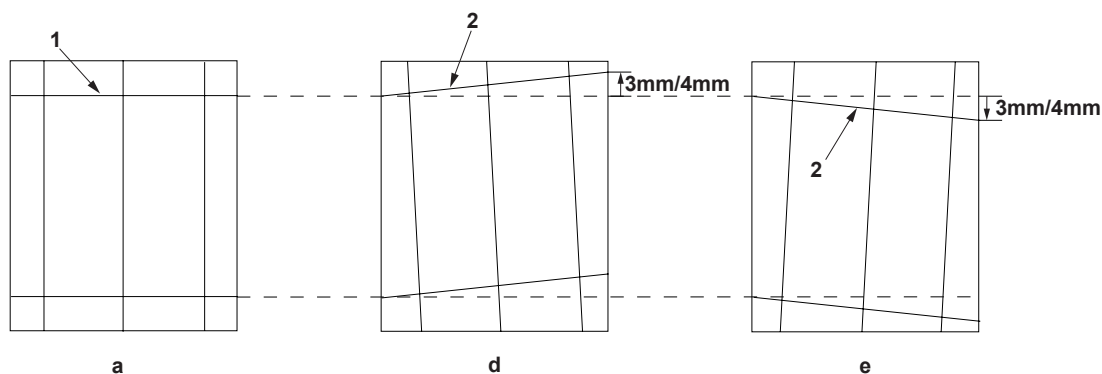
必须按照以下步骤进行调整, 否则不能达到准确调整的要求。

• 确认前端倾斜度 第 8 页	< 标准值 > 单面: ± 3.0 mm 以内、双面: ± 4.0 mm 以内
• 确认后端倾斜度 第 11 页	< 标准值 > 单面: ± 3.0 mm 以内、双面: ± 4.0 mm 以内
• 确认等倍值 第 15 页	< 标准值 > $\pm 1.5\%$ 以内
• 确认前端定时调整 第 17 页	< 标准值 > ± 2.0 mm 以内
• 确认中心线 第 19 页	< 标准值 > 单面: ± 2.0 mm 以内、双面: ± 3.0 mm 以内
使用调整用原稿功能时, 可以同时自动进行等倍值、前端定时以及中心线的调整。	
• 通过调整用原稿进行自动调整 第 21 页	

<< 画像の確認 >>

必ず下記の順序で調整を行うこと。順序通りに調整を行わない場合、正しい調整ができない。

• 先端斜め確認 8 ページ	< 基準値 > 片面: ± 3.0 mm 以内、両面: ± 4.0 mm 以内
• 後端斜め確認 11 ページ	< 基準値 > 片面: ± 3.0 mm 以内、両面: ± 4.0 mm 以内
• 等倍度確認 15 ページ	< 基準値 > $\pm 1.5\%$ 以内
• 先端タイミング確認 17 ページ	< 基準値 > ± 2.0 mm 以内
• センターライン確認 19 ページ	< 基準値 > 片面: ± 2.0 mm 以内、両面: ± 3.0 mm 以内
調整用原稿を使用すると、等倍度調整、先端タイミング調整、センターライン調整の自動調整が一度におこなえる。	
• 調整用原稿による自動調整 21 ページ	



Checking the angle of leading edge

Check the gap between line (1) of original (a) and line (2) of copy example. If the gap exceeds the reference value, perform the following adjustment.

<Reference value>

For simplex copying: Within ± 3.0 mm

For duplex copying: Within ± 4.0 mm

Vérification de l'angle du bord avant

Vérifiez l'écart entre la ligne (1) de l'original (a) et la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart est supérieur à la valeur de référence, effectuez le réglage suivant.

<Valeur de référence>

Copie recto seul: $\pm 3,0$ mm max.

Copie recto verso: $\pm 4,0$ mm max.

Verificación del ángulo del borde superior

Verifique la separación entre la línea (1) del original (a) y la línea (2) de la copia de muestra. Si la separación supera el valor de referencia, haga el siguiente ajuste.

<Valor de referencia>

Para copia simple: Dentro de $\pm 3,0$ mm

Para copia duplex: Dentro de $\pm 4,0$ mm

Überprüfen des Winkels der Vorderkante

Die Abweichung der Linie (1) des Originals (a) und der Linie (2) des Kopienmusters prüfen. Überschreitet die Abweichung den Bezugswert, ist die folgende Einstellung durchzuführen.

<Bezugswert>

Für Simplexkopie: Innerhalb $\pm 3,0$ mm

Für Duplexkopie: Innerhalb $\pm 4,0$ mm

Controllo dell'angolo del bordo principale

Controllare la differenza tra la linea (1) dell'originale (a) e la linea (2) della copia di esempio. Se la differenza supera il valore di riferimento, effettuare la seguente regolazione.

<Valore di riferimento>

Per copia simplex: Entro $\pm 3,0$ mm

Per copia duplex: Entro $\pm 4,0$ mm

確認前傾斜度

確認原稿 (a) 線 (1) と測印件線 (2) の偏移。如果超过标准值时，必须进行调整。

<标准值>

单面时: ± 3.0 mm 以内

双面时: ± 4.0 mm 以内

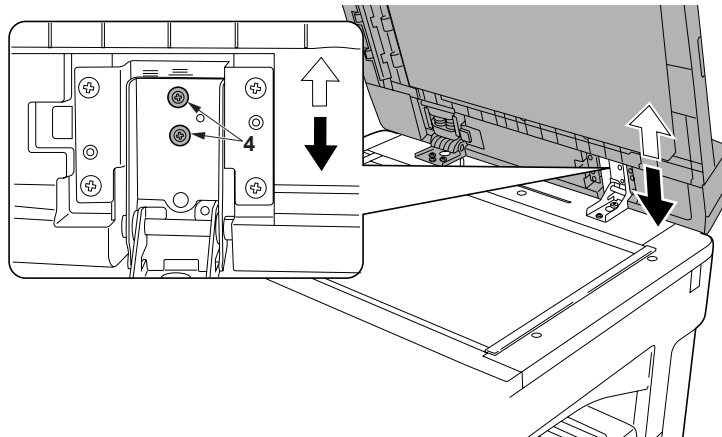
先端斜め確認

原稿 (a) の線 (1) とコピーサンプルの線 (2) のずれを確認する。ずれが基準値外の場合は調整をおこなう。

<基準値>

片面の場合: ± 3.0 mm 以内

両面の場合: ± 4.0 mm 以内



Adjusting the DP

1. Open the DP and loosen two adjusting screws (4) of right hinge.
2. Adjust the position of the DP.
For copy example (d): Move the DP down (·).
For copy example (e): Move the DP up (⇒).
Amount of change per scale: Approx. 0.5 mm

3. Tighten two adjusting screws (4).

4. Remove the original mat (B) and refit it (see steps 4 and 5 on page 3).

Réglage du DP

1. Ouvrez le DP et desserrez les deux vis de réglage (4) de la charnière droite.
2. Réglez la position du DP.
Pour l'exemple de copie (d): Déplacez le DP vers le bas (·).
Pour l'exemple de copie (e): Déplacez le DP vers le haut (⇒).
Quantité de changement par pas: Environ 0,5 mm

3. Resserrez les deux vis de réglage (4).

4. Retirez le tapis d'original (B) et remettez-le en place. (Reportez-vous aux étapes 4 et 5 à la page 3.)

Ajuste del DP

1. Abra el DP y afloje los dos tornillos de ajuste (4) de la bisagra derecha.
2. Ajuste la posición del DP.
Para la copia de muestra (d): Mueva el DP abajo (·).
Para la copia de muestra (e): Mueva el DP arriba (⇒).
Cantidad de cambio de escala: Aprox. 0,5 mm

3. Apriete los tornillos de ajuste (4).

4. Desmonte la plancha de original (B) y vuelva a colocar (vea los pasos 4 y 5 en la página 3).

Einstellen des DP

1. Den DP öffnen, und die zwei Einstellschrauben (4) des rechten Scharniers lösen.
2. Die Position des DP einstellen.
Für Kopienmuster (d): Den DP absenken (·).
Für Kopienmuster (e): Den DP anheben (⇒).
Änderungsbetrag pro Skalenstrich: Ca. 0,5 mm

3. Die zwei Einstellschrauben (4) wieder festziehen.

4. Die Originalmatte (B) abnehmen und wieder anbringen (siehe Schritte 4 und 5 auf Seite 3).

Regolazione del DP

1. Aprire il DP e allentare le due viti di regolazione (4) della cerniera destra.
2. Regolare la posizione del DP.
Per un esempio di copia (d): Muovere il DP verso il basso (·).
Per un esempio di copia (e): Muovere il DP verso l'alto (⇒).
Variazione graduale: Circa 0,5 mm

3. Stringere le due viti di regolazione (4).

4. Rimuovere il coprioriginale (B) e reinserirlo (vedere i passi 4 e 5 a pagina 3).

調整 DP

1. 打开 DP，松弛铰链右侧的 2 个调整螺丝 (4)。
2. 调整 DP 的位置。
测印件 (d) 时：将 DP 盖向下 (·) 移动。
测印件 (e) 时：将 DP 盖向上 (⇒) 移动。
每 1 格的移动量：约 0.5mm

3. 紧固 2 个调整螺丝 (4)。

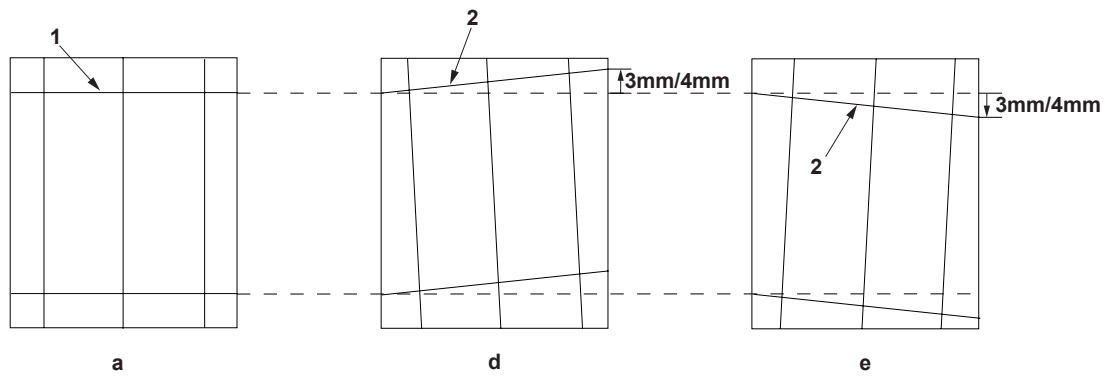
4. 拆下原稿垫 (B)，参照第 3 页的步骤 4 和 5 再次装上。

DP の調整

1. DP を開き、ヒンジ右側の調整ビス (4) 2 本をゆるめる。
2. DP の位置を調整する。
コピーサンプル (d) の場合：DP 本体を下 (·) へ動かす。
コピーサンプル (e) の場合：DP 本体を上 (⇒) へ動かす。
1 目盛り当たりの変化量：約 0.5mm

3. 調整ビス (4) 2 本を締める。

4. 原稿マット (B) を取り外し、3 ページの手順 4、5 を参考に再度取り付ける。



5. Make a proof copy again.
6. Repeat steps 1 to 5 until line (2) of copy example shows the following the reference values.
 <Reference value>
 For simplex copying: Within ± 3.0 mm
 For duplex copying: Within ± 4.0 mm

5. Effectuez à nouveau une copie de test.
6. Répétez les étapes 1 à 5 jusqu'à ce que la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie corresponde aux valeurs de référence suivantes.
 <Valeur de référence>
 Copie recto seul: $\pm 3,0$ mm max.
 Copie recto verso: $\pm 4,0$ mm max.

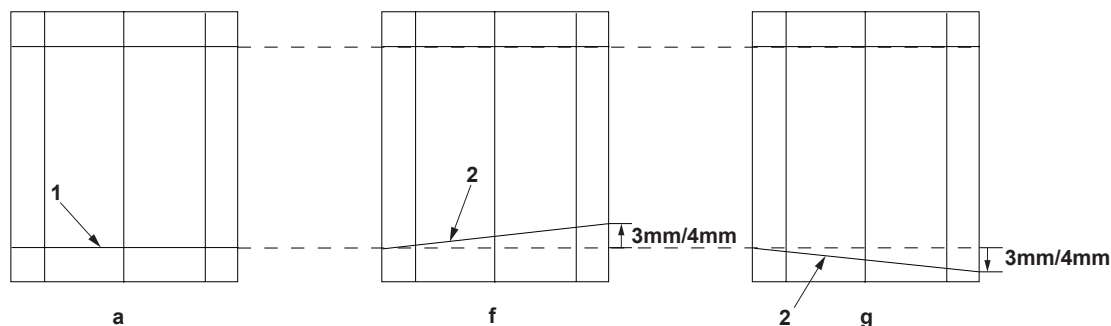
5. Haga otra copia de prueba.
6. Repita los pasos 1 a 5 hasta que la línea (2) de la copia de muestra tenga los siguientes valores de referencia.
 <Valor de referencia>
 Para copia simple: Dentro de $\pm 3,0$ mm
 Para copia duplex: Dentro de $\pm 4,0$ mm

5. Eine erneute Probekopie anfertigen.
6. Die Schritte 1 bis 5 wiederholen, bis die Linie (2) des Kopienmusters die folgenden Bezugswerte aufweist.
 <Bezugswert>
 Für Simplexkopie: Innerhalb $\pm 3,0$ mm
 Für Duplexkopie: Innerhalb $\pm 4,0$ mm

5. Eseguire di nuovo una prova di copia.
6. Ripetere i passi da 1 a 5 fino a che la linea (2) dell'esempio di copia non mostra i seguenti valori di riferimento.
 <Valore di riferimento>
 Per copia simplex: Entro $\pm 3,0$ mm
 Per copia duplex: Entro $\pm 4,0$ mm

5. 再次进行测试复印。
6. 反复操作步骤 1 ~ 5, 直至测印件的线 (2) 为标准值内。
 <标准值>
 单面时: ± 3.0 mm 以内
 双面时: ± 4.0 mm 以内

5. 再度テストコピーをおこなう。
6. コピーサンプルの線 (2) が基準値内になるまで、手順 1 ~ 5 を繰り返す。
 <基準値>
 片面の場合: ± 3.0 mm 以内
 両面の場合: ± 4.0 mm 以内



Checking the angle of trailing edge

Check the gap between line (1) of original (a) and line (2) of copy example. If the gap exceeds the reference value, perform the following adjustment.

<Reference value>

For simplex copying: Within ± 3.0 mm

For duplex copying: Within ± 4.0 mm

Vérification de l'angle du bord arrière

Vérifiez l'écart entre la ligne (1) de l'original (a) et la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart est supérieur à la valeur de référence, effectuez le réglage suivant.

<Valeur de référence>

Copie recto seul: $\pm 3,0$ mm max.

Copie recto verso: $\pm 4,0$ mm max.

Verificación del ángulo del borde inferior

Verifique la separación entre la línea (1) del original (a) y la línea (2) de la copia de muestra. Si la separación supera el valor de referencia, haga el siguiente ajuste.

<Valor de referencia>

Para copia simple: Dentro de $\pm 3,0$ mm

Para copia duplex: Dentro de $\pm 4,0$ mm

Überprüfen des Winkels der Hinterkante

Die Abweichung der Linie (1) des Originals (a) und der Linie (2) des Kopienmusters prüfen. Überschreitet die Abweichung den Bezugswert, ist die folgende Einstellung durchzuführen.

<Bezugswert>

Für Simplexkopie: Innerhalb $\pm 3,0$ mm

Für Duplexkopie: Innerhalb $\pm 4,0$ mm

Controllo dell'angolo del bordo di uscita

Controllare la differenza tra la linea (1) dell'originale (a) e la linea (2) della copia di esempio. Se la differenza supera il valore di riferimento, effettuare la seguente regolazione.

<Valore di riferimento>

Per copia simplex: Entro $\pm 3,0$ mm

Per copia duplex: Entro $\pm 4,0$ mm

确认后端倾斜度

确认原稿 (a) 线和测印件线 (2) 的偏移。如果超过标准值时，必须进行调整。

<标准值>

单面时： ± 3.0 mm 以内

双面时： ± 4.0 mm 以内

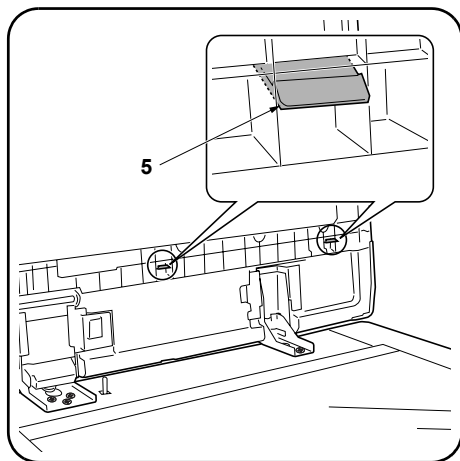
後端斜め確認

原稿 (a) の線 (1) とコピーサンプルの線 (2) のずれを確認する。ずれが基準値外の場合は調整をおこなう。

<基準値>

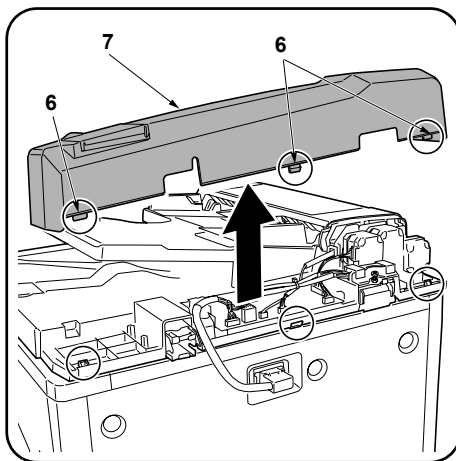
片面の場合： ± 3.0 mm 以内

両面の場合： ± 4.0 mm 以内



Adjusting the DP

1. Open the DP and release two latches (5) using a flat-head screwdriver.



2. Release three latches (6) at the rear of the DP using a flat-head screwdriver to remove the cover (7).

Réglage du DP

1. Ouvrez le DP et libérez les deux verrous (5) à l'aide d'un tournevis à tête plate.
2. Libérez les trois verrous (6) situés à l'arrière du DP en utilisant un tournevis à tête plate pour retirer le capot (7).

Ajuste del DP

1. Abra el DP y suelte los dos pestillos (5) utilizando un destornillador de punta plana.
2. Suelte los tres pestillos (6) en el lado trasero del DP utilizando un destornillador de punta plana para desmontar la cubierta (7).

Einstellen des DP

1. Den DP öffnen, und die zwei Rasten (5) mit einem Flachschaubenzieher lösen.
2. Die drei Rasten (6) auf der Rückseite des DP mit einem Flachschaubenzieher lösen, um die Abdeckung (7) zu entfernen.

Regolazione del DP

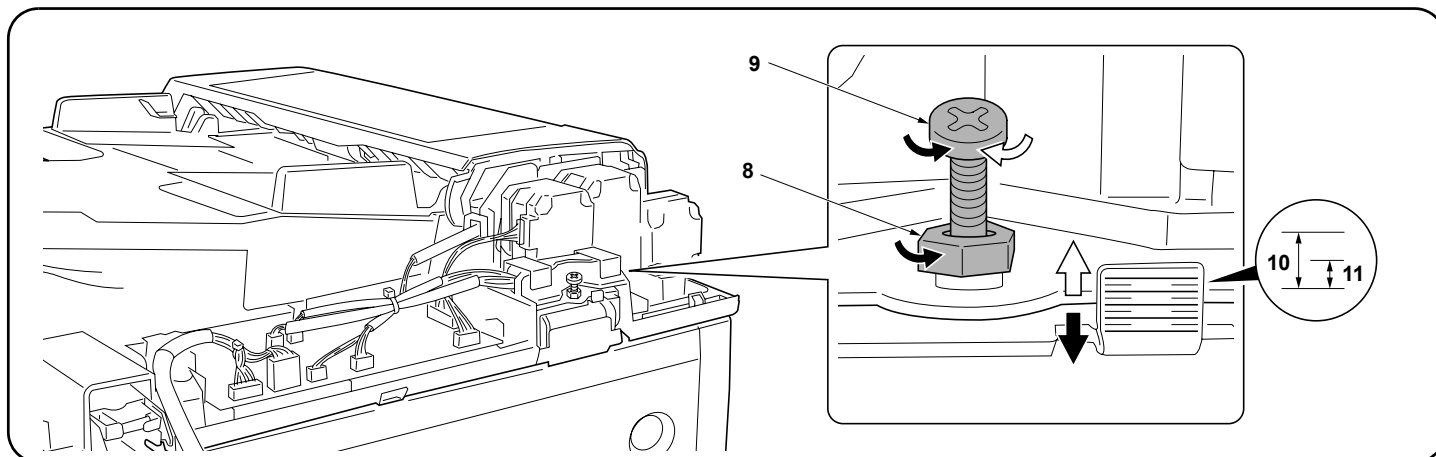
1. Aprire il DP e rilasciare i due fermi (5) utilizzando un giravite a punta piatta.
2. Rilasciare i tre fermi (6) sul retro del DP utilizzando un giravite a punta piatta per rimuovere il coperchio (7).

調整 DP

1. 打开 DP, 用一字形螺丝刀等松开 2 处嵌入部 (5)。
2. 用一字形螺丝刀等松开 DP 后侧的 3 处嵌入部 (6), 并拆下盖板 (7)。

DP の調整

1. DP を開き、はめ込み (5) 2 箇所をマイナスドライバなどで解除する。
2. DP 後側のはめ込み (6) 3 箇所をマイナスドライバなどで解除し、カバー (7) を取り外す。



3. Adjust the height of DP.

Loosen the nut (8).

For copy example (f): Loosen the adjusting screw (9). (·)

For copy example (g): Tighten the adjusting screw (9). (⇒)

Amount of change per scale: Approx. 1 mm (10)/ Approx. 0.5 mm (11)

Retighten the nut (8).

4. Refit the cover (7) removed in step 2.

5. Remove the original mat (B) and refit it (see steps 4 and 5 on page 3).

3. Réglez la hauteur du DP.

Desserrez l'écrou (8).

Pour l'exemple de copie (f): Desserrez la vis de réglage (9). (·)

Pour l'exemple de copie (g): Serrez la vis de réglage (9). (⇒)

Quantité de changement par pas: environ 1 mm (10) / environ 0,5 mm (11)

Resserrez l'écrou (8).

4. Remettez en place le capot (7) retiré auparavant à l'étape 2.

5. Retirez le tapis d'original (B) et remettez-le en place. (Reportez-vous aux étapes 4 et 5 à la page 3.)

3. Ajuste la altura del DP.

Afloje la tuerca (8).

Para la copia de muestra (f): Afloje el tornillo de ajuste (9). (·)

Para la copia de muestra (g): Apriete el tornillo de ajuste (9). (⇒)

Cantidad de cambio de escala: Aprox. 1 mm (10)/aprox. 0,5 mm (11)

Vuelva a apretar la tuerca (8).

4. Vuelva a colocar la cubierta (7) desmontada en el paso 2.

5. Desmonte la plancha de original (B) y vuelva a colocar (vea los pasos 4 y 5 en la página 3).

3. Die Höhe des DP einstellen.

Lösen Sie die Mutter (8).

Für Kopienmuster (f): Lösen Sie die Einstellschraube (9). (·)

Für Kopienmuster (g): Die Einstellschraube (9) festziehen. (⇒)

Änderungsbetrag pro Skalenstrich: ca. 1 mm (10)/ca. 0,5 mm (11)

Ziehen Sie die Mutter (8) wieder fest.

4. Die in Schritt 2 entfernte Abdeckung (7) wieder anbringen.

5. Die Originalmatte (B) abnehmen und wieder anbringen (siehe Schritte 4 und 5 auf Seite 3).

3. Regolazione dell'altezza del DP

Allentare il dado (8).

Per un esempio di copia (f): Allentare la vite di regolazione (9). (·)

Per un esempio di copia (g): Stringere la vite di regolazione (9). (⇒)

Variazione graduale: circa 1 mm (10) / circa 0,5 mm (11)

Stringere di nuovo il dado (8).

4. Reinserire il coperchio (7) rimosso nel passo 2.

5. Rimuovere il coprioriginale (B) e reinserirlo (vedere i passi 4 e 5 a pagina 3).

3. 調整 DP の高度。

松弛螺母 (8)。

測印件 (f) 時: 松弛調整螺丝 (9)。 (·)

測印件 (g) 時: 紧固調整螺丝 (9)。 (⇒)

每 1 格的移动量: 約 1mm(10)/ 約 0.5mm(11)

將螺母 (8) 按原樣緊固好。

4. 在步驟 2 拆下的盖板 (7) 按原樣裝好。

5. 拆下原稿墊 (B), 參照第 3 頁的步驟 4 和 5 再次裝上。

3. DP の高さを調整する。

ナット (8) をゆるめる。

コピーサンプル (f) の場合: 調整ビス (9) をゆるめる。(·)

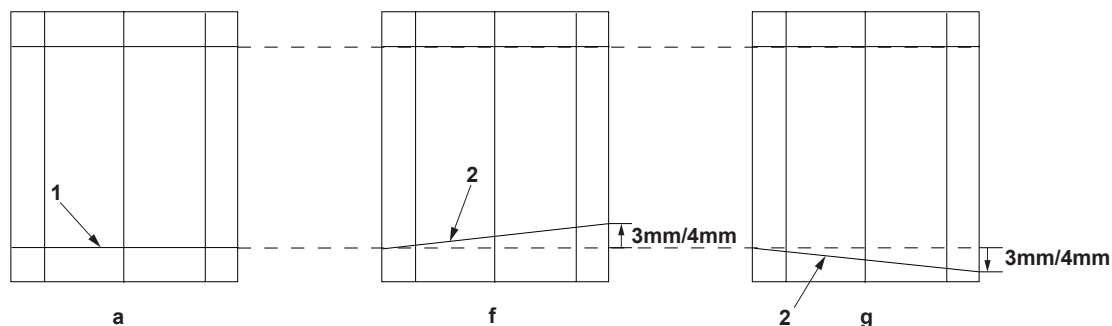
コピーサンプル (g) の場合: 調整ビス (9) を締める。(⇒)

1 目盛り当たりの変化量: 約 1mm(10)/ 約 0.5mm(11)

ナット (8) を元通り締める。

4. 手順 2 で取り外したカバー (7) を元通り取り付け。

5. 原稿マット (B) を取り外し、3 ページの手順 4、5 を参考に再度取り付け。



6. Make a proof copy again.
7. Repeat steps 1 to 6 until line (2) of copy example shows the following the reference values.
 <Reference value>
 For simplex copying: Within ± 3.0 mm
 For duplex copying: Within ± 4.0 mm

6. Effectuez à nouveau une copie de test.
7. Répétez les étapes 1 à 6 jusqu'à ce que la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie corresponde aux valeurs de référence suivantes.
 <Valeur de référence>
 Copie recto seul: $\pm 3,0$ mm max.
 Copie recto verso: $\pm 4,0$ mm max.

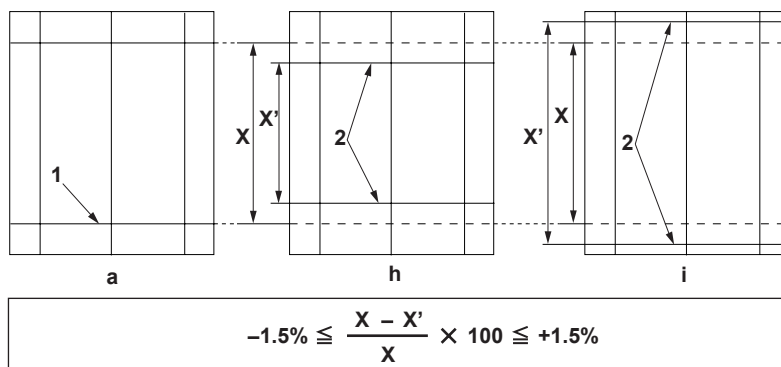
6. Haga otra copia de prueba.
7. Repita los pasos 1 a 6 hasta que la línea (2) de la copia de muestra tenga los siguientes valores de referencia.
 <Valor de referencia>
 Para copia simple: Dentro de $\pm 3,0$ mm
 Para copia duplex: Dentro de $\pm 4,0$ mm

6. Eine erneute Probekopie anfertigen.
7. Die Schritte 1 bis 6 wiederholen, bis die Linie (2) des Kopienmusters die folgenden Bezugswerte aufweist.
 <Bezugswert>
 Für Simplexkopie: Innerhalb $\pm 3,0$ mm
 Für Duplexkopie: Innerhalb $\pm 4,0$ mm

6. Eseguire di nuovo una prova di copia.
7. Ripetere i passi da 1 a 6 fino a che la linea (2) dell'esempio di copia non mostra i seguenti valori di riferimento.
 <Valore di riferimento>
 Per copia simplex: Entro $\pm 3,0$ mm
 Per copia duplex: Entro $\pm 4,0$ mm

6. 再次进行测试复印。
7. 反复操作步骤 1 ~ 6, 直至测印件的线 (2) 为标准值内。
 <标准值>
 单面时: ± 3.0 mm 以内
 双面时: ± 4.0 mm 以内

6. 再度テストコピーをおこなう。
7. コピーサンプルの線 (2) が基準値内になるまで、手順 1 ~ 6 を繰り返す。
 <基準値>
 片面の場合: ± 3.0 mm 以内
 両面の場合: ± 4.0 mm 以内



Checking the magnification

Check the gap between line (1) of original (a) and line (2) of copy example. If the gap exceeds the reference value, perform the following adjustment.

Reference value: Within $\pm 1.5\%$

Adjusting the DP magnification

1. Enter the maintenance mode and run the maintenance item U070 to adjust.

For first side: Select [MAIN ADJ].

For second side: Select [SUB ADJ].

Vérification de l'agrandissement

Vérifiez l'écart entre la ligne (1) de l'original (a) et la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart est supérieur à la valeur de référence, effectuez le réglage suivant.

Valeur de référence: $\pm 1,5\%$ max.

Réglage de l'agrandissement du DP

1. Passez en mode de maintenance et exécutez l'élément de maintenance U070 pour effectuer le réglage.

Pour le recto: Sélectionnez [MAIN ADJ].

Pour le verso: Sélectionnez [SUB ADJ].

Verificación del cambio de tamaño

Verifique la separación entre la línea (1) del original (a) y la línea (2) de la copia de muestra. Si la superación supera el valor de referencia, haga el siguiente ajuste.

Valor de referencia: Dentro de $\pm 1,5\%$

Ajuste del cambio de tamaño

1. Entre en el modo de mantenimiento e ingrese en el ítem de mantenimiento U070 para ajustar.

Para el primer lado: Seleccione [MAIN ADJ].

Para el segundo lado: Seleccione [SUB ADJ].

Überprüfen der Vergrößerung

Die Abweichung der Linie (1) des Originals (a) und der Linie (2) des Kopienmusters prüfen. Überschreitet die Abweichung den Bezugswert, ist die folgende Einstellung durchzuführen.

Bezugswert: Innerhalb $\pm 1,5\%$

Einstellen der DP-Vergrößerung

1. Den Wartungsmodus aktivieren, und den Wartungsposten U070 zur Einstellung ausführen.

Für erste Seite: [MAIN ADJ] wählen.

Für zweite Seite: [SUB ADJ] wählen.

Controllo dell'ingrandimento

Controllare la differenza tra la linea (1) dell'originale (a) e la linea (2) della copia di esempio. Se la differenza supera il valore di riferimento, effettuare la seguente regolazione.

Valore di riferimento: Entro $\pm 1,5\%$

Regolazione dell'ingrandimento DP

1. Entrare in modalità manutenzione e avviare la voce di manutenzione U070 per la regolazione.

Per il primo lato: selezionare [MAIN ADJ].

Per il secondo lato: selezionare [SUB ADJ].

确认等倍値

确认原稿 (a) 线 (1) 和复印件线 (2) 的偏移。如果超过标准值时，必须进行调整。

< 标准值 > $\pm 1.5\%$ 以内

调整 DP 等倍値

1. 设定为 U070 维护模式，进行调整。

表面时：选择“MAIN ADJ”。

背面时：选择“SUB ADJ”。

等倍度確認

原稿 (a) の線 (1) とコピーサンプルの線 (2) のずれを確認する。ずれが基準値外の場合は調整をおこなう。

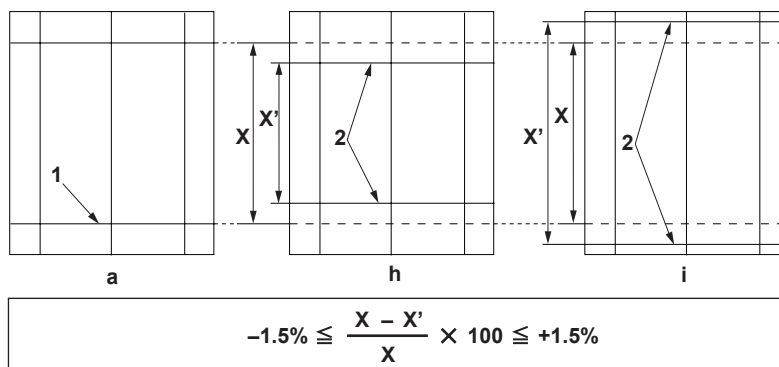
< 基準値 > $\pm 1.5\%$ 以内

DP 等倍度調整

1. メンテナンスモード U070 をセットし、調整をおこなう。

表面の場合：「MAIN ADJ」を選択する。

裏面の場合：「SUB ADJ」を選択する。



2. Change the setting value.

For copy example (h): Increase the setting value.

For copy example (i): Decrease the setting value.

Amount of change per step: 0.21 mm

3. Make a proof copy again.

4. Repeat steps 1 to 3 until line (2) of copy example shows the following reference values.

Reference value: Within $\pm 1.5\%$

2. Changez la valeur de réglage.

Pour l'exemple de copie (h): Augmentez la valeur de réglage.

Pour l'exemple de copie (i): Diminuez la valeur de réglage.

Quantité de changement par pas: 0,21 mm

3. Effectuez à nouveau une copie de test.

4. Répétez les étapes 1 à 3 jusqu'à ce que la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie corresponde aux valeurs de référence suivantes.

Valeur de référence: $\pm 1,5\%$ max.

2. Cambie el valor de configuración.

Para la copia de muestra (h): aumente el valor de configuración.

Para la copia de muestra (i): reduzca el valor de configuración.

Cantidad de cambio por paso: 0,21 mm

3. Haga otra copia de prueba.

4. Repita los pasos 1 a 3 hasta que la línea (2) de la copia de muestra tenga los siguientes valores de referencia.

Valor de referencia: Dentro de $\pm 1,5\%$

2. Den Einstellwert ändern.

Für Kopienmuster (h): Den Einstellwert erhöhen.

Für Kopienmuster (i): Den Einstellwert erniedrigen.

Änderungsbetrag pro Stufe: 0,21 mm

3. Eine erneute Probekopie anfertigen.

4. Die Schritte 1 bis 3 wiederholen, bis die Linie (2) des Kopienmusters die folgenden Bezugswerte aufweist.

Bezugswert: Innerhalb $\pm 1,5\%$

2. Cambiare il valore dell'impostazione.

Per un esempio di copia (h): aumentare il valore dell'impostazione.

Per un esempio di copia (i): diminuire il valore dell'impostazione.

Variazione graduale: 0,21 mm

3. Eseguire di nuovo una prova di copia.

4. Ripetere i passi da 1 a 3 fino a che la linea (2) dell'esempio di copia non mostra i seguenti valori di riferimento.

Valore di riferimento: Entro $\pm 1,5\%$

2. 調整設定値。

測印件 (h) 時：提高設定値。

測印件 (i) 時：降低設定値。

1 级的移动量：约 0.21mm

3. 再次进行测试复印。

4. 反复操作步骤 1 ~ 3，直至测印件的线 (2) 为标准值内。

< 标准值 > $\pm 1.5\%$ 以内

2. 設定値を調整する。

コピーサンプル (h) の場合：設定値を上げる

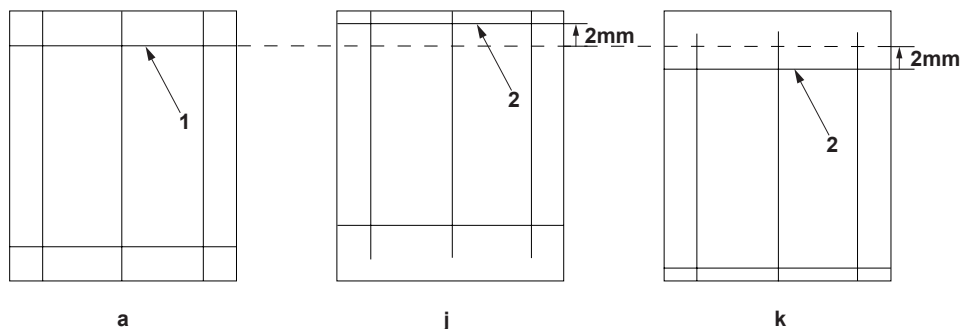
コピーサンプル (i) の場合：設定値を下げる

1 ステップの変化量：0.21mm

3. 再度テストコピーをおこなう。

4. コピーサンプルの線 (2) が基準値内になるまで、手順 1 ~ 3 を繰り返す。

< 基準値 > $\pm 1.5\%$ 以内



Checking the leading edge timing

Check the gap between line (1) of original (a) and line (2) of copy example. If the gap exceeds the reference value, perform the following adjustment.

Reference value: Within ± 2.0 mm

Adjusting the DP leading edge timing

1. Enter the maintenance mode and run the maintenance item U071 to adjust.

Select [ADJUST DATA1] to adjust both the simplex and duplex copying at once.

(Use [ADJUST DATA3] only if you need to adjust the duplex copying individually.)

Vérification de la synchronisation du bord avant

Vérifiez l'écart entre la ligne (1) de l'original (a) et la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart est supérieur à la valeur de référence, effectuez le réglage suivant.

Valeur de référence: $\pm 2,0$ max.

Réglage de la synchronisation du bord avant du DP

1. Passez en mode de maintenance et exécutez l'élément de maintenance U071 pour effectuer le réglage.

Sélectionnez [ADJUST DATA1] pour régler en une seule fois la copie recto seul et la copie recto verso.

(Utilisez [ADJUST DATA3] seulement si vous voulez régler la copie recto verso individuellement.)

Cambio de la sincronización de borde superior

Verifique la separación entre la línea (1) del original (a) y la línea (2) de la copia de muestra. Si la superación supera el valor de referencia, haga el siguiente ajuste.

Valor de referencia: Dentro de $\pm 2,0$ mm

Ajuste de la sincronización de borde superior del DP

1. Entre en el modo de mantenimiento e ingrese en el ítem de mantenimiento U071 para ajustar.

Seleccione [ADJUST DATA1] para ajustar ambas copias simple y duplex al mismo tiempo.

(Utilice [ADJUST DATA3] sólo si necesita ajustar el copiado duplex individualmente.)

Überprüfen des Vorderkanten-Timings

Die Abweichung der Linie (1) des Originals (a) und der Linie (2) des Kopienmusters prüfen. Überschreitet die Abweichung den Bezugswert, ist die folgende Einstellung durchzuführen.

Bezugswert: Innerhalb $\pm 2,0$ mm

Einstellen des DP-Vorderkanten-Timings

1. Den Wartungsmodus aktivieren, und den Wartungsposten U071 zur Einstellung ausführen.

Wählen Sie [ADJUST DATA1], um Simplex- und Duplexkopie auf einmal einzustellen.

(Verwenden Sie [ADJUST DATA3] nur, wenn Duplexkopie individuell eingestellt werden muss.)

Controllo della sincronizzazione del bordo principale

Controllare la differenza tra la linea (1) dell'originale (a) e la linea (2) della copia di esempio. Se la differenza supera il valore di riferimento, effettuare la seguente regolazione.

Valore di riferimento: Entro $\pm 2,0$ mm

Regolazione della sincronizzazione del bordo principale DP

1. Entrare in modalità manutenzione e avviare la voce di manutenzione U071 per la regolazione.

Selezionare [ADJUST DATA1] per regolare simultaneamente entrambe le copie simplex e duplex.

(Usare [ADJUST DATA3] solo se è necessario regolare la copia duplex singolarmente.)

确认前端定时调整

确认原稿 (a) 线 (1) 和复印件线 (2) 的偏移。如果超过标准值时, 必须进行调整。

< 标准值 > ± 2.0 mm 以内

DP 前端定时调整

1. 设定为 U071 维护模式, 进行调整。

选择“ADJUST DATA1”可同时调整单面和双面。

(只有在需要单独调整双面时才可以使使用“ADJUST DATA3”。)

先端タイミング確認

原稿 (a) の線 (1) とコピーサンプルの線 (2) のずれを確認する。ずれが基準値外の場合は調整をおこなう。

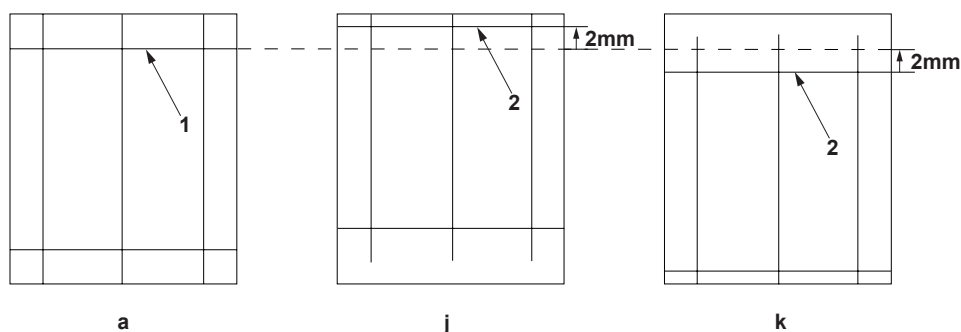
< 基準値 > ± 2.0 mm 以内

DP 先端タイミング調整

1. メンテナンスモード U071 をセットし、調整をおこなう。

「ADJUST DATA1」を選択する。(片面、両面同時に調整できる)

(両面コピーモードのみを調整する場合は、「ADJUST DATA3」を選択する。)



2. Change the setting value.

For copy example (j): Decrease the setting value.

For copy example (k): Increase the setting value.

Amount of change per step: 0.196 mm

3. Make a proof copy again.

4. Repeat steps 1 to 3 until line (2) of copy example shows the following the reference values.

Reference value: Within ± 2.0 mm

2. Changez la valeur de réglage.

Pour l'exemple de copie (j): Diminuez la valeur de réglage.

Pour l'exemple de copie (k): Augmentez la valeur de réglage.

Quantité de changement par pas: 0,196 mm

3. Effectuez à nouveau une copie de test.

4. Répétez les étapes 1 à 3 jusqu'à ce que la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie corresponde aux valeurs de référence suivantes.

Valeur de référence: $\pm 2,0$ max.

2. Cambio del valor de configuración.

Para la copia de muestra (j): Reduzca el valor de configuración.

Para la copia de muestra (k): Aumente el valor de configuración.

Cantidad de cambio por paso: 0,196 mm

3. Haga otra copia de prueba.

4. Repita los pasos 1 a 3 hasta que la línea (2) de la copia de muestra tenga los siguientes valores de referencia.

Valor de referencia: Dentro de $\pm 2,0$ mm

2. Den Einstellwert ändern.

Für Kopienmuster (j): Den Einstellwert erniedrigen.

Für Kopienmuster (k): Den Einstellwert erhöhen.

Änderungsbetrag pro Stufe: 0,196 mm

3. Eine erneute Probekopie anfertigen.

4. Die Schritte 1 bis 3 wiederholen, bis die Linie (2) des Kopienmusters die folgenden Bezugswerte aufweist.

Bezugswert: Innerhalb $\pm 2,0$ mm

2. Cambio del valore d'impostazione.

Per un esempio di copia (j): Diminuire il valore d'impostazione.

Per un esempio di copia (k): Aumentare il valore d'impostazione.

Variazione graduale: 0, 196 mm

3. Eseguire di nuovo una prova di copia.

4. Ripetere i passi da 1 a 3 fino a che la linea (2) dell'esempio di copia non mostra i seguenti valori di riferimento.

Valore di riferimento: Entro $\pm 2,0$ mm

2. 調整設定値。

測印件 (j) 時：提高設定値。

測印件 (k) 時：降低設定値。

1 级的移动量：约 0.196mm

3. 再次进行测试复印。

4. 反复操作步骤 1 ~ 3，直至测印件的线 (2) 为标准值内。

< 标准值 > ± 2.0 mm 以内

2. 設定値を調整する。

コピーサンプル (j) の場合：設定値を下げる

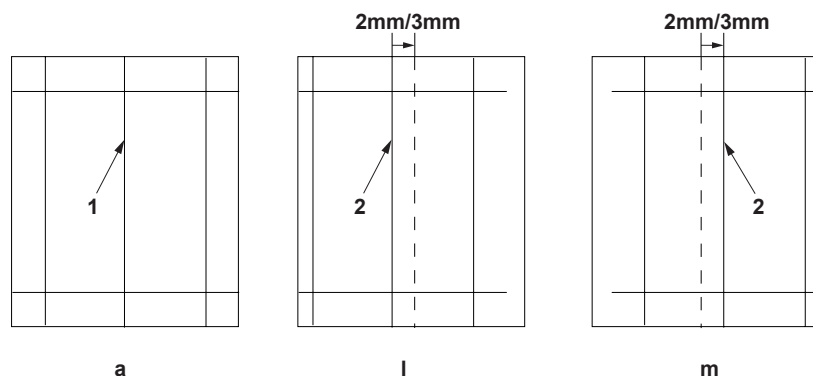
コピーサンプル (k) の場合：設定値を上げる

1 ステップの変化量：0.196mm

3. 再度テストコピーをおこなう。

4. コピーサンプルの線 (2) が基準値内になるまで、手順 1 ~ 3 を繰り返す。

< 基準値 > ± 2.0 mm 以内



Checking the center line

Check the gap between line (1) of original (a) and line (2) of copy example. If the gap exceeds the reference value, perform the following adjustment.

<Reference value>

For simplex copying: Within ± 2.0 mm

For duplex copying: Within ± 3.0 mm

Adjusting the DP center line

1. Enter the maintenance mode and run the maintenance item U072 to adjust.

For models with color touch panel

Select [ADJUST DATA1] to adjust both the simplex and duplex copying at once.

(Use [ADJUST DATA2] only if you need to adjust the second side of duplex copying individually.)

For models with monochrome touch panel

Select [DATA(simplex)] to adjust both the simplex and duplex copying at once.

(Use [DATA(duplex 1)] only if you need to adjust the first side of duplex copying individually.)

(Use [DATA(duplex 2)] only if you need to adjust the second side of duplex copying individually.)

Vérification de la ligne médiane

Vérifiez l'écart entre la ligne (1) de l'original (a) et la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart est supérieur à la valeur de référence, effectuez le réglage suivant.

<Valeur de référence>

Copie recto seul: $\pm 2,0$ mm max.

Copie recto verso: $\pm 3,0$ mm max.

Réglage de la ligne médiane du DP

1. Passez en mode de maintenance et exécutez l'élément de maintenance U072 pour effectuer le réglage.

Pour les modèles équipés d'un écran tactile couleur

Sélectionnez [ADJUST DATA1] pour régler en une seule fois la copie recto seul et la copie recto verso. (Utilisez [ADJUST DATA2] uniquement si vous voulez régler individuellement le verso de la copie recto verso.)

Pour les modèles équipés d'un écran tactile monochrome

Sélectionnez [DATA(simplex)] pour régler en une seule fois la copie recto seul et la copie recto verso. (Utilisez [DATA(duplex 1)] uniquement si vous voulez régler individuellement le recto de la copie recto verso.)

(Utilisez [DATA(duplex 2)] uniquement si vous voulez régler individuellement le verso de la copie recto verso.)

Verificación de la línea central

Verifique la separación entre la línea (1) del original (a) y la línea (2) de la copia de muestra. Si la superación supera el valor de referencia, haga el siguiente ajuste.

<Valor de referencia>

Para copia simple: Dentro de $\pm 2,0$ mm

Para copia duplex: Dentro de $\pm 3,0$ mm

Ajuste de la línea central del DP

1. Entre en el modo de mantenimiento e ingrese en el ítem de mantenimiento U072 para ajustar.

Para modelos con panel de toque de color

Seleccione [ADJUST DATA1] para ajustar ambas copias simple y duplex al mismo tiempo. (Utilice [ADJUST DATA2] sólo si necesita ajustar individualmente el segundo lado de la copia duplex.)

Para modelos con panel de toque monocromático

Seleccione [DATA(simplex)] para ajustar ambas copias simple y duplex al mismo tiempo.

(Utilice [DATA(duplex 1)] sólo si necesita ajustar individualmente el primer lado de la copia duplex.)

(Utilice [DATA(duplex 2)] sólo si necesita ajustar individualmente el segundo lado de la copia duplex.)

Überprüfen der Mittellinie

Die Abweichung der Linie (1) des Originals (a) und der Linie (2) des Kopienmusters prüfen. Überschreitet die Abweichung den Bezugswert, ist die folgende Einstellung durchzuführen.

<Bezugswert>

Für Simplexkopie: Innerhalb $\pm 2,0$ mm

Für Duplexkopie: Innerhalb $\pm 3,0$ mm

Einstellen der DP-Mittellinie

1. Den Wartungsmodus aktivieren, und den Wartungsposten U072 zur Einstellung ausführen.

Für Modelle mit Farb-Sensorbildschirm

Wählen Sie [ADJUST DATA1], um Simplex- und Duplexkopie auf einmal einzustellen. (Verwenden Sie [ADJUST DATA2] nur, wenn die zweite Seite der Duplexkopie individuell eingestellt werden muss.)

Für Modelle mit Monochrom-Sensorbildschirm

Wählen Sie [DATA(simplex)], um Simplex- und Duplexkopie auf einmal einzustellen.

(Verwenden Sie [DATA(duplex 1)] nur, wenn die erste Seite der Duplexkopie individuell eingestellt werden muss.)

(Verwenden Sie [DATA(duplex 2)] nur, wenn die zweite Seite der Duplexkopie individuell eingestellt werden muss.)

Controllo della linea centrale

Controllare la differenza tra la linea (1) dell'originale (a) e la linea (2) della copia di esempio. Se la differenza supera il valore di riferimento, effettuare la seguente regolazione.

<Valore di riferimento>

Per copia simplex: Entro $\pm 2,0$ mm

Per copia duplex: Entro $\pm 3,0$ mm

Regolazione della linea centrale del DP

1. Entrare in modalità manutenzione e avviare la voce di manutenzione U072 per la regolazione.

Per i modelli con pannello a sfioramento a colori

Selezionare [ADJUST DATA1] per regolare simultaneamente entrambe le copie simplex e duplex.

(Usare [ADJUST DATA2] solo se è necessario regolare il secondo lato della copia duplex singolarmente.)

Per i modelli con pannello monocromatico a sfioramento

Selezionare [DATA(simplex)] per regolare simultaneamente entrambe le copie simplex e duplex.

(Usare [DATA(duplex 1)] solo se è necessario regolare il primo lato della copia duplex singolarmente.)

(Usare [DATA(duplex 2)] solo se è necessario regolare il secondo lato della copia duplex singolarmente.)

确认中心线

确认原稿 (a) 线 (1) 和测印件线 (2) 的偏移。如果超过标准值时, 必须进行调整。

<标准值>

单面时: ± 2.0 mm 以内

双面时: ± 3.0 mm 以内

调整 DP 中心线

1. 选定维护模式 U072, 进行调整。

彩色触摸面板时

选择“ADJUST DATA1”可同时调整单面和双面。
(只限于调整双背面时, 选择“ADJUST DATA2”。)

黑白触摸屏板时

选择“DATA(simplex)”同时调整单面和双面。
(只限于调整双表面时, 选择“DATA(duplex 1)”.)
(只限于调整双背面时, 选择“DATA(duplex 2)”.)

センターライン確認

原稿 (a) のセンターライン (1) とコピーサンプルのセンターライン (2) のずれを確認する。ずれが基準値外の場合は調整をおこなう。

<基準値>

片面の場合: ± 2.0 mm 以内

両面の場合: ± 3.0 mm 以内

DP センターライン調整

1. メンテナンスモード U072 をセットし、調整をおこなう。

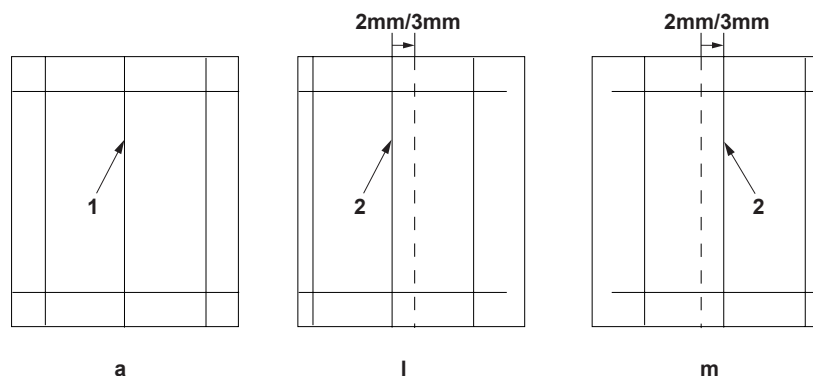
カラータッチパネル機の場合

「ADJUST DATA1」を選択する。(片面、両面同時に調整できる)
(両面裏面のみを調整する場合は、「ADJUST DATA2」を選択する。)

モノクロタッチパネル機の場合

「DATA(片面)」を選択する。(片面、両面同時に調整できる)

(両面表面のみを調整する場合は、「DATA(両面表)」を選択する。)
(両面裏面のみを調整する場合は、「DATA(両面裏)」を選択する。)



2. Change the setting value.

For copy example (l): Increase the setting value.
For copy example (m): Decrease the setting value.
Amount of change per step: 0.086 mm

3. Make a proof copy again.

4. Repeat steps 1 to 3 until line (2) of copy example shows the following the reference values.

<Reference value>

For simplex copying: Within ± 2.0 mm

For duplex copying: Within ± 3.0 mm

2. Changez la valeur de réglage.

Pour l'exemple de copie (l): Augmentez la valeur de réglage.
Pour l'exemple de copie (m): Diminuez la valeur de réglage.
Quantité de changement par pas: 0,086 mm

3. Effectuez à nouveau une copie de prueba.

4. Répétez les étapes 1 à 3 jusqu'à ce que la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie corresponde aux valeurs de référence suivantes.

<Valeur de référence>

Copie recto seul: $\pm 2,0$ mm max.

Copie recto verso: $\pm 3,0$ mm max.

2. Cambie el valor de configuración.

Para la copia de muestra (l): Aumente el valor de configuración.
Para la copia de muestra (m): Reduzca el valor de configuración.
Cantidad de cambio por paso: 0,086 mm

3. Haga otra copia de prueba.

4. Repita los pasos 1 a 3 hasta que la línea (2) de la copia de muestra tenga los siguientes valores de referencia.

<Valor de referencia>

Para copia simple: Dentro de $\pm 2,0$ mm

Para copia duplex: Dentro de $\pm 3,0$ mm

2. Den Einstellwert ändern.

Für Kopienmuster (l): Den Einstellwert erhöhen.
Für Kopienmuster (m): Den Einstellwert erniedrigen.
Änderungsbetrag pro Stufe: 0,086 mm

3. Eine erneute Probekopie anfertigen.

4. Die Schritte 1 bis 3 wiederholen, bis die Linie (2) des Kopienmusters die folgenden Bezugswerte aufweist.

<Bezugswert>

Für Simplexkopie: Innerhalb $\pm 2,0$ mm

Für Duplexkopie: Innerhalb $\pm 3,0$ mm

2. Cambiare il valore dell'impostazione.

Per un esempio di copia (l): Aumentare il valore dell'impostazione.
Per un esempio di copia (m): Diminuire il valore dell'impostazione.
Variazione graduale: 0,086 mm

3. Eseguire di nuovo una prova di copia.

4. Ripetere i passi da 1 a 3 fino a che la linea (2) dell'esempio di copia non mostra i seguenti valori di riferimento.

<Valore di riferimento>

Per copia simplex: Entro $\pm 2,0$ mm

Per copia duplex: Entro $\pm 3,0$ mm

2. 調整設定値。

測印件 (l) 時：提高設定値。
測印件 (m) 時：降低設定値。
1 级的移动量：约 0.086mm

3. 再次进行测试复印。

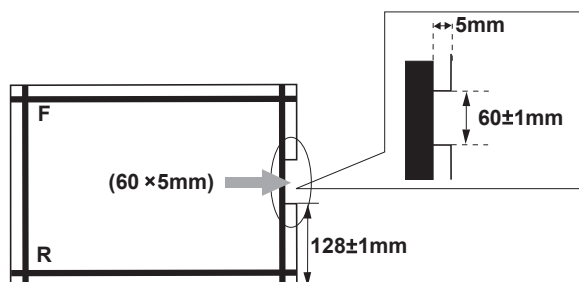
4. 反复操作步骤 1 ~ 3，直至测印件的线 (2) 为标准值内。
<标准值>
单面时： ± 2.0 mm 以内
双面时： ± 3.0 mm 以内

2. 設定値を調整する。

コピーサンプル (l) の場合：設定値を上げる
コピーサンプル (m) の場合：設定値を下げる
1 ステップの変化量：0.086mm

3. 再度テストコピーをおこなう。

4. コピーサンプルのセンターライン (2) が基準値内になるまで、手順 1 ~ 3 を繰り返す。
<基準値>
片面の場合： ± 2.0 mm 以内
両面の場合： ± 3.0 mm 以内



Automatic adjustment using the original for adjustment

Before performing this adjustment, be sure to adjust the angle of leading edge and the angle of trailing edge (see pages 8 and 11).

1. Cut the trailing edge of an original for adjustment as shown in a figure.
2. Place the original for adjustment in the DP with the F and R surface up.
3. Enter the maintenance mode and run the maintenance item U411. Select [DP], press [INPUT] and then press the start key.
Adjustments of the DP magnification, DP leading edge timing and DP center line are performed automatically.
4. When [RESULT OK 00] is displayed, the adjustments are properly completed. If a problem occurs during automatic adjustments, [ERROR XX] (XX is replaced with an error code) is displayed.
Check the original set position and repeat the steps 2 to 3 until [RESULT OK 00] is displayed. For details, see the service manual.

Réglage automatique en utilisant l'original pour effectuer le réglage

Avant d'effectuer ce réglage, veiller à régler l'angle du bord avant et l'angle du bord arrière (se reporter aux pages 8 et 11).

1. Découpez le bord arrière de l'original utilisé pour le réglage comme indiqué sur l'illustration.
2. Placez l'original utilisé pour le réglage dans le DP, en orientant les surfaces F et R vers le haut.
3. Passez en mode de maintenance et exécutez l'élément de maintenance U411. Sélectionnez [DP], appuyez sur [INPUT], puis appuyez sur la touche de démarrer.
Les réglages de l'agrandissement du DP, de la synchronisation du bord avant du DP et de la ligne médiane du DP sont alors effectués automatiquement.
4. Lorsque [RESULT OK 00] s'affiche, les réglages ont été accomplis correctement. Si une anomalie se produit pendant la réalisation des réglages automatiques, le message [ERROR XX] (XX désignant le code d'erreur) s'affiche.
Vérifiez la position de mise en place de l'original et répétez les étapes 2 et 3 jusqu'à ce que [RESULT OK 00] s'affiche. Pour plus de détails, reportez-vous au manuel de service.

Ajuste automático utilizando el original para el ajuste

Antes de hacer el ajuste, asegúrese de ajustar el ángulo del borde superior y el ángulo del borde inferior (vea las páginas 8 y 11).

1. Corte el borde inferior de un original para el ajuste como se indica en la figura.
2. Coloque el original para el ajuste en el DP con la superficie F y R arriba.
3. Entre en el modo de mantenimiento e ingrese en el ítem de mantenimiento U411. Seleccione [DP], presione [INPUT] y presione la tecla de inicio.
Los ajustes de cambio de tamaño de DP, sincronización de borde superior d DP y línea central de DP se hacen automáticamente.
4. Cuando aparece [RESULT OK 00], se completa correctamente el ajuste. Si se produce un problema durante los ajustes automáticos, aparece [ERROR XX] (donde XX cambia por un código de error).
Verifique la posición de colocación del original y repita los pasos 2 a 3 hasta que aparezca [RESULT OK 00]. Para más detalles, vea el manual de servicio.

Automatische Einstellung mithilfe des Originals

Bevor diese Einstellung durchgeführt wird, muss der Winkel der Vorder- und Hinterkante eingestellt werden (siehe die Seiten 8 und 11).

1. Die Vorderkante eines Originals für die Einstellung einschneiden, wie in der Abbildung gezeigt.
2. Das Original für die Einstellung mit der Fläche F und R nach oben in den DP einlegen.
3. Den Wartungsmodus aktivieren, und den Wartungsposten U411 ausführen. [DP] wählen, [INPUT] drücken, und dann die Start drücken.
Die Einstellungen von DP-Vergrößerung, DP-Vorderkanten-Timing und DP-Mittellinie werden automatisch durchgeführt.
4. Wenn [RESULT OK 00] angezeigt wird, sind die Einstellungen ordnungsgemäß abgeschlossen. Falls während der automatischen Einstellungen eine Störung auftritt, wird [ERROR XX] (XX wird durch einen Fehlercode ersetzt) angezeigt.
Die Original-Einlegeposition überprüfen, und die Schritte 2 bis 3 wiederholen, bis [RESULT OK 00] angezeigt wird. Einzelheiten sind der Wartungsanleitung zu entnehmen.

Regolazione automatica eseguita con l'originale

Prima di eseguire questa regolazione, verificare che l'angolo del bordo principale e l'angolo del bordo di uscita siano regolati (vedere le pagine 8 e 11).

1. Tagliare il bordo di uscita di un originale per la regolazione come si vede nel disegno.
2. Collocare l'originale per la regolazione nel DP con la superficie F e R rivolta verso l'alto.
3. Entrare in modalità manutenzione e avviare la voce di manutenzione U411. Selezionare [DP], premere [INPUT] e poi premere il tasto di avvio.
Le regolazioni dell'ingrandimento DP, della sincronizzazione del bordo principale e della linea centrale del DP saranno eseguite automaticamente.
4. Quando [RESULT OK 00] viene visualizzato, le regolazioni sono state completate correttamente. Se durante le regolazioni automatiche si verifica qualche problema, nel display viene visualizzato [ERROR XX] (XX viene sostituito da un codice di errore).
Controllare la posizione d'impostazione dell'originale e ripetere i passi da 2 a 3 fino a che [RESULT OK 00] non viene visualizzato. Per ulteriori dettagli, vedere il manuale d'istruzioni.

通过调整用原稿进行自动调整

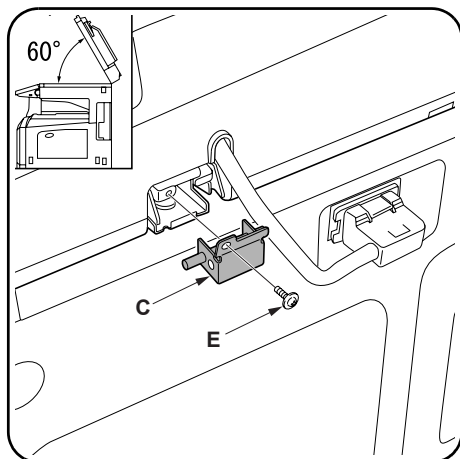
先完成前端倾斜和后端倾斜的调整后, 再进行以下操作。(参照第 8 页和第 11 页)

1. 按图所示切断调整用原稿的后端。
2. 记有 F 和 R 的面朝上, 将调整用原稿放在 DP 上。
3. 选定维修模式 U411。选择“DP”, 按下“INPUT”, 再按下起按键。
自动进行等倍值、前端定时、中心线的调整。
4. 自动调整正常结束时显示出“RESULT OK 00”表示。执行调整中发生异常时、显示出“ERROR XX”。
确认原稿设定位置后, 再次进行调整(详情请参照维修手册)。

調整用原稿による自動調整

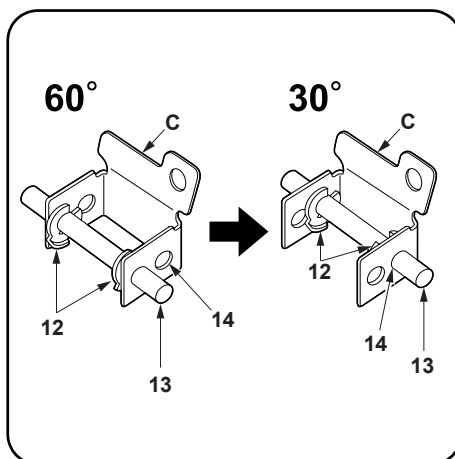
先端斜め調整および後端斜め調整をおこなってから実施する。(8 ページ、11 ページ参照)

1. 調整用原稿の後端をイラストのようにカットする。
2. F・R が記載されている面を上にして、調整用原稿を DP にセットする。
3. メンテナンスモード U411 をセットする。「DP」を選択し、「INPUT」を押して次にスタートキーを押す。
等倍度・先端タイミング・センターライン調整が自動的にこなわれる。
4. 自動調整が正常に終了すると「RESULT OK 00」が表示される。調整実行中にエラーが発生した場合は、「ERROR XX」が表示される。
原稿のセット位置を確認し、再度調整をおこなう(詳細はサービスマニュアル参照)。



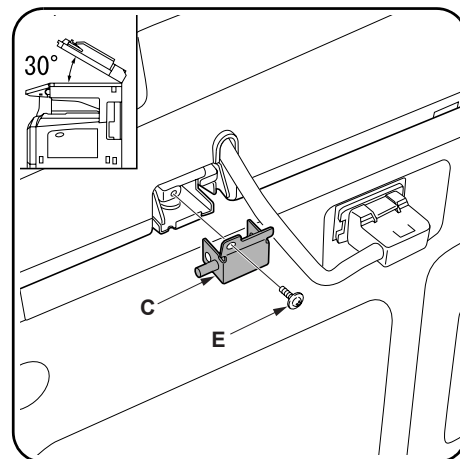
**Adjusting the DP open/close angle
To adjust the DP open/close angle to 60
degrees**

1. Insert the angle adjusting plate (C) and fit it using M4 × 14 screw (E).



**To adjust the DP open/close angle to 30
degrees**

1. Remove two stop rings (12) and pull the shaft (13) out.
2. Insert the shaft (13) into the holes (14) and refit two stop rings (12).



3. Insert the angle adjusting plate (C) and fit it using M4 × 14 screw (E).

**Réglage de l'angle d'ouverture/
fermeture du DP**

**Pour régler l'angle d'ouverture/fermeture du
DP à 60 degrés**

1. Insérez la plaque de réglage d'angle (C), et fixez-la à l'aide d'une vis M4 × 14 (E).

**Pour régler l'angle d'ouverture/fermeture du
DP à 30 degrés**

1. Retirez deux bagues d'arrêt (12) et tirez l'arbre (13) vers l'extérieur.
2. Insérez l'arbre (13) dans les orifices (14) et remettez les deux bagues d'arrêt (12) en place.

3. Insérez la plaque de réglage d'angle (C), et fixez-la à l'aide d'une vis M4 × 14 (E).

**Ajuste del ángulo de apertura/cierre del
DP**

**Para ajustar el ángulo de apertura/cierre del
DP a 60 grados**

1. Inserte la placa de ajuste de ángulo (C) y fije con el tornillo M4 × 14 (E).

**Para ajustar el ángulo de apertura/cierre del
DP a 30 grados**

1. Desmonte los dos aros de tope (12) y tire del eje (13) hacia fuera.
2. Inserte el eje (13) en los orificios (14) y vuelva a colocar los dos aros de tope (12).

3. Inserte la placa de ajuste de ángulo (C) y fije con el tornillo M4 × 14 (E).

**Einstellen des DP-Öffnungs-/
Schließungswinkels**

**Einstellung des DP-Öffnungs-/
Schließungswinkels auf 60 Grad**

1. Den Winkleinstellhalter (C) einsetzen und mit einer M4 × 14 Schraube (E) befestigen.

**Einstellung des DP-Öffnungs-/
Schließungswinkels auf 30 Grad**

1. Die zwei Sicherungsringe (12) entfernen, und die Achse (13) herausziehen.
2. Die Achse (13) in die Löcher (14) einführen, und die zwei Sicherungsringe (12) wieder anbringen.

3. Den Winkleinstellhalter (C) einsetzen und mit einer M4 × 14 Schraube (E) befestigen.

**Regolazione dell'angolo di apertura e
chiusura del DP**

**Per regolare l'angolo di apertura e chiusura
del DP a 60 gradi**

1. Inserire la piastra di regolazione dell'angolo (C) e fissarla con una vite M4 × 14 (E).

**Per regolare l'angolo di apertura e chiusura
del DP a 30 gradi**

1. Rimuovere i due anelli di arresto (12) ed estrarre l'albero (13).
2. Inserire l'albero (13) nei fori (14) e fissare nuovamente i due anelli di arresto (12).

3. Inserire la piastra di regolazione dell'angolo (C) e fissarla con una vite M4 × 14 (E).

調整 DP の角度

設定 60 度の DP 開閉角度時

1. 調整板 (C) を挿入し、ビス M4 × 14 (E) 1 本で固定する。

設定 30 度の DP 角度時

1. 拆下 2 个止动环 (12)，拔下轴 (13)。
2. 将轴 (13) 插入孔 (14)，并将 2 个止动环 (12) 按原样装好。

3. 插入调整板 (C)，用 1 个螺丝 M4 × 14 (E) 进行固定。

DP 開閉角度の調整

DP 開閉角度を 60° に設定する場合

1. 調整板 (C) を挿入し、ビス M4 × 14 (E) 1 本で固定する。

DP 開閉角度を 30° に設定する場合

1. ストップリング (12) 2 個を外し、軸 (13) を引き抜く。
2. 軸 (13) を穴 (14) に挿入し、ストップリング (12) 2 個を元通り取り付け。

3. 調整板 (C) を挿入し、ビス M4 × 14 (E) 1 本で固定する。

INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR PAPER FEEDER

CAUTION

ATTENTION

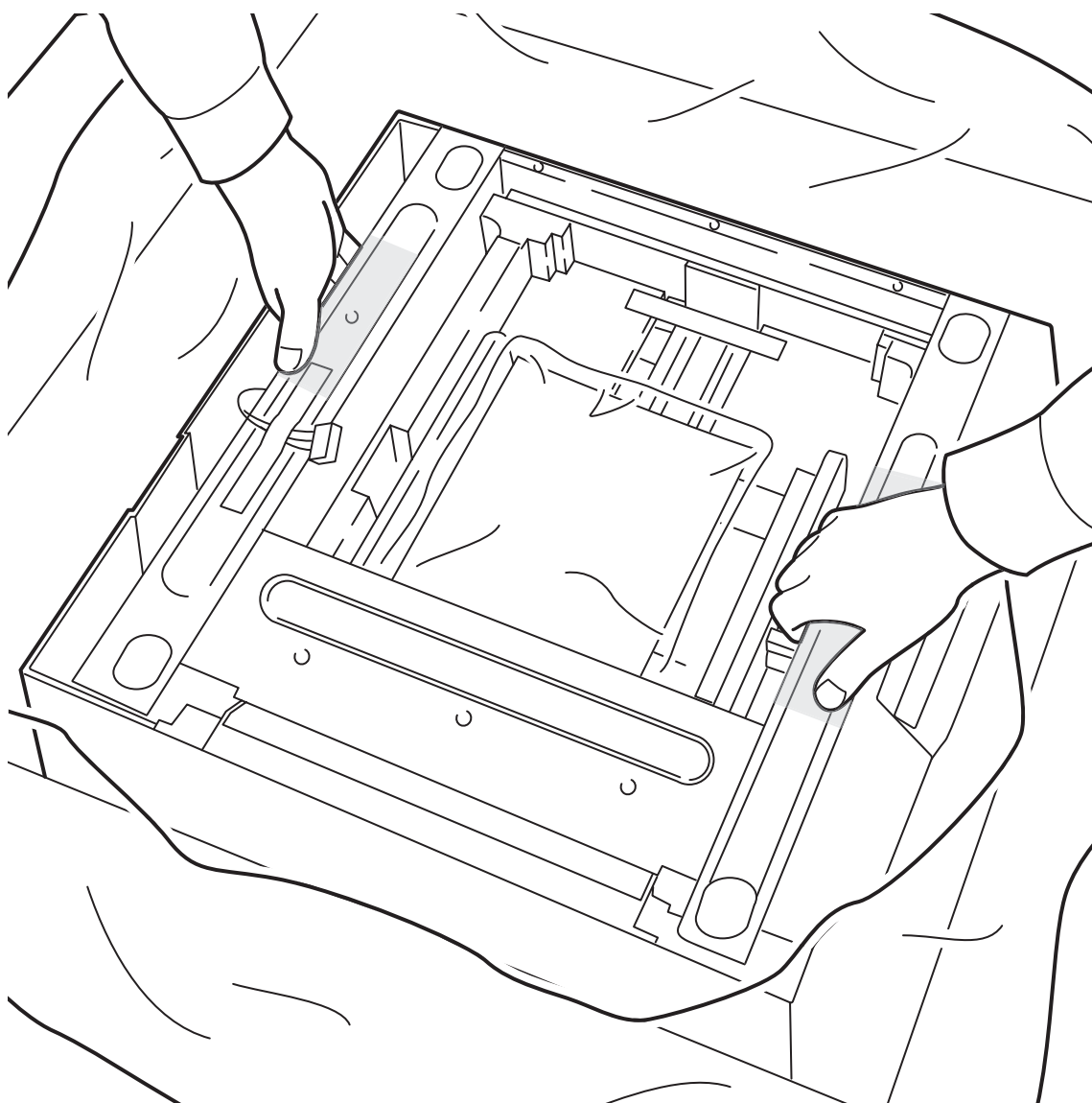
PRECAUCION

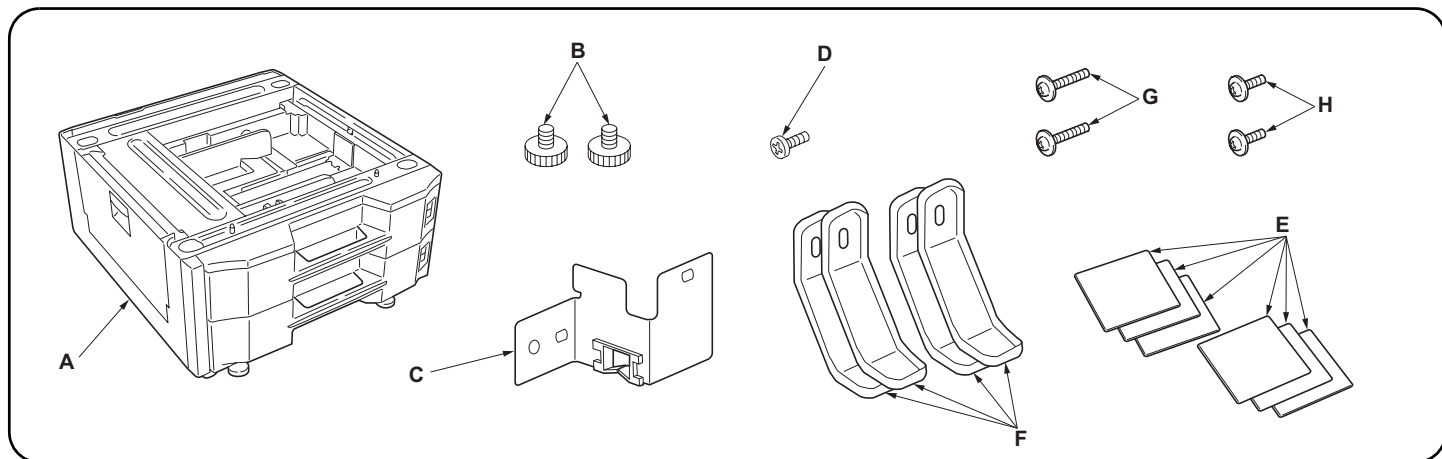
VORSICHT

ATTENZIONE

注 意

注 意





English

Supplied parts

A	Paper feeder	1
B	Pin	2
C	Joint plate	1
D	M3 × 6 screw	1
E	Paper size card	6

F	Stay	4
G	M4 × 20 screw	2
H	M4 × 10 screw	2

Use the paper size card (E) which is the same specification paper size used in the machine.

Français

Pièces fournies

A	Bureau papier	1
B	Broches	2
C	Plaque de raccord	1
D	Vis M3 × 6	1
E	Cartes de format de papier	6

F	Supports	4
G	Vis M4 × 20	2
H	Vis M4 × 10	2

Utiliser la carte de format de papier (E) possédant le même format de papier que celui spécifié pour la machine.

Español

Partes suministradas

A	Alimentador de papel	1
B	Clavija	2
C	Placa de unión	1
D	Tornillo M3 × 6	1
E	Tarjeta de tamaño de papel	6

F	Base	4
G	Tornillo M4 × 20	2
H	Tornillo M4 × 10	2

Utilice la tarjeta de tamaño de papel (E) que sea del mismo tamaño de papel especificado utilizado en la máquina.

Deutsch

Gelieferte Teile

A	Papiereinzug	1
B	Stift	2
C	Verbindungsplatte	1
D	M3 × 6 Schraube	1
E	Papierformatkarte	6

F	Stütze	4
G	M4 × 20 Schraube	2
H	M4 × 10 Schraube	2

Benutzen Sie die Papierformatkarte (E), deren Format mit demjenigen des für die Maschine vorgeschriebenen Papiers übereinstimmt.

Italiano

Parti di fornitura

A	Unità di alimentazione della carta	1
B	Perno	2
C	Piastra di giunzione	1
D	Vite M3 × 6	1
E	Scheda formato carta	6

F	Sospensione	4
G	Vite M4 × 20	2
H	Vite M4 × 10	2

Utilizzare la scheda formato carta (E) corrispondente al formato carta utilizzato nella macchina.

简体中文

同装品

A	供纸盒	1
B	固定插销	2
C	连接金属件	1
D	螺丝 M3 × 6	1

E	复印纸	6
F	防倒金属件	4
G	螺丝 M4 × 20	2
H	螺丝 M4 × 10	2

请使用与机器本体的用纸尺寸相同规格的复印纸 (E)。

日本語

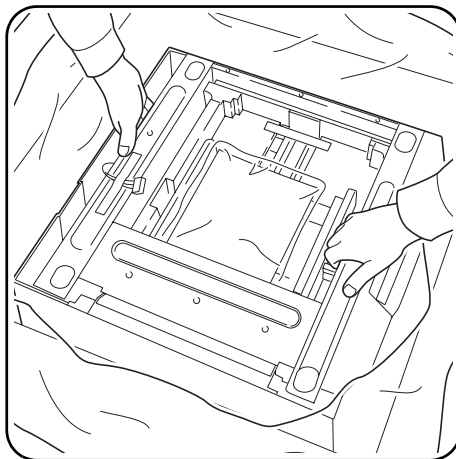
同梱品

A	ペーパーフィーダ	1
B	ピン	2
C	接続金具	1
D	ビス M3 × 6	1

E	用紙シート	6
F	転倒防止金具 (100V 仕様では使用しない)	4
G	ビス M4 × 20 (100V 仕様では使用しない)	2
H	ビス M4 × 10 (100V 仕様では使用しない)	2

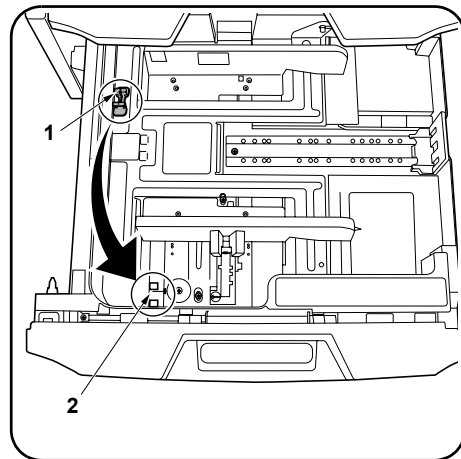
用紙シート (E) は、機械本体の用紙サイズと同じ仕様のシートを使用してください。

www.tonerplus.com.ua



Precaution for unpacking

Hold the positions shown in the figure and remove the paper feeder from the outer case.



Procedure

Releasing lift plate stopper

1. Pull each cassette out and then remove the lift plate stopper (1) from each cassette and attach it to the storage location (2).
2. Gently close each cassette.

Precautions

- Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning material from supplied parts.
- Before installing the paper feeder, be sure to turn the main power switch of the machine off and unplug the power cable from the wall outlet.

Précautions

- Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.
- Avant d'installer le bureau papier, veiller à mettre la machine hors tension et à débrancher le câble d'alimentation de la prise murale.

Précaution pour le déballage

Saisir les emplacements indiqués sur l'illustration et retirer le bureau papier du boîtier extérieur.

Procédure

Libération de la butée de plaque d'élévation

1. Tirer chaque tiroir vers l'extérieur puis retirer la butée de plaque d'élévation (1) de chaque tiroir et la fixer à l'emplacement de rangement (2).
2. Refermer progressivement chaque tiroir.

Precauciones

- Asegúrese de despegar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.
- Antes de instalar el alimentador de papel, asegúrese de desconectar el interruptor principal de la máquina y desenchufar el cable eléctrico del tomacorriente de la pared.

Precauciones para el desembalaje

Sujete por las posiciones indicadas en la figura y desmonte el alimentador de papel de la caja de embalaje.

Procedimiento

Soltado del tope de placa de elevación

1. Abra la bandeja y quite el tope de la placa de elevación (1) de cada bandeja y colóquela en su lugar de depósito (2).
2. Cierre suavemente cada bandeja.

Vorsichtsmaßnahmen

- Entfernen Sie Klebeband und/oder Dämpfungsmaterial vollständig von den mitgelieferten Teilen.
- Schalten Sie unbedingt den Betriebsschalter der Maschine aus, und trennen Sie das Netzkabel von der Netzsteckdose, bevor Sie den Papiereinzug installieren.

Vorsichtsmaßnahme beim Auspacken

Halten Sie den Papiereinzug an den in der Abbildung gezeigten Stellen, und heben Sie ihn aus dem äußeren Karton heraus.

Verfahren

Lösen des Hebeplattenanschlages

1. Die einzelnen Kassetten herausziehen, dann den Hebeplattenanschlag (1) von jeder Kasette entfernen und an der Speicherposition (2) anbringen.
2. Alle Kassetten sanft schließen.

Precauzioni

- Accertarsi di rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/ o il materiale di imbottitura dalle parti fornite.
- Prima di installare l'unità di alimentazione della carta, assicurarsi di spegnere l'interruttore principale di alimentazione della macchina e scollegare la spina del cavo di alimentazione dalla presa a muro della rete elettrica.

Precauzioni per il disinballaggio

Mantenere le posizioni indicate nella figura e rimuovere l'unità di alimentazione della carta dall'involucro esterno.

Procedura

Rimozione del fermo della piastra di sollevamento

1. Estrarre ciascun cassetto e poi rimuovere il fermo della piastra di sollevamento (1) da ciascun cassetto e fissarlo nella posizione di immagazzinaggio (2).
2. Chiudere delicatamente ciascun cassetto.

注意事項

- 如果同裝品上帶有固定膠帶、緩衝材料時務必揭下。
- 安裝供紙盒時，必須先關閉機器主機上的主電源開關，並拔下電源插頭後再進行工作。

開包時的注意事項

開包時，拿住圖示的位置從外箱內取出。

安裝步驟

解除升降板的固定

1. 拉出各供紙盒，拆下各 1 個升降板擋塊 (1)，並安裝在保管場所 (2) 上。
2. 輕輕地推入各供紙盒。

注意事項

- 同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材が付いている場合は必ず取り外すこと。
- ペーパーフィーダを設置する場合は、機械本体の主電源スイッチを OFF にし、電源プラグを抜いてから作業をおこなう。

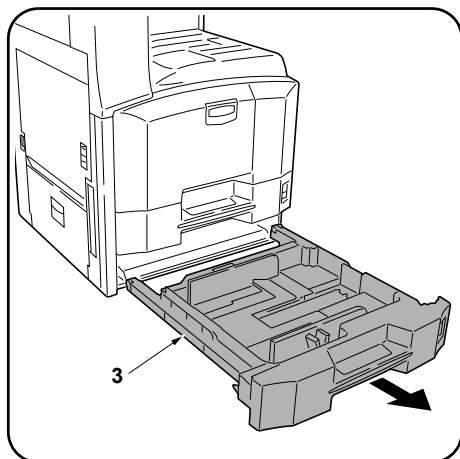
開梱時の注意

開梱時は、イラストの位置を持って外ケースから取り出す。

設置手順

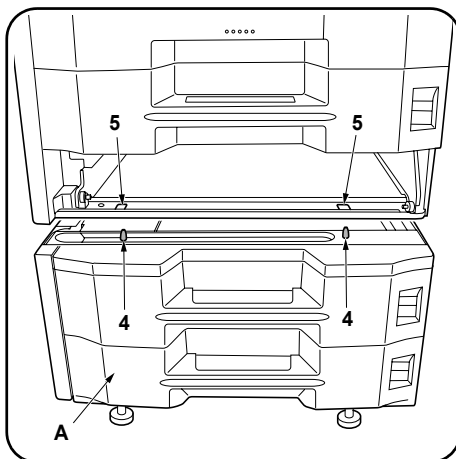
リフト板の固定解除

1. 各カセットを引き出し、リフト板ストップ (1) の各 1 個を外して保管場所 (2) に取り付ける。
2. 各カセットを静かに押し込む。

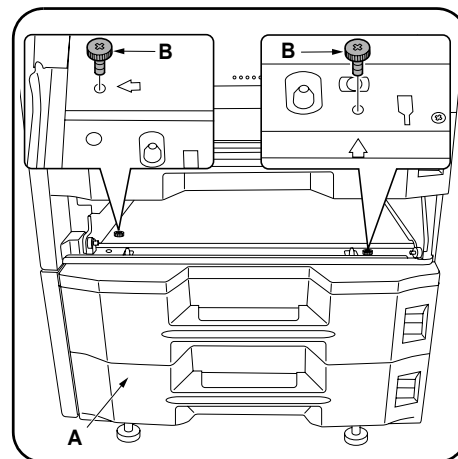


Installing the paper feeder

3. Pull out and remove cassette 2 (3) from the machine.



4. Place the machine on the paper feeder (A) to fit the positioning pins (4) at the front left and right of the paper feeder to the holes (5) in the machine.



5. Fix the machine using two pins (B).
6. Insert cassette 2 (3) into the machine.

Installation du bureau papier

3. Tirer le tiroir 2 (3) hors de la machine.

4. Placer la machine sur le bureau papier (A) pour engager les broches de positionnement (4) situées des côtés avant gauche et droit du bureau papier dans les orifices (5) de la machine.

5. Fixer la machine à l'aide de deux broches (B).
6. Insérer le tiroir 2 (3) dans la machine.

Instalación del alimentador de papel

3. Quite y desmonte la bandeja 2 (3) de la máquina.

4. Coloque la máquina sobre el alimentador de papel (A) para que se introduzcan las clavijas de posicionamiento (4) en el lado delantero izquierdo y derecho del alimentador de papel en los orificios (5) en la máquina.

5. Fije la máquina utilizando dos clavijas (B).
6. Coloque la bandeja 2 (3) en la máquina.

Installieren des Papiereinzugs

3. Die Kassette 2 (3) herausziehen und von der Maschine entfernen.

4. Die Maschine so auf den Papiereinzug (A) setzen, dass die Passstifte (4) auf der linken und rechten Vorderseite des Papiereinzugs in den Löchern (5) der Maschine sitzen.

5. Die Maschine mit den zwei Stiften (B) befestigen.
6. Die Kassette 2 (3) in die Maschine einsetzen.

Installazione dell'unità di alimentazione della carta

3. Estrarre e rimuovere il cassetto 2 (3) dalla macchina.

4. Installare la macchina sopra l'unità di alimentazione della carta (A) in modo da mantenere i perni di posizionamento (4) situati sul lato anteriore sinistro e destro dell'unità di alimentazione della carta stessa allineati ai fori (5) nella macchina.

5. Fissare la macchina utilizzando due perni (B).
6. Inserire il cassetto 2 (3) nella macchina.

供紙盒的安装

3. 取出机器主机上的供纸盒 2 (3)。

4. 供纸盒前侧的左右插销 (4) 分别对准机器主机的各相应销孔 (5) 后, 将机器主机放在供纸盒 (A) 上。

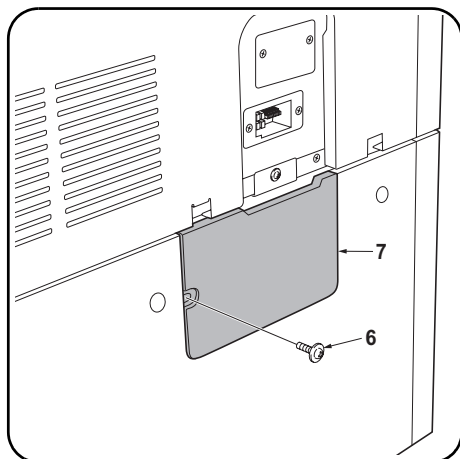
5. 用 2 个固定插销 (B) 固定机器主机。
6. 将供纸盒 2 (3) 装回原来的位置。

ペーパーフィーダの設置

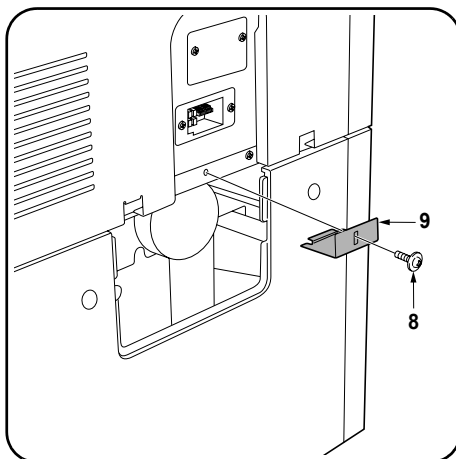
3. 機械本体のカセット 2 (3) を引き抜く。

4. ペーパーフィーダ前側の左右のピン (4) と機械本体の穴 (5) が一致するように、機械本体をペーパーフィーダ (A) にのせる。

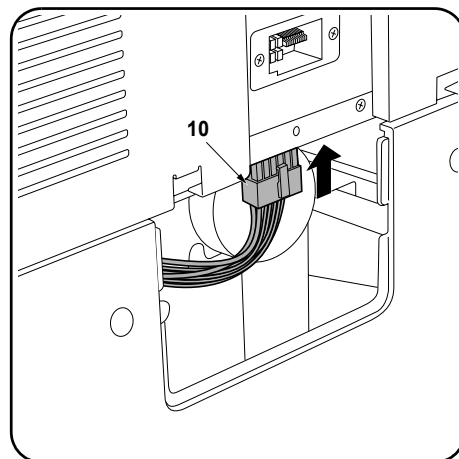
5. ピン (B) 2 本で機械本体を固定する。
6. カセット 2 (3) を元通り挿入する。



7. Remove the screw (6) at the rear side of the paper feeder to remove the cover (7).



8. Remove the screw (8) to remove the metal plate (9).
The removed metal plate (9) is no longer required.



9. Connect the connector (10) to the machine.

7. Retirer la vis (6) située sur le côté arrière du bureau papier pour retirer le couvercle (7).

8. Retirer la vis (8) pour déposer la plaque métallique (9).
La plaque métallique déposée (9) n'est plus nécessaire.

9. Brancher le connecteur (10) à la machine.

7. Quite el tornillo (6) en el lado trasero del alimentador de papel para desmontar la tapa (7).

8. Quite el tornillo (8) para desmontar la placa de metal (9).
La placa de metal desmontada (9) ya no es necesaria.

9. Conecte el conector (10) en la máquina.

7. Die Schraube (6) auf der Rückseite des Papiereinzugs herausdrehen, um die Abdeckung (7) abzunehmen.

8. Die Schraube (8) herausdrehen, um die Metallplatte (9) abzunehmen.
Die abgenommene Metallplatte (9) wird nicht mehr benötigt.

9. Den Steckverbinder (10) an die Maschine anschließen.

7. Rimuovere la vite (6) dal retro dell'unità di alimentazione della carta per togliere il coperchio (7).

8. Rimuovere la vite (8) per togliere la piastra di metallo (9).
La piastra di metallo (9) rimossa non è più necessaria.

9. Collegare il connettore (10) alla macchina.

7. 拆除供纸盒后侧的 1 个螺丝 (6)，拆下盖板 (7)。

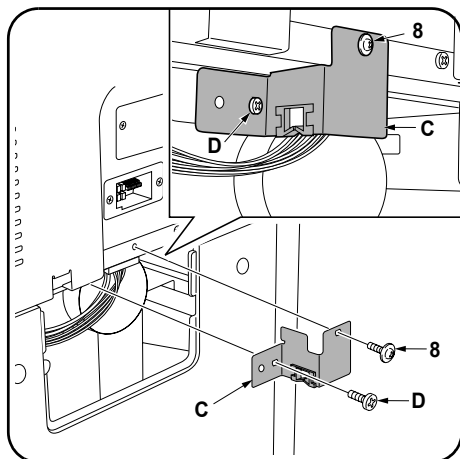
8. 拆除 1 个螺丝 (8)，拆下金属件 (9)。
不要安装金属件 (9)。

9. 将接头 (10) 连接在机器主机上。

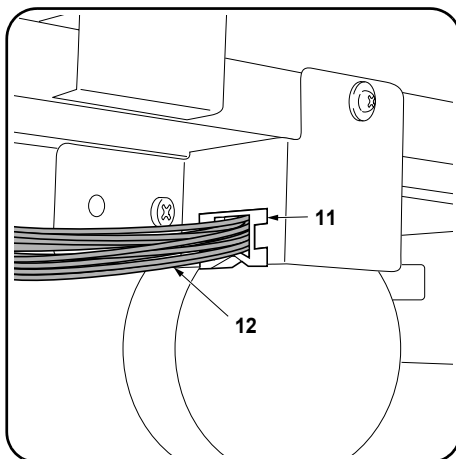
7. ペーパーフィーダ後側のビス (6) 1 本を外し、カバー (7) を取り外す。

8. ビス (8) 1 本を外し、金具 (9) を取り外す。
金具 (9) は取り付けない。

9. コネクタ (10) を機械本体に接続する。



10. Attach the joint plate (C) using two screws.
Right: Use the screw (8) removed in step 8
Left: Use M3 x 6 screw (D)



11. Pass the wires (12) through the clamp (11).
Be sure to pass the wires (12) through the clamp (11) because the wires (12) may touch the motor.

12. Refit the cover (7) using the screw (6) removed in step 7.

10. Fixer la plaque de raccord (C) à l'aide de deux vis.
A droite: Utiliser la vis (8) retirée auparavant à l'étape 8.
A gauche: Utiliser la vis M3 x 6 (D).

11. Faire passer les fils (12) par le collier (11).
Veiller à faire passer les fils (12) par le collier (11) car les fils (12) risqueraient d'entrer en contact avec le moteur.

12. Remettre le couvercle (7) en place à l'aide de la vis (6) retirée auparavant à l'étape 7.

10. Instale la placa de unión (C) utilizando dos tornillos.
Derecho: Utilice el tornillo (8) quitado en el paso 8.
Izquierdo: Utilice el tornillo M3 x 6 (D)

11. Pase los cables (12) por la ménsula (11).
Asegúrese de pasar los cables (12) por la ménsula (11) porque los cables (12) pueden tocar el motor.

12. Vuelva a colocar la tapa (7) utilizando el tornillo (6) quitado en el paso 7.

10. Die Verbindungsplatte (C) mit zwei Schrauben befestigen.
Rechts: Die in Schritt 8 entfernte Schraube (8) benutzen.
Links: Die M3 x 6 Schraube (D) benutzen.

11. Die Kabel (12) durch die Klemme (11) führen.
Die Kabel (12) müssen unbedingt durch die Klemme (11) geführt werden, weil sie sonst den Motor berühren können.

12. Bringen Sie die Abdeckung (7) wieder mit der in Schritt 7 entfernten Schraube (6) an.

10. Montare la piastra di giunzione (C) utilizzando due viti.
Destra: utilizzare la vite (8) rimossa nel passo 8.
Sinistra: utilizzare la vite M3 x 6 (D).

11. Fare passare i cavi (12) attraverso il morsetto (11).
Assicurarsi di fare passare i cavi (12) attraverso il morsetto (11) perché potrebbero toccare il motore.

12. Inserire il pannello posteriore (7) usando le viti (6) rimosse al punto 7.

10. 用2个螺丝固定连接金属件(C)。
右侧: 在步骤8上拆下的螺丝(8)。
左侧: 螺丝M3 x 6(D)。

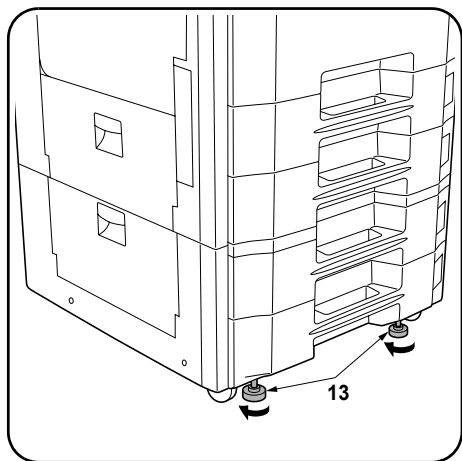
11. 将电线(12)穿过夹钳(11)。
务必将电线(12)穿过夹钳(11), 以免电线(12)碰触马达。

12. 用步骤7拆除的1个螺丝(6)将盖板(7)装回原来的位置。

10. Бис 2 本で接続金具 (C) を取り付け。
右側: 手順 8 で外したビス (8)
左側: ビス M3 x 6 (D)

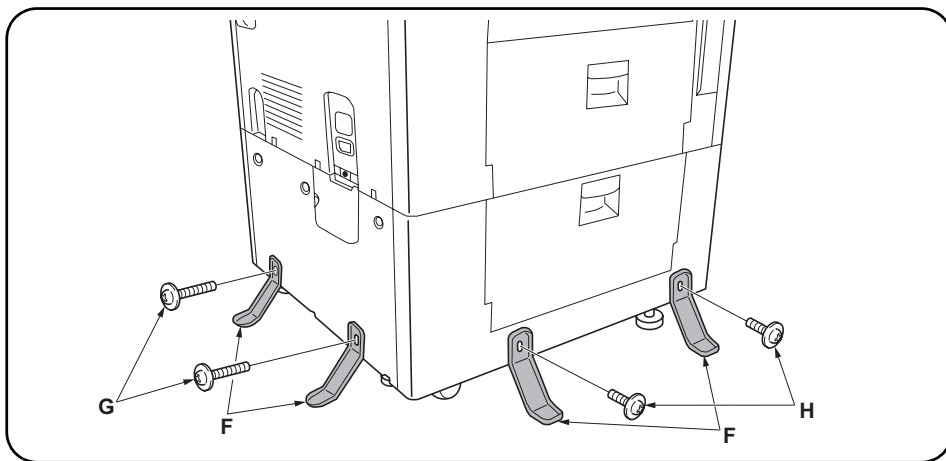
11. クランプ (11) に電線 (12) を通す。
電線 (12) がモータに接触する恐れがあるので、必ずクランプ (11) に電線 (12) を通すこと。

12. 手順 7 で外したビス (6) 1 本でカバー (7) を元通り取り付け。



Adjusting the height

13. Turn four adjusters (13) until they reach the floor and then adjust them so that the machine becomes level.



Attaching the stays (For 110V, 120 V, and 220-240 V specifications)

14. Attach two stays (F) at the rear side of the paper feeder using an M4 × 20 screw (G) for each. Also, attach two stays (F) at the left side using an M4 × 10 screw (H) for each.

Do not attach the stays (F) at the left side when installing the document finisher.

Réglage de la hauteur

13. Tourner les quatre pieds réglables (13) jusqu'à ce qu'ils atteignent le sol, puis les ajuster de manière que la machine soit bien horizontale.

Fixation des supports (pour spécifications 110 V, 120 V, et 220-240 V)

14. Fixer deux supports (F) sur le côté arrière du bureau papier à l'aide d'une vis M4 × 20 (G) pour chaque support.

Fixer aussi deux supports (F) sur le côté gauche à l'aide d'une vis M4 × 10 (H) pour chaque support.

Ne pas fixer les supports (F) sur le côté gauche lors de l'installation du retoucheur de document.

Ajuste de la altura

13. Gire los cuatro ajustadores (13) hasta que lleguen al piso y ajústelos hasta que la máquina quede horizontal.

Colocación de las bases (especificaciones de 110V, 120V y 220-240V)

14. Coloque las dos bases (F) en el lado trasero del alimentador de papel utilizando un tornillo M4 × 20 (G) para cada uno.

Además, coloque dos bases (F) en el lado izquierdo utilizando un tornillo M4 × 10 (H) para cada uno.

No instale las bases (F) en el lado izquierdo cuando instale el finalizador de documentos.

Einstellen der Höhe

13. Die vier Einstellfüße (13) drehen, bis sie den Boden erreichen, und dann so einstellen, dass die Maschine waagrecht steht.

Anbringen der Stützen (Für 110-V-, 120-V- und 220-240-V-Spezifikationen)

14. Die zwei Stützen (F) mit je einer M4 × 20 Schraube (G) auf der Rückseite des Papiereinzugs befestigen.

Außerdem zwei Stützen (F) mit je einer M4 × 10 Schraube (H) auf der linken Seite befestigen.

Bei Installation des Dokumentenfinishers die Stützen (F) nicht auf der linken Seite anbringen.

Regolazione dell'altezza

13. Ruotare i quattro piedini regolabili (13) sino a quando vengono a contatto con il pavimento e poi regolarli in modo da livellare la macchina.

Inserimento delle sospensioni (specifiche solo per 110 V, 120 V e 220-240 V)

14. Inserire le due sospensioni (F) nel retro dell'unità di alimentazione della carta utilizzando una vite M4 × 20 (G) per ciascuna.

Inserire, inoltre, due sospensioni (F) nel lato sinistro utilizzando una vite M4 × 10 (H) per ciascuna.

Non inserire le sospensioni (F) nel lato sinistro quando si installa la finitrice di documenti.

調整高度

13. 旋转4个角落的高度调节器(13)直至碰到地板,以调整整个机器的水平。

防倒金属件的安装(仅适用于110V、120V、220-240V)

14. 在供纸盒的后侧2处各用1个螺丝M4 × 20(G)安装防倒金属件(F)。在供纸盒的左侧2处各用1个螺丝M4 × 10(H)安装防倒金属件(F)。

若安装装订器时,则不需要在供纸盒左侧安装防倒金属件(F)。

高さ調整

13. 4隅のアジャスター(13)を床に接触するまで回転し、機械全体を水平に調整する。

転倒防止金具の取り付け(110V・120V・220-240V仕様のみ)

14. ビスM4 × 20(G)各1本で転倒防止金具(F)をペーパーフィーダ後側2箇所に取り付ける。

ビスM4 × 10(H)各1本で転倒防止金具(F)をペーパーフィーダ左側2箇所に取り付ける。

ドキュメントフィニッシャーを設置する場合は、ペーパーフィーダ左側に転倒防止金具(F)の取り付けは必要ない。

Checking the center line

15. Connect the power plug of the machine to the wall outlet and turn the main power switch on.
16. Load paper in each cassette.

Make a proof copy to check the operation.

17. Enter the maintenance mode and run maintenance item U993.

18. Select [PG1] to print a test pattern.

Vérification de la ligne médiane

15. Insérer la fiche d'alimentation de la machine dans la prise murale et mettre la machine sous tension.

16. Mettre du papier dans chaque tiroir.

Effectuer une copie d'essai pour vérifier le fonctionnement.

17. Passer en mode de maintenance et exécuter le point de maintenance U993.

18. Sélectionner [PG1] pour imprimer une mire.

Verificación de la línea central

15. Conecte el enchufe eléctrico de la máquina en un tomacorriente de la pared y conecte el interruptor principal.

16. Coloque el papel en cada bandeja.

Haga una copia de prueba para verificar e funcionamiento.

17. Ingrese en el modo de mantenimiento y utilice el elemento de mantenimiento U993.

18. Seleccione (PG1) para imprimirán patrón de prueba.

Überprüfen der Mittellinie

15. Den Netzstecker der Maschine in die Steckdose stecken, und den Betriebsschalter einschalten.

16. Papier in jede Kassette einlegen.

Eine Probekopie anfertigen, um den Betrieb zu überprüfen.

17. Den Wartungsmodus aktivieren, und den Wartungsposten U993 ausführen.

18. [PG1] zum Drucken eines Testmusters wählen.

Controllare la linea centrale

15. Collegare la spina del cavo di alimentazione della macchina alla presa a muro della rete elettrica e accendere l'interruttore principale di alimentazione.

16. Caricare la carta in ciascun cassetto.

Eseguire una copia di prova per controllare il funzionamento.

17. Entrare in modalità manutenzione ed eseguire la voce manutenzione U993.

18. Selezionare [PG1] per stampare un modello di prova.

中心线的确认

15. 将机器主机上的电源插头插入插座中，打开主电源开关。

16. 将复印纸装入供纸盒。

进行测试复印，确认复印动作状态。

17. 选定维修模式 U993。

18. 选择“PG1”测试图案的输出。

センターラインの確認

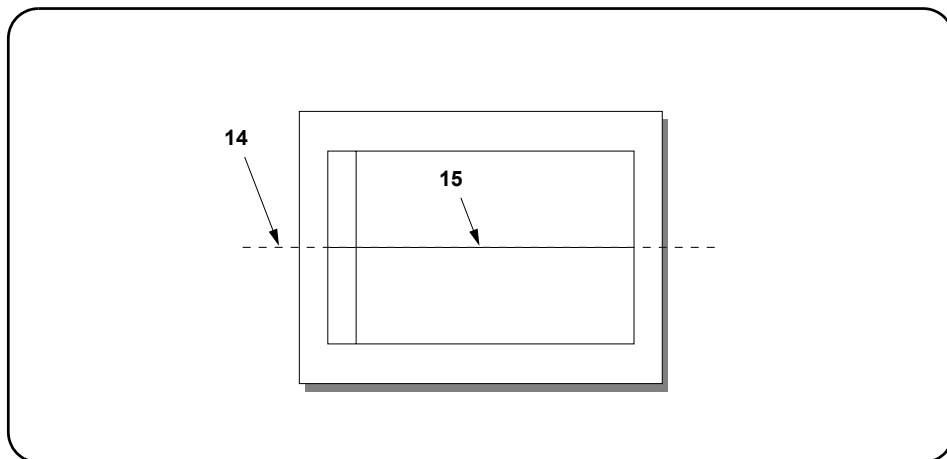
15. 機械本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、主電源スイッチを ON にする。

16. 各カセットに用紙をセットする。

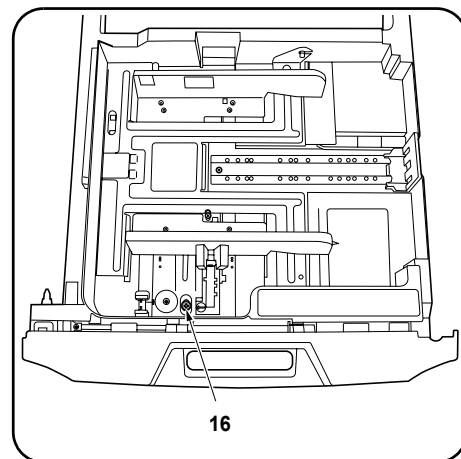
テストコピーをおこない、動作を確認する。

17. メンテナンスモード U993 をセットする。

18. 「PG1」を選択し、テストパターンを出力する。



- 19.** Check the center line of paper (14) and the center line of test pattern (15).
If the gap of lines (14) and (15) exceeds the reference value, proceed to step 20.
Reference value: 2.0 mm or less



- Adjusting the center line**
20. Pull the cassette out and loosen the screw (16) of the adjusting plate.

- 19.** Vérifier la ligne médiane du papier (14) et la ligne médiane de la mire (15).
Si l'écart des lignes (14) et (15) est supérieur à la valeur de référence, passer à l'étape 20.
Valeur de référence: 2,0 mm ou moins

- Réglage de la ligne médiane**
20. Tirer le tiroir vers l'extérieur et desserrer la vis (16) de la plaque de réglage.

- 19.** Verifique la línea central del papel (14) y la línea central del patrón de prueba (15).
Si la separación entre las líneas (14) y (15) supera el valor de referencia, vaya al paso 20.
Valor de referencia: 2,0 mm o menos

- Ajuste de la línea central**
20. Abra la bandeja y afloje el tornillo (16) de la placa de ajuste.

- 19.** Die Mittellinie des Papiers (14) mit der Mittellinie des Testmusters (15) vergleichen.
Falls die Abweichung zwischen den Linien (14) und (15) den Bezugswert überschreitet, zu Schritt 20 übergehen.
Bezugswert: maximal 2,0 mm

- Einstellen der Mittellinie**
20. Die Kassette herausziehen, und die Schraube (16) der Einstellplatte lösen.

- 19.** Controllare la linea centrale della carta (14) e la linea centrale del modello di prova (15).
Se la distanza tra le linee (14) e (15) supera il valore di riferimento, continuare con il passo 20.
Valore di riferimento: fino a 2,0 mm

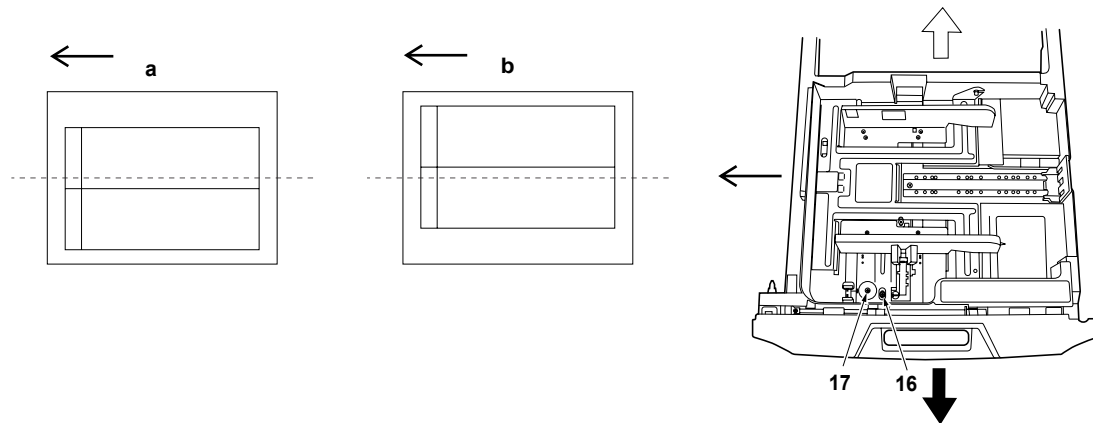
- Regolazione della linea centrale**
20. Estrarre il cassetto e allentare la vite (16) della piastra di regolazione.

- 19.** 确认复印纸的中心线 (14) 与测试图案的中心线 (15)。
超过偏移标准值时, 操作步骤 20 以后的项目。
< 标准值 > 2.0mm 以下

- 中心线的调整**
20. 拉出供纸盒, 松开调整板的 1 个螺丝 (16)。

- 19.** 用紙のセンターライン (14) とテストパターンのセンターライン (15) を確認する。
ずれが基準値外の場合は、手順 20 以降をおこなう。
< 基準値 > 2.0mm 以下

- センターライン調整**
20. カセットを引き出し、調整板のビス (16) 1 本を緩める。



21. For a test pattern example (a):

Turn the adjusting screw (17) clockwise, move the adjusting plate in the direction of black arrow (➡) and then tighten the screw (16).

For a test pattern example (b):

Turn the adjusting screw (17) counterclockwise, move the adjusting plate in the direction of white arrow (⇨) and then tighten the screw (16).

22. Gently close the cassette.

23. Print a test pattern again.

24. Repeat steps 20 to 23 until the gap of the center lines of paper and the test pattern shows the following reference value.
Reference value: 2.0 mm or less

21. Pour un exemple de mire (a):

Tourner la vis de réglage (17) dans le sens des aiguilles d'une montre, déplacer la plaque de réglage dans le sens de la flèche noire (➡), puis serrer la vis (16).

Pour un exemple de mire (b):

Tourner la vis de réglage (17) dans le sens inverse des aiguilles d'une montre, déplacer la plaque de réglage dans le sens de la flèche blanche (⇨), puis serrer la vis (16).

22. Refermer progressivement le tiroir.

23. Imprimer à nouveau une mire.

24. Répéter les étapes 20 à 23 jusqu'à ce que l'écart entre les lignes médianes du papier et la mire corresponde bien à la valeur de référence suivante.

Valeur de référence: 2,0 mm ou moins

21. Para un ejemplo de patrón de prueba (a):

Gire el tornillo de ajuste (17) en sentido horario, mueva la placa de ajuste en el sentido de la flecha negra (➡) y apriete el tornillo (16).

Para un ejemplo de patrón de prueba (b):

Gire el tornillo de ajuste (17) en sentido antihorario, mueva la placa de ajuste en el sentido de la flecha blanca (⇨) y apriete el tornillo (16).

22. Cierre suavemente la bandeja.

23. Vuelva a imprimir un patrón de prueba.

24. Repita los pasos 20 a 23 hasta que la separación entre las líneas del papel y del patrón de prueba muestre el siguiente valor de referencia.

Valor de referencia: 2,0 mm o menos

21. Für das Testmuster-Beispiel (a):

Die Einstellschraube (17) im Uhrzeigersinn drehen, die Einstellplatte in Richtung des schwarzen Pfeils (➡) verschieben, und dann die Schraube (16) festziehen.

Für das Testmuster-Beispiel (b):

Die Einstellschraube (17) entgegen dem Uhrzeigersinn drehen, die Einstellplatte in Richtung des weißen Pfeils (⇨) verschieben, und dann die Schraube (16) festziehen.

22. Die Kassette sanfte schließen.

23. Das Testmuster erneut drucken.

24. Die Schritte 20 bis 23 wiederholen, bis die Abweichung zwischen den Mittellinien des Papiers und des Testmusters innerhalb des folgenden Bezugswerts liegt.

Bezugswert: maximal 2,0 mm

21. Per un esempio di un modello di prova (a):

Girare la vite di regolazione (17) in senso orario, spostare la piastra di regolazione nella direzione della freccia nera (➡) e poi serrare la vite (16).

Per un esempio di un modello di prova (b):

Girare la vite di regolazione (17) in senso antiorario, spostare la piastra di regolazione nella direzione della freccia bianca (⇨) e poi serrare la vite (16).

22. Chiudere delicatamente il cassetto.

23. Stampare nuovamente un modello di prova.

24. Ripetere i passi da 20 a 23 fino a quando la distanza tra le linee centrali della carta e del modello di prova indica il seguente valore di riferimento.

Valore di riferimento: fino 2,0 mm

21. 测试图案 (a) 时

向右旋转调整螺丝 (17), 按箭头方向 (➡) 移动调整板, 并紧固 1 个螺丝 (16)。

测试图案 (b) 时

向左旋转调整螺丝 (17), 按箭头方向 (⇨) 移动调整板, 并紧固 1 个螺丝 (16)。

22. 轻轻地推入供纸盒。

23. 再次进行测试图案的输出。

24. 重复操作步骤 20 ~ 23, 直到复印纸的中心线与测试图案的中心线为标准值内为止。

< 标准值 > 2.0mm 以下

21. テストパターン (a) の場合

調整ネジ (17) を右に回し、矢印 (➡) 方向に調整板を動かしてビス (16) 1 本を締め付ける。

テストパターン (b) の場合

調整ネジ (17) を左に回し、矢印 (⇨) 方向に調整板を動かしてビス (16) 1 本を締め付ける。

22. カセットを静かに押し込む。

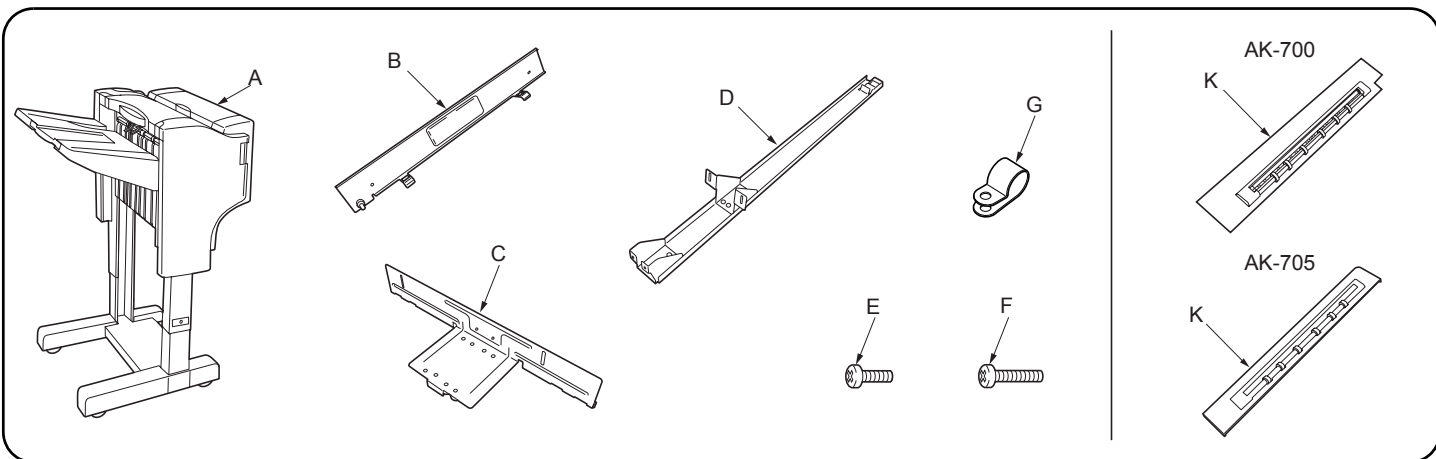
23. テストパターンを再度出力する。

24. 用紙のセンターラインとテストパターンのセンターラインが基準値内になるまで、手順 20 ~ 23 を繰り返す。

< 基準値 > 2.0mm 以下

INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR DOCUMENT FINISHER

Output Connector for Interconnecting Cable is non-LPS.
Output: 24 V dc (426 VA max.)
Please use the item below Interconnecting Cables.
P/N: 305H180180



English

Supplied parts

A Document finisher	1
B Latch catch	1
C Rail retainer	1
D Guide rail	1

E Binding screw M4 × 6	4
F Binding screw M4 × 10	4
G Clamp (Not used for full-color machines)	1
K Curl eliminator	1
For monochrome MFP's: AK-700	
For monochrome printers: AK-705	

For full-color machines, two pieces of (F) are not used.

For monochrome machines, part (K) is needed separately.

For full-color machines, part (K) is not needed.

Français

Pièces fournies

A Retoucheur de document	1
B Pontet du loquet	1
C Élément de rétention du rail	1
D Glissière	1

E Vis de raccordement M4 × 6	4
F Vis de raccordement M4 × 10	4
G Bride (Non utilisé pour les machines entièrement en couleurs)	1
K Élément d'élimination des boucles	1
Pour les MFP monochromes: AK-700	
Pour les imprimantes monochromes: AK-705	

Sur les machines entièrement en couleurs, deux pièces de (F) ne sont pas utilisées.

Sur les machines monochromes, il faut utiliser la pièce (K) séparément.

Pour les machines entièrement en couleurs, la pièce (K) n'est pas nécessaire.

Español

Partes suministradas

A Finalizador de documentos	1
B Cerrojo	1
C Retén del carril	1
D Carril guía	1

E Tornillo de sujeción M4 × 6	4
F Tornillo de sujeción M4 × 10	4
G Abrazadera (No utilizado para máquinas a todo color)	1
K Eliminador de enrollado	1
Para las MFP monocromáticas: AK-700	
Para las impresoras monocromáticas: AK-705	

Para las máquinas a todo color, no se utilizan dos piezas de (F).

Para las máquinas monocromáticas, es necesario por separado la pieza (K).

Para las máquinas a todo color, la pieza (K) no es necesaria.

Deutsch

Gelieferte Teile

A Dokument Finishers	1
B Riegelschloßbausatz	1
C Schienenhalterungseinheit	1
D Führungsschieneneneinheit	1

E Verbundschraube M4 × 6	4
F Verbundschraube M4 × 10	4
G Klemme (Nicht für Vollfarbenmaschinen verwendet)	1
K Glättungseinrichtung	1
Für monochrome MFP: AK-700	
Für Monochromedruker: AK-705	

Für Vollfarbenmaschinen werden zwei Teile von (F) nicht benutzt.

Für Monochrommaschinen wird Teil (K) getrennt benötigt.

Für Vollfarbenmaschinen wird Teil (K) nicht benötigt.

Italiano

Parti fornite

A Finitrice di documenti	1
B Dispositivo di arresto	1
C Fermo della guida	1
D Guida della rotaia	1

E Vite di serraggio M4 × 6	4
F Vite di serraggio M4 × 10	4
G Morsetto (Non utilizzato per le macchine a colori)	1
K Eliminatore di pieghe	1
Per gli MFP in bianco e nero: AK-700	
Per gli stampatori in bianco e nero: AK-705	

Per le macchine a colori, due pezzi di (F) non sono utilizzati.

Per le macchine in bianco e nero, separatamente è necessaria la parte (K).

Per le macchine a colori, la parte (K) non è necessaria.

简体中文

附属品

(A)装订器	1
(B)挂钩支架	1
(C)轨道座	1
(D)导向轨道	1

(E) M4 × 6 固结螺钉	4
(F) M4 × 10 固结螺钉	4
(G) 夹紧件 (全彩色机上不使用)	1
(K) 防卷曲部件	1
黑白MFP: AK-700	
黑白打印机: AK-705	

全彩色机时(F)剩下2个连接螺钉。
黑白机时另外需要安装(K)部件。
全彩色机时, 不需要安装(K)部件。

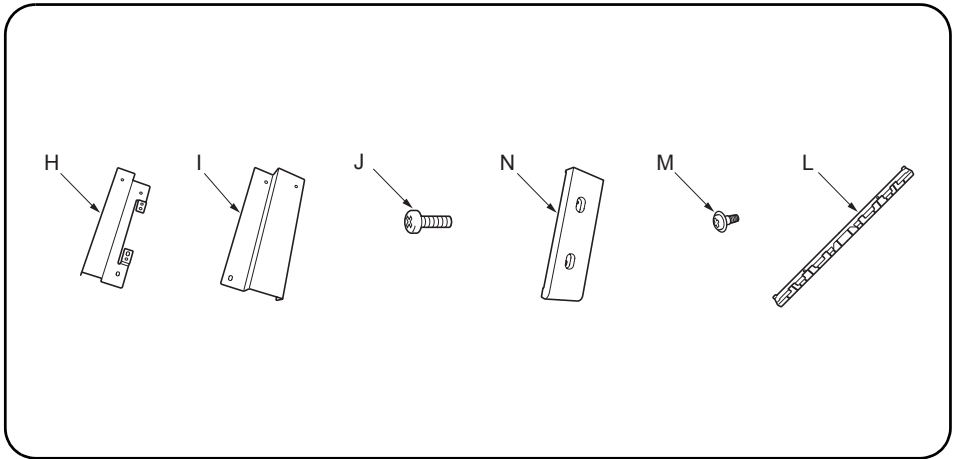
日本語

付属品

A ドキュメントフィニッシャー	1
B ラッチ受け板	1
C レール取付板	1
D ガイドレール	1

E ビス M4 × 6 バインド	4
F ビス M4 × 10 バインド	4
G クランプ (フルカラー機では使用しません)	1
K デカーラー	1
モノクロ MFP 用: AK-700	
モノクロプリンタ用: AK-705	

フルカラー機では、(F) が 2 本余ります。
モノクロ機では、(K) が別途必要です。
フルカラー機では、(K) は不要です。



H	Fixing plate F	1
I	Fixing plate R	1
J	S Tite screw M4 × 10	9
N	Cover AT	1
M	Shoulder screw	1
L	Guide plate	1

When installing the document finisher to a full-color MFP, use parts (H), (I), (J), (L), (M) and (N) supplied with the job separator.

H	Plaque de fixation avant	1
I	Plaque de fixation arrière	1
J	Vis S Tite M4 × 10	9
N	Couvercle AT	1
M	Vis d'épaule	1
L	Plaque guide	1

Lors de l'installation du retoucheur de documents sur une MFP polychrome, les pièces (H), (I), (J), (L), (M) et (N) avec le séparateur de travaux sont requises.

H	Placa de fijación F	1
I	Placa de fijación R	1
J	Tornillo S Tite M4 × 10	9
N	Cubierta AT	1
M	Tornillo de hombro	1
L	Placa guía	1

Cuando instale el finalizador de documentos en una MFP a todo color serán necesarias las partes (H), (I), (J), (L), (M), y (N) suministradas con el separador de tareas.

H	Fixierplatte F	1
I	Fixierplatte R	1
J	S-Tite-Schraube M4 × 10	9
N	Abdeckung AT	1
M	Bundschraube	1
L	Führungsplatte	1

Wenn der Dokument-Finisher auf einem Farbmultifunktionsgerät angebracht wird, sind die Teile (H), (I), (J), (L), (M) und (N), die mit dem Jobtrenner gelieferten erforderlich.

H	Piastra di fissaggio F	1
I	Piastra di fissaggio R	1
J	Vite S Tite M4 × 10	9
N	Coperchio AT	1
M	Vite a colletto	1
L	Piastra della guida	1

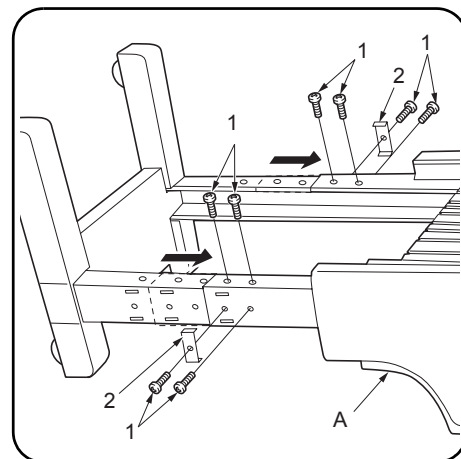
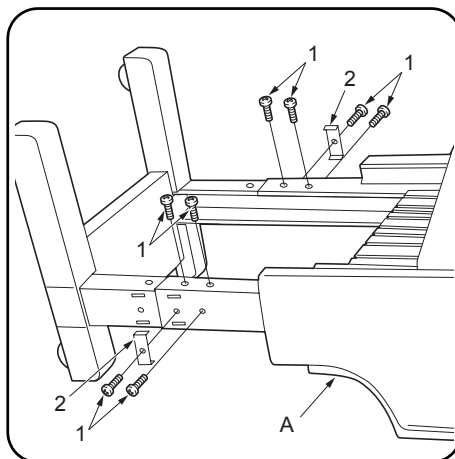
Per l'installazione della finitrice di documenti su un MFP a colori, sono necessarie le parti (H), (I), (J), (L), (M) e (N) fornite in dotazione con il separatore dei lavori.

(H)	固定板 F	1
(I)	固定板 R	1
(J)	紧固螺钉 M4 × 10S	9
(N)	盖板 AT	1
(M)	阶梯螺钉	1
(L)	导向板	1

全彩色 MFP 上安装装订器时，请使用作业分离器上附属的部件 (H)、(I)、(J)、(L)、(M) 和 (N)。

H	固定板 F	1
I	固定板 R	1
J	ビス M4 × 10S タイ	9
N	カバー AT	1
M	段付きビス	1
L	ガイド板	1

フルカラーMFP 機にドキュメントフィニッシャーを設置する場合、ジョブセパレータに付属する (H)、(I)、(J)、(L)、(M)、(N) が必要となる。



Installation Procedure

When installing the document finisher to a full-color MFP, install the job separator in advance. Be sure to turn the main switch of the MFP or the printer off and disconnect the power plug of the MFP or the printer from the wall outlet before installing the document finisher.

[Steps 1 to 5 below are only for full-color machines.]

1. Place the document finisher (A) sideways, remove the eight screws (1), and remove the two pieces of fittings (2).

2. To align the document finisher with the paper outlet of the MFP or the printer, slide the legs of the document finisher (A) to the uppermost positions indicated in the illustration, attach the two pieces of fittings (2) that have been removed in step 1, and secure them using the eight screws (1).

Procédure d'installation

Installer le séparateur de travaux, puis installer le retoucheur de documents sur la MFP polychrome. Veiller à bien mettre l'interrupteur principal de la MFP ou de l'imprimante hors tension et à débrancher la fiche d'alimentation de la MFP ou de l'imprimante de la prise murale avant de commencer l'installation du retoucheur de documents.

[Les étapes 1 à 5 ci-dessous concernent les machines entièrement en couleurs seulement.]

1. Placer le retoucheur de documents (A) sur le côté, retirer les huit vis (1), et retirer les deux pièces de fixation (2).

2. Pour aligner le retoucheur de document sur la sortie de papier du MFP ou imprimante, faire glisser les pieds du retoucheur de document (A) jusqu'aux positions les plus hautes indiquées sur l'illustration, fixer les deux pièces de fixation (2) qui avaient été retirées auparavant à l'étape 1, et les fixer à l'aide des huit vis (1).

Procedimiento de instalación

Instale el separador de tareas y luego instale el finalizador de documentos en la MFP a todo color. Asegúrese de apagar el interruptor principal de la MFP o de la impresora y de desconectar la clavija de alimentación de la MFP o de la impresora de la toma de corriente de la pared, antes de empezar a instalar el finalizador de documentos.

[Los pasos 1 a 5 a continuación son solo para máquinas a todo color.]

1. Apoye el finalizador de documentos (A) sobre un lado, saque los ocho tornillos (1) y saque dos piezas de herrajes (2).

2. Para alinear el finalizador de documentos con la salida de papel del MFP o impresora, deslice las patas del finalizador de documentos (A) a las posiciones superiores indicadas en la figura, instale las dos piezas de herrajes (2) desmontadas en el paso 1 y asegúrelos con los ocho tornillos (1).

Einbauverfahren

Bauen Sie zuerst den Jobtrenner und dann den Dokument-Finisher in den Farbmultifunktionsgerät ein. Schalten Sie den MFP-Hauptschalter oder den Drucker-Hauptschalter aus, und ziehen Sie den MFP-Netzstecker oder den Drucker-Netzstecker von der Netzsteckdose ab, bevor Sie mit der Installation des Dokument Finishers beginnen.

[Die folgenden Schritte 1 bis 5 gelten nur für Vollfarbmaschinen.]

1. Den Dokument Finisher (A) auf die Seite legen, die acht Schrauben (1) entfernen, und die zwei Befestigungsteile (2) abnehmen.

2. Um den Dokument Finisher auf den Papierausslass des MFP oder Drucker auszurichten, die Beine des Dokument Finishers (A) auf die in der Abbildung gezeigte oberste Position schieben, dann die zwei in Schritt 1 entfernten Befestigungsteile (2) anbringen und mit den acht Schrauben (1) befestigen.

Procedura di installazione

Installare il separatore dei lavori e poi procedere all'installazione della finitrice di documenti sul MFP a colori. Prima di dare inizio alla procedura di installazione della finitrice di documenti, non mancare di spegnere l'MFP o lo stampatore usando l'interruttore principale di alimentazione e disinserire la spina dell'MFP o dello stampatore dalla presa a muro della rete elettrica.

[I seguenti passi da 1 a 5 sono solo per le macchine a colori.]

1. Collocare la finitrice di documenti (A) lateralmente, rimuovere le otto viti (1) e rimuovere i due pezzi di raccordo (2).

2. Per allineare la finitrice di documenti con l'uscita della carta dell'MFP o stampatore, fare scivolare i piedini della finitrice di documenti (A) sulle posizioni più in alto indicate nel disegno, montare i due pezzi di raccordo (2) che sono stati rimossi nel passo 1 e fissarli utilizzando le otto viti (1).

安裝步驟

將裝訂器安裝到全彩色MFP時，請提前安裝作業分離器。請務必關閉MFP或打印機的主開關並從牆壁插座拔下MFP或打印機的電源插頭再安裝裝訂器。

[步驟1~5仅限于全彩色机]

1. 將裝訂器(A)橫向放置，卸下8個螺釘(1)，然後，取下2個固定件(2)。

2. 為了對准主機排紙口，先將裝訂器(A)的機腳滑動到最上面的位置(如圖所示的位置)，然後，安裝在步驟1取下的2個固定件(2)，并用8個螺釘(1)加以固定。

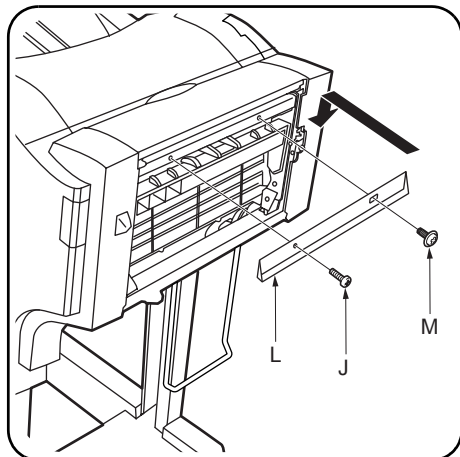
設置手順

フルカラーMFP機にドキュメントフィニッシャーを取り付ける際には、先にジョブセパレータを装着すること。
ドキュメントフィニッシャーを取り付ける際は、必ずMFP本体またはプリンタ本体のメインスイッチをOFFにし、電源プラグを外して作業をおこなうこと。

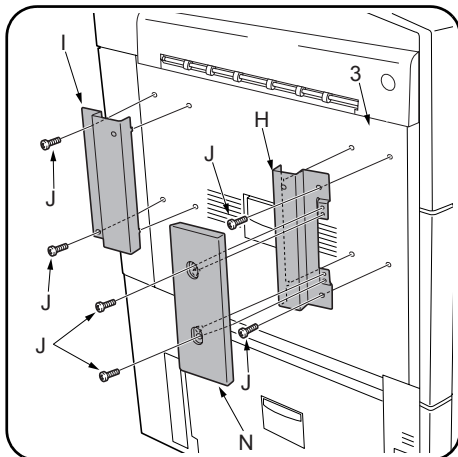
[手順1～5はフルカラー機のみ]

1. ドキュメントフィニッシャー(A)を横向きにおき、ビス(1)8本を外し、固定金具(2)2個を取り外す。

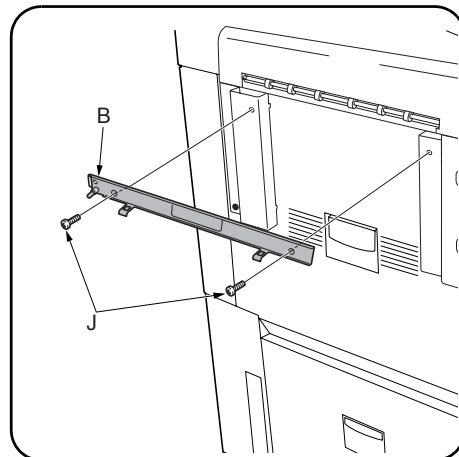
2. 本体用紙排出口に合わせる為、ドキュメントフィニッシャー(A)の脚を最上の位置(図の位置)までスライドさせ、手順1で取り外した固定金具(2)2個を取り付け、ビス(1)8本で固定する。



3. Secure the guide plate (L) using the shoulder screw (M) and an S Tite screw M4 × 10 (J).



4. Fit the fixing plate F (H) and the fixing plate R (I) to the left cover (3) using two S Tite screws M4 × 10 (J) for each and fit the cover AT (N) to the fixing plate F (H) using two S Tite screws M4 × 10 (J).



5. Fit the latch catch (B) to the fixing plate F (H) and the fixing plate R (I) using two S Tite screws M4 × 10 (J). (Proceed to step 7.)

3. Fixez la plaque guide (L) à l'aide de la vis d'épaule (M) et d'une vis S Tite M4 × 10 (J).

4. Fixer la plaque de fixation avant (H) et la plaque de fixation arrière (I) sur le couvercle de gauche (3) à l'aide de deux vis S Tite M4 × 10 (J) chaque et fixer le couvercle AT (N) sur la plaque de fixation avant (H) à l'aide de deux vis S Tite M4 × 10 (J).

5. Fixer le pontet du loquet (B) sur la plaque de fixation avant (H) et sur la plaque de fixation arrière (I) à l'aide de deux vis S Tite M4 × 10 (J). (Passer à l'étape 7.)

3. Asegure la placa guía (L) utilizando el tornillo de hombro (M) y un tornillo S Tite M4 × 10(J).

4. Encaje la placa de fijación F (H) y la placa de fijación R (I) en la cubierta izquierda (3) utilizando dos tornillos S Tite M4 × 10 (J) para cada una y encaje la cubierta AT (N) en la placa de fijación F (H) utilizando dos tornillos S Tite M4 × 10 (J).

5. Encaje el cerrojo (B) en la placa de fijación F (H) y la placa de fijación R (I) utilizando los dos tornillos S Tite M4 × 10 (J). (Vaya al paso 7.)

3. Die Führungsplatte (L) mit der Bundschraube (M) und einer S-Tite-Schraube M4 × 10 (J) befestigen.

4. Die Fixierplatte F (H) und die Fixierplatte R (I) mit je zwei S-Tite-Schrauben M4 × 10 (J) an der linken Abdeckung (3) anbringen, und die Abdeckung AT (N) mit zwei S-Tite-Schrauben M4 × 10 (J) an der Fixierplatte F (H) anbringen.

5. Die Riegelschloßbausatz (B) mit zwei S-Tite-Schrauben M4 × 10 (J) an der Fixierplatte F (H) und die Fixierplatte R (I) anbringen. (Zu Schritt 7 übergehen.)

3. Fissare la piastra della guida (L) utilizzando la vite a colletto (M) e la vite S Tite M4 × 10 (J).

4. Montare la piastra di fissaggio F (H) e la piastra di fissaggio R (I) sul coperchio sinistro (3) usando due vite S Tite M4 × 10 (J) per ciascuna di esse e montare il coperchio AT (N) sulla piastra di fissaggio F (H) usando due vite S Tite M4 × 10 (J).

5. Montare il dispositivo di arresto (B) sulla piastra di fissaggio F (H) e sulla piastra di fissaggio R (I) usando due vite S Tite M4 × 10 (J). (Procedere con il passo 7.)

3. 在用阶梯螺钉(M)和紧固螺钉M4×10S(J)各1个固定导板(L)。

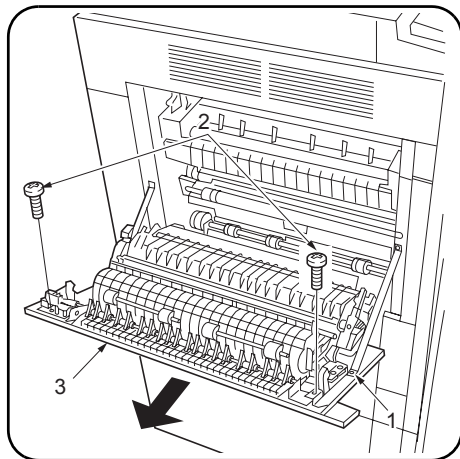
4. 将固定板F(H)和固定板R(I)分别用2个紧固螺丝M4×10S(J)固定在左盖板(3)上, 将盖板AT(N)用2个紧固螺丝M4×10S(J)固定在固定板F(H)上。

5. 挂钩承支架(B)用2个紧固螺丝M4×10S(J)固定在固定板F(H)和固定板R(I)上。(接着操作步骤7)

3. ガイド板 (L) を段付きビス (M) とビス M4 × 10S タイプ (J) 各1本で固定する。

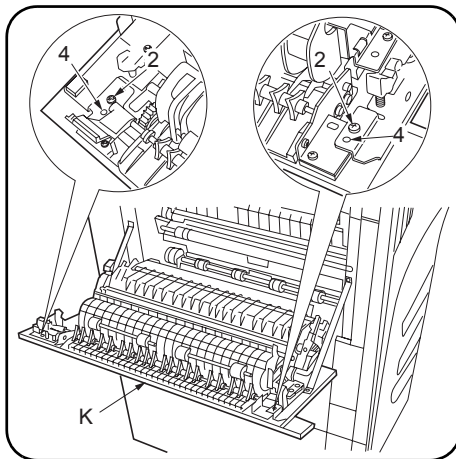
4. 固定板 F(H) と固定板 R(I) を左カバー (3) にビス M4 × 10S タイプ (J) 各2本で固定し、カバーAT(N) をビス M4 × 10S タイプ (J) 2本で固定板 F(H) に固定する。

5. ラッチ受け板 (B) をビス M4 × 10S タイプ (J) 2本で固定板 F(H) と固定板 R(I) に固定する。(手順7に進む)

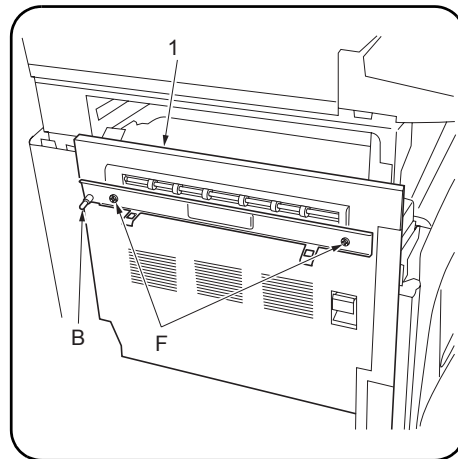


[Steps 1 to 6 below are only for monochrome machines.]

1. Open the eject cover (1) of the MFP or the printer.
2. Remove the two screws (2) securing the feedshift guide assembly (3) and then the assembly.



3. Fit the curl eliminator (K) to the eject cover (1) such that the projections (4) on the cover fit into the two ends of the curl eliminator (K).
4. Secure the curl eliminator (K) using the two screws (2) removed in step 2.



5. Close the eject cover (1).
6. Fit the latch catch (B) to the eject cover (1) using two M4 × 10 binding screws (F).

[Les étapes 1 à 6 ci-dessous concernent les machines monochromes seulement.]

1. Ouvrir le couvercle d'éjection (1) du MFP ou imprimante.
2. Retirer les deux vis (2) fixant l'assemblage de la glissière d'alimentation (3) puis retirer l'assemblage.

3. Fixer l'élément d'élimination des boucles (K) au couvercle d'éjection (1) de telle façon que les projections (4) du couvercle s'insèrent dans les deux extrémités de cet élément (K).
4. Fixer l'élément d'élimination des boucles (K) à l'aide des deux vis (2) retirées à l'étape 2.

5. Fermer le couvercle d'éjection (1).
6. Fixer le pontet du loquet (B) au couvercle d'éjection (1) à l'aide de deux vis de raccordement M4 × 10 (F).

[Los pasos 1 a 6 a continuación son sólo para máquinas monocromáticas.]

1. Abra la cubierta de expulsión (1) del MFP o impresora.
2. Quite los dos tornillos (2) que aseguran el ensamble guía de la unidad de cambio de alimentación de papel (3) y luego el ensamble.

3. Coloque el eliminador de enrollamiento (K) en la cubierta de expulsión (1) de modo que las proyecciones (4) de la cubierta encajen en los dos extremos del eliminador de enrollamiento (K).
4. Asegure el eliminador de enrollamiento (K) usando los dos tornillos (2) que quitó en el paso 2.

5. Cierre la cubierta de expulsión (1).
6. Coloque el cerrojo (B) en la cubierta de expulsión (1) usando dos tornillos de sujeción M4 × 10 (F).

[Die folgenden Schritte 1 bis 6 gelten nur für Monochrommaschinen.]

1. Öffnen Sie die Auswurfabdeckung (1) des MFP oder Drucker.
2. Entfernen Sie die zwei Schrauben (2), die den Zuführungswechsel-Bausatz (3) befestigen und dann den Bausatz.

3. Bringen Sie den Wellenverhinderer (K) so an die Auswurfabdeckung (1) an, daß die Vorsprünge (4) auf der Abdeckung in die zwei Enden des Wellenverhinderers (K) passen.
4. Befestigen Sie den Wellenverhinderer (K) mittels der in Schritt 2 entfernten zwei Schrauben (2).

5. Schliessen Sie die Auswurfabdeckung (1).
6. Bringen Sie den Riegelschloßbausatz (B) mittels der zwei M4 × 10 Verbundschrauben (F) an die Auswurfabdeckung (1) an.

[I seguenti passi da 1 a 6 sono solo per le macchine in bianco e nero.]

1. Aprire la copertura dell'uscita carta (1) dell'MFP o stampatore.
2. Rimuovere le due viti (2) che fissano il gruppo di guida di cambio alimentazione (3) e quindi il gruppo.

3. Inserire l'eliminatore degli accartocciamenti (K) nella copertura dell'uscita carta (1) in modo tale che le proiezioni (4) sulla copertura siano inserite nelle due estremità dell'eliminatore degli accartocciamenti (K).
4. Fissare l'eliminatore degli accartocciamenti (K) utilizzando le due viti (2) rimosse al punto 2.

5. Chiudere la copertura dell'uscita carta (1).
6. Inserire il dispositivo di arresto (B) nella copertura dell'uscita carta (1) utilizzando due viti di serraggio M4 × 10 (F).

[步骤1~6仅限于黑白机]

1. 将MFP或打印机的出纸盖板(1)打开。
2. 将两个小螺钉(2)摘下, 并将分支导向组件(3)卸下。

3. 将带凸肩压板的凸部(4)嵌入防卷曲部件(K)两端后, 将防卷曲部件(K)安装于出纸盖板(1)上。
4. 用依步骤2摘下的两个小螺钉(2)来固定防卷曲部件(K)。

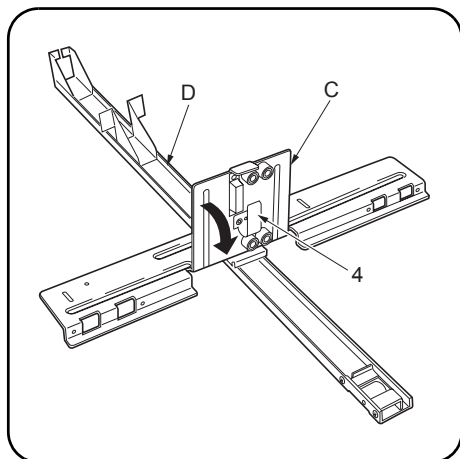
5. 将出纸盖板(1)关上。
6. 用两个M4 × 10 固结螺钉(F)将挂钩承支架(B)安装于出纸盖板(1)上。

[手順1～6はモノクロ機のみ]

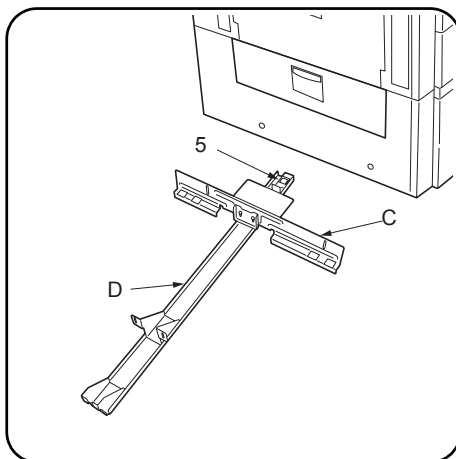
1. MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体の排出カバー(1)を開く。www.tonerplus.com.ua
2. ビス(2)2本を外し、分岐ガイド組立(3)を取り外す。

3. デカーラー(K)の両端に半押し(4)がはまる位置で、デカーラー(K)を排出カバー(1)に取り付ける。
4. 手順2で外したビス(2)2本でデカーラー(K)を固定する。

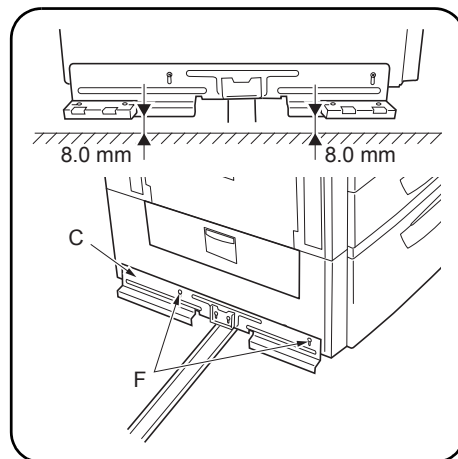
5. 排出カバー(1)を閉じる。
6. ラッチ受け板(B)をビス M4 × 10 バインド(F)2本で排出カバー(1)に取り付ける。



7. Align the rail retainer (C) with the groove of the guide rail (D) and attach the rail retainer (C) to the guide rail (D). Make sure that the plate spring (4) of the rail retainer (C) fits into the groove and the edge of the guide rail (D) fits between the pulleys on the reverse side of the rail retainer (C).



8. Orient the guide rail (D) such that its pulley (5) is positioned toward the MFP or the printer.



9. Secure the rail retainer (C) to the MFP or the printer using two M4 x 10 binding screws (F) such that the front and the rear gaps between the floor and the rail retainer (C) are approximately 8.0 mm.

7. Aligner l'élément de rétention du rail (C) sur le sillon de la glissière (D) et le fixer à l'élément de rétention du rail (C) à la glissière (D). Veiller à ce que le ressort de plaque (4) de l'élément de rétention du rail (C) s'adapte au sillon et que l'extrémité de la glissière (D) puisse passer entre les poulies sur le côté opposé de l'élément de rétention du rail (C).

8. Orienter la glissière (D) de manière que sa poulie (5) soit orientée vers le MFP ou imprimante.

9. Fixer l'élément de rétention du rail (C) au MFP ou imprimante à l'aide de deux vis de raccordement M4 x 10 (F) de manière que les écarts avant et arrière entre le sol et l'élément de rétention du rail (C) soient d'environ 8.0 mm.

7. Alinee el retén del carril (C) con la acanaladura del carril guía (D) y anexe el retén del carril (C) al carril guía (D). Asegúrese de que el resorte de la placa (4) del retén del carril (C) encaje en la acanaladura y que el borde del carril guía (D) encaje entre las poleas del lado inverso del retén del carril (C).

8. Oriente el carril guía (D) de modo que su polea (5) se encuentre ubicada hacia el MFP o impresora.

9. Asegure el retén del carril (C) a el MFP o impresora usando dos tornillos de sujeción M4 x 10 (F) de modo que los espacios frontal y trasero entre el piso y el retén del carril (C) sean de aproximadamente 8.0 mm.

7. Richten Sie die Schienenhalterungseinheit (C) mit der Rille der Führungsschiene (D) aus, und bringen Sie die Schienenhalterungseinheit (C) an die Führungsschiene (D) an. Stellen Sie sicher, daß die Tellerfeder (4) der Schienenhalterungseinheit (C) in die Rille paßt und die Kante der Führungsschiene (D) zwischen den Seilzügen auf der Rückseite der Schienenhalterungseinheit (C) sitzt.

8. Richten Sie die Führungsschiene (D) so aus, daß die Riemenscheibe (5) zum MFP oder Drucker ausgerichtet ist.

9. Bringen Sie die Schienenhalterung (C) am MFP oder Drucker mit zwei M4 x 10 Verbundschrauben (F) so an, daß die vorderen und hinteren Abstände zwischen Boden und Schienenhalterung (C) etwa 8.0 mm betragen.

7. Allineare il fermo della guida (C) con la scanalatura della guida della rotaia (D) e fissare il fermo della guida (C) alla guida della rotaia (D). Assicurarsi che la molla della piastra (4) del fermo della guida (C) sia collocata nella scanalatura e che il bordo della guida della rotaia (D) sia inserito tra le pulegge sul lato opposto del fermo della guida (C).

8. Orientare la guida della rotaia (D) in modo da posizionare la puleggia (5) in direzione dell'MFP o stampatore.

9. Assicurare il fermo della guida (C) all'MFP o stampatore utilizzando le due viti di serraggio M4 x 10 (F), in modo che la distanza anteriore e posteriore tra il pavimento ed il fermo della guida (C) sia di circa 8.0 mm.

7. 将轨道座 (C) 沿着导向轨道 (D) 的凹槽嵌入。此时, 应将片簧部 (4) 插入于凹槽中并将导向轨道 (D) 的一端插入于轨道座 (C) 背面的滚轮与滚轮之间。

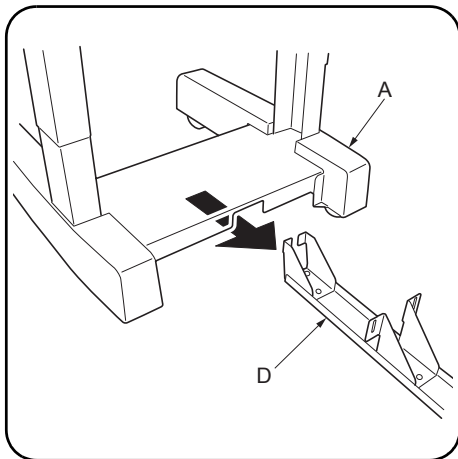
8. 使导向轨道 (D) 的滚轮部 (5) 朝向 MFP 或打印机。

9. 用两个 M4 x 10 固结螺钉 (F) 将轨道座 (C) 固定于 MFP 或打印机上。此时, 轨道座 (C) 与地板之间的距离应约为 8.0 毫米。

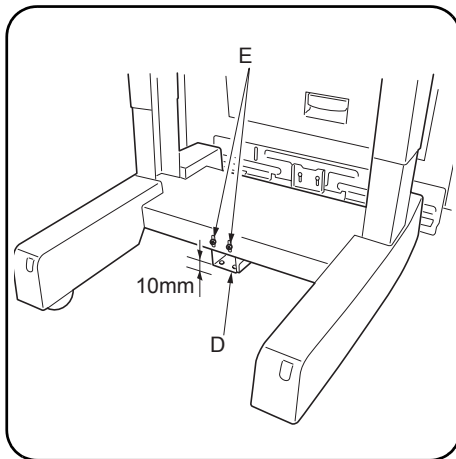
7. レール取付板 (C) をガイドレール (D) の溝に合わせてはめ込む。板バネ部 (4) が溝の中に入り、レール取付板 (C) 裏側のコゴとコゴの間にガイドレール (D) の端が入るようにする。

8. ガイドレール (D) のコロ部 (5) を MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体側に向ける。

9. レール取付板 (C) と床面の前後隙間が約 8.0mm になるように、レール取付板 (C) を MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体にビス M4 x 10 バインド (F) 2 本で固定する。



10. Insert the guide rail (D) into the bottom of the document finisher (A).

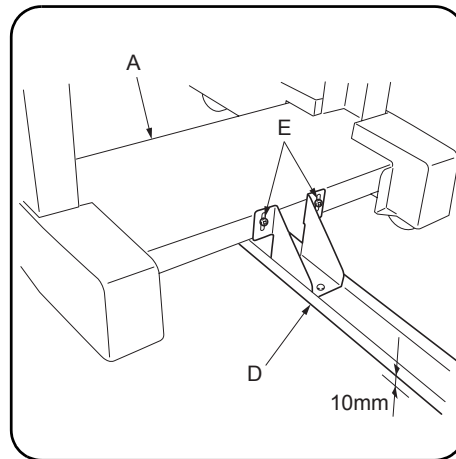


Fitting and adjusting the guide rail

11. While pressing the guide rail (D) to the document finisher (A) so that the gap between the guide rail (D) and the floor is approximately 10 mm, secure it using two M4 × 6 binding screws (E).

Note

If the guide rail is not properly adjusted, the guide rail may not move when the document finisher is separated.



12. Separate the document finisher (A) from the MFP or the printer and secure it using two M4 × 6 binding screws (E) so that the gap between the guide rail (D) and the floor is approximately 10 mm.

10. Insérer la glissière (D) en bas du retoucheur de document (A).

Fixation et réglage de la glissière

11. Tout en pressant la glissière (D) contre le retoucheur de document (A) de façon que l'écart entre la glissière (D) et le sol soit d'environ 10 mm, la fixer à l'aide de deux vis de raccordement M4 × 6 (E).

Remarque

Si la glissière n'est pas réglée correctement, la glissière risquera de ne pas se déplacer lorsque le retoucheur de document sera séparé.

12. Séparer le retoucheur de document (A) du MFP ou imprimante, puis le fixer à l'aide de deux vis de raccordement M4 × 6 (E) de façon que l'écart entre la glissière (D) et le sol soit d'environ 10 mm.

10. Inserte el carril de guía (D) en la parte inferior del finalizador de documentos (A).

Fijación y ajuste del carril de guía

11. Mientras presiona el carril de guía (D) en el finalizador de documentos (A) para que la separación entre el carril de guía (D) y el piso sea de unos 10 mm, asegúrelo utilizando dos tornillos de fijación M4 × 6 (E).

Nota

Si el carril de guía no está bien ajustado, el carril de guía puede no moverse cuando se separa el finalizador de documentos.

12. Separe el finalizador de documentos (A) del MFP o impresora y asegúrelo utilizando dos tornillos de fijación M4 × 6 (E) para que la separación entre el carril de guía (D) y el piso sea de unos 10 mm.

10. Die Führungsschiene (D) in das Unterteil des Dokument Finishers (A) einschieben.

Anbringen und Einstellen der Führungsschieneinheit

11. Die Führungsschiene (D) gegen den Dokument Finisher (A) gedrückt halten, so dass der Abstand zwischen der Führungsschiene (D) und dem Boden ca. 10 mm beträgt, und mit zwei M4 × 6 Befestigungsschrauben (E) sichern.

Hinweis

Falls die Führungsschieneinheit nicht korrekt eingestellt ist, bewegt sie sich beim Trennen des Dokument Finishers eventuell nicht.

12. Den Dokument Finisher (A) vom MFP oder Drucker trennen und mit zwei M4 × 6 Befestigungsschrauben (E) sichern, so dass der Abstand zwischen der Führungsschiene (D) und dem Boden ca. 10 mm beträgt.

10. Inserire la guida della rotaia (D) nella parte inferiore della finitrice di documenti (A).

Montaggio e regolazione della guida della rotaia

11. Mentre si tiene premuta la guida della rotaia (D) alla finitrice di documenti (A) in modo che lo spazio tra la guida della rotaia (D) e il pavimento sia di circa 10 mm, fissarla a mezzo di due viti di serraggio M4 × 6 (E).

Nota

Se la guida della rotaia non è regolata correttamente, potrebbe non muoversi quando il separatore la finitrice di documenti verrà staccato.

12. Separare la finitrice di documenti (A) dall'MFP o stampatore per fissarla a mezzo di due viti di serraggio M4 × 6 (E) in modo che lo spazio tra la guida della rotaia (D) e il pavimento sia di circa 10 mm.

10. 将导向轨道(D)插入装订器(A)的底部。

导向轨道的安装调整

11. 调整导向轨道(D)与地板之间的间距为10毫米左右, 将导向轨道(D)插入装订器(A)到底, 用两个M4×6固结螺钉(E)进行固定。

注意

如果不能正确调整导向轨道的话, 在分离装订器时, 可能会发生导向轨道不能移动的情况。

12. 将装订器(A)分离MFP或打印机, 调整导向轨道(D)与地板之间的间距为10毫米左右后, 用两支M4×6固结螺钉(E)进行固定。

10. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の底部にガイドレール (D) を挿入する。

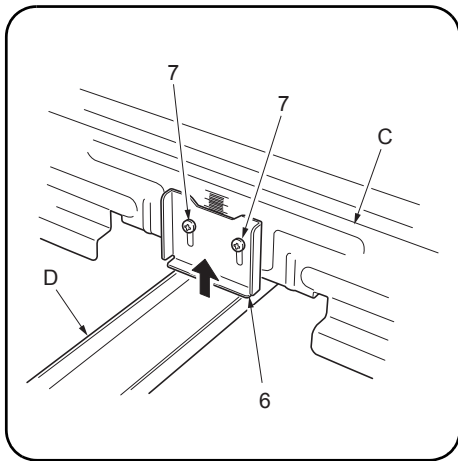
ガイドレールの取付調整

11. ガイドレール (D) と床面の隙間が約 10mm になるように、ガイドレール (D) をドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) に突き当てながら、ビス M4 × 6 バインド (E) 2 本で固定する。

注意

正しく調整しないと、ドキュメントフィニッシャの切り離し時、ガイドレールが動かない恐れがある。

12. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) を MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体より切り離し、ガイドレール (D) と床面の隙間が約 10mm になるように、ビス M4 × 6 バインド (E) 2 本で固定する。



13. Loosen temporarily the two screws (7) that secure the sheet metal (6) of the rail mounting plate (C) on the MFP or the printer, raise the sheet metal (6) by two divisions of the scale from the guide rail (D), and tighten the two screws (7).

Note

If the guide rail is not properly adjusted, the guide rail may not move smoothly or the document finisher may fall down.

Slide the document finisher to engage it with the latch catch of the MFP or the printer. If the document finisher and the MFP or the printer do not engage securely, perform the following document finisher height adjustment.

13. Desserrer provisoirement les deux vis (7) qui fixent la feuille métallique (6) de la plaque de montage du rail (C) sur le MFP ou imprimante, élever la feuille métallique (6) de deux crans sur l'échelle de la glissière (D), puis resserrer les deux vis (7).

Remarque

Si la glissière n'est pas réglée correctement, la glissière risquera de ne pas se déplacer doucement ou le retoucheur de document risquera de tomber.

Faire glisser le retoucheur de document pour l'engager dans le pontet du loquet du MFP ou imprimante. Si le retoucheur de document et le MFP ou imprimante ne s'engagent pas correctement, effectuer le réglage de hauteur suivant sur le retoucheur de document.

13. Afloje temporalmente los dos tornillos (7) que aseguran la hoja de metal (6) de la placa de montaje de carril (C) en el MFP o impresora, levante la hoja de metal (6) con dos divisiones de la escala del carril de guía (D) y apriete los dos tornillos (7).

Nota

Si no se ajusta correctamente el carril de guía, el carril de guía puede no moverse suavemente o el finalizador de documentos puede caer.

Deslice el finalizador de documentos hasta que enganche con el cerrojo del MFP o impresora. Si el finalizador de documentos y el MFP o impresora no se acoplan de manera segura, realice el siguiente ajuste de la altura del finalizador de documentos.

13. Die zwei Schrauben (7), die das Blech (6) der Schienenmontageplatte (C) am MFP oder Drucker sichern, vorübergehend lösen, das Blech (6) um zwei Teilstiche der Skala von der Führungsschiene (D) aus anheben, und die zwei Schrauben (7) wieder anziehen.

Hinweis

Falls die Führungsschieneinheit nicht korrekt eingestellt ist, bewegt sie sich eventuell nicht reibungslos, oder der Dokument Finisher kann herunterfallen.

Den Dokument Finisher verschieben, um ihn mit dem Riegelschloßbausatz des MFP oder Drucker in Eingriff zu bringen. Wenn der Dokument Finisher und der MFP oder Drucker nicht richtig ineinander eingreifen, führen Sie die folgende Höheneinstellung für den Dokument Finisher aus.

13. Allentare temporaneamente le due viti (7) che fissano il foglio metallico (6) della piastra di montaggio della rotaia (C) dell'MFP o stampatore, sollevare il foglio di metallo (6) di due posizioni sulla guida della rotaia (D) e serrare le due viti (7).

Nota

Se la guida della rotaia non è regolata correttamente, potrebbe non muoversi scorrevolmente oppure la finitrice di documenti potrebbe cadere.

Fare scivolare la finitrice di documenti per farla innestare con il dispositivo di arresto dell'MFP o stampatore. Qualora la finitrice di documenti e l'MFP o stampatore non si innestino saldamente, osservare la seguente procedura di regolazione dell'altezza della finitrice di documenti.

13. 松动固定在MFP或打印机侧轨道座(C)的金属板(6)上的两支固接螺钉(7), 在金属板(6)碰及导向轨道(D)的状态下, 抬升到第2个刻度的位置, 然后用两支螺钉(7)固定。

注意

如果不能正确调整的话, 导向轨道则不能顺利移动, 并会发生装订器倒置的情况。

滑动装订器并连接于MFP或打印机的挂钩承支架上。

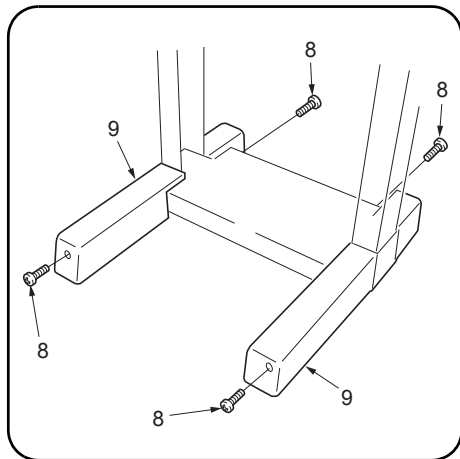
如无法吻合, 请按下述步骤调整装订器的高度。

13. MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体側のレール取付板 (C) の板金 (6) を固定しているビス (7) 2 本をいったん緩め、板金 (6) をガイドレール (D) に当てた状態から 2 目盛り上の位置にあげて、ビス (7) 2 本を固定する。

注意

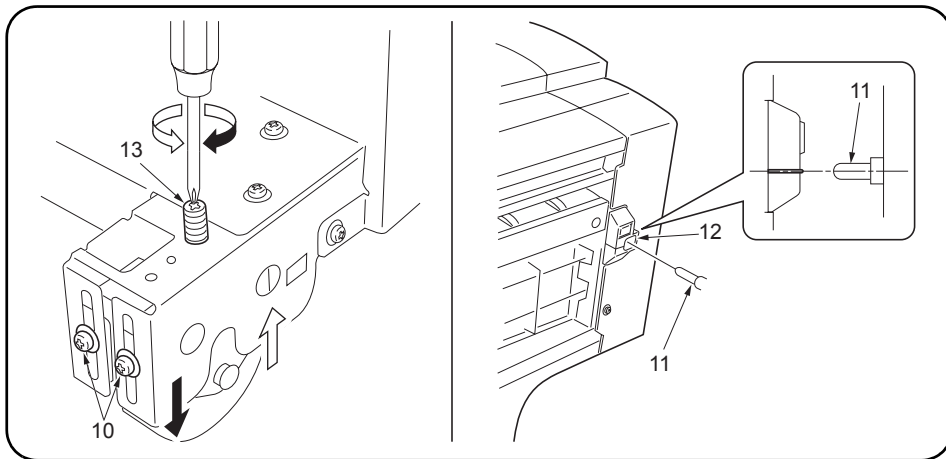
正しく調整しないと、ガイドレールがスムーズに動かない。又ドキュメントフィニッシャが倒れる恐れがある。

ドキュメントフィニッシャをスライドさせて MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体のラッチ受け板に連結させる。確実に連結しない場合は、次のドキュメントフィニッシャの高さ調整をおこなう。



Adjusting the height of the document finisher

1. Remove the front and rear covers (9) from the document finisher (A) by removing two screws (8) each.



2. Loosen the two screws (10) on the rear right caster of the document finisher (A). Adjust the height of the rear right caster by turning its adjustment bolt (13) using a cross-headed screwdriver so that the axis of the pin (11) of the latch catch is aligned with the marking of the slot (12) of the document finisher (A) when the document finisher (A) is joined to the MFP or the printer (viewed from the machine front).

Note: Turning the adjustment bolt (13) clockwise lifts the document finisher (A), while turning it counterclockwise lowers the document finisher (A).

Réglage de la hauteur du retoucheur de document

1. Retirer les couvercles avant et arrière (9) du retoucheur de document (A) en retirant deux vis (8) sur chacun des couvercles.

2. Desserrer les deux vis (10) de la roulette arrière droite du retoucheur de document (A). Régler la hauteur de la roulette arrière droite en tournant son boulon de réglage (13) à l'aide d'un tournevis cruciforme de manière que l'axe de la broche (11) du pontet du loquet soit aligné sur la marque de la fente (12) du retoucheur de document (A) lorsque le retoucheur de document (A) est fixé au MFP ou imprimante (vue à partir de l'avant de la machine).

Remarque: Si l'on tourne le boulon de réglage (13) dans le sens des aiguilles d'une montre, le retoucheur de document (A) s'élève; si on le tourne dans le sens inverse des aiguilles d'une montre, le retoucheur de document (A) s'abaisse.

Ajuste de altura del finalizador de documentos

1. Desmonte las tapas delantera y trasera (9) del finalizador de documentos (A) sacando los dos tornillos (8) cada uno.

2. Afloje los dos tornillos (10) en la rueda trasera del finalizador de documentos (A). Ajuste la altura de la rueda trasera derecha girando su perno de ajuste (13) utilizando un destornillador de punta en cruz para que el eje del pasador (11) en el pestillo esté alineado con la marca de la ranura (12) del finalizador de documentos (A) cuando el finalizador de documentos (A) esté unido a el MFP o impresora (vista del frente de la máquina).

Nota: Al girar el perno de ajuste (13) en la dirección de las manecillas del reloj se levanta el finalizador de documentos (A) y al girar contra las manecillas del reloj baja el finalizador de documentos (A).

Einstellen der Dokument Finisherhöhe

1. Die Vorder- und Rückabdeckung (9) nach Entfernen von je zwei Schrauben (8) vom Dokument Finisher (A) abnehmen.

2. Die zwei Schrauben (10) an der hinteren rechten Laufrolle des Dokument Finishers (A) lösen. Die Höhe der hinteren rechten Laufrolle durch Drehen ihrer Einstellschraube (13) mit einem Kreuzschlitzschraubenzieher so einstellen, dass die Achse des Stifts (11) der Verriegelungsklaue auf die Markierung des Schlitzes (12) des Dokument Finishers (A) ausgerichtet ist, wenn der Dokument Finisher (A) an den MFP oder Drucker angesetzt ist (von der Gerätevorderseite gesehen).

Hinweis: Durch Drehen der Einstellschraube (13) im Uhrzeigersinn wird der Dokument Finisher (A) angehoben, während er durch Drehen entgegen dem Uhrzeigersinn abgesenkt wird.

Regolazione dell'altezza della finitrice di documenti

1. Rimuovere i pannelli anteriore e posteriore (9) dalla finitrice di documenti (A) togliendo 2 viti (8) per ciascuno.

2. Allentare le due viti (10) sulla ruota orientabile posteriore destra della finitrice di documenti (A). Regolare l'altezza della ruota orientabile posteriore destra ruotandone il suo bullone di regolazione (13) a mezzo di un cacciavite a croce, in modo che l'asse del perno (11) del dispositivo di arresto risulti allineato ai contrassegni del foro (12) della finitrice di documenti (A) una volta che la finitrice stessa (A) viene unita all'MFP o stampatore (vista dal lato frontale della macchina).

Nota: Ruotando il bullone di regolazione (13) in senso orario si solleva la finitrice di documenti (A), mentre ruotandolo in senso antiorario si abbassa la finitrice di documenti (A).

[調整装订器の高度]

1. 卸下各两支小螺钉(8), 并取下装订器(A)的前后盖板(9)。

2. 将装订器(A)后右侧滚轮的两支固定螺钉(10)拧松。

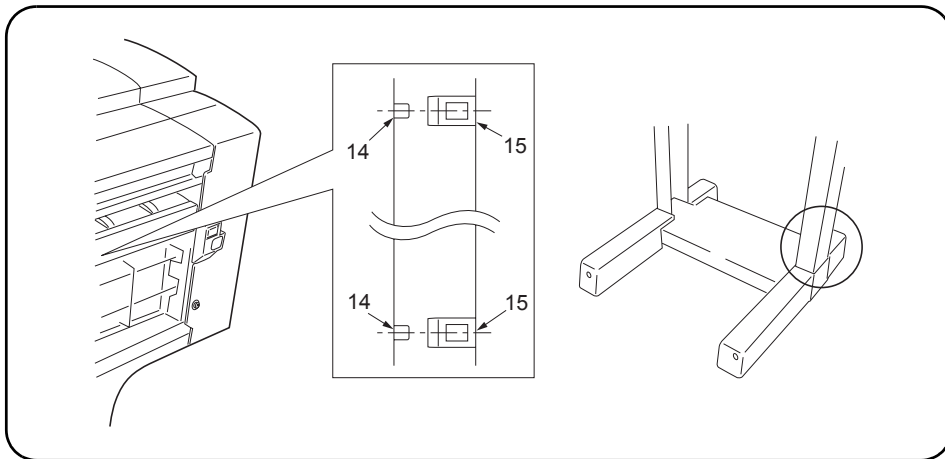
将装订器(A)与MFP或打印机连接, 为了使(从前面看时)挂钩承支架销(11)的中心与装订器(A)的长孔(12)的刻度相对准, 用十字螺丝刀旋转调节用螺钉(13), 对后右侧滚轮的高度进行调整。将调节用螺钉(13)往顺时针方向旋转时, 可调高装订器(A), 而往逆时针方向旋转螺钉时, 则可调低高度。

[ドキュメントフィニッシャの高さ調整]

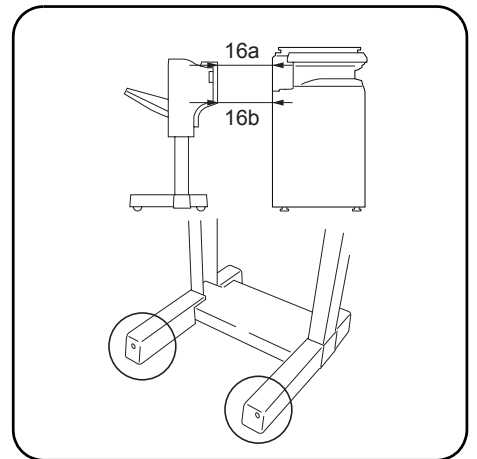
1. ビス(8)各2本を外し、ドキュメントフィニッシャ(A)の前後カバー(9)を取り外す。

2. ドキュメントフィニッシャ(A)右後のキャスターの固定ビス(10)2本を緩める。

ドキュメントフィニッシャ(A)をMFP本体またはプリンタ本体に連結し、前から見た時に、ラッチ受け板のピン(11)の中心が、ドキュメントフィニッシャ(A)の長穴(12)の刻印に合うように、ブラスドライバーを用いて調整用ボルト(13)を回し、右後のキャスターの高さ調整をおこなう。調整用ボルト(13)を時計方向に回すとドキュメントフィニッシャ(A)が上がり、反時計方向に回すと下がる。



3. Adjust the height of the front right caster in the same manner as in step 2 so that each center of the hooking portions (15) of the latch catch is aligned with the center of the two hooks (14) on the document finisher (A) when the document finisher (A) is joined to the MFP or the printer (viewed from above).



4. Adjust the height of the left two casters in the same manner as in step 2 so that the gaps (16a) and (16b) between the document finisher (A) and the MFP or the printer are the same when the document finisher (A) is detached from the MFP or the printer.

3. Régler la hauteur de la roulette avant droite en procédant comme à l'étape 2, de manière que chacun des centres des parties d'accrochage (15) du pontet du loquet soit aligné sur le centre des deux crochets (14) du retoucheur de document (A) lorsque le retoucheur de document (A) est fixé au MFP ou imprimante (vue à partir du haut).

4. Régler la hauteur des deux roulettes gauches en procédant comme à l'étape 2, de manière que les écarts (16a) et (16b) entre le retoucheur de documents (A) et la MFP ou l'imprimante soient identiques lorsque le retoucheur de documents (A) est détaché de la MFP ou de l'imprimante.

3. Ajuste la altura de la rueda delantera derecha de la misma forma que en el paso 2 para que cada centro de las partes de enganche (15) de cada pestillo esté alineado con el centro de los dos ganchos (14) en el finalizador de documentos (A) cuando el finalizador de documentos (A) está unido a el MFP o impresora (vista de arriba).

4. Ajuste la altura de las dos ruedas izquierdas de la misma forma que en el paso 2 para que las separaciones (16a) y (16b) entre el finalizador de documentos (A) y la MFP o la impresora sean las mismas cuando el finalizador de documentos (A) está soltado de la MFP o la impresora.

3. Die Höhe der vorderen rechten Laufrolle auf die in Schritt 2 beschriebene Weise einstellen, so dass die Mitte der Rasten (15) der Verriegelungsklaue auf die Mitte der zwei Haken (14) am Dokument Finisher (A) ausgerichtet ist, wenn der Dokument Finisher (A) an den MFP oder Drucker angesetzt ist (von oben gesehen).

4. Die Höhe der beiden linken Laufrollen auf die in Schritt 2 beschriebene Weise einstellen, so dass die Abstände (16a) und (16b) zwischen dem Dokument Finisher (A) und dem MFP oder dem Drucker gleich groß sind, wenn der Dokument Finisher (A) vom MFP oder vom Drucker abgenommen wird.

3. Regolare l'altezza della ruota orientabile anteriore destra allo stesso modo descritto al passo 2, in modo che ciascun centro delle parti di aggancio (15) del dispositivo di arresto sia allineato al centro dei due ganci (14) della finitrice di documenti (A), una volta che la finitrice di documenti (A) viene unita all'MFP o stampatore (vista dall'alto).

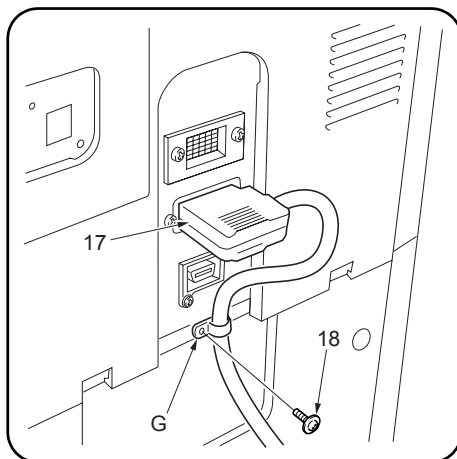
4. Regolare l'altezza delle due ruote orientabili sinistre allo stesso modo descritto al passo 2, in modo che le distanze (16a) e (16b) tra la finitrice di documenti (A) e l'MFP o lo stampatore siano le stesse una volta che la finitrice di documenti (A) viene separata dall'MFP o dallo stampatore.

3. 将装订器(A)与MFP或打印机连接, 使(从上面看时)装订器(A)的两个挂钩(14)与挂钩承支架的孔(15)中心相对准, 并按与步骤2相同的方法来调整前右侧滚轮的高度。

4. 按照步骤2中相同的方式调整左侧两个轮脚的高度, 使得装订器(A)和MFP或打印机之间的间隙(16a)和(16b)在从MFP或打印机上拆下装订器(A)时为相同的。

3. ドキュメントフィニッシャー (A) を MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体に連結し、上から見た時に、ドキュメントフィニッシャー (A) のフック (14) 2ヶ所とラッチ受け板の引っ掛け部 (15) の中心が合うように、手順 2 と同様にして右前のキャスターの高さ調整をおこなう。

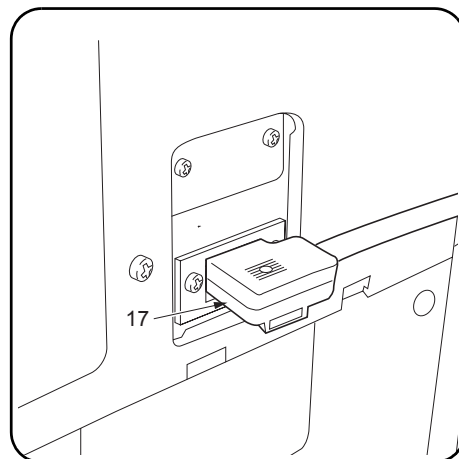
4. ドキュメントフィニッシャー (A) を MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体から切り離れた時に、ドキュメントフィニッシャー (A) と MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体の間隔 (16a) (16b) が等しくなるように、手順 2 と同様にして左側のキャスター 2 カ所の高さ調整をおこなう。



5. Reattach the removed parts to their original positions.

Connecting the signal cable (monochrome machines only)

1. Connect the signal cable (17) of the document finisher (A) to the MFP or the printer, pass the cable through the clamp (G), and secure the clamp by tightening the screw (18) of the MFP or the printer. The cable length to the clamp (G) must be approximately 100 mm.



Connecting the signal cable (full-color machines only)

1. Connect the signal cable (17) of the document finisher (A) to the MFP or the printer.

5. Remettez les pièces enlevées à leur position d'origine.

Connexion du câble d'interconnexion (machines monochromes seulement)

1. Connecter le câble d'interconnexion (17) du retoucheur de document (A) au MFP ou imprimante, passer le câble par la bride (G), puis fixer la bride en serrant la vis (18) du MFP ou imprimante. La longueur du câble jusqu'à la bride (G) doit être d'environ 100 mm.

Connexion du câble d'interconnexion (machines entièrement en couleurs seulement)

1. Connecter le câble d'interconnexion (17) du retoucheur de document (A) au MFP ou imprimante.

5. Vuelva a instalar las piezas desmontadas en sus posiciones originales.

Conexión del cable de señal (sólo para máquinas monocromáticas)

1. Conecte el cable de señal (17) del finalizador de documentos (A) en el MFP o impresora, pase el cable por la abrazadera (G) y asegure la abrazadera apretando el tornillo (18) del MFP o impresora. La longitud del cable a la abrazadera (G) debe ser de unos 100 mm.

Conexión del cable de señal (sólo para máquinas a todo color)

1. Conecte el cable de señal (17) del finalizador de documentos (A) en el MFP o impresora.

5. Die entfernten Teile wieder an ihren ursprünglichen Positionen anbringen.

Anschließen des Signalkabels (nur Monochrommaschinen)

1. Das Signalkabel (17) des Dokument Finishers (A) an den MFP oder Drucker anschließen, das Kabel durch die Klemme (G) führen, und die Klemme durch Anziehen der Schraube (18) des MFP oder Drucker befestigen. Die Kabellänge bis zur Klemme (G) muss ungefähr 100 mm betragen.

Anschließen des Signalkabels (nur Vollfarbenmaschinen)

1. Das Signalkabel (17) des Dokument Finishers (A) an den MFP oder Drucker anschließen.

5. Rimontare le parti rimosse nelle loro posizioni originali.

Connessione del cavo del segnale (solo per macchine in bianco e nero)

1. Collegare il cavo del segnale (17) della finitrice di documenti (A) all'MFP o stampatore, fare passare il cavo attraverso il morsetto (G) e fissare il morsetto stringendo la vite (18) dell'MFP o stampatore. La lunghezza del cavo al morsetto (G) deve essere di circa 100 mm.

Connessione del cavo del segnale (solo per le macchine a colori)

1. Collegare il cavo del segnale (17) della finitrice di documenti (A) all'MFP o stampatore.

5. 卸下的部品を元通りに取り付け。

[接続信号电线：仅限于黑白机]

1. 连接装订器(A)的信号电线(17), 将电线穿过夹紧件(G), 然后, 用螺钉(18)一起紧固。到夹紧件(G)处的电线长度约需100mm。

[接続信号电线：仅限于全彩色机]

1. 装订器(A)的信号电线(17)连接在MFP或打印机上。

5. 取り外した部品を元通りに取り付け。

[信号線の接続: モノクロ機のみ]

1. ドキュメントフィニッシャ(A)の信号線(17)を接続し、ケーブルをクランプ(G)を通して、ビス(18)で締め付ける。クランプ(G)までのケーブルの長さは約100mmにすること。

[信号線の接続: フルカラー機のみ]

1. ドキュメントフィニッシャ(A)の信号線(17)をMFP本体またはプリンタ本体に接続する。

Operation check

1. Insert the MFP or the printer power plug to the wall outlet and turn the main switch on.
2. Check that the paper is fed and that the document finisher (A) operates correctly.

Vérification du fonctionnement

1. Insérer la fiche d'alimentation du MFP ou imprimante dans la prise murale et mettre l'interrupteur principal sous tension.
2. Vérifier que le papier est fourni et que le retoucheur de document (A) fonctionne correctement.

Comprobación operacional

1. Inserte el enchufe del MFP o impresora en el receptáculo de la pared y encienda el interruptor principal.
2. Asegúrese de que avance el papel y verifique que el finalizador de documentos (A) funcione correctamente.

Betriebstest

1. Stecken Sie den Netzstecker des MFP oder Drucker in die Netzsteckdose ein und schalten Sie den Hauptschalter ein.
2. Vergewissern dass der Papiervorschub funktioniert und dass der Dokument Finisher (A) einwandfrei funktioniert.

Controllo del funzionamento

1. Inserire il cavo di alimentazione dell'MFP o stampatore nella presa di rete e quindi premere il pulsante generale di accensione.
2. Verificare che la carta di prova sia alimentata e controllare che la finitrice di documenti (A) funzioni correttamente.

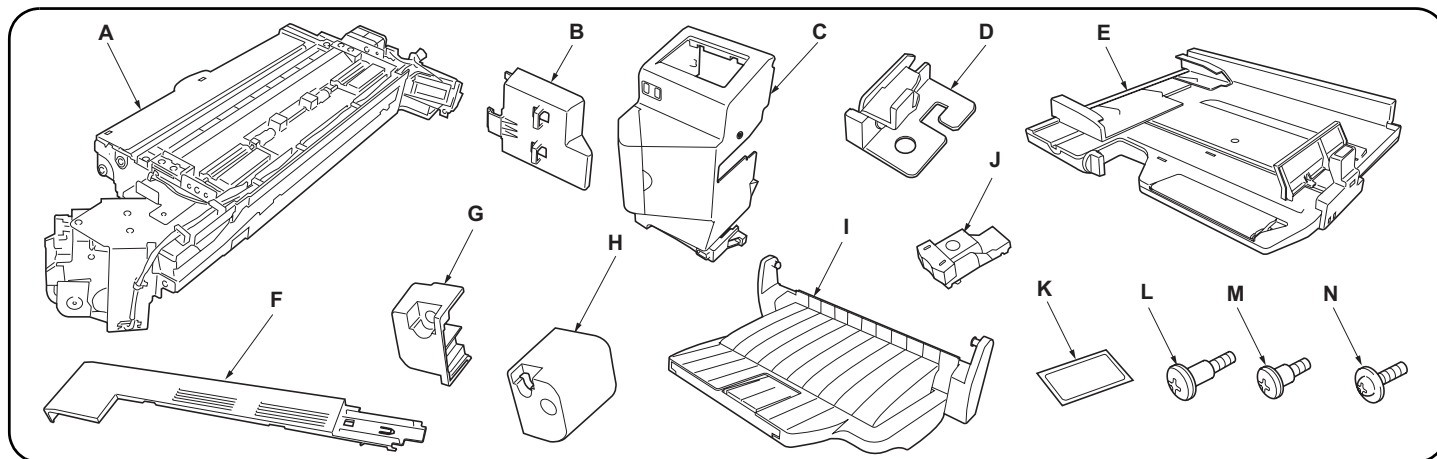
[确认运作]

1. 将MFP主机的电源插头插入插座后，开启总电源。
2. 确认已经送纸并且装订器(A)运行正常。

[動作確認]

1. MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、メインスイッチを ON にする。
2. 通紙確認をおこない、ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) が正常に動作することを確認する。

INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR BUILT-IN FINISHER



English

Supplied parts

A	Paper conveying unit	1
B	Sub staple cover	1
C	Staple cover	1
D	Hook holder	1
E	Finisher process table	1

F	Upper left cover	1
G	Front eject cover	1
H	Rear eject cover	1
I	Finisher tray	1
J	Staple cartridge	1
K	Blindfold seal	1
L	Large pin	1
M	Small pin	1
N	M3 x 6 screw	3

Français

Pièces fournies

A	Unité de transport du papier	1
B	Capot de l'agrafeuse auxiliaire	1
C	Capot de l'agrafeuse	1
D	Support de crochet	1
E	Table de processus du module de finition	1

F	Capot supérieur gauche	1
G	Capot d'éjection avant	1
H	Capot d'éjection arrière	1
I	Plateau du module de finition	1
J	Cartouche d'agrafes	1
K	Étiquette de masquage	1
L	Grande goupille	1
M	Petite goupille	1
N	Vis M3 x 6	3

Español

Partes suministradas

A	Unidad de transporte de papel	1
B	Cubierta secundaria de grapas	1
C	Cubierta de grapas	1
D	Soporte de gancho	1
E	Tabla de proceso de finalizador	1

F	Cubierta superior izquierda	1
G	Cubierta de expulsión frontal	1
H	Cubierta de expulsión trasera	1
I	Bandeja de finalizador	1
J	Cartucho de grapas	1
K	Sello ciego	1
L	Pasador grande	1
M	Pasador pequeño	1
N	Tornillo M3 x 6	3

Deutsch

Gelieferte Teile

A	Papierfördereinheit	1
B	Hefterhilfsabdeckung	1
C	Hefterabdeckung	1
D	Hakenhalter	1
E	Finisher-Druckablage	1

F	Obere linke Abdeckung	1
G	Frontauswurfabdeckung	1
H	Rückauswurfabdeckung	1
I	Finisher-Ablage	1
J	Heftklammermagazin	1
K	Blindaufkleber	1
L	Großer Stift	1
M	Kleiner Stift	1
N	M3 x 6 Schraube	3

Italiano

Parti di fornitura

A	Unità di trasporto carta	1
B	Coperchio secondario della pinzatrice	1
C	Coperchio pinzatrice	1
D	Supporto a gancio	1
E	Tabella di elaborazione del finitore	1

F	Coperchio superiore sinistro	1
G	Coperchio anteriore di espulsione carta	1
H	Coperchio posteriore di espulsione carta	1
I	Vassoio finitore	1
J	Cartuccia punti metallici	1
K	Sigillo mascherina	1
L	Perno grande	1
M	Perno piccolo	1
N	Vite M3 x 6	3

简体中文

同装品

A	输送组件	1
B	副装订器盖板	1
C	装订器盖板	1
D	钩夹	1

E	装订分页器处理托盘	1
F	左上盖板	1
G	排纸盖板(前)	1
H	排纸盖板(后)	1
I	装订分页器托盘	1
J	订书钉盒	1
K	标贴	1
L	大卡销	1

M	小卡销	1
N	螺丝 M3 x 6	3

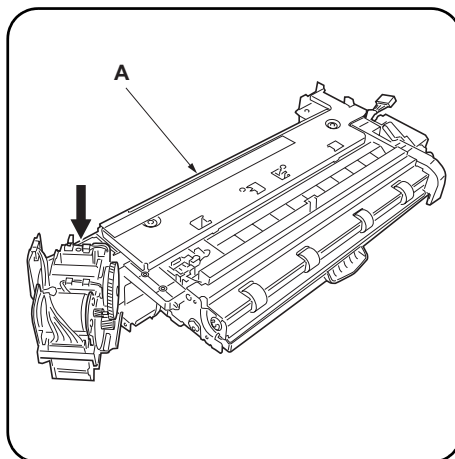
日本語

同梱品

A	搬送ユニット	1
B	サブステーブルカバー	1
C	ステーブルカバー	1
D	フックホルダ	1

E	フィニッシャー処理トレイ	1
F	左上カバー	1
G	排出カバー前	1
H	排出カバー後	1
I	フィニッシャトレイ	1
J	ステーブルカートリッジ	1
K	シール	1
L	ピン大	1

M	ピン小	1
N	ビス M3 x 6	3

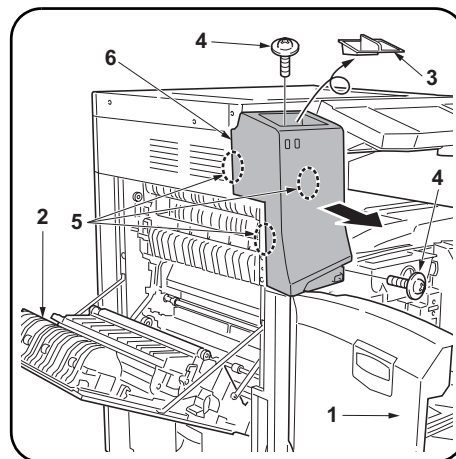


Precautions

- Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning material from supplied parts.
- Before installing the finisher, be sure to turn the main power switch of the machine off and unplug the power cable from the wall outlet.

Important

When placing the paper conveying unit (A) on the floor or the like, be sure to place it upside down because the staple mounting plate may be deformed.



Procedure

Removing the covers

- Open the front cover (1) and left cover 1 (2).
- Remove the clip holder (3).
- Remove two screws (4) and release three latches (5) to remove the cover (6).

Précautions

- Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.
- Avant d'installer le module de finition, veillez à mettre la machine hors tension et à débrancher le câble d'alimentation de la prise murale.

Important

Lorsque vous placez l'unité de transport du papier (A) sur le sol ou sur une surface équivalente, veillez à la placer sens dessus dessous, car la plaque de montage d'agrafes risque d'être déformée.

Procédure

Retrait des capots

- Ouvrez le capot avant (1) et le capot gauche 1 (2).
- Retirez le support à pince (3).
- Retirez deux vis (4) et libérez trois verrous (5) pour retirer le capot (6).

Precauciones

- Asegúrese de despegar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.
- Antes de instalar el finalizador, asegúrese de desconectar el interruptor principal de la máquina y desenchufar el cable eléctrico del tomacorriente de la pared.

Importante

Cuando coloca la unidad de transporte de papel (A) en el piso o similar, asegúrese de colocarlo invertido porque la placa de montaje de grapas puede deformarse.

Procedimiento

Desmontaje de las cubiertas

- Abra la cubierta frontal (1) y la cubierta izquierda 1 (2).
- Desmonte el soporte de clip (3).
- Saque los dos tornillos (4) y suelte los tres pestillos (5) para desmontar la cubierta (6).

Vorsichtsmaßnahmen

- Entfernen Sie Klebeband und/oder Dämpfungsmaterial vollständig von den mitgelieferten Teilen.
- Schalten Sie unbedingt den Betriebsschalter der Maschine aus, und trennen Sie das Netzkabel von der Netzsteckdose, bevor Sie den Finisher installieren.

Wichtig

Wenn die Papierfördereinheit (A) auf den Boden oder dergleichen gestellt wird, muss sie auf den Kopf gestellt werden, weil sonst die Heftermontageplatte verformt werden kann.

Verfahren

Entfernen der Abdeckungen

- Die Frontabdeckung (1) und die linke Abdeckung 1 (2) öffnen.
- Den Bürokammerhalter (3) entfernen.
- Die zwei Schrauben (4) herausdrehen, und die drei Rasten (5) lösen, um die Abdeckung (6) abzunehmen.

Precauzioni

- Accertarsi di rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o il materiale di imbottitura dalle parti fornite.
- Prima di installare il finitore, assicurarsi di spegnere l'interruttore principale di alimentazione della macchina e scollegare la spina del cavo di alimentazione dalla presa a muro della rete elettrica.

Importante

Quando collocate l'unità di trasporto della carta (A) sul pavimento o in un altro luogo simile, accertatevi che sia posto capovolto, perché la piastra di montaggio della pinzatrice potrebbe deformarsi.

Procedura

Rimozione dei coperchi

- Aprire il coperchio anteriore (1) e il coperchio sinistro 1 (2).
- Rimuovete il contenitore delle graffette (3).
- Togliete due viti (4) e rilasciate i tre fermi (5) per rimuovere il coperchio (6).

注意事項

- 如果同裝品上帶有固定膠帶、緩衝材料時務必揭下。
- 安裝裝訂分頁器時，必須先關閉機器主機的主電源開關，並拔下電源插頭後，再進行安裝作業。

注意事項

將輸送組件 (A) 放在地板等上時，為了防止裝訂器安裝板變形，必須翻過來放置。

安裝步驟

拆下蓋板類

- 打開前蓋板 (1) 和左蓋板 1 (2)。
- 拆下夾子盒 (3)。
- 卸下 2 個螺絲 (4)，鬆解 3 處嵌入板 (5)，然後，取下蓋板 (6)。

注意事項

- 同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材が付いている場合は必ず取り外すこと。
- フィニッシャーを設置する場合は、機械本体の主電源スイッチを OFF にし、電源プラグを抜いてから作業をおこなう。

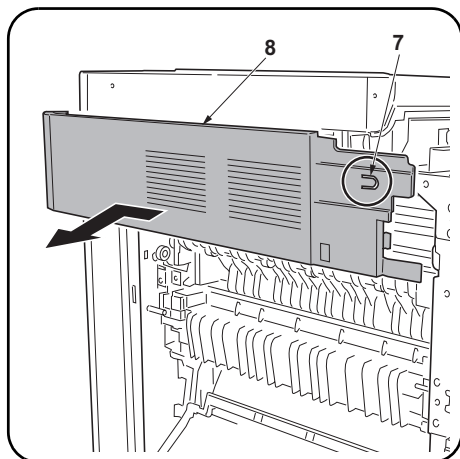
注意事項

搬送ユニット (A) を床などに置く場合は、ステーブル取付板変形防止のため必ず裏返しにして置く。

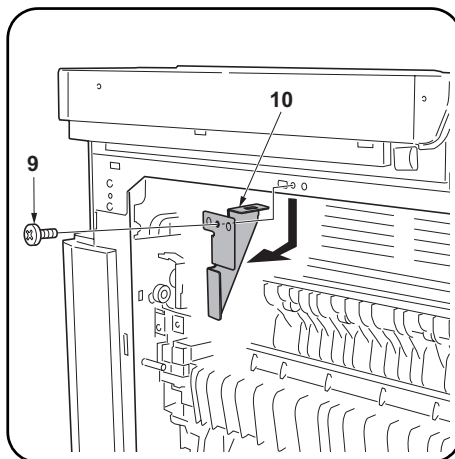
設置手順

カバー類の取り外し

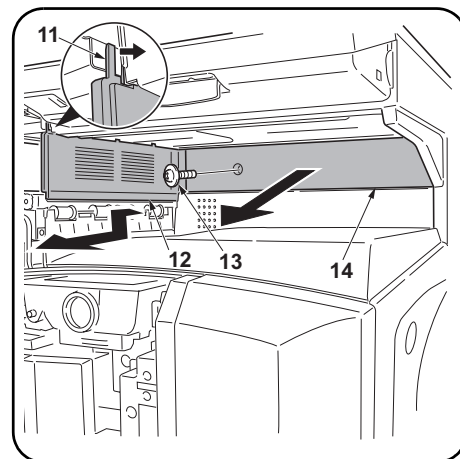
- 前カバー (1) および左カバー 1 (2) を開く。
- クリップ入れ (3) を取り外す。
- ビス (4) 2 本を外し、はめ込み (5) 3 箇所を解除してカバー (6) を取り外す。



4. Release the latch (7) using a flat-head screwdriver to remove the cover (8).



5. Remove the screw (9) to remove the metal plate (10). The removed metal plate (10) is no longer required.



6. Release the latch (11) using a flat-head screwdriver and slide the cover (12) to the front to remove.
7. Remove the screw (13) to remove the cover (14).

4. Libérez le verrou (7) à l'aide d'un tournevis à tête plate pour retirer le capot (8).

5. Retirez la vis (9) pour déposer la plaque métallique (10). La plaque métallique déposée (10) n'est plus nécessaire.

6. Libérez le verrou (11) à l'aide d'un tournevis à tête plate, puis faites glisser le capot (12) vers l'avant pour le déposer.
7. Retirez la vis (13) pour déposer le capot (14).

4. Suelte el pestillo (7) utilizando un destornillador de cabeza plana para desmontar la cubierta (8).

5. Quite el tornillo (9) para desmontar la placa de metal (10). La placa de metal desmontada (10) ya no es necesaria.

6. Suelte el pestillo (11) utilizando un destornillador de cabeza plana y deslice la cubierta (12) hacia delante para desmontarla.
7. Saque el tornillo (13) para desmontar la cubierta (14).

4. Die Raste (7) mit einem Flachschaubenzieher lösen, um die Abdeckung (8) abzunehmen.

5. Die Schraube (9) herausdrehen, um die Metallplatte (10) abzunehmen. Die abgenommene Metallplatte (10) wird nicht mehr benötigt.

6. Die Raste (11) mit einem Flachschaubenzieher lösen, und die Abdeckung (12) nach vorn schieben, um sie abzunehmen.
7. Die Schraube (13) herausdrehen, um die Abdeckung (14) abzunehmen.

4. Rilasciate il fermo (7) utilizzando un giravite a punta piatta per rimuovere il coperchio (8).

5. Rimuovere la vite (9) per togliere la piastra di metallo (10). La piastra di metallo (10) rimossa non è più necessaria.

6. Rilasciate il fermo (11) utilizzando un giravite a punta piatta e fate scivolare il coperchio (12) verso il lato anteriore per rimuoverlo.
7. Togliete la vite (13) per rimuovere il coperchio (14).

4. 用一字形螺丝刀等松解嵌入板 (7)，取下盖板 (8)。

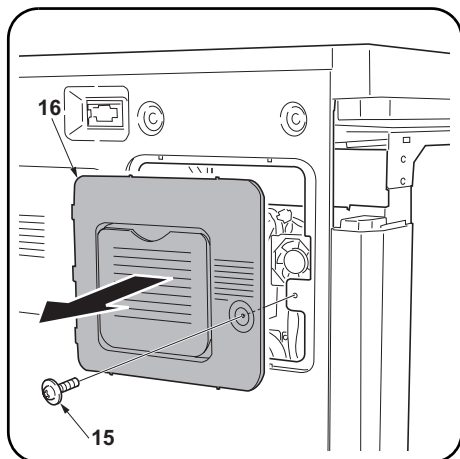
5. 卸下 1 个螺丝 (9)，取下金属件 (10)。不安装金属件 (10)。

6. 用一字形螺丝刀等松解嵌入板 (11)，将盖板 (12) 向跟前拉并取下。
7. 卸下 1 个螺丝 (13)，取下盖板 (14)。

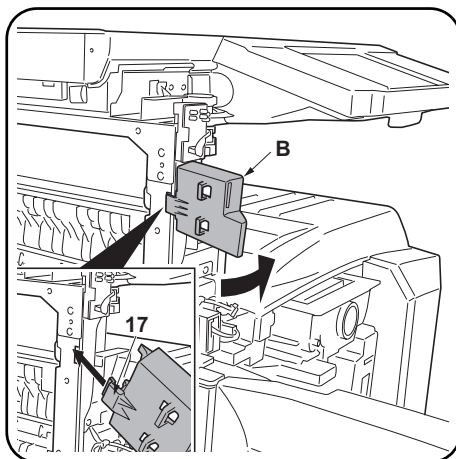
4. はめ込み (7) をマイナスドライバーなどで解除し、カバー (8) を取り外す。

5. ビス (9) 1 本を外し、金具 (10) を取り外す。金具 (10) は取り付けない。

6. はめ込み (11) をマイナスドライバーなどで解除し、カバー (12) を手前側に引いて取り外す。
7. ビス (13) 1 本を外し、カバー (14) を取り外す。



8. Remove the screw (15) from the rear side of the machine to remove the cover (16).



Attaching the sub staple cover

9. Insert the hook (17) of the sub staple cover (B) and turn the cover (B) in the direction of arrow until it clicks to attach.

8. Retirez la vis (15) du côté arrière de la machine pour déposer le capot (16).

Fixation du capot de l'agrafeuse auxiliaire

9. Insérez le crochet (17) du capot de l'agrafeuse auxiliaire (B), puis faites tourner le capot (B) dans le sens de la flèche jusqu'à ce qu'il s'encliquète pour le fixer.

8. Saque el tornillo (15) del lado trasero de la máquina para desmontar la cubierta (16).

Colocación de la cubierta secundaria de grapas

9. Inserte el gancho (17) en la cubierta secundaria de grapas (B) y gire la cubierta (B) en el sentido de la flecha hasta que se produzca un chasquido para colocarlo.

8. Die Schraube (15) auf der Rückseite der Maschine herausdrehen, um die Abdeckung (16) abzunehmen.

Anbringen der Hefterhilfsabdeckung

9. Den Haken (17) der Hefterhilfsabdeckung (B) einsetzen, und die Abdeckung (B) in Pfeilrichtung drehen, bis sie mit einem Klicken einrastet.

8. Togliete la vite (15) dal lato posteriore della macchina per rimuovere il coperchio (16).

Montaggio del coperchio secondario della pinzatrice

9. Inserite il gancio (17) del coperchio secondario della pinzatrice (B) e fate ruotare il coperchio (B) nella direzione della freccia fino a quando non si mette in posizione con un clic.

8. 卸下机器主机后面的 1 个螺丝 (15)，取下盖板 (16)。

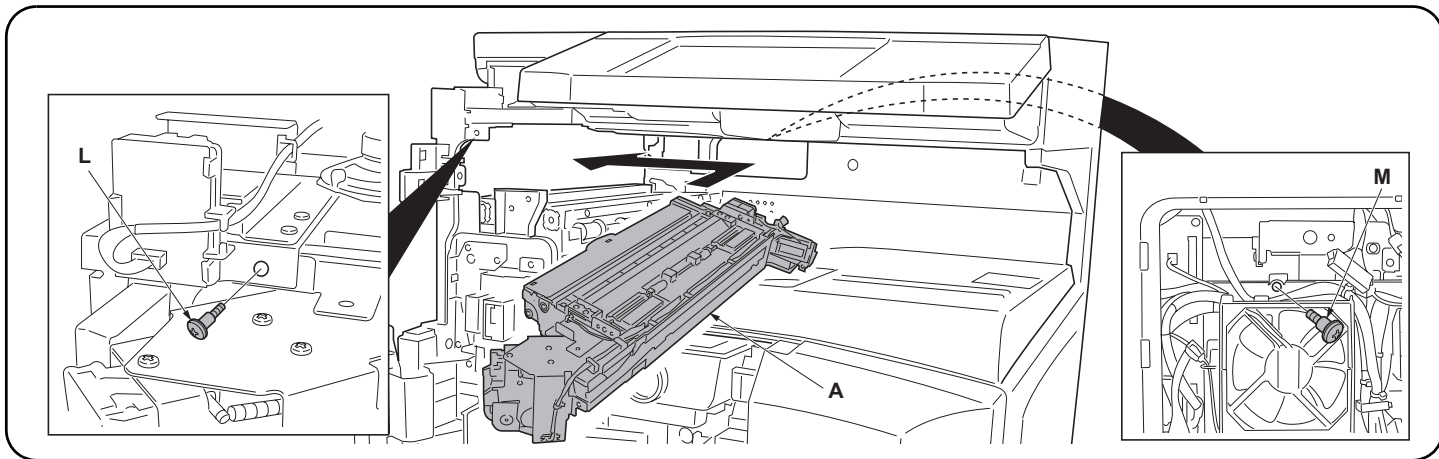
安装副装订器盖板

9. 将副装订器盖板 (B) 的钩件 (17) 插入后，朝箭头方向转动安装，直至听到咔叽声为止。

8. 機械本体後側のビス (15) 1 本を外し、カバー (16) を取り外す。

サブステープルカバーの取り付け

9. サブステープルカバー (B) のフック (17) を挿入し、カチッと音がするまで矢印方向に回転し取り付ける。



Installing the paper conveying unit

10. Insert the paper conveying unit (A) from the machine front and slide it to the left.

11. Fix the paper conveying unit (A) using two pins.

Front: Use the large pin (L).

Rear: Use the small pin (M).

Installation de l'unité de transport du papier

10. Insérez l'unité de transport du papier (A) depuis l'avant de la machine et faites-le glisser vers la gauche.

11. Fixez l'unité de transport du papier (A) à l'aide de deux goupilles.

Avant: Utilisez la grande goupille (L).

Arrière: Utilisez la petite goupille (M).

Instalación de la unidad de transporte de papel

10. Inserte la unidad de transporte de papel (A) desde el frente de la máquina y deslice hacia la izquierda.

11. Fije la unidad de transporte de papel (A) utilizando dos pasadores.

Frente: Utilice el pasador grande (L).

Atrás: Utilice el pasador pequeño (M).

Installieren der Papierfördereinheit

10. Die Papierfördereinheit (A) von der Vorderseite der Maschine einführen und nach links schieben.

11. Die Papierfördereinheit (A) mit zwei Stiften befestigen.

Vorn: Den großen Stift (L) verwenden.

Hinten: Den kleinen Stift (M) verwenden.

Montaggio dell'unità di trasporto della carta

10. Inserite l'unità di trasporto della carta (A) dal lato anteriore della macchina e fatelo scivolare verso sinistra.

11. Fissate l'unità di trasporto della carta (A) utilizzando due perni.

Lato anteriore: utilizzate il perno grande (L).

Lato posteriore: utilizzate il perno piccolo (M).

安装输送组件

10. 从机器主机前面插入输送组件 (A)，向左侧滑动。

11. 用 2 个卡销固定输送组件 (A)。

前面：大卡销 (L)

后面：小卡销 (M)

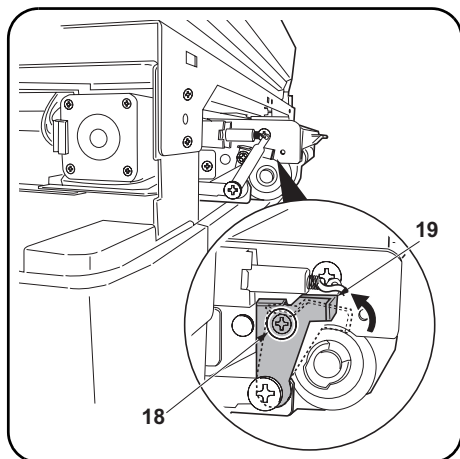
搬送ユニットの取り付け

10. 搬送ユニット (A) を機械本体前側から挿入し、左側にスライドする。

11. 搬送ユニット (A) をピン 2 本で固定する。

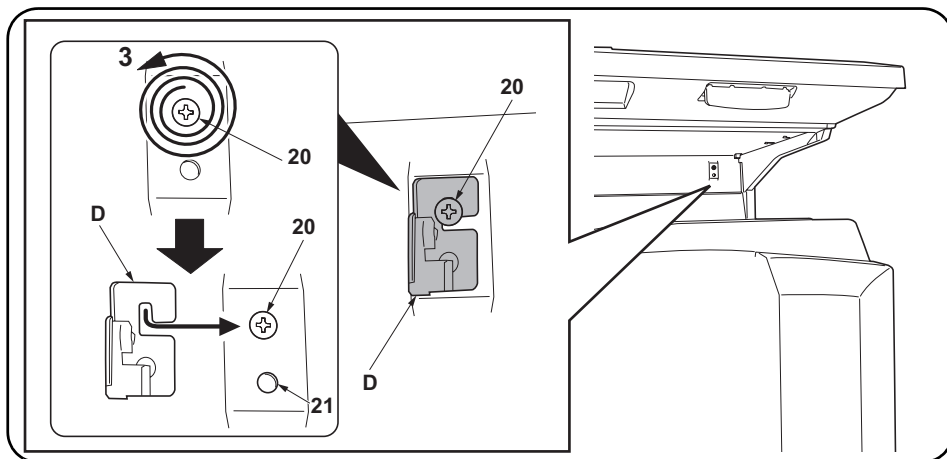
前側: ピン大 (L)

後側: ピン小 (M)



Releasing the lever holding plate

12. Loosen the screw (18) of the paper conveying unit (A) and release the lever holding plate (19) in the direction of arrow.
13. Tighten the screw (18).



Installing the finisher process table

14. Loosen the screw (20) approx. 3 turns.
Do not turn the screw (20) too far, otherwise it may drop into the machine.
15. Fit the hook holder (D) to the screw (20).
16. Fit the hole of the hook holder (D) to the positioning projection (21) and then tighten the screw (20) to fix the hook holder (D).

Libération de la plaque de support de levier

12. Desserrez la vis (18) de l'unité de transport du papier (A) et libérez la plaque de support de levier (19) dans le sens de la flèche.
13. Resserrez la vis (18).

Installation de la table de processus du module de finition

14. Desserrez la vis (20) d'environ trois tours.
Ne pas tourner la vis (20) excessivement, sinon elle risquerait de tomber dans la machine.
15. Placez le support de crochet (D) sur la vis (20).
16. Faites coïncider l'orifice du support de crochet (D) avec la saillie de positionnement (21), puis serrez la vis (20) pour fixer le support de crochet (D).

Alojado de la placa de soporte de palanca

12. Afloje el tornillo (18) de la unidad de transporte de papel (A) y suelte la placa de soporte de la palanca (19) en el sentido de la flecha.
13. Apriete el tornillo (18).

Instalación de la tabla de proceso de finalizador

14. Afloje el tornillo (20) aprox. 3 giros.
No gire demasiado el tornillo (20) porque puede caerse dentro de la máquina.
15. Encaje el soporte de gancho (D) en el tornillo (20).
16. Encaje el orificio del soporte de gancho (D) en la saliente de proyección (21) y apriete el tornillo (20) para fijar el soporte de gancho (D).

Freigeben der Hebelhalteplatte

12. Die Schraube (18) der Papierfördereinheit (A) lösen, und die Hebelhalteplatte (19) in Pfeilrichtung freigeben.
13. Die Schraube (18) festziehen.

Installieren der Finisher-Druckablage

14. Die Schraube (20) um etwa 3 Umdrehungen lösen.
Die Schraube (20) nicht zu weit lösen, weil sie sonst in die Maschine fallen kann.
15. Den Hakenhalter (D) an der Schraube (20) anbringen.
16. Das Loch des Hakenhalters (D) auf den Positioniersprung (21) ausrichten, und dann die Schraube (20) zur Befestigung des Hakenhalters (D) festziehen.

Rilascio della leva che fissa la piastra

12. Allentate la vite (18) dell'unità di trasporto della carta (A) e rilasciate la leva che fissa la piastra (19) nella direzione della freccia.
13. Stringete la vite (18).

Installazione del tabella di elaborazione del finitore.

14. Allentate di 3 giri circa la vite (20).
Non girate troppo la vite (20), altrimenti potrebbe cadere nella macchina.
15. Montate il supporto a gancio (D) sulla vite (20).
16. Montate il foro del supporto a gancio (D) sulla posizione (21) e poi stringete la vite (20) per fissare il supporto a gancio (D).

松解固定金属柄

12. 松弛输送组件 (A) の 1 个螺丝 (18), 朝箭头方向松解固定金属柄 (19)。
13. 然后, 紧固 1 个螺丝 (18)。

安装装订分页器处理托盘

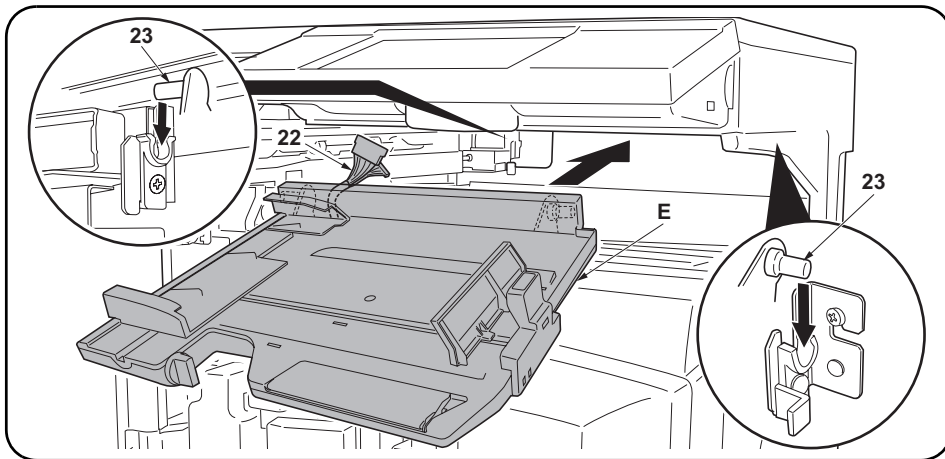
14. 松弛 1 个螺丝 (20) (约 3 圈)。
不可过度松弛 1 个螺丝 (20), 否则会导致螺丝掉落机器内部。
15. 将钩夹 (D) 插入 1 个螺丝 (20)。
16. 将定位突起部 (21) 对准钩夹 (D) 孔的位置, 用 1 个螺丝 (20) 紧固。

レバー固定金具の解除

12. 搬送ユニット (A) のビス (18) 1 本をゆるめ、レバー固定金具 (19) を矢印方向に解除する。
13. ビス (18) 1 本を締める。

フィニッシャ処理トレイの取り付け

14. ビス (20) 1 本を緩める (約 3 回転)。
ビス (20) 1 本を緩めすぎると、機械内部に落下する恐れがある。
15. フックホルダ (D) をビス (20) 1 本に挿入する。
16. 位置決め突起 (21) とフックホルダ (D) の穴の位置を合わせて、ビス (20) 1 本を締めて固定する。



17. Extend the wires of connectors (22) of the finisher process table (E) straight.
18. Insert the finisher process table (E) from the front side of the machine and hang the hooks (23) on the right and left of the table (E) onto the machine.
Pass the connectors of the finisher process table (E) through the opening at the rear side of the machine.

17. Allongez tout droit les fils des connecteurs (22) de la table de processus du module de finition (E).
18. Insérez la table de processus du module de finition (E) depuis l'avant de la machine, et suspendez sur la machine les crochets (23) se trouvant sur les côtés droit et gauche du plateau (E).
Faire passer les connecteurs de la table de processus du module de finition (E) par l'ouverture du côté arrière de la machine.

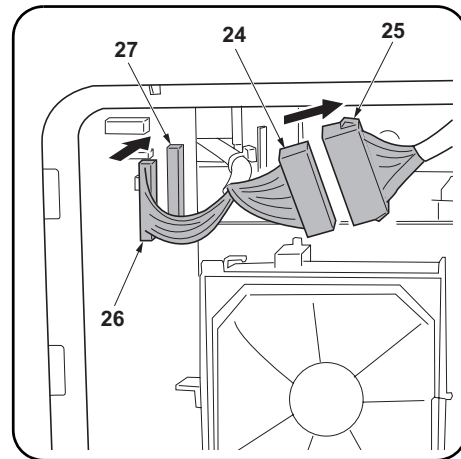
17. Alargue los cables de los conectores (22) de la tabla de proceso de finalizador (E) para que queden extendidos.
18. Inserte la tabla de proceso de finalizador (E) por el lado delantero de la máquina y cuelgue los ganchos (23) en los lados derecho e izquierdo de la tabla (E) de la máquina.
Pase los conectores de la tabla de proceso de finalizador (E) por la abertura en el lado trasero de la máquina.

17. Die Kabel der Steckverbinder (22) der Finisher-Druckablage (E) gerade ziehen.
18. Die Finisher-Druckablage (E) von der Vorderseite der Maschine einführen, und die Haken (23) auf der rechten und linken Seite der Ablage (E) in die Maschine einhängen.
Die Steckverbinder der Finisher-Druckablage (E) durch die Öffnung auf der Rückseite der Maschine führen.

17. Allungate i cavi dei connettori (22) del tabella di elaborazione del finitore (E).
18. Inserite la tabella di elaborazione del finitore (E) dal lato anteriore della macchina e appendete i ganci (23) a destra e a sinistra del tabella (E) sulla macchina.
Fate passare i connettori della tabella di elaborazione del finitore (E) attraverso l'apertura sul lato posteriore della macchina.

17. 将装订分页器处理托盘 (E) 插头的电线 (22) 伸直。
18. 从机器主机前面插入装订分页器处理托盘 (E)，挂在左右钩件 (23) 上。
将装订分页器处理托盘 (E) 的插头通过机器主机后面的开口部。

17. フィニッシャ処理トレイ (E) のコネクタ電線 (22) をまっすぐに伸ばす。
18. フィニッシャ処理トレイ (E) を機械本体前側から挿入し、左右のフック (23) を引っ掛ける。
フィニッシャ処理トレイ (E) のコネクタを機械本体後側の開口部に通す。



19. At the rear side of the machine, connect the connector (24) of the finisher process table to the connector (25) of the paper conveying unit.
20. Connect the connector (26) of the finisher process table to YC4 (27) on the engine PWB.
21. Replace the cover (16) using the screw (15) removed in step 8.

19. Sur le côté arrière de la machine, branchez le connecteur (24) de la table de processus du module de finition au connecteur (25) de l'unité de transport du papier.
20. Branchez le connecteur (26) de la table de processus du module de finition à YC4 (27) sur le PWB du moteur.
21. Remettez le capot (16) en place en utilisant la vis (15) retirée auparavant lors de l'étape 8.

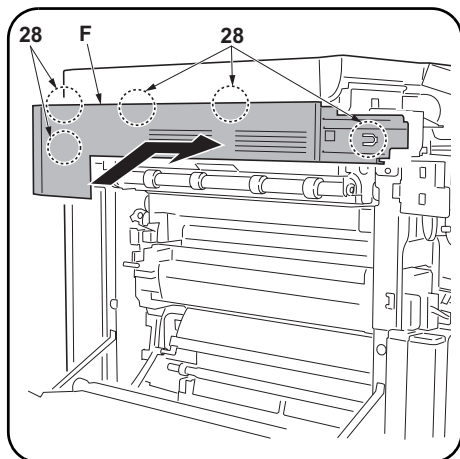
19. En el lado trasero de la máquina, conecte el conector (24) de la tabla de proceso de finalizador en el conector (25) de la unidad de transporte de papel.
20. Conecte el conector (26) de la tabla de proceso de finalizador en YC4 (27) en el PWB del motor.
21. Vuelva a colocar la cubierta (16) utilizando el tornillo (15) sacado en el paso 8.

19. Den Steckverbinder (24) der Finisher-Druckablage auf der Rückseite der Maschine mit dem Steckverbinder (25) der Papierfördereinheit verbinden.
20. Den Steckverbinder (26) der Finisher-Druckablage an YC4 (27) der Motorplatine anschließen.
21. Die Abdeckung (16) wieder mit der in Schritt 8 entfernten Schraube (15) anbringen.

19. Sul lato posteriore della macchina, collegate il connettore (24) della tabella di elaborazione del finitore al connettore (25) dell'unità di trasporto della carta.
20. Collegate il connettore (26) della tabella di elaborazione del finitore al YC4 (27) sul motore PWB.
21. Rimettete a posto il coperchio (16) utilizzando la vite (15) rimossa nel passo 8.

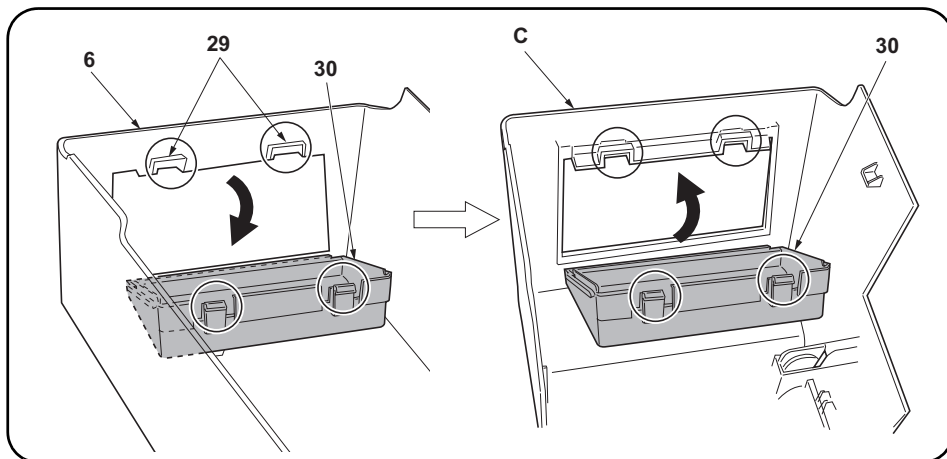
19. 绕到机器主机后面，将装订分页器处理托盘的插头 (24) 连接在输送组件的插头 (25) 上。
20. 将装订分页器处理托盘的插头 (26) 连接在引擎主板的 YC4 (27) 上。
21. 在步骤 8 拆下的盖板 (16)，用 1 个螺丝 (15) 按原样装好。

19. 機械本体後側にまわり、フィニッシャ処理トレイのコネクタ (24) を搬送ユニットのコネクタ (25) に接続する。
20. フィニッシャ処理トレイのコネクタ (26) をエンジン回路基板の YC4 (27) に接続する。
21. 手順 8 で取り外したカバー (16) をビス (15) 1 本で元通り取り付け。



Attaching the upper left cover

22. Insert five catches (28) to attach the upper left cover (F).



Installing the staple cover

23. Release two latches (29) of the cover (6) removed in step 3 using a flat-head screwdriver to remove the lower clip holder (30).

24. Attach the lower clip holder (30) to the staple cover (C).

Fixation du capot supérieur gauche

22. Insérez les cinq fermetoirs (28) pour fixer le capot supérieur gauche (F).

Installation du capot de l'agrafeuse

23. Libérez les deux verrous (29) du capot (6) retiré auparavant lors de l'étape 3 en utilisant un tournevis à tête plate pour retirer le support de pince inférieur (30).

24. Fixez le support de pince inférieur (30) sur le capot de l'agrafeuse (C).

Colocación de la cubierta superior izquierda

22. Inserte las uñas (28) para instalar la cubierta superior izquierda (F).

Instalación de la cubierta de grapas

23. Suelte los dos pestillos (29) de la cubierta (6) desmontada en el paso 3 utilizando el destornillador de punta plana para desmontar el soporte de clip inferior (30).

24. Coloque el soporte de clip inferior (30) en la cubierta de grapas (C).

Anbringen der oberen linken Abdeckung

22. Die fünf Klauen (28) zur Anbringung der oberen linken Abdeckung (F) einhängen.

Installieren der Hefterabdeckung

23. Die zwei Rasten (29) der in Schritt 3 entfernten Abdeckung (6) mit einem Flachsraubenzieher lösen, um den unteren Büroklammerhalter (30) abzunehmen.

24. Den unteren Büroklammerhalter (30) an der Hefterabdeckung (C) anbringen.

Montaggio del coperchio superiore sinistro

22. Inserite cinque ganci (28) per fissare il coperchio superiore sinistro (F).

Installazione del coperchio della pinzatrice

23. Rilasciate due fermi (29) del coperchio (6) rimosso nel passo 3 utilizzando un giravite a punta piatta per rimuovere il contenitore inferiore delle graffette (30).

24. Montate il contenitore inferiore delle graffette (30) al coperchio della pinzatrice (C).

安装左上盖板

22. 将 5 处钩件 (28) 插入后, 装上左上盖板 (F)。

安装装订器盖板

23. 用一字形螺丝刀等松解在步骤 3 卸下的盖板 (6) 的 2 处嵌入板 (29), 并取下夹子盒下 (30)。

24. 将夹子盒下 (30) 装在装订器盖板 (C) 上。

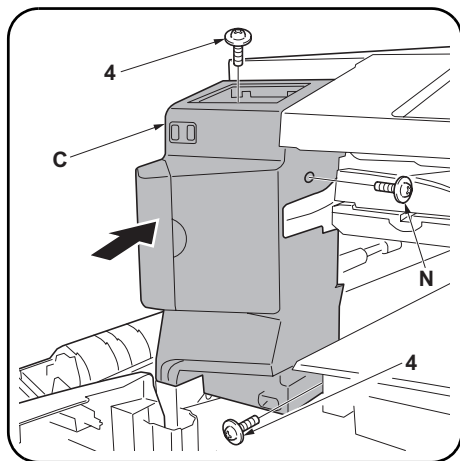
左上カバーの取り付け

22. 引っ掛け (28) 5 箇所を挿入し、左上カバー (F) を取り付け。

ステーブルカバーの取り付け

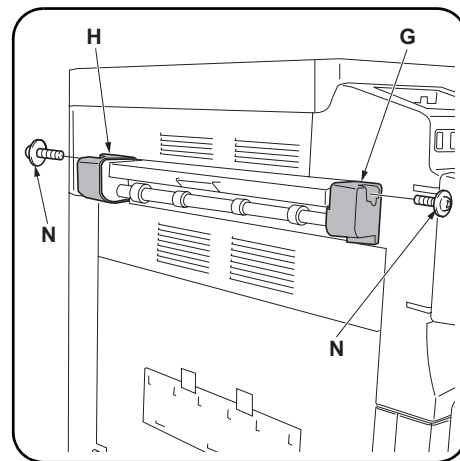
23. 手順 3 で取り外したカバー (6) のはめ込み (29) 2 箇所をマイナスドライバーなどで解除し、クリップ入れ下 (30) を取り外す。

24. クリップ入れ下 (30) をステーブルカバー (C) に取り付け。



25. Fix the staple cover (C) using three screws.
Upper/Lower right: Use two screws (4)
removed in step 3.
Upper right: Use M3 × 6 screw (N).

26. Replace the clip holder (3) removed in step 2.
27. Close left cover 1 (2) and the front cover (1).



Attaching the finisher tray
28. Fix the front eject cover (G) and the rear eject cover (H) using an M3 × 6 screw (N) each.

25. Fixez le capot de l'agrafeuse (C) à l'aide de trois vis.
Côté supérieur/inférieur droit: Utilisez les deux vis (4) retirées auparavant lors de l'étape 3.
Côté supérieur droit: Utilisez une vis M3 × 6 (N).

26. Remettez en place le support à pince (3) retiré auparavant lors de l'étape 2.
27. Refermez le capot gauche 1 (2) et le capot avant (1).

Fixation du plateau du module de finition
28. Fixez le capot d'éjection avant (G) et le capot d'éjection arrière (H) à l'aide d'une vis M3 × 6 (N) pour chaque capot.

25. Fije la cubierta de grapas (C) utilizando tres tornillos.
Superior/inferior derecho: Utilice dos tornillos (4) sacados en el paso 3.
Superior derecho: Utilice el tornillo M3 × 6 (N).

26. Vuelva a colocar el soporte de clip (3) desmontado en el paso 2.
27. Cierre la cubierta izquierda 1 (2) y la cubierta frontal (1).

Colocación de la bandeja de finalizador
28. Fije la cubierta de expulsión frontal (G) y la cubierta de expulsión trasera (H) utilizando un tornillo M3 × 6 (N) en cada lugar.

25. Die Hefterabdeckung (C) mit drei Schrauben befestigen.
Oben/Unten rechts: Die in Schritt 3 entfernten zwei Schrauben (4) benutzen.
Oben rechts: Die M3 × 6 Schraube (N) benutzen.

26. Den in Schritt 2 entfernten Büroklammerhalter (3) wieder anbringen.
27. Die linke Abdeckung 1 (2) und die Frontabdeckung (1) schließen.

Anbringen der Finisher-Ablage
28. Die Frontauswurfabdeckung (G) und die Rückauswurfabdeckung (H) mit je einer M3 × 6 Schraube (N) befestigen.

25. Fissate il coperchio della pinzatrice (C) utilizzando tre viti.
Lato superiore/inferiore destro: utilizzate due viti (4) rimosse nel passo 3.
Lato superiore destro: utilizzate una vite M3 × 6 (N).

26. Rimettete al suo posto il contenitore delle graffette (3) rimosso nel passo 2.
27. Chiudete il coperchio sinistro 1 (2) e il coperchio anteriore (1).

Montaggio del vassoio del finitore
28. Fissate il coperchio anteriore di espulsione carta (G) e il coperchio posteriore di espulsione carta (H) utilizzando una vite M3 × 6 (N) per ciascuno.

25. 用 3 个螺丝固定装订器盖板 (C)。
上侧、右下侧: 在步骤 3 拆下的 2 个螺丝 (4)
右上侧: 1 个螺丝 M3 × 6 (N)

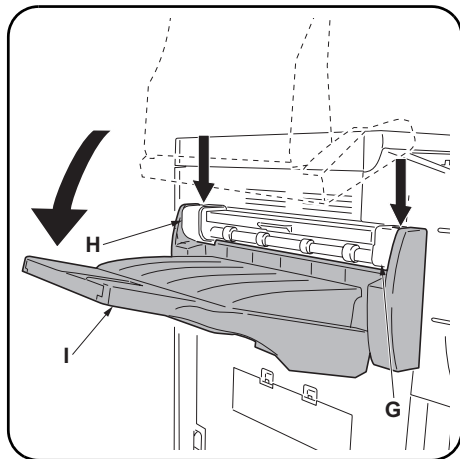
26. 在步骤 2 拆下的夹子盒 (3) 按原样装好。
27. 关闭左盖板 1 (2) 和前盖板 (1)。

安装装订分页器托盘
28. 用各 1 个螺丝 M3 × 6 (N) 固定排纸盖板前 (G) 和后 (H)。

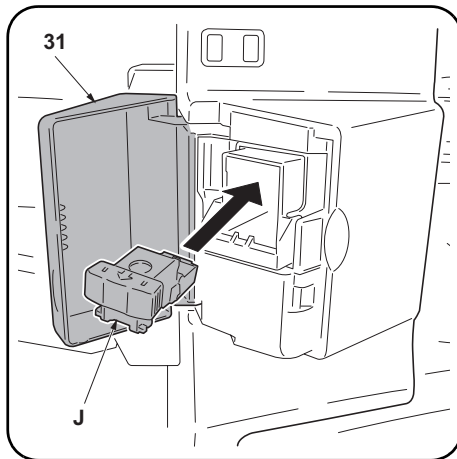
25. ビス 3 本でステープルカバー (C) を固定する。
上側・右下側: 手順 3 で外したビス (4) 2 本
右上側: ビス M3 × 6 (N) 1 本

26. 手順 2 で取り外したクリップ入れ (3) を元通り取り付け。
27. 左カバー 1 (2) および前カバー (1) を閉じる。

フィニッシュトレイの取り付け
28. ビス M3 × 6 (N) 各 1 本で排出カバー前 (G) および後 (H) を固定する。

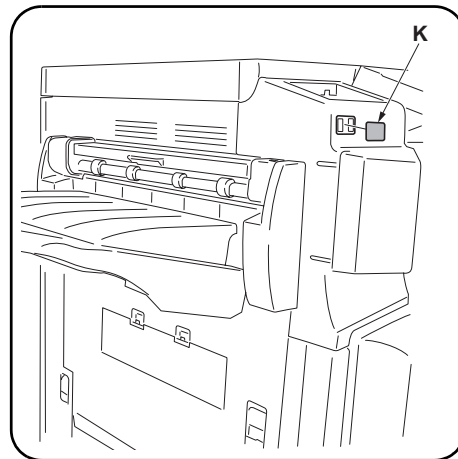


29. Insert the front and rear hooks of the finisher tray (I) into the front eject cover (G) and the rear eject cover (H) respectively and then attach the finisher tray (I).



Attaching the staple cartridge

30. Open the cover (31) and insert the staple cartridge (J).
31. Close the cover (31).



Adhering the blindfold seal (For models with monochrome touch panel only)

32. Clean the staple cover with alcohol and then adhere the blindfold seal (K).

29. Insérez les crochets avant et arrière du plateau du module de finition (I) dans le capot d'éjection avant (G) et dans le capot d'éjection arrière (H) respectivement, puis fixez le plateau du module de finition (I).

Fixation de la cartouche d'agrafes

30. Ouvrez le capot (31) et insérez la cartouche d'agrafes (J).
31. Refermez le capot (31).

Collage de l'étiquette de masquage (pour les modèles équipés d'un écran tactile monochrome seulement)

32. Nettoyez le capot de l'agrafeuse avec de l'alcool, puis collez l'étiquette de masquage (K).

29. Inserte los ganchos delantero y trasero de la bandeja de finalizador (I) en la cubierta de expulsión frontal (G) y la cubierta de expulsión trasera (H) respectivamente y colócale la bandeja de finalizador (I).

Colocación del cartucho de grapas

30. Abra la cubierta (31) e inserte el cartucho de grapas (J).
31. Cierre la cubierta (31).

Pegado del sello ciego (Sólo modelos con panel de toque monocromático)

32. Limpie la cubierta de grapas con alcohol y pegue el sello ciego (K).

29. Die vorderen und hinteren Haken der Finisher-Ablage (I) jeweils in die Frontauswurfabdeckung (G) und die Rückauswurfabdeckung (H) einführen, und dann die Finisher-Ablage (I) anbringen.

Anbringen des Heftklammermagazins

30. Die Abdeckung (31) öffnen, und das Heftklammermagazin (J) einsetzen.
31. Die Abdeckung (31) schließen.

Anbringen des Blindaufklebers (nur für Modelle mit Monochrom-Sensorbildschirm)

32. Die Hefterabdeckung mit Alkohol reinigen, und dann den Blindaufkleber (K) anbringen.

29. Inserite i ganci anteriori e posteriori del vassoio del finitore (I) rispettivamente nel coperchio anteriore di espulsione carta (G) e nel coperchio posteriore di espulsione carta (H) e poi montate il vassoio del finitore (I).

Montaggio della cartuccia dei punti metallici

30. Aprite il coperchio (31) e inserite la cartuccia dei punti metallici (J).
31. Chiudete il coperchio (31).

Applicate il sigillo mascherina (solo per i modelli con pannello monocromatico a sfioramento)

32. Pulite il coperchio della pinzatrice con alcol e poi applicate il sigillo mascherina (K).

29. 将装订分页器托盘 (I) 的构件插入排纸盖板前 (G) 和后 (H), 然后装上装订分页器托盘 (I)。

安装订书钉盒

30. 打开盖板 (31) 后, 插入订书钉盒 (J)。
31. 关闭盖板 (31)。

贴上标贴

(只限单色触控式面板机)
32. 用酒精清洁后, 贴上标贴 (K)。

29. フィニッシャートレイ (I) のフックを排出カバー前 (G) および後 (H) に挿入し、フィニッシャートレイ (I) を取り付ける。

ステーブルカートリッジの取り付け

30. カバー (31) を開き、ステーブルカートリッジ (J) を挿入する。
31. カバー (31) を閉じる。

シールの貼り付け (モノクロタッチパネル機のみ)

32. アルコール清掃後、シール (K) を貼り付ける。

Checking the operation

1. Connect the power plug of the machine to the wall outlet and turn the main power switch on.
2. Make a proof copy in the staple mode to check the finishing and stapling.

Vérification du fonctionnement

1. Insérer la fiche d'alimentation de la machine dans la prise murale et mettre la machine sous tension.
2. Effectuez une copie de test en mode d'agrafage pour vérifier la finition et l'agrafage.

Verificación del funcionamiento

1. Conecte el enchufe eléctrico de la máquina en un tomacorriente de la pared y conecte el interruptor principal.
2. Haga una copia de prueba en el modo de grapas para verificar el finalizado y grapado.

Überprüfen des Betriebs

1. Den Netzstecker der Maschine in die Steckdose stecken und den Betriebsschalter einschalten.
2. Eine Probekopie im Heftermodus anfertigen, um die Verarbeitung und Heftung zu überprüfen.

Verifica di funzionamento

1. Collegare la spina del cavo di alimentazione della macchina alla presa a muro della rete elettrica e accendere l'interruttore principale di alimentazione.
2. Nel modo graffatrice eseguite una copia di prova per verificare la cucitura e la rifinitura.

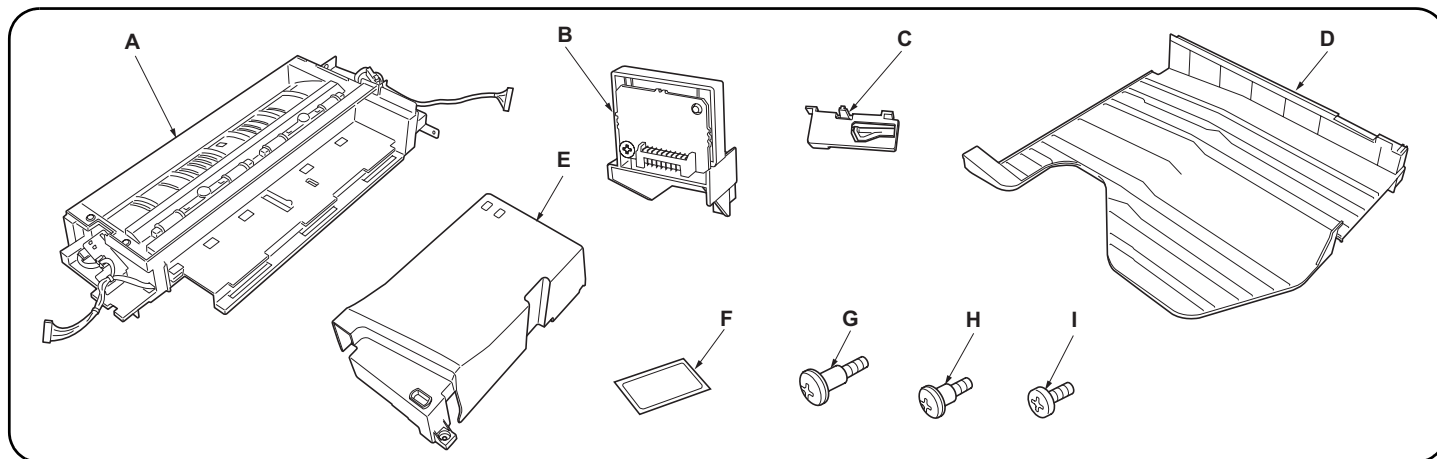
操作確認

1. 将机器主机上的电源插头插入插座中，打开主电源开关。
2. 选择装订复印模式，确认装订分页器和装订器的操作状况。

動作確認

1. 機械本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、主電源スイッチをONにする。
2. ステابلコピーをおこない、フィニッシャーおよびステابل動作を確認する。

INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR JOB SEPARATOR



English

Supplied parts

A	Job separator	1
B	LED PWB unit	1
C	Tray holder	1
D	Job separator tray	1
E	Left front cover	1

F	Blindfold seal	1
G	Large pin	1
H	Small pin	1
I	M3 x 6 screw	1

Français

Pièces fournies

A	Séparateur de travaux	1
B	Unité LED PWB	1
C	Support de plateau	1
D	Plateau du séparateur de travaux	1
E	Capot avant gauche	1

F	Étiquette de masquage	1
G	Grande goupille	1
H	Petite goupille	1
I	Vis M3 x 6	1

Español

Partes suministradas

A	Separador de trabajos	1
B	Unidad PWB LED	1
C	Soporte de bandeja	1
D	Bandeja de separador de trabajos	1
E	Cubierta delantera izquierda	1

F	Sello ciego	1
G	Pasador grande	1
H	Pasador pequeño	1
I	Tornillo M3 x 6	1

Deutsch

Gelieferte Teile

A	Job-Separator	1
B	LED-Platineneinheit	1
C	Fachhalter	1
D	Job-Separator-Fach	1
E	Linke Frontabdeckung	1

F	Blindaufkleber	1
G	Großer Stift	1
H	Kleiner Stift	1
I	M3 x 6 Schraube	1

Italiano

Parti di fornitura

A	Separatore lavori	1
B	Unità LED PWB	1
C	Supporto vassoio	1
D	Vassoio del separatore lavori	1
E	Coperchio frontale sinistro	1

F	Sigillo mascherina	1
G	Perno grande	1
H	Perno piccolo	1
I	Vite M3 x 6	1

简体中文

同装品

A	作业分离器	1
B	LED 电路板组件	1
C	托盘座	1
D	作业分离器托盘	1

E	左前盖板	1
F	标贴	1
G	大卡销	1
H	小卡销	1
I	螺丝 M3 x 6	1

日本語

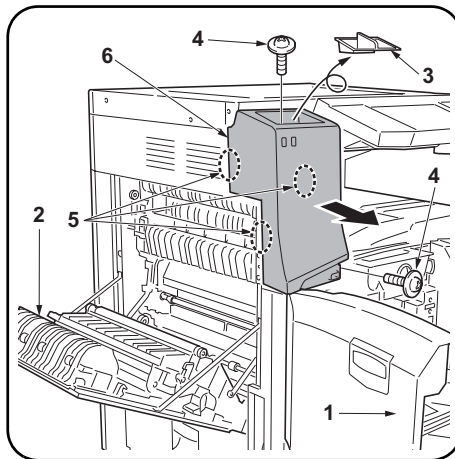
同梱品

A	ジョブセパレータ	1
B	LED 基板ユニット	1
C	トレイホルダ	1
D	ジョブセパレータトレイ	1

E	左前カバー	1
F	シール	1
G	ピン大	1
H	ピン小	1
I	ビス M3 x 6	1

Precautions

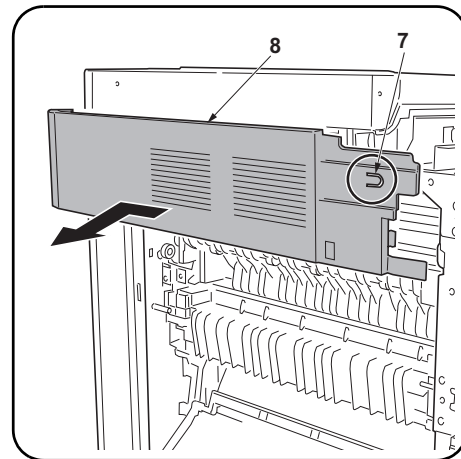
- Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning material from supplied parts.
- Before installing the job separator, be sure to turn the main power switch of the machine off and unplug the power cable from the wall outlet.



Procedure

Removing the covers

1. Open the front cover (1) and left cover 1 (2).
2. Remove the clip holder (3).
3. Remove two screws (4) and release three latches (5) to remove the cover (6).



4. Release the latch (7) using a flat-head screwdriver to remove the cover (8).

Précautions

- Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.
- Avant d'installer le séparateur de travaux, veillez à mettre la machine hors tension et à débrancher le câble d'alimentation de la prise murale.

Procédure

Retrait des capots

1. Ouvrez le capot avant (1) et le capot gauche 1 (2).
2. Retirez le support à pince (3).
3. Retirez deux vis (4) et libérez trois verrous (5) pour retirer le capot (6).

4. Libérez le verrou (7) à l'aide d'un tournevis à tête plate pour retirer le capot (8).

Precauciones

- Asegúrese de despegar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.
- Antes de instalar el separador de trabajos, asegúrese de desconectar el interruptor principal de la máquina y desenchufar el cable eléctrico del tomacorriente de la pared.

Procedimiento

Desmontaje de las cubiertas

1. Abra la cubierta frontal (1) y la cubierta izquierda 1 (2).
2. Desmonte el soporte de clip (3).
3. Saque los dos tornillos (4) y suelte los tres pestillos (5) para desmontar la cubierta (6).

4. Suelte el pestillo (7) utilizando un destornillador de cabeza plana para desmontar la cubierta (8).

Vorsichtsmaßnahmen

- Entfernen Sie Klebeband und/oder Dämpfungsmaterial vollständig von den mitgelieferten Teilen.
- Schalten Sie unbedingt den Betriebsschalter der Maschine aus, und trennen Sie das Netzkabel von der Netzsteckdose, bevor Sie den Job-Separator installieren.

Verfahren

Entfernen der Abdeckungen

1. Die Frontabdeckung (1) und die linke Abdeckung 1 (2) öffnen.
2. Den Büroklammerhalter (3) entfernen.
3. Die zwei Schrauben (4) herausdrehen, und die drei Rasten (5) lösen, um die Abdeckung (6) abzunehmen.

4. Die Raste (7) mit einem Flachschraubenzieher lösen, um die Abdeckung (8) abzunehmen.

Precauzioni

- Accertarsi di rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o il materiale di imbottitura dalle parti fornite.
- Prima di installare il separatore lavori, assicurarsi di spegnere l'interruttore principale di alimentazione della macchina e scollegare la spina del cavo di alimentazione dalla presa a muro della rete elettrica.

Procedura

Rimozione dei coperchi

1. Aprite il coperchio anteriore (1) e il coperchio sinistro 1 (2).
2. Rimuovete il contenitore delle graffette (3).
3. Togliete due viti (4) e rilasciate i tre fermi (5) per rimuovere il coperchio (6).

4. Rilasciate il fermo (7) utilizzando un giravite a punta piatta per rimuovere il coperchio (8).

注意事項

- 如果同裝品上帶有固定膠帶、緩衝材料時務必揭下。
- 安裝分離器時，必須先關閉機器主機的主電源開關，並拔下電源插頭後，再進行安裝作業。

安裝步驟

拆下蓋板類

1. 打開前蓋板 (1) 和左蓋板 1 (2)。
2. 拆下夾子盒 (3)。
3. 卸下 2 個螺絲 (4)，鬆解 3 處嵌入板 (5)，然後，取下蓋板 (6)。

4. 用一字形螺絲刀等鬆解嵌入板 (7)，取下蓋板 (8)。

注意事項

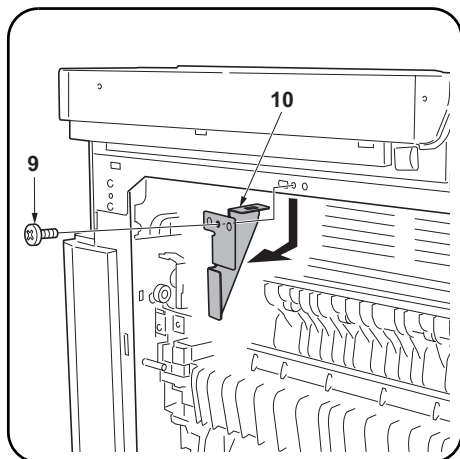
- 同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材が付いている場合は必ず取り外すこと。
- ジョブセパレータを設置する場合は、機械本体の主電源スイッチを OFF にし、電源プラグを抜いてから作業をおこなう。

設置手順

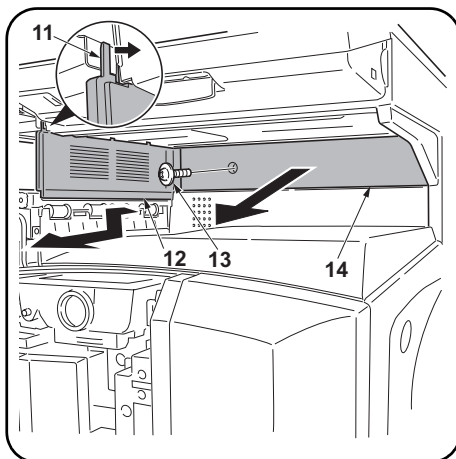
カバー類の取り外し

1. 前カバー (1) および左カバー 1 (2) を開く。
2. クリップ入れ (3) を取り外す。
3. ビス (4) 2 本を外し、はめ込み (5) 3 箇所を解除してカバー (6) を取り外す。

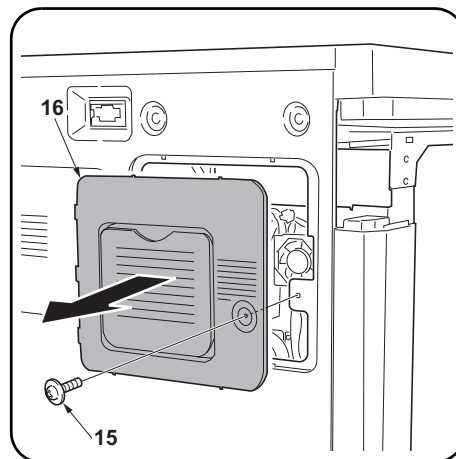
4. はめ込み (7) をマイナスドライバーなどで解除し、カバー (8) を取り外す。



5. Remove the screw (9) to remove the metal plate (10). The removed metal plate (10) is no longer required.



6. Release the latch (11) using a flat-head screwdriver and slide the cover (12) to the front to remove.
7. Remove the screw (13) to remove the cover (14).



8. Remove the screw (15) from the rear side of the machine to remove the cover (16).

5. Retirez la vis (9) pour déposer la plaque métallique (10). La plaque métallique déposée (10) n'est plus nécessaire.

6. Libérez le verrou (11) à l'aide d'un tournevis à tête plate, puis faites glisser le capot (12) vers l'avant pour le déposer.
7. Retirez la vis (13) pour déposer le capot (14).

8. Retirez la vis (15) du côté arrière de la machine pour déposer le capot (16).

5. Quite el tornillo (9) para desmontar la placa de metal (10). La placa de metal desmontada (10) ya no es necesaria.

6. Suelte el pestillo (11) utilizando un destornillador de cabeza plana y deslice la cubierta (12) hacia delante para desmontarla.
7. Saque el tornillo (13) para desmontar la cubierta (14).

8. Saque el tornillo (15) del lado trasero de la máquina para desmontar la cubierta (16).

5. Die Schraube (9) herausdrehen, um die Metallplatte (10) abzunehmen. Die abgenommene Metallplatte (10) wird nicht mehr benötigt.

6. Die Raste (11) mit einem Flachschrabenzieher lösen, und die Abdeckung (12) nach vorn schieben, um sie abzunehmen.
7. Die Schraube (13) herausdrehen, um die Abdeckung (14) abzunehmen.

8. Die Schraube (15) auf der Rückseite der Maschine herausdrehen, um die Abdeckung (16) abzunehmen.

5. Rimuovere la vite (9) per togliere la piastra di metallo (10). La piastra di metallo rimossa non è più necessaria.

6. Rilasciate il fermo (11) utilizzando un giravite a punta piatta e fate scivolare il coperchio (12) verso il lato anteriore per rimuoverlo.
7. Togliete la vite (13) per rimuovere il coperchio (14).

8. Togliete la vite (15) dal lato posteriore della macchina per rimuovere il coperchio (16).

5. 卸下 1 个螺丝 (9), 取下金属件 (10)。不安装金属件 (10)。

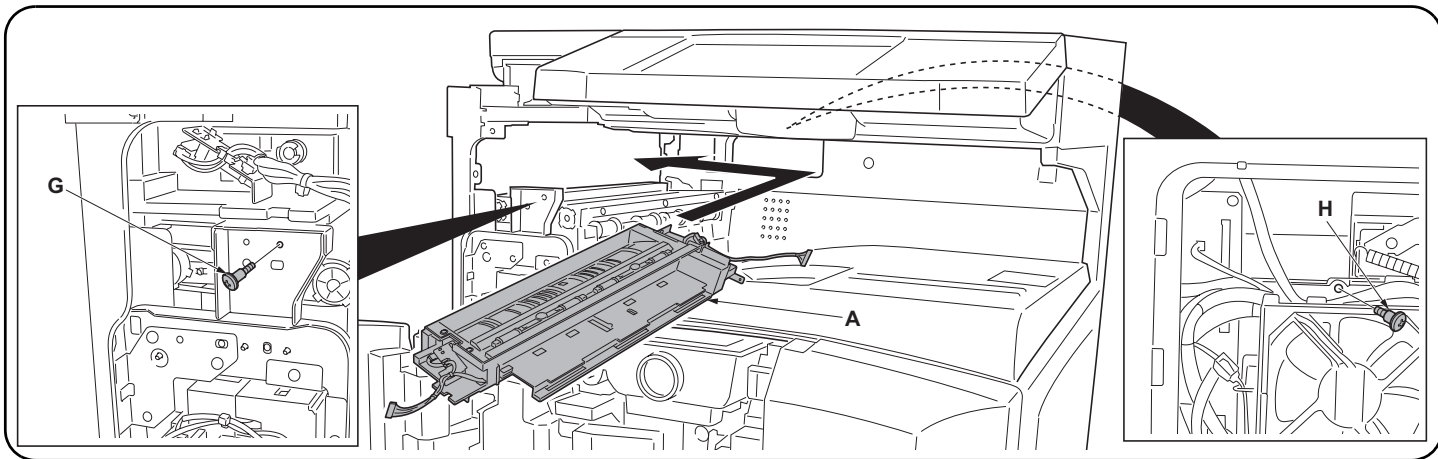
6. 用一字形螺丝刀等松开卡入板 (11), 将盖板 (12) 向前拉并取下。
7. 卸下 1 个螺丝 (13), 取下盖板 (14)。

8. 卸下机器主机后面的 1 个螺丝 (15), 取下盖板 (16)。

5. ビス (9) 1 本を外し、金具 (10) を取り外す。金具 (10) は取り付けない。

6. はめ込み (11) をマイナスドライバーなどで解除し、カバー (12) を手前側に引いて取り外す。
7. ビス (13) 1 本を外し、カバー (14) を取り外す。

8. 機械本体後側のビス (15) 1 本を外し、カバー (16) を取り外す。



Installing the job separator

9. Insert the job separator (A) from the machine front and slide it to the left.
10. Fix the job separator (A) using two pins.
Front: Use the large pin (G).
Rear: Use the small pin (H).

Installation du séparateur de travaux

9. Insérez le séparateur de travaux (A) depuis l'avant de la machine et faites-le glisser vers la gauche.
10. Fixez le séparateur de travaux (A) à l'aide de deux goupilles.
Avant: Utilisez la grande goupille (G).
Arrière: Utilisez la petite goupille (H).

Instalación del separador de trabajos

9. Inserte el separador de trabajos (A) en el frente de la máquina y deslícelo a la izquierda.
10. Fije el separador de trabajo (A) utilizando dos pasadores.
Frente: Utilice el pasador grande (G).
Atrás: Utilice el pasador pequeño (H).

Installieren des Job-Separators

9. Den Job-Separator (A) von der Vorderseite der Maschine einführen und nach links schieben.
10. Den Job-Separator (A) mit zwei Stiften befestigen.
Vorn: Den großen Stift (G) verwenden.
Hinten: Den kleinen Stift (H) verwenden.

Installazione del separatore lavori

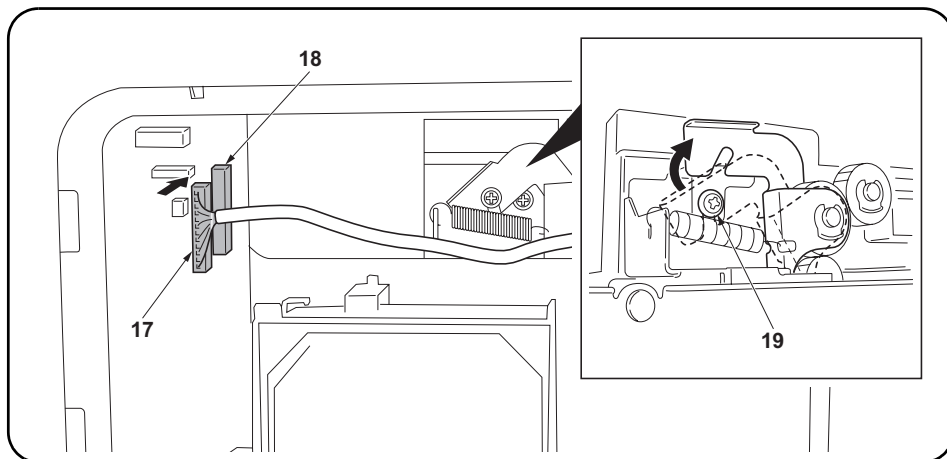
9. Inserire il separatore lavori (A) dal lato frontale della macchina e farlo scorrere a sinistra.
10. Fissare il separatore lavori (A) utilizzando due perni.
Lato frontale: utilizzare il perno grande (G).
Lato posteriore: utilizzare il perno piccolo (H).

安装作业分离器

9. 从机器主机前面插入作业分离器 (A)，向左侧滑动。
10. 用 2 个卡销固定作业分离器 (A)。
前面：大卡销 (G)
后面：小卡销 (H)

ジョブセパレータの取り付け

9. ジョブセパレータ (A) を機械本体前側から挿入し、左側にスライドする。
10. ジョブセパレータ (A) をピン 2 本で固定する。
前側: ピン大 (G)
後側: ピン小 (H)



11. Connect the connector (17) at the rear of the job separator to YC4 (18) on the engine PWB.
12. Loosen the screw (19) to make the drive unit of the job separator ready for starting to drive.
13. Tighten the screw (19).
14. Refit the cover (16) using the screw (15) removed in step 8.

-
11. Branchez le connecteur (17) situé à l'arrière du séparateur de travaux à YC4 (18) sur le PWB du moteur.
 12. Desserrez la vis (19) pour que l'unité d'entraînement du séparateur de travaux soit prête à démarrer.
 13. Resserrez la vis (19).
 14. Remettez le capot (16) en place en utilisant la vis (15) retirée auparavant lors de l'étape 8.

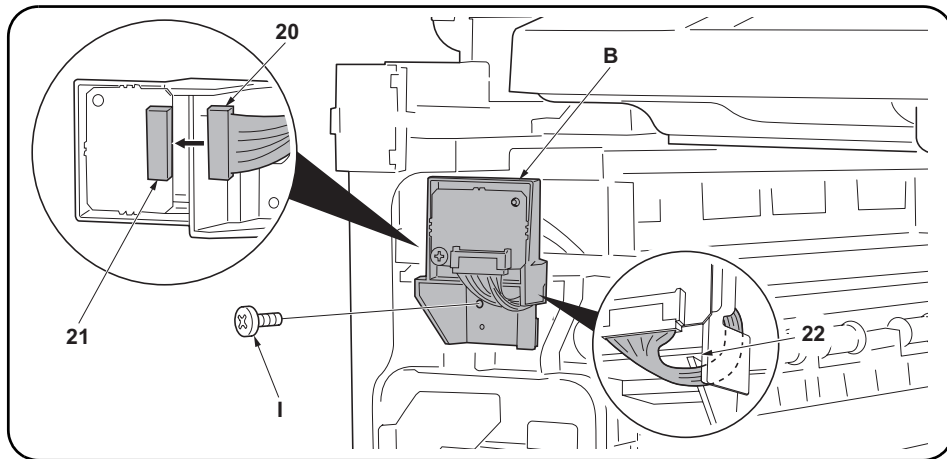
-
11. Conecte el conector (17) en el lado trasero del separador de trabajos a YC4 (18) en el PWB de motor.
 12. Afloje el tornillo (19) para que la unidad de accionamiento del separador de trabajos esté lista para accionar.
 13. Apriete el tornillo (19).
 14. Vuelva a colocar la cubierta (16) utilizando el tornillo (15) sacado en el paso 8.

-
11. Den Steckverbinder (17) auf der Rückseite des Job-Separators an YC4 (18) der Motorplatine anschließen.
 12. Die Schraube (19) lösen, um die Antriebseinheit des Job-Separators für den Antriebsstart bereit zu machen.
 13. Die Schraube (19) festziehen.
 14. Die Abdeckung (16) wieder mit der in Schritt 8 entfernten Schraube (15) anbringen.

-
11. Collegare il connettore (17) sul lato posteriore del separatore lavori al YC4 (18) del motore PWB.
 12. Allentare la vite (19) per preparare l'unità guida del separatore lavori al funzionamento.
 13. Stringere la vite (19).
 14. Rimettete a posto il coperchio (16) utilizzando la vite (15) rimossa nel passo 8.

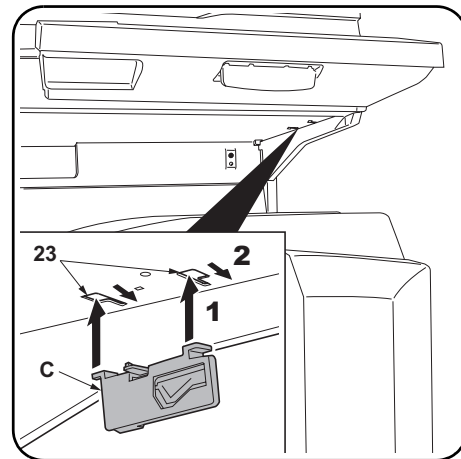
-
11. 将作业分离器后面的插头 (17) 插在引擎主板的 YC4(18) 上。
 12. 松弛 1 个螺丝 (19)，使驱动组件处于始动状态。
 13. 然后，紧固 1 个螺丝 (19)。
 14. 在步骤 8 拆下的盖板 (16)，用 1 个螺丝 (15) 按原样装好。

-
11. ジョブセパレータ後側のコネクタ (17) をエンジン回路基板の YC4(18) に接続する。
 12. ビス (19) 1 本をゆるめ、駆動ユニットを駆動がかかる状態にする。
 13. ビス (19) 1 本を締める。
 14. 手順 8 で取り外したカバー (16) をビス (15) 1 本で元通り取り付け。



Attaching the LED PWB unit

15. Connect the connector (20) of the job separator to the connector (21) of the LED PWB unit (B).
16. Pass the wires through the space (22) and fix the LED PWB unit (B) using the M3 × 6 screw (I).



Installing the job separator tray

17. Insert the tray holder (C) into two openings (23) and then slide the holder to the right until it clicks.

Fixation de l'unité LED PWB

15. Branchez le connecteur (20) du séparateur de travaux au connecteur (21) de l'unité LED PWB (B).
16. Faites passer les fils par l'espace (22) et fixez l'unité LED PWB (B) à l'aide de la vis M3 × 6 (I).

Installation du plateau du séparateur de travaux

17. Insérez le support de plateau (C) dans les deux ouvertures (23), puis faites glisser le support vers la droite jusqu'à ce qu'il s'encliquète.

Colocación de la unidad PWB LED

15. Conecte el conector (20) del separador de trabajos en el conector (21) de la unidad PWB LED (B).
16. Pase los cables por el espacio (22) y fije la unidad PWB LED (B) utilizando el tornillo M3 × 6 (I).

Instalación de la bandeja de separador de trabajos

17. Inserte el soporte de bandeja (C) en dos aberturas (23) y deslice el soporte a la derecha hasta escuchar un chasquido.

Anbringen der LED-Platineneinheit

15. Den Steckverbinder (20) des Job-Separators mit dem Steckverbinder (21) der LED-Platineneinheit (B) verbinden.
16. Die Kabel durch den Spalt (22) führen, und die LED-Platineneinheit (B) mit der M3 × 6 Schraube (I) befestigen.

Installieren des Job-Separator-Fachs

17. Den Fachhalter (C) in die zwei Öffnungen (23) einführen, und dann den Halter nach rechts schieben, bis er mit einem Klicken einrastet.

Montaggio dell'unità LED PWB

15. Collegare il connettore (20) del separatore lavori al connettore (21) dell'unità LED PWB (B).
16. Fare passare i cavi attraverso lo spazio (22) e fissare l'unità LED PWB (B) utilizzando la vite M3 × 6 (I).

Installazione del vassoio del separatore lavori

17. Inserire il supporto del vassoio (C) nelle due aperture (23) e poi fare scorrere il supporto a destra fino a che non si mette in posizione con un clic.

安装 LED 电路板组件

15. 将作业分离器的插头 (20) 插在 LED 电路板组件 (B) 的插座 (21) 上。
16. 将电线穿过间隙 (22)，用 1 个螺丝 M3 × 6 (I) 固定 LED 电路板组件 (B)。

安装作业分离器托盘

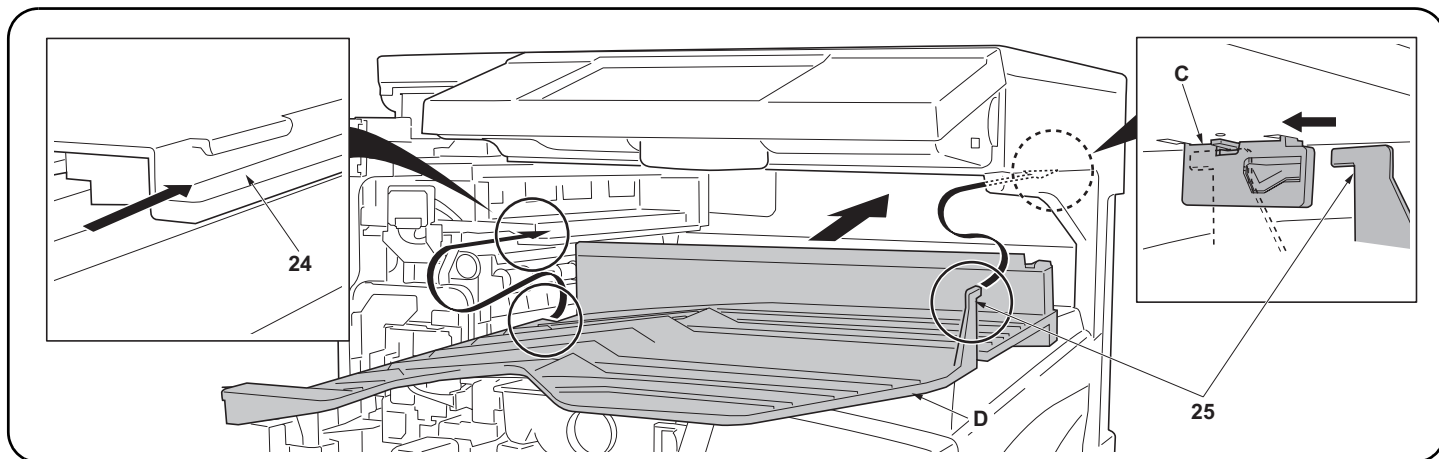
17. 将托盘座 (C) 插入 2 处开口部 (23)，向右侧滑动直至听到咔叽声为止。

LED 基板ユニットの取り付け

15. ジョブセパレータのコネクタ (20) を LED 基板ユニット (B) のコネクタ (21) に接続する。
16. 電線をすきま (22) に通し、ビス M3 × 6 (I) 1 本で LED 基板ユニット (B) を取り付ける。

ジョブセパレータトレイの取り付け

17. トレイホルダ (C) を開口部 (23) 2 箇所に挿入し、カチッと音がするまで右側にスライドする。



18. Install the job separator tray (D) from the front side of the machine.

Left: Insert the tray into the groove (24).

Right: Hang the hook (25) on the tray holder (C).

18. Installez le plateau du séparateur de travaux (D) depuis le côté avant de la machine.

Gauche: Insérez le plateau dans la rainure (24).

Droite: Suspendez le crochet (25) au support de plateau (C).

18. Instale la bandeja de separador de trabajos (D) desde el lado delantero de la máquina.

Izquierda: Inserte la bandeja en la ranura (24).

Derecha: Cuelgue el gancho (25) en el soporte de bandeja (C).

18. Das Job-Separator-Fach (D) von der Vorderseite der Maschine installieren.

Links: Das Fach in die Nut (24) einführen.

Rechts: Den Haken (25) in den Fachhalter (C) einhängen.

18. Installare il vassoio del separatore lavori (D) dal lato anteriore della macchina.

Lato sinistro: inserire il vassoio nell'incavo (24).

Lato destro: appendere il gancio (25) sul supporto del vassoio (C).

18. 从机器主机前面插入作业分离器托盘 (D)，进行安装。

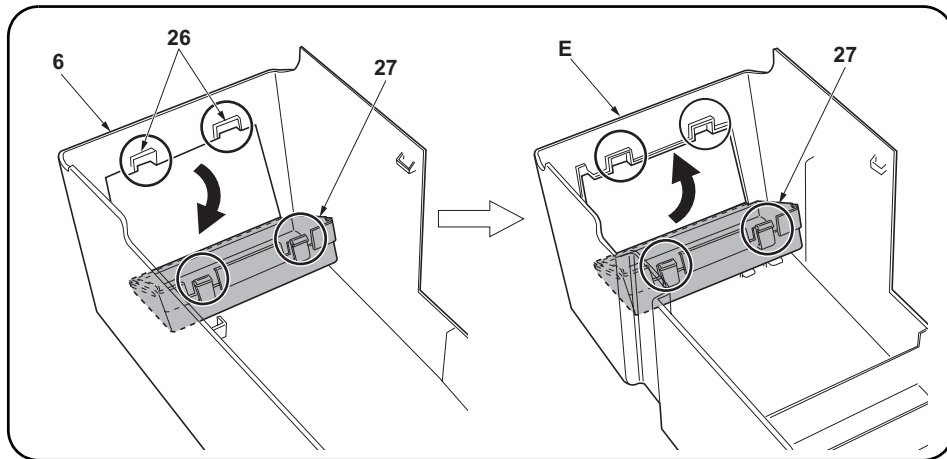
左侧：插在沟槽 (24) 上。

右侧：将钩件 (25) 挂在托盘座 (C) 上。

18. ジョブセパレータトレイ (D) を機械本体前側から挿入し、取り付ける。

左側：溝 (24) に挿入する。

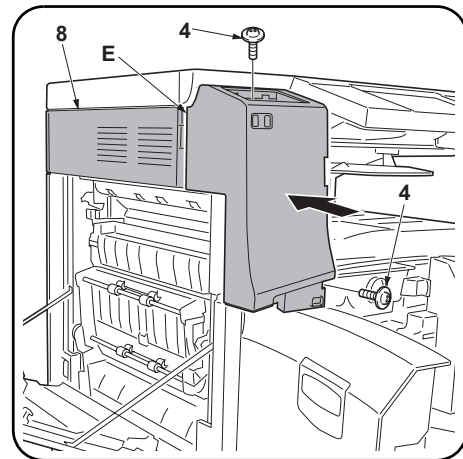
右側：フック (25) をトレイホルダ (C) に引っ掛ける。



Installing the left front cover

19. Release two latches (26) of the cover (6) removed in step 3 using a flat-head screwdriver to remove the lower clip holder (27).

20. Attach the lower clip holder (27) to the left front cover (E).



21. Replace the cover (8) removed in step 4.

22. Install the left front cover (E) using the two screws (4) removed in step 3.

23. Replace the clip holder (3) removed in step 2.

24. Close left cover 1 (2) and the front cover (1).

Installation du capot avant gauche

19. Libérez les deux verrous (26) du capot (6) retiré auparavant lors de l'étape 3 en utilisant un tournevis à tête plate pour retirer le support de pince inférieur (27).

20. Fixez le support à pince inférieur (27) sur le capot avant gauche (E).

21. Remettez en place le capot (8) retiré auparavant lors de l'étape 4.

22. Installez le capot avant gauche (E) à l'aide des deux vis (4) retirées auparavant lors de l'étape 3.

23. Remettez en place le support à pince (3) retiré auparavant lors de l'étape 2.

24. Refermez le capot gauche 1 (2) et le capot avant (1).

Instalación de la cubierta delantera izquierda

19. Suelte los dos pestillos (26) de la cubierta (6) desmontada en el paso 3 utilizando el destornillador de punta plana para desmontar el soporte de clip inferior (27).

20. Coloque el soporte de clip inferior (27) en la cubierta delantera izquierda (E).

21. Vuelva a colocar la cubierta (8) desmontada en el paso 4.

22. Instale la cubierta delantera izquierda (E) utilizando los dos tornillos (4) sacados en el paso 3.

23. Vuelva a colocar el soporte de clip (3) desmontado en el paso 2.

24. Cierre la cubierta izquierda 1 (2) y la cubierta frontal (1).

Installieren der linken Frontabdeckung

19. Die zwei Rasten (26) der in Schritt 3 entfernten Abdeckung (6) mit einem Flachschaubenzieher lösen, um den unteren Büroklammerhalter (27) abzunehmen.

20. Den unteren Büroklammerhalter (27) an der linken Frontabdeckung (E) anbringen.

21. Die in Schritt 4 entfernte Abdeckung (8) wieder anbringen.

22. Die linke Frontabdeckung (E) mit den in Schritt 3 entfernten zwei Schrauben (4) installieren.

23. Den in Schritt 2 entfernten Büroklammerhalter (3) wieder anbringen.

24. Die linke Abdeckung 1 (2) und die Frontabdeckung (1) schließen.

Installazione del coperchio frontale sinistro

19. Rilasciate due fermi (26) del coperchio (6) rimosso nel passo 3 utilizzando un giravite a punta piatta per rimuovere il contenitore inferiore delle graffette (27).

20. Montare il contenitore inferiore delle graffette (27) al coperchio frontale sinistro (E).

21. Rimettere a posto il coperchio (8) rimosso nel passo 4.

22. Installare il coperchio frontale sinistro (E) utilizzando due viti (4) rimosse nel passo 3.

23. Rimettere al suo posto il contenitore delle graffette (3) rimosso nel passo 2.

24. Chiudete il coperchio sinistro 1 (2) e il coperchio anteriore (1).

安装左前盖板

19. 用一字形螺丝刀等松开在步骤 3 卸下的盖板 (6) 的 2 处嵌入板 (26)，并取下夹子盒下 (27)。

20. 将夹子盒下 (27) 装在左前盖板 (E) 上。

21. 将步骤 4 拆下的盖板 (8) 按原样装好。

22. 用步骤 3 卸下的 2 个螺丝 (4) 装上左前盖板 (E)。

23. 在步骤 2 拆下的夹子盒 (3) 按原样装好。

24. 关闭左盖板 1 (2) 和前盖板 (1)。

左前カバーの取り付け

19. 手順 3 で取り外したカバー (6) のはめ込み (26) 2箇所をマイナスドライバーなどで解除し、クリップ入れ下 (27) を取り外す。

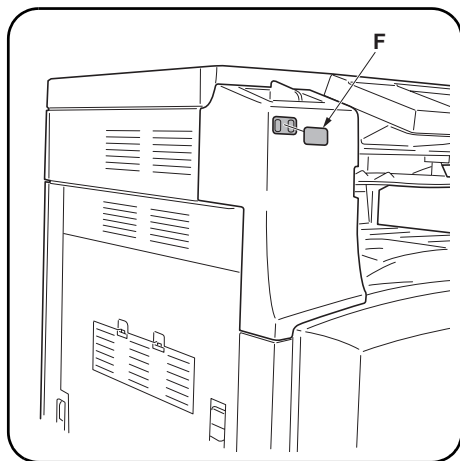
20. クリップ入れ下 (27) を左前カバー (E) に取り付ける。

21. 手順 4 で取り外したカバー (8) を元通り取り付ける。

22. 手順 3 で外したビス (4) 2本で左前カバー (E) を取り付ける。

23. 手順 2 で取り外したクリップ入れ (3) を元通り取り付ける。

24. 左カバー 1 (2) および前カバー (1) を閉じる。



Adhering the blindfold seal (For models with monochrome touch panel only)

25. Clean the left front cover with alcohol and then adhere the blindfold seal (F).

Checking the operation

1. Connect the power plug of the machine to the wall outlet and turn the main power switch on.
2. Specify the output tray to the job separator tray from the system menu.

3. Make a proof copy to check that a copy is ejected to the job separator tray.

Collage de l'étiquette de masquage (pour les modèles équipés d'un écran tactile monochrome seulement)

25. Nettoyez le capot avant gauche avec de l'alcool, puis collez l'étiquette de masquage (F).

Vérification du fonctionnement

1. Insérer la fiche d'alimentation de la machine dans la prise murale et mettre la machine sous tension.
2. Définissez le bac de sortie sur le plateau du séparateur de travaux dans le menu système.

3. Effectuez une copie de test pour vérifier si une copie est bien éjectée sur le plateau du séparateur de travaux.

Pegado del sello ciego (Sólo modelos con panel de toque monocromático)

25. Limpie la cubierta delantera izquierda con alcohol y pegue el sello ciego (F).

Verificación del funcionamiento

1. Conecte el enchufe eléctrico de la máquina en un tomacorriente de la pared y conecte el interruptor principal.
2. Especifique como bandeja de salida a la bandeja del separador de trabajos en el menú del sistema.

3. Haga una copia de prueba para verificar que la copia sale a la bandeja del separador de trabajos.

Anbringen des Blindaufklebers (nur für Modelle mit Monochrom-Sensorbildschirm)

25. Die linke Frontabdeckung mit Alkohol reinigen, und dann den Blindaufkleber (F) anbringen.

Überprüfen des Betriebs

1. Den Netzstecker der Maschine in die Steckdose stecken und den Betriebsschalter einschalten.
2. Das Job-Separator-Fach über das Systemmenü als Ausgabefach angeben.

3. Eine Probekopie anfertigen, um zu prüfen, ob eine Kopie in das Job-Separator-Fach ausgeworfen wird.

Applicate il sigillo mascherina (solo per i modelli con pannello monocromatico a sfioramento)

25. Pulite il coperchio frontale sinistro con alcol e poi applicate il sigillo mascherina (F).

Verifica di funzionamento

1. Collegare la spina del cavo di alimentazione della macchina alla presa a muro della rete elettrica e accendere l'interruttore principale di alimentazione.
2. Specificare il vassoio di uscita al vassoio del separatore lavori mediante il menu sistema.

3. Effettuare una copia di prova per verificare che essa venga espulsa sul vassoio del separatore lavori.

貼上标貼

(只限单色触控式面板机)

25. 用酒精清洁后, 贴上标贴 (F)。

操作确认

1. 将机器主机上的电源插头插入插座中, 打开主电源开关。
2. 将系统菜单的排纸处设定在作业分离器托盘上。

3. 进行测试复印, 确认纸张是否排在作业分离器托盘上。

シールの貼り付け

(モノクロタッチパネル機のみ)

25. アルコール清掃後、シール (F) を貼り付ける。

動作確認

1. 機械本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、主電源スイッチを ON にする。
2. システムメニューの排紙先をジョブセパレータトレイに設定する。

3. テストコピーをおこない、用紙がジョブセパレータトレイに排出されるかどうか確認する。

INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR FAX System (M)

English

To install the FAX circuit board, see page 1.
To install the FAX circuit board as Dual FAX, see page 10.

Français

Pour installer la carte à circuits FAX, se reporter à la page 1.
Pour installer la carte à circuits FAX comme FAX double, se reporter à la page 10.

Español

Para instalar la tarjeta de circuitos de FAX, vea la página 1.
Para instalar la tarjeta de circuitos de FAX en el FAX dual, vea la página 10.

Deutsch

Angaben zur Installation der FAX-Leiterplatte finden Sie auf Seite 1.
Angaben zur Installation der FAX-Leiterplatte als Dual FAX finden Sie auf Seite 10.

Italiano

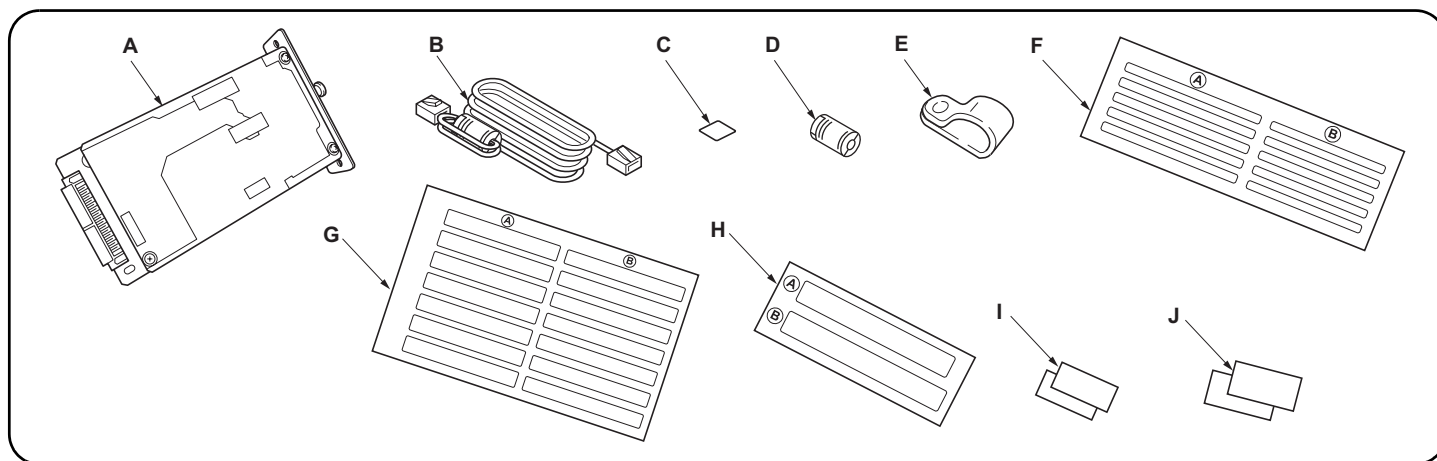
Per installare la scheda a circuiti FAX, vedere pagina 1.
Per installare la scheda a circuiti FAX come Dual FAX, vedere pagina 10.

简体中文

安装传真组件时…从第 1 页开始
安装多插口组件时…从第 10 页开始

日本語

ファクスシステムを設置する場合…1 ページから始める
マルチポートを設置する場合…10 ページから始める
FAX 標準機にマルチポートを設置する場合…10 ページから始める



Supplied parts

A	FAX circuit board	1
B	Modular connector cable (100 V/120 V/Australian models only)	1
C	Terminal seal	1
D	Ferrite core 100 V/120 V/Australian/New Zealand models	1
	110 V/230 V models	2
E	Clamp	1

F	Alphabet label	1
G	FAX operation section label (except for 100 V model)	1
H	FAX operation section label (100 V model)	1
I	JATE label (100 V model only)	2
J	Approval label (Australian/New Zealand models only)	2

Precautions

- Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning material from supplied parts.
- Be sure to turn the MFP switch OFF and unplug the MFP from the power supply before installing the fax system.

Pièces fournies

A	Carte à circuits FAX	1
B	Câble du connecteur modulaire (modèles pour l'Australie/100 V/120 V seulement)	1
C	Joint de borne	1
D	Noyau de ferrite modèles pour l'Australie/Nouvelle-Zélande/ 100 V/120 V	1
	modèles 110 V/230 V	2

E	Collier	1
F	Etiquette de l'alphabet	1
G	Etiquette de la section de fonctionnement FAX (sauf pour le modèle 100 V)	1
H	Etiquette de la section de fonctionnement FAX (modèle 100 V)	1
I	Etiquette JATE (modèle 100 V seulement)	2
J	Etiquette d'approbation (modèles pour l'Australie/Nouvelle-Zélande seulement)	2

Précautions

- Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.
- Veiller à mettre l'interrupteur principal du MFP hors tension et à débrancher le MFP de la prise secteur avant d'installer le système fax.

Piezas suministradas

A	Tarjeta de circuitos de fax	1
B	Cable conector modular (sólo para modelos de 100 V/120 V/ Australianos)	1
C	Sello del terminal	1
D	Núcleo de ferrita Modelos de 100 V/120 V/Australianos/ Nuevo Zelandés	1
	Modelos de 110 V/230 V	2

E	Abrazadera	1
F	Etiqueta de alfabeto	1
G	Etiqueta de la sección de funcionamiento de FAX (excepto para el modelo de 100 V)	1
H	Etiqueta de la sección de funcionamiento de FAX (modelo de 100 V)	1
I	Etiqueta JATE (sólo para el modelo de 100 V)	2
J	Etiqueta de aprobación (sólo para los modelos Australiano/Nuevo Zelandés)	2

Precauciones

- Asegúrese de despegar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.
- Asegúrese de apagar el MFP colocando el interruptor principal a OFF y desenchufe el MFP del suministro de red eléctrica antes de instalar el sistema de fax.

Gelieferte Teile

A	FAX-Leiterplatte	1
B	Modulkabel (nur 100-V/120-V/Australien-Modell)	1
C	Verschlusskappe	1
D	Ferritkern 100-V/120-V/Australien/Neuseeland-Modell	1
	110-V/230-V-Modell	2
E	Schelle	1

F	Alphabetaufkleber	1
G	Aufkleber für FAX-Bedienungsabschnitt (außer 100-V-Modell)	1
H	Aufkleber für FAX-Bedienungsabschnitt (100-V-Modell)	1
I	JATE-Aufkleber (nur 100-V-Modell)	2
J	Genehmigungsaufkleber (nur Australien/ Neuseeland-Modell)	2

Vorsichtsmaßnahmen

- Entfernen Sie Klebeband und/oder Dämpfungsmaterial vollständig von den mitgelieferten Teilen.
- Schalten Sie den Netzschalter des MFP aus und trennen Sie den MFP vom Netz, bevor Sie das Faxsystem installieren.

Parti di forniture

A	Scheda a circuiti FAX	1
B	Cavo connettore modulare (solo modelli da 100 V/120 V/Australia)	1
C	Guarnizione terminale	1
D	Nucleo di ferrite Modelli da 100V/120 V/Australia/Nuova Zelanda	1
	Modelli da 110 V/230 V	2

E	Fascetta	1
F	Etichetta alfabetica	1
G	Etichetta della sezione funzionamento FAX (eccetto per il modello da 100 V)	1
H	Etichetta della sezione funzionamento FAX (modello da 100 V)	1
I	Etichetta JATE (solo per il modello da 100 V)	2
J	Etichetta di approvazione (solo modelli Australia/Nuova Zelanda)	2

Precauzioni

- Accertarsi di rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o il materiale di imbottitura dalle parti fornite.
- Assicurarsi di aver spento l'interruttore dell'MFP e di aver sfilato la spina dell'MFP dalla presa prima di installare il sistema fax.

同装品

A	传真电路板	1
B	电话线 (仅适用于 100V/120V/ 澳大利亚型号)	1
C	端子密封	1
D	铁芯 100V/120V/ 澳大利亚 / 新西兰型号	1
	110V/230V 型号	2

E	卡夹	1
F	英文字母标签	1
G	传真操作部标签 (100V 型号以外)	1
H	传真操作部标签 (仅适用于 100V 型号)	1
I	JATE 标签 (仅适用于 100V 型号)	2
J	规格标签 (仅适用于澳大利亚 / 新西兰型号)	2

注意事項

- 如果同装品上带有固定胶带、缓冲材料时必须揭下。
- 请务必关闭 MFP 的开关并拔下电源插头再安装传真组件。

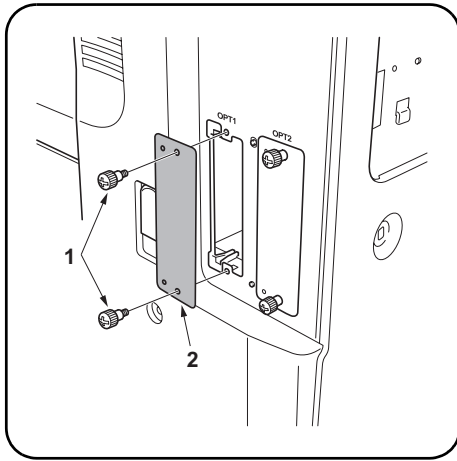
同梱品

A	FAX 基板	1
B	モジュラーコード (100V, 120V, オーストラリア仕様のみ)	1
C	端子シール	1
D	フェライトコア 100V, 120V, オーストラリア / ニュージーランド仕様	1
	110V, 230V 仕様	2

E	クランプ	1
F	アルファベットラベル	1
G	FAX 操作部ラベル (100V 仕様以外)	1
H	FAX 操作部ラベル (100V 仕様)	1
I	JATE ラベル (100V 仕様のみ)	2
J	規格ラベル (オーストラリア / ニュージー ランド仕様のみ)	2

注意事項

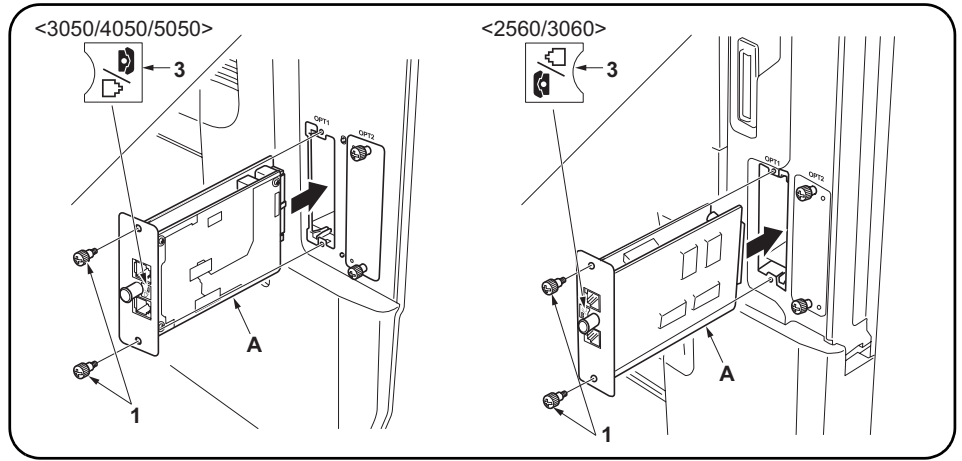
- 同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材が付いている場合は必ず取り外すこと。
- ファクスシステムを設置する場合は、MFP 本体の主電源スイッチを OFF にし、電源プラグを抜いてから作業をおこなう。



Procedure

Remove the cover.

1. Remove two screws (1) and then remove OPT1 cover (2).



Install the FAX circuit board.

2. Insert the FAX circuit board (A) along the groove in OPT1 and secure the board with two screws (1) that have been removed in step 1.
Do not touch the FAX circuit board (A) terminal. Hold the top and bottom of the FAX circuit board, or the projection of the board to insert the FAX circuit board (A).
 <When installing in 3050/4050/5050>
 Direct the label (3) on to the FAX circuit board (A) toward right side and insert the board along the groove.
 <When installing in 2560/3060>
 Direct the label (3) on to the FAX circuit board (A) toward left side and insert the board along the groove.

Procédure

Retirer le couvercle.

1. Retirer les deux vis (1), puis le couvercle OPT1 (2).

Installer la carte à circuits FAX.

2. Insérer la carte à circuits FAX (A) le long de la rainure dans l'OPT1 et la fixer à l'aide des deux vis (1) retirées à l'étape 1.
Ne pas toucher la borne de la carte à circuits FAX (A). Tenir les parties inférieure et supérieure de la carte à circuits FAX ou la saillie de la carte pour insérer la carte à circuits FAX (A).
 <Installation sur les modèles 3050/4050/5050>
 Diriger l'étiquette (3) située sur la carte à circuits FAX (A) vers la droite et insérer la carte le long de la rainure.
 <Installation sur les modèles 2560/3060>
 Diriger l'étiquette (3) située sur la carte à circuits FAX (A) vers la gauche et insérer la carte le long de la rainure.

Procedimiento

Desmonte la cubierta.

1. Quite dos tornillos (1) y desmonte la cubierta OPT1 (2).

Instale la tarjeta de circuitos de fax.

2. Inserte la tarjeta de circuitos de fax (A) a lo largo de la ranura de OPT1 y asegúrela con los dos tornillos (1) que ha quitado en el paso 1.
No toque el terminal de la tarjeta de circuitos de fax (A). Sujete las partes superior e inferior de la tarjeta de circuitos de fax o la saliente de la tarjeta para insertar la tarjeta de circuitos de fax (A).
 <Cuando instale en 3050/4050/5050>
 Oriente la etiqueta (3) de la tarjeta de circuitos de fax (A) hacia la derecha e inserte la tarjeta a lo largo de la ranura.
 <Cuando instale en 2560/3060>
 Oriente la etiqueta (3) de la tarjeta de circuitos de FAX (A) hacia la izquierda e inserte la tarjeta a lo largo de la ranura.

Verfahren

Entfernen der Abdeckung.

1. Die beiden Schrauben (1) herausdrehen und Abdeckung OPT1 (2) abnehmen.

Einbauen der FAX-Leiterplatte.

2. FAX-Leiterplatte (A) in die Nut des Einbauschachts OPT1 einsetzen und Leiterplatte mit den in Schritt 1 ausgebauten Schrauben (1) befestigen.
Die Kontakte der FAX-Leiterplatte (A) nicht berühren. Die FAX-Leiterplatte (A) beim Einsetzen oben und unten oder an dem Vorsprung festhalten.
 <Bei Einbau in 3050/4050/5050>
 Die FAX-Leiterplatte (A) so in die Nut einsetzen, dass der Aufkleber (3) nach rechts zeigt.
 <Bei Einbau in 2560/3060>
 Die FAX-Leiterplatte (A) so in die Nut einsetzen, dass der Aufkleber (3) nach links zeigt.

Procedura

Rimuovere il coperchio.

1. Rimuovere le due viti (1), quindi rimuovere il coperchio OPT1 (2).

Montaggio della scheda a circuiti FAX.

2. Inserire la scheda a circuiti FAX (A) lungo l'incavo nell'OPT1 e fissare la scheda con le due viti (1) rimosse nell'operazione 1.
Non toccare il terminale della scheda a circuiti FAX (A). Per inserire il circuito FAX (A), tenere l'estremità superiore e la base della scheda a circuiti FAX, o la sporgenza della scheda a circuiti FAX.
 <Quando si installa nel 3050/4050/5050>
 Rivolgere l'etichetta (3) sulla scheda a circuiti FAX (A) verso il lato destro e inserire la scheda lungo l'incavo.
 <Quando si installa nel 2560/3060>
 Rivolgere l'etichetta (3) sulla scheda a circuiti FAX (A) verso il lato sinistro e inserire la scheda lungo l'incavo.

安裝步驟

拆下盖板

1. 拆下 2 顆螺釘 (1)，然後拆下 OPT1 盖板 (2)。

安裝傳真電路板

2. 沿著 OPT1 的溝槽插入傳真電路板 (A) 並用在步驟 1 中拆下的兩顆螺釘 (1) 固定電路板。
不要觸碰傳真電路板 (A) 端子。按住傳真電路板的頂部和底部，或者按住電路板的突出部將傳真電路板 (A) 插入。
 <安裝在 3050/4050/5050 型號上時>
 將標籤 (3) 放在傳真電路板 (A) 上，朝向右側，然後沿著溝槽插入電路板。
 <安裝在 2560/3060 型號上時>
 將標籤 (3) 放在傳真電路板 (A) 上，朝向左側，然後沿著溝槽插入電路板。

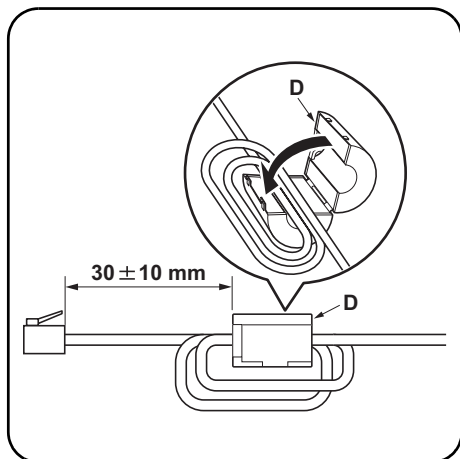
設置手順

カバーの取り外し

1. ビス (1) 2 本を外し、OPT1 のカバー (2) を取り外す。

FAX 基板の取り付け

2. OPT1 の溝に沿って FAX 基板 (A) を挿入し、手順 1 で外したビス (1) 2 本で固定する。
FAX 基板 (A) の端子に触れないこと。FAX 基板 (A) の挿入時は基板の上下か突起を持つこと。
 < 4050/5050 に設置する場合>
 FAX 基板 (A) は、貼り付けられているラベル (3) を右側に向け、挿入すること。
 < 2560/3060 に設置する場合>
 FAX 基板 (A) は、貼り付けられているラベル (3) を左側に向け、挿入すること。



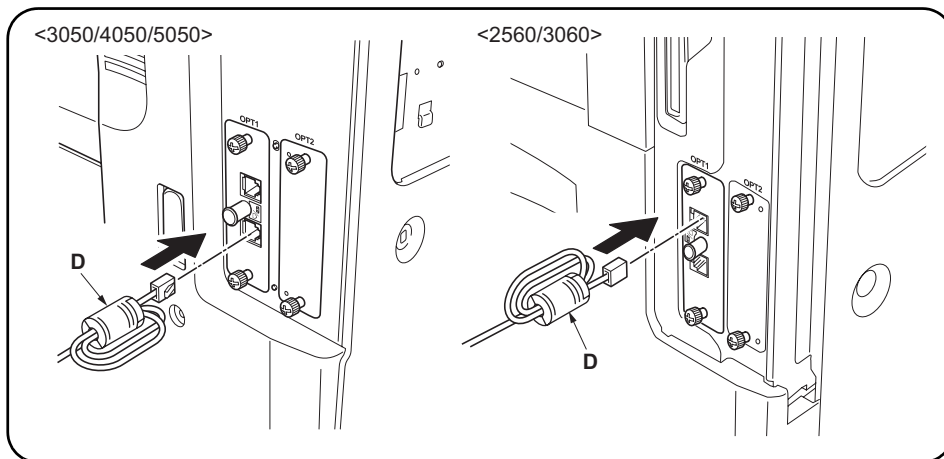
Install the ferrite core

(for 110 V/230 V/New Zealand models only).

3. Install the ferrite core (D) onto the modular connector cable.

Be sure to loop the cord three times through the ferrite core.

Make a gap of 30 mm ± 10 mm between the ferrite core and the terminal.



Connect the MFP to the telephone line.

4. Plug the telephone line modular connector cable with the ferrite core (D) into the line terminal, and then connect the line terminal to the telephone line.

For 100 V/120 V/Australian models, use the supplied modular connector cable (B).

Installer le noyau de ferrite (modèles pour la Nouvelle-Zélande/110 V/230 V seulement).

3. Installer le noyau de ferrite (D) dans le câble du connecteur modulaire.

Veiller à enrouler trois fois le cordon autour du noyau de ferrite.

Un écart de 30 mm ± 10 mm entre le noyau de ferrite et la borne est requis.

Connetter le MFP à la ligne de téléphone.

4. Brancher le câble du connecteur modulaire de la ligne de téléphone avec le noyau de ferrite (D) à la borne de la ligne, puis connecter la borne de la ligne à la ligne de téléphone.

Pour les modèles pour l'Australie/100 V/120 V, utiliser le câble du connecteur modulaire (B) fourni.

Instale el núcleo de ferrita (sólo para los modelos de 110 V/230 V/Nuevo Zelandés).

3. Instale el núcleo de ferrita (D) en el cable conector modular.

Asegúrese de dar tres vueltas al cable a través del núcleo de ferrita.

Deje una separación de 30 mm ± 10 mm entre el núcleo de ferrita y el terminal.

Conecte el MFP a la línea telefónica.

4. Enchufe el cable conector modular de la línea telefónica con el núcleo de ferrita (D) en el terminal de línea, y seguidamente conecte el terminal de línea a la línea telefónica.

Para los modelos de 100 V/120 V/Australiano, utilice el cable conector modular (B) suministrado.

Aufsetzen des Ferritkerns

(nur für 110-V/230-V/Neuseeland-Modell).

3. Ferritkern (D) auf das Modulkabel aufsetzen.

Das Kabel dreimal durch den Ferritkern führen.

Zwischen Ferritkern und Buchse muss ein Abstand von 30 mm ± 10 eingehalten werden.

Anschließen des MFP an die Telefonleitung.

4. Telefonmodulkabel mit dem Ferritkern (D) in die Gerätebuchse einstecken und das Kabel an der Telefondose anschließen.

Das mitgelieferte Modularsteckermodul (B) für das 100-V/120-V/Australien-Modell verwenden.

Montare il nucleo di ferrite (solo per modelli da 110 V/230 V/Nuova Zelanda).

3. Montare il nucleo di ferrite (D) sul cavo connettore modulare.

Avere cura di avvolgere tre volte il cavo attorno al nucleo di ferrite.

Lasciare una distanza di 30 mm ± 10 mm tra il nucleo di ferrite e il terminale.

Collegamento dell'MFP alla linea del telefono.

4. Inserire il cavo connettore modulare della linea del telefono con il nucleo di ferrite (D) nel terminale della linea, quindi collegare il terminale della linea alla linea del telefono.

Per modelli da 100 V/120 V/Australia, utilizzare il cavo connettore modulare (B) in dotazione.

安装铁芯（仅适用于 110V/230V/ 新西兰型号）

3. 将铁芯 (D) 安装到电话线。

请务必将电话线缠绕铁芯三圈。

在铁芯和端子间保留 30mm ± 10mm 的间隙。

将 MFP 连接到电话线

4. 将缠绕在铁芯 (D) 上的电话线插入电话线端子，然后将电话线端子连接到电话线。

100V/120V/ 澳大利亚型号必须使用附属的电话线 (B)。

フェライトコアの取り付け

(110V/230V/ ニューゼaland仕様のみ)

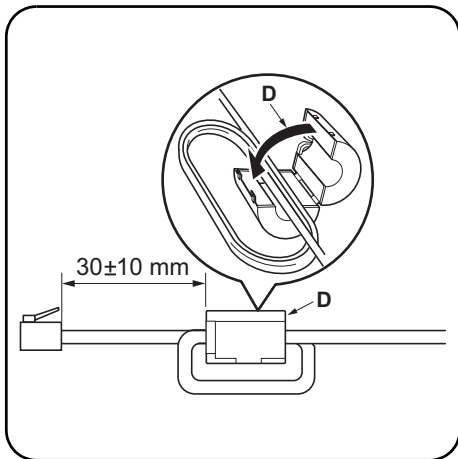
3. モジュラーコードにフェライトコア (D) を取り付ける。コードをフェライトコアに必ず 3 回通すこと。

フェライトコアと端子の間隔を 30mm ± 10mm あけること。

電話回線との接続

4. ライン端子に、電話回線からのモジュラーコードのフェライトコア (D) が取り付けられている側のプラグを差し込み、電話回線へ接続する。

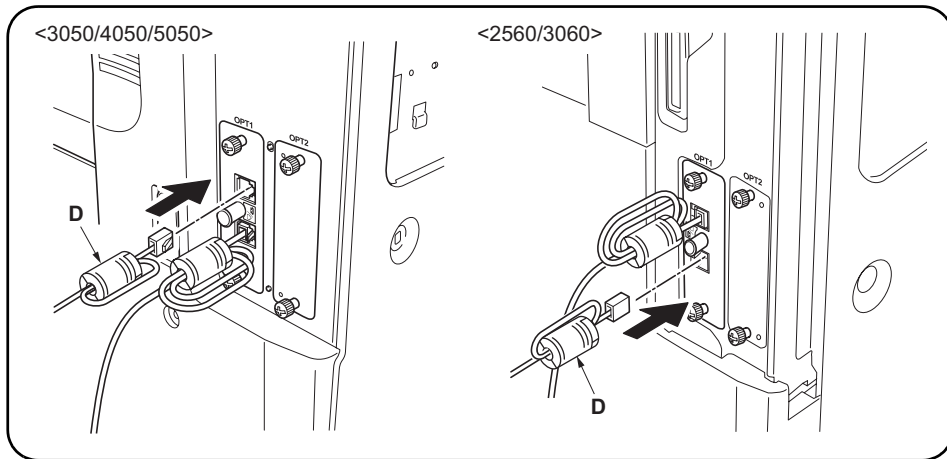
100V/120V/ オーストラリア仕様は付属のモジュラーコード (B) を使用すること。



Install the ferrite core (telephone line of the separate phone).

5. When connecting a separate phone to the MFP, attach the ferrite core (D) to the telephone line of the separate phone.

Be sure to loop the cord twice through the ferrite core.



Connect the MFP to the separate phone (except for New Zealand model).

6. Plug the separate phone line with the ferrite core (D) into the line terminal, and then connect the line terminal to the separate phone line.

If you don't connect the MFP to the separate phone, wipe the surface of the telephone terminal with alcohol and adhere the terminal seal (C).

Installer le noyau de ferrite (ligne du téléphone séparé).

5. Lors de la connexion d'un téléphone séparé au MFP, fixer le noyau de ferrite (D) à la ligne du téléphone séparé.

Veiller à enrouler deux fois le cordon autour du noyau de ferrite.

Connetter le MFP au téléphone séparé (sauf modèle pour la Nouvelle-Zélande).

6. Brancher la ligne de téléphone séparé avec le noyau de ferrite (D) à la borne de la ligne, puis connecter la borne de la ligne à la ligne de téléphone séparé.

Si le MFP n'est pas connecté au téléphone séparé, nettoyer la surface de la borne de téléphone avec de l'alcool et apposer le joint de borne (C).

Instale el núcleo de ferrita (línea telefónica del teléfono independiente).

5. Al conectar un teléfono separado al MFP, coloque el núcleo de ferrita (D) a la línea telefónica del teléfono separado.

Asegúrese de dar dos vueltas al cable a través del núcleo de ferrita.

Conecte el MFP al teléfono separado (excepto para el modelo Nuevo Zelandés).

6. Enchufe la línea del teléfono separado con el núcleo de ferrita (D) en el terminal de línea, y seguidamente conecte el terminal de línea a la línea del teléfono separado.

Si no conecta el MFP a un teléfono separado, limpie la superficie del terminal telefónico con alcohol y pégue el sello del terminal (C).

Aufsetzen des Ferritkerns (Telefonleitung mit separatem Telefon).

5. Beim Anschließen eines separaten Telefons an den MFP den Ferritkern (D) auf die Telefonleitung des separaten Telefons aufsetzen.

Das Kabel zweimal durch den Ferritkern führen.

Anschließen des MFP an das separate Telefon (außer Neuseeland-Modell).

6. Das Kabel des separaten Telefons mit dem Ferritkern (D) in die Gerätebuchse einstecken und das Kabel an der Dose für das separate Telefon anschließen.

Wenn der MFP nicht an das separate Telefon angeschlossen wird, die Oberfläche der Telefonbuchse mit Alkohol abwischen und Verschlusskappe (C) einsetzen.

Montare il nucleo di ferrite (linea telefonica del telefono separato).

5. Nel caso in cui si colleghi un telefono separato all'MFP, montare il nucleo di ferrite (D) sulla linea del telefono separato.

Avere cura di avvolgere due volte il cavo attorno al nucleo di ferrite.

Collegamento dell'MFP al telefono separato (eccetto per il modello Nuova Zelanda).

6. Collegare la linea del telefono separato con il nucleo di ferrite (D) al terminale della linea, quindi collegare il terminale della linea alla linea del telefono separato.

Nel caso in cui non si colleghi l'MFP al telefono separato, pulire la superficie del terminale del telefono con dell'alcol e applicare la guarnizione terminale (C).

安装铁芯（其它电话的电话线）

5. 将其它电话连接到 MFP 时，将铁芯 (D) 安装到该部电话的电话线。
请务必将电话线缠绕铁芯两圈。

将 MFP 连接到其它电话（新西兰型号以外）

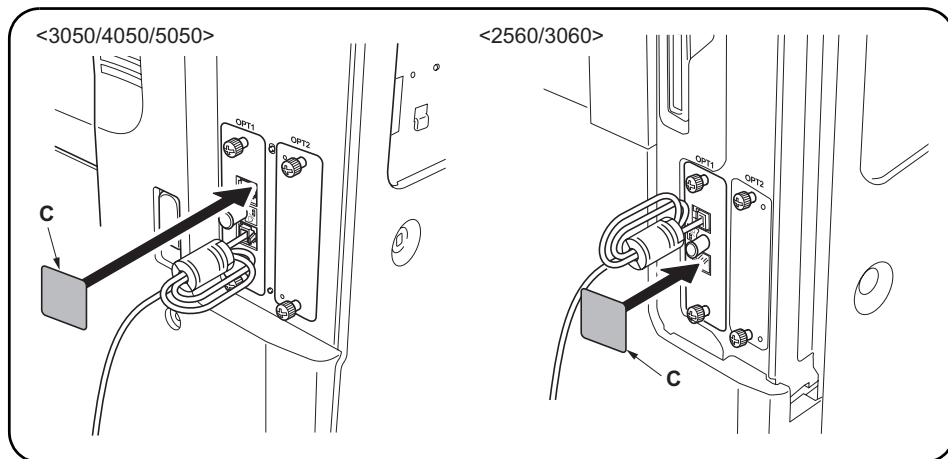
6. 将缠绕在铁芯 (D) 上的其它电话线插入电话线端子，然后将电话线端子连接到其它电话线。
如果不想将 MFP 连接到其它电话，用酒精擦拭电话端子表面并粘上端子密封 (C)。

フェライトコアの取り付け（外付け電話の電話線）

5. 外付け電話と MFP 本体を接続する場合、外付け電話からの電話線にフェライトコア (D) を取り付けます。**コードをフェライトコアに必ず 2 回以上通すこと。**

外付け電話との接続（ニュージーランド仕様以外）

6. TEL 端子に、外付け電話からの電話線のフェライトコア (D) が取り付けられている側のプラグを差し込み、外付け電話と接続する。
(外付け電話と接続しない場合、TEL 端子周囲をアルコール清掃し、端子シール (C) を貼り付ける。)



Seal the terminal (for New Zealand model).

7. Wipe the surface of the telephone terminal with alcohol and adhere the terminal seal (C).
Perform this procedure for New Zealand model only.

Fermer hermétiquement la borne (modèle pour la Nouvelle-Zélande).

7. Effectuer cette procédure pour le modèle pour la Nouvelle-Zélande seulement.

Selle el terminal (para el modelo Nuevo Zelandés).

7. Realice este procedimiento sólo para el modelo Nuevo Zelandés.

Versiegeln der Anschlussbuchse (für Neuseeland-Modell).

7. Dieses Verfahren nur für das Neuseeland-Modell anwenden.

Sigillare il terminale (per il modello Nuova Zelanda).

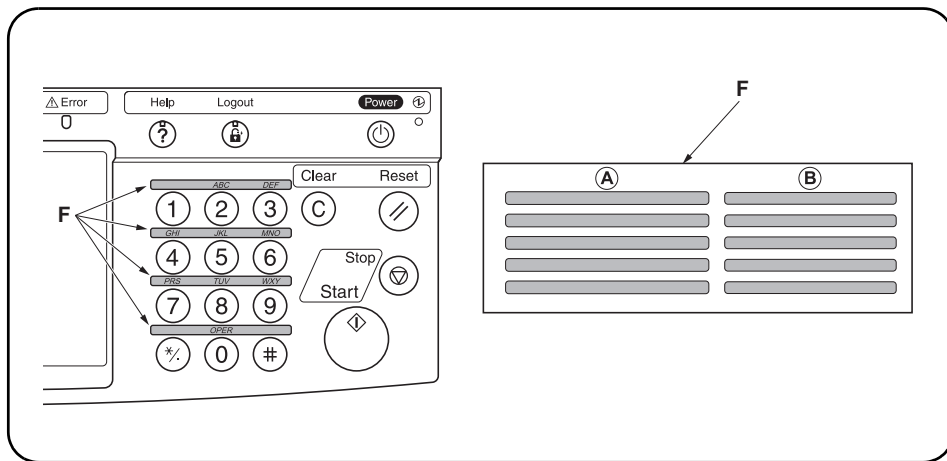
7. Eseguire questa procedura solo per il modello Nuova Zelanda.

安装端子密封（仅适用于新西兰型号）

7. 该操作步骤仅适用于新西兰型号。

端子シールの貼り付け（ニュージーランド仕様のみ）

7. TEL 端子周囲をアルコール清掃し、端子シール (C) を貼り付ける。
この手順はニュージーランド仕様のみおこなう。



Attach the alphabet labels.

8. Wipe the area above the numeric keys at the right side of the operation panel with alcohol and adhere the alphabet labels (F) here.
In Asia and Oceania, use PQRS TUV WXYZ label, and do not use PRS TUV WXY and OPER labels.

<When installing in 3050/4050/5050>

Adhere the alphabet labels (F) that ① is shown.

<When installing in 2560/3060>

Adhere the alphabet labels (F) that ② is shown.

Fixer les étiquettes de l'alphabet.

8. Nettoyer la surface au-dessus des touches numériques à droite du panneau de commande et y coller les étiquettes de l'alphabet (F).
En Asie et Océanie, utiliser l'étiquette PQRS TUV WXYZ et pas les étiquettes PRS TUV WXY et OPER.

<Installation sur les modèles 3050/4050/5050>

Apposer les étiquettes de l'alphabet (F) de manière que ① soit montré.

<Installation sur les modèles 2560/3060>

Apposer les étiquettes de l'alphabet (F) de manière que ② soit montré.

Fije las etiquetas de alfabeto.

8. Limpie la zona situada encima de las teclas numéricas, en el lado derecho del panel de trabajo, y pegue aquí las etiquetas de alfabeto (F).
En Asia y Oceanía, utilice la etiqueta PQRS TUV WXYZ y no use las PRS TUV WXY ni las OPER.

<Cuando instale en 3050/4050/5050>

Pegue las etiquetas de alfabeto (F) indicadas en ①.

<Cuando instale en 2560/3060>

Pegue las etiquetas de alfabeto (F) indicadas en ②.

Anbringen der Alphabetaufkleber.

8. Den Bereich über den Zifferntasten auf der rechten Seite des Bedienfeldes abwischen und die Alphabetaufkleber (F) hier anbringen.
In Asien und Ozeanien den Aufkleber PQRS TUV WXYZ verwenden; nicht die Aufkleber PRS TUV WXY und OPER verwenden.

<Bei Einbau in 3050/4050/5050>

Die bei ① gezeigten Buchstabenaufkleber (F) anbringen.

<Bei Einbau in 2560/3060>

Die bei ② gezeigten Buchstabenaufkleber (F) anbringen.

Applicazione delle etichette alfabetiche.

8. Pulire l'area sopra i tasti numerici sul lato destro del pannello operativo e attaccare qui le etichette alfabetiche (F).
In Asia ed Oceania, utilizzare l'etichetta PQRS TUV WXYZ e non utilizzare le etichette PRS TUV WXY e OPER.

<Quando si installa nel 3050/4050/5050>

Applicare le etichette alfabetiche (F) che sono indicate da ①.

<Quando si installa nel 2560/3060>

Applicare le etichette alfabetiche (F) che sono indicate da ②.

安装英文字母标签

8. 擦拭操作面板右侧数字键上的区域，然后将英文字母标签 (F) 粘在此处。
在亚洲和大洋州，请使用 PQRS TUV WXYZ 标签，而不要使用 PRS TUV WXY 和 OPER 标签。

<安装在 3050/4050/5050 型号上时>

将印刷的 ① 的英文字母标签 (F) 粘在此处。

<安装在 2560/3060 型号上时>

将印刷的 ② 的英文字母标签 (F) 粘在此处。

アルファベットのラベルの貼り付け (100V 仕様以外)

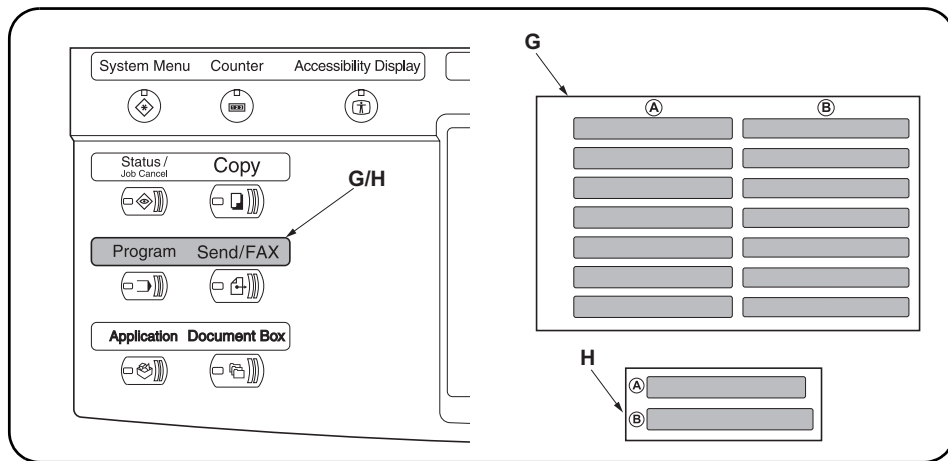
8. 操作パネル右側のテンキー上側をアルコール清掃し、アルファベットのラベル (F) を貼り付ける。
アジア・オセアニアでは「PRS TUV WXY」および「OPER」のラベルを使用せず、「PQRS TUV WXYZ」のラベルを使用すること。

<4050/5050 に設置する場合>

① と印刷されているアルファベットのラベル (F) を貼り付ける。

<2560/3060 に設置する場合>

② と印刷されているアルファベットのラベル (F) を貼り付ける。



Attach the FAX operation section label.

9. Wipe the label surface shown in the figure with alcohol and adhere the FAX operation section label (G) of the corresponding language.

<When installing in 3050/4050/5050>

Adhere the FAX operation section label (G) that ① is shown.

<When installing in 2560/3060>

Adhere the FAX operation section label (G) that ② is shown.

Fixer l'étiquette de la section de fonctionnement FAX.

9. Essuyer avec de l'alcool la surface de l'étiquette montrée sur l'illustration, et apposer l'étiquette de la section de fonctionnement FAX (G) de la langue correspondante.

<Installation sur les modèles 3050/4050/5050>

Apposer l'étiquette de la section de fonctionnement FAX (G) de manière que ① soit montré.

<Installation sur les modèles 2560/3060>

Apposer l'étiquette de la section de fonctionnement FAX (G) de manière que ② soit montré.

Coloque la etiqueta de la sección de funcionamiento de FAX.

9. Limpie la superficie de la etiqueta que aparece en la figura con alcohol y pegue la etiqueta de la sección de funcionamiento de FAX (G) del correspondiente idioma.

<Cuando instale en 3050/4050/5050>

Pegue la etiqueta de la sección de funcionamiento de FAX (G) indicada en ①.

<Cuando instale en 2560/3060>

Pegue la etiqueta de la sección de funcionamiento de FAX (G) indicada en ②.

Anbringen des Aufklebers für den FAX-Bedienungsabschnitt.

9. Die in der Abbildung gezeigte Klebefläche des Aufklebers mit Alkohol reinigen, und den Aufkleber für den FAX-Bedienungsabschnitt (G) der entsprechenden Sprache anbringen.

<Bei Einbau in 3050/4050/5050>

Den bei ① gezeigten Aufkleber für den FAX-Bedienungsabschnitt (G) anbringen.

<Bei Einbau in 2560/3060>

Den bei ② gezeigten Aufkleber für den FAX-Bedienungsabschnitt (G) anbringen.

Fissare l'etichetta della sezione funzionamento FAX.

9. Pulire con alcol la superficie dell'etichetta indicata nella figura e applicare l'etichetta della sezione funzionamento FAX (G) della lingua corrispondente.

<Quando si installa nel 3050/4050/5050>

Applicare l'etichetta della sezione funzionamento FAX (G) indicata da ①.

<Quando si installa nel 2560/3060>

Applicare l'etichetta della sezione funzionamento FAX (G) indicata da ②.

粘贴传真操作部标签

9. 用酒精擦拭图示位置的标签贴面后, 粘贴相应语言的传真操作部标签 (G)。

<安装在 3050/4050/5050 型号上时>

将印刷的 ① 的传真操作部标签 (G) 粘在此处。

<安装在 2560/3060 型号上时>

将印刷的 ② 的传真操作部标签 (G) 粘在此处。

FAX 操作部ラベルの貼り付け

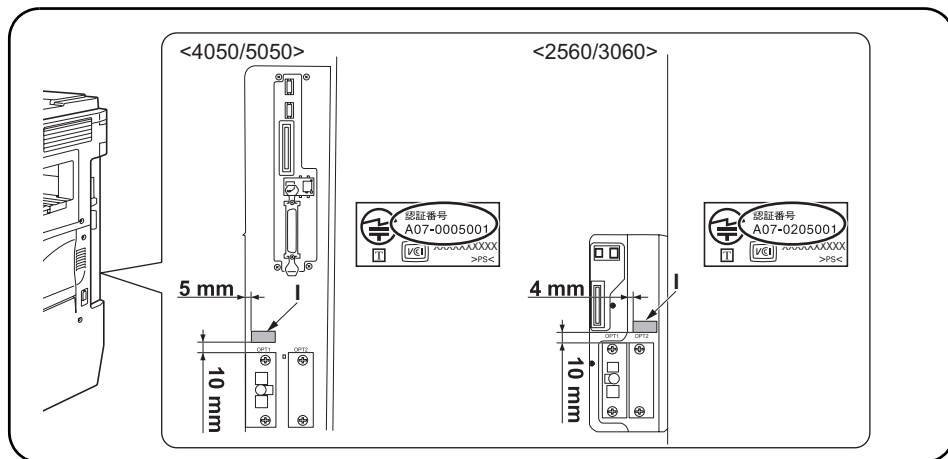
9. イラストの位置のラベル上面をアルコール清掃後、該当する言語の FAX 操作部ラベル (H) を貼り付ける。

< 4050/5050 に設置する場合 >

① と印刷されている FAX 操作部ラベル (H) を貼り付ける。

< 2560/3060 に設置する場合 >

② と印刷されている FAX 操作部ラベル (H) を貼り付ける。



Attach the JATE label (for 100 V model only).
10. Perform this procedure for 100 V model only.

Fixer l'étiquette JATE (modèle 100 V seulement).
10. Effectuer cette procédure pour le modèle 100 V seulement.

Coloque la etiqueta JATE (sólo para el modelo de 100 V).
10. Realice el procedimiento sólo para el modelo de 100 V.

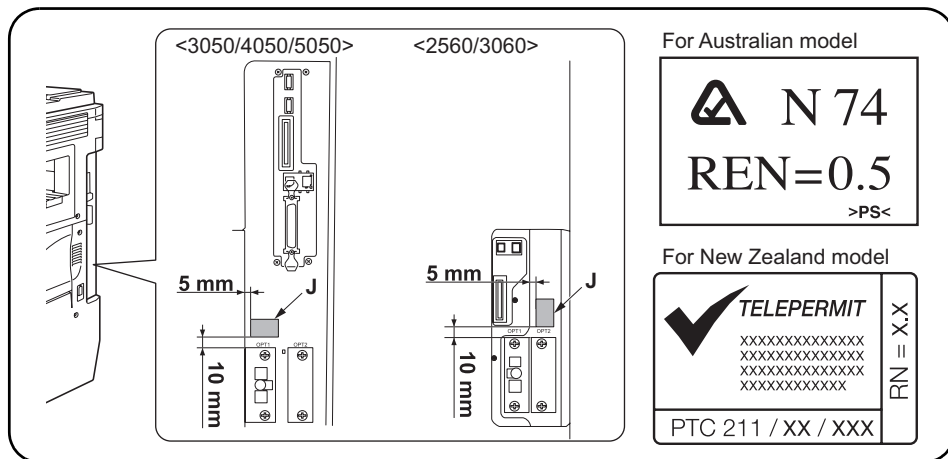
Den JATE-Aufkleber anbringen (nur für 100-V-Modell).
10. Dieses Verfahren nur für das 100-V-Modell anwenden.

Applicare l'etichetta JATE (solo per il modello da 100 V).
10. Eseguire questa procedura solo per il modello da 100 V.

粘貼 JATE 标签（仅适用于 100V 型号）
10. 该步骤仅适用于 100V 型号时操作。

JATE ラベルの貼り付け（100V 仕様のみ）

- 10.** アルコール清掃後、製品に合わせて JATE ラベル (I) を貼り付ける。
- < 4050/5050 に設置する場合 >
 認証番号「A07-0005001」の JATE ラベル (I) を貼り付ける。
 - < 2560/3060 に設置する場合 >
 認証番号「A07-0205001」の JATE ラベル (I) を貼り付ける。



Attach the approval label (for Australian/New Zealand model only).

11. Attach the approval label (J) after wiping with alcohol.

Perform this procedure for Australian/New Zealand model only.

When installing the optional Dual FAX (when adding the FAX circuit board to OPT2), proceed to the following procedures.

When not installing, proceed to page 14.

Fixer l'étiquette d'approbation (modèle pour l'Australie/Nouvelle-Zélande seulement).

11. Effectuer cette procédure pour le modèle pour l'Australie/Nouvelle-Zélande seulement.

Lorsqu'on installe le FAX double en option (lorsqu'on ajoute la carte à circuits FAX à l'OPT2), effectuer les procédures suivantes.

Si on ne l'installe pas, passer à la page 14.

Coloque la etiqueta de aprobación (sólo para los modelos Australiano/Nuevo Zelandés)

11. Realice este procedimiento sólo para los modelos Australiano/Nuevo Zelandés.

Cuando instale el FAX dual opcional (cuando agrega la tarjeta de circuitos de FAX a OPT2), vaya a los siguientes procedimientos. Cuando no lo instala, vaya a la página 14.

Den Genehmigungsaufkleber anbringen (nur für Australien/Neuseeland-Modell).

11. Dieses Verfahren nur für das Australien/Neuseeland-Modell anwenden.

Wenn das optionale Dual FAX installiert wird (Hinzufügen der FAX-Leiterplatte zu OPT2), mit den folgenden Verfahren fortfahren. Erfolgt diese Installation nicht, mit Seite 14 fortfahren.

Applicare l'etichetta di approvazione (solo per il modello Australia/Nuova Zelanda).

11. Eseguire questa procedura solo per il modello Australia/Nuova Zelanda.

Quando si installa il Dual FAX opzionale (quando si aggiunge la scheda a circuiti FAX all'OPT2), continuare con la seguente procedura. Se non si esegue l'installazione passare alla pagina 14.

粘貼規格標籤（仅适用于澳大利亚 / 新西兰型号）

11. 该步骤仅适用于澳大利亚 / 新西兰型号时操作。

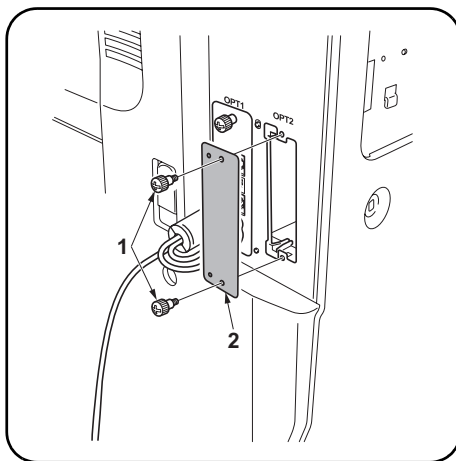
安装选购件的多插口组件时（将传真电路板安装在 OPT2 上时），请按以下步骤进行。不安装时，按第 14 页的要求进行操作。

規格ラベルの貼り付け（オーストラリア / ニュージーランド仕様のみ）

11. アルコール清掃後、規格ラベル（J）を貼り付ける。

この手順はオーストラリア / ニュージーランド仕様のみおこなう。

オプションのマルチポートを設置する場合（FAX 基板を OPT2 に増設する場合）は、次の手順に進む。設置しない場合は、14 ページへ進む。



Install the Dual FAX

Refer to page 1 for the supplied parts.
When adding the FAX circuit board to OPT2, the second FAX operation section label (G) and the approval label (J) are not required. Bring back and discard the approval label.

Remove the cover.

1. Remove two screws (1) and then remove OPT2 cover (2).

Installer le FAX double.

Pour plus de détails concernant les pièces fournies, se reporter à la page 1.
Lorsqu'on ajoute la carte à circuits FAX à l'OPT2, la deuxième étiquette de la section de fonctionnement FAX (G) et l'étiquette d'approbation (J) ne sont pas nécessaires. Détacher et jeter l'étiquette d'approbation.

Retirer le couvercle.

1. Retirer les deux vis (1), puis le couvercle OPT2 (2).

Instale el FAX dual

Consulte la página 1 de las piezas suministradas.
Cuando agrega la tarjeta de circuitos de FAX a OPT2, no se necesitan ni la segunda etiqueta de la sección de funcionamiento de FAX (G) ni la etiqueta de aprobación (J). Retírelas y deshágase de la etiqueta de aprobación.

Desmonte la cubierta.

1. Quite dos tornillos (1) y desmonte la cubierta OPT2 (2).

Installieren des Dual FAX

Die mitgelieferten Teile sind auf Seite 1 aufgelistet.
Wenn die FAX-Leiterplatte zu OPT2 hinzugefügt wird, werden der zweite Aufkleber für den FAX-Bedienungsabschnitt (G) und der Genehmigungsaufkleber (J) nicht benötigt. Den Genehmigungsaufkleber zurückbringen und wegwerfen.

Entfernen der Abdeckung.

1. Die beiden Schrauben (1) herausdrehen und Abdeckung OPT2 (2) abnehmen.

Installare il Dual FAX

Fare riferimento alla pagina 1 per le parti in dotazione.
Quando si aggiunge la scheda a circuiti FAX all'OPT2, la seconda etichetta della sezione di funzionamento FAX (G) e l'etichetta di approvazione (J) non sono necessarie. Togliere e smaltire l'etichetta di approvazione.

Rimuovere il coperchio.

1. Rimuovere le due viti (1), quindi rimuovere il coperchio OPT2 (2).

安装多插口组件

同装品时，参照第 1 页。
在 OPT2 上增设传真电路板时，不需要粘贴第 2 张的传真操作部标签 (G) 和规格标签 (J)。规格标签拿回去后应立即作废弃处理。

拆下盖板

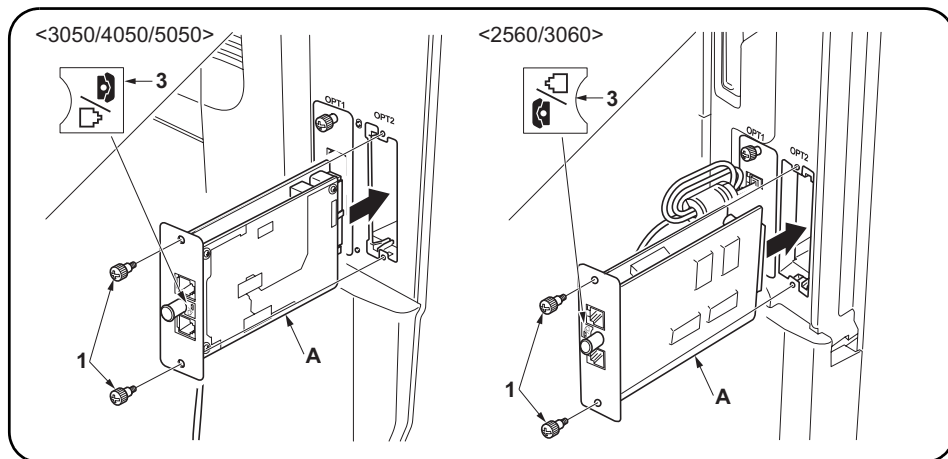
1. 拆下 2 颗螺钉 (1)，然后拆下 OPT2 盖板 (2)。

マルチポートの設置

同梱品は 1 ページを参照する。
OPT2 に FAX 基板を増設する場合、2 枚目の FAX 操作部ラベル (H)・JATE ラベル (I)・規格ラベル (J) を貼る必要はない。規格ラベルは持ち帰り、廃棄すること。
FAX 標準機に増設する場合は、マルチポートの設置手順をおこなう。

カバーの取り外し

1. ビス (1) 2 本を外し、OPT2 のカバー (2) を取り外す。



Install the FAX circuit board.

2. Insert the FAX circuit board (A) along the groove in OPT2 and secure the board with two screws (1) that have been removed in step 1.

Do not touch the FAX circuit board (A) terminal. Hold the top and bottom of the FAX circuit board, or the projection of the board to insert the FAX circuit board (A).

<When installing in 3050/4050/5050>

Direct the label (3) on to the FAX circuit board (A) toward right side and insert the board along the groove.

<When installing in 2560/3060>

Direct the label (3) on to the FAX circuit board (A) toward left side and insert the board along the groove.

Installer la carte à circuits FAX.

2. Insérer la carte à circuits FAX (A) le long de la rainure dans l'OPT2 et la fixer à l'aide des deux vis (1) retirées à l'étape 1.

Ne pas toucher la borne de la carte à circuits FAX (A). Tenir les parties inférieure et supérieure de la carte à circuits FAX ou la saillie de la carte pour insérer la carte à circuits FAX (A).

<Installation sur les modèles 3050/4050/5050>

Diriger l'étiquette (3) située sur la carte à circuits FAX (A) vers la droite et insérer la carte le long de la rainure.

<Installation sur les modèles 2560/3060>

Diriger l'étiquette (3) située sur la carte à circuits FAX (A) vers la gauche et insérer la carte le long de la rainure.

Instale la tarjeta de circuitos de fax.

2. Inserte la tarjeta de circuitos de fax (A) a lo largo de la ranura de OPT2 y asegúrela con los dos tornillos (1) que ha quitado en el paso 1.

No toque el terminal de la tarjeta de circuitos de fax (A). Sujete las partes superior e inferior de la tarjeta de circuitos de fax o la saliente de la tarjeta para insertar la tarjeta de circuitos de fax (A).

<Cuando instale en 3050/4050/5050>

Oriente la etiqueta (3) de la tarjeta de circuitos de fax (A) hacia la derecha e inserte la tarjeta a lo largo de la ranura.

<Cuando instale en 2560/3060>

Oriente la etiqueta (3) de la tarjeta de circuitos de FAX (A) hacia la izquierda e inserte la tarjeta a lo largo de la ranura.

Installieren der FAX-Leiterplatte.

2. FAX-Leiterplatte (A) in die Nut des Einbauschachts OPT2 einsetzen und Leiterplatte mit den in Schritt 1 ausgebauten Schrauben (1) befestigen.

Die Kontakte der FAX-Leiterplatte (A) nicht berühren. Die FAX-Leiterplatte (A) beim Einsetzen oben und unten oder an dem Vorsprung festhalten.

<Bei Einbau in 3050/4050/5050>

Die FAX-Leiterplatte (A) so in die Nut einsetzen, dass der Aufkleber (3) nach rechts zeigt.

<Bei Einbau in 2560/3060>

Die FAX-Leiterplatte (A) so in die Nut einsetzen, dass der Aufkleber (3) nach links zeigt.

Installare la scheda a circuiti FAX.

2. Inserire la scheda a circuiti FAX (A) lungo l'incavo nell'OPT2 e fissare la scheda con le due viti (1) rimosse nell'operazione 1.

Non toccare il terminale della scheda a circuiti FAX (A). Per inserire il circuito FAX (A), tenere l'estremit superiore e la base della scheda a circuiti FAX, o la sporgenza della scheda a circuiti FAX.

<Quando si installa nel 3050/4050/5050>

Rivolgere l'etichetta (3) sulla scheda a circuiti FAX (A) verso il lato destro e inserire la scheda lungo l'incavo.

<Quando si installa nel 2560/3060>

Rivolgere l'etichetta (3) sulla scheda a circuiti FAX (A) verso il lato sinistro e inserire la scheda lungo l'incavo.

安裝傳真電路板

2. 沿著 OPT2 的溝槽插入傳真電路板 (A) 並用在步驟 1 中拆下的兩顆螺釘 (1) 固定電路板。

不要觸碰傳真電路板 (A) 端子。按住傳真電路板的頂部和底部，或者按住電路板的突出部將傳真電路板 (A) 插入。

<安裝在 3050/4050/5050 型號上時>

將標籤 (3) 放在傳真電路板 (A) 上，朝向右側，然後沿著溝槽插入電路板。

<安裝在 2560/3060 型號上時>

將標籤 (3) 放在傳真電路板 (A) 上，朝向左側，然後沿著溝槽插入電路板。

FAX 基板的取り付け

2. OPT2 の溝に沿って FAX 基板 (A) を挿入し、手順 1 で外したビス (1) 2 本で固定する。

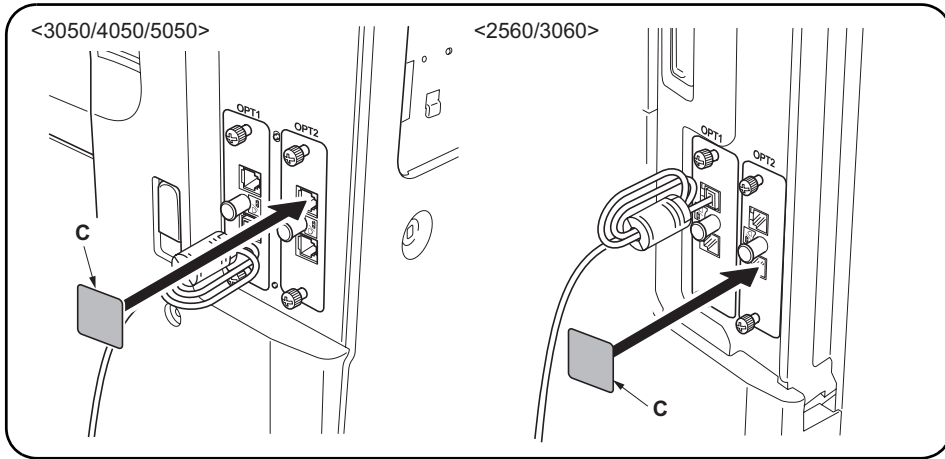
FAX 基板 (A) の端子に触れないこと。FAX 基板 (A) の挿入時は基板の上下が突起を持つこと。

<4050/5050 に設置する場合>

FAX 基板 (A) は、貼り付けられているラベル (3) を右側に向け、挿入すること。

<2560/3060 に設置する場合>

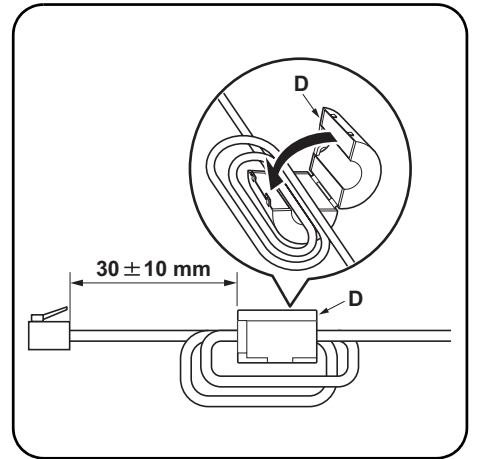
FAX 基板 (A) は、貼り付けられているラベル (3) を左側に向け、挿入すること。



Seal the terminal.

3. Wipe the surface of the telephone terminal with alcohol and adhere the terminal seal (C).

The telephone terminal on the FAX circuit board installed to OPT2 is unavailable (invalid). Seal the terminal securely to prevent a user from connecting a separate phone.



Install the ferrite core (for 110 V/230 V/New Zealand models only).

4. Install the ferrite core (D) onto the modular connector cable.

Be sure to loop the cord three times through the ferrite core.

Keep an interval of 30 mm ± 10 mm between the ferrite core and the terminal.

Fermer hermétiquement la borne.

3. Nettoyer la surface de la borne de téléphone avec de l'alcool, et apposer le joint de borne (C).

La borne de téléphone de la carte à circuits FAX installée sur l'OPT2 n'est pas utilisable (invalidé). Fermer hermétiquement la borne pour empêcher tout utilisateur de connecter un téléphone séparé.

Installer le noyau de ferrite (modèles pour la Nouvelle-Zélande/110 V/230 V seulement).

4. Installer le noyau de ferrite (D) dans le câble du connecteur modulaire.

Veiller à enrouler trois fois le cordon autour du noyau de ferrite.

Un écart de 30 mm ± 10 mm entre le noyau de ferrite et la borne est requis.

Selle el terminal.

3. Limpie la superficie del terminal de teléfono con alcohol y pegue el sello de terminal (C).

El terminal de teléfono de la tarjeta de circuitos de FAX instalado en el OPT2 no está disponible (inválido). Selle firmemente el terminal para evitar que un usuario conecte un teléfono por separado.

Instale el núcleo de ferrita (sólo para los modelos de 110 V/230 V/Nuevo Zelandés).

4. Instale el núcleo de ferrita (D) en el cable conector modular.

Asegúrese de dar tres vueltas al cable a través del núcleo de ferrita.

Deje una separación de 30 mm ± 10 mm entre el núcleo de ferrita y el terminal.

Versiegeln der Anschlussbuchse.

3. Die Oberfläche der Telefonanschlussbuchse mit Alkohol abwischen und die Verschlusskappe (C) anbringen.

Die Telefonanschlussbuchse der in OPT2 installierten FAX-Leiterplatte ist nicht verfügbar (ungültig). Die Anschlussbuchse vollkommen versiegeln, um den Anschluss eines separaten Telefons zu verhindern.

Aufsetzen des Ferritkerns

(nur für 110-V/230-V/Neuseeland-Modell).

4. Ferritkern (D) auf das Modulkabel aufsetzen.

Das Kabel dreimal durch den Ferritkern führen.

Zwischen Ferritkern und Buchse muss ein Abstand von 30 mm ± 10 eingehalten werden.

Sigillare il terminale.

3. Pulire la superficie del terminale del telefono con alcol e fare aderire la guarnizione terminale (C).

Il terminale del telefono sulla scheda a circuiti FAX installata su OPT2 non è disponibile (invalido). Sigillare il terminale saldamente per prevenire a un utente di collegare un telefono separato.

Montare il nucleo di ferrite (solo per modelli da 110 V/230 V/Nuova Zelanda).

4. Montare il nucleo di ferrite (D) sul cavo connettore modulare.

Avere cura di avvolgere tre volte il cavo attorno al nucleo di ferrite.

Lasciare una distanza di 30 mm ± 10 mm tra il nucleo di ferrite e il terminale.

安装端子密封

3. 用酒精擦拭电话端子表面并粘上端子密封 (C)。

安装在 OPT2 上的传真电路板的电话端子不可使用 (无效)。为了避免用户错误与其它电话连接, 必须确实粘贴好端子密封。

安装铁芯 (仅适用于 110V/230V/ 新西兰型号)

4. 将铁芯 (D) 安装到电话线。

请务必注意将电话线缠绕铁芯三圈。

在铁芯和端子之间保留 30mm ± 10mm 间隙。

端子シールの貼り付け

3. TEL 端子周囲をアルコール清掃し、端子シール (C) を貼り付ける。

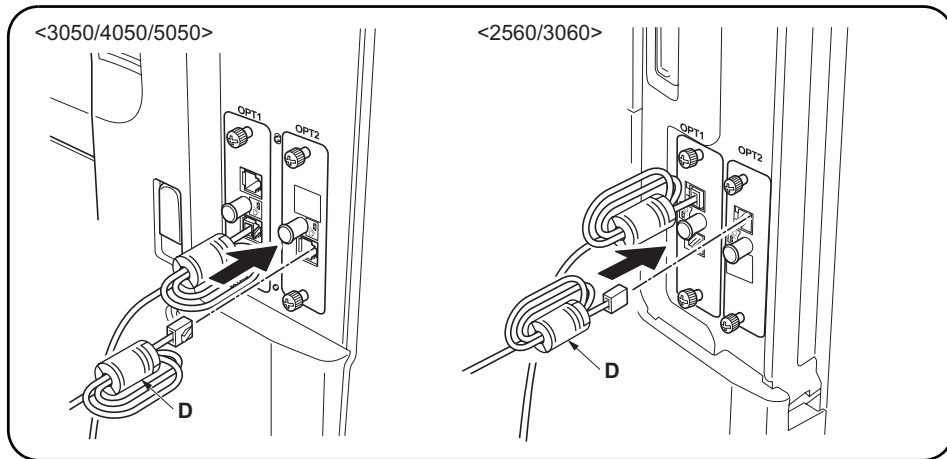
OPT2 に取り付けした FAX 基板の TEL 端子は使用不可 (無効) となる。ユーザが誤って外付け電話を接続しないよう確実に貼り付けること。

フェライトコアの取り付け

(110V/230V/ ニュージーランド仕様のみ)

4. モジュラーコードにフェライトコア (D) を取り付ける。コードをフェライトコアに必ず 3 回通すこと。

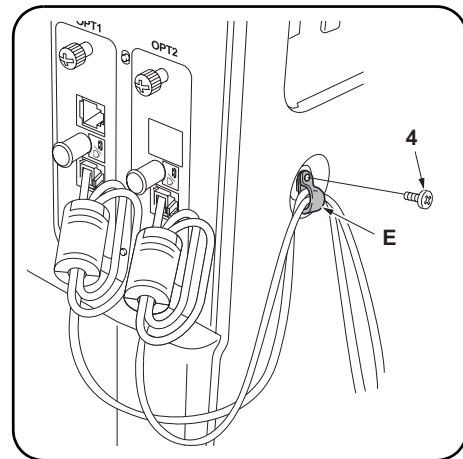
フェライトコアと端子の間隔を 30mm ± 10mm あけること。



Connect the MFP to the telephone line.

5. Insert the plug with ferrite core (D) into the line terminal. Connect the other plug to the telephone line.

For 100 V/120 V/Australian models, use the supplied modular connector cable (B).



Secure the modular connector cable (only when installing in 3050/4050/5050).

6. Remove the screw (4) from the rear cover.
7. Attach the clamp (E) to the two modular connector cables and secure it with the screw (4).

Connecter le MFP à la ligne de téléphone.

5. Insérer la fiche munie du noyau de ferrite (D) dans la borne de la ligne. Connecter l'autre fiche à la ligne de téléphone.

Pour les modèles pour l'Australie/100 V/120 V, utiliser le câble du connecteur modulaire (B) fourni.

Fixer le câble du connecteur modulaire (seulement pour l'installation dans les modèles 3050/4050/5050).

6. Retirer la vis (4) du couvercle arrière.
7. Poser le collier (E) sur les deux câbles du connecteur modulaire, et le fixer à l'aide de la vis (4).

Conecte el MFP a la línea telefónica.

5. Conecte el enchufe con el núcleo de ferrita (D) en el terminal. Conecte el otro enchufe en la línea telefónica.

Para los modelos de 100 V/120 V/Australiano, utilice el cable conector modular (B) suministrado.

Asegure el cable de conector modular (solo cuando instale en 3050/4050/5050).

6. Saque el tornillo (4) de la cubierta trasera.
7. Instale la abrazadera (E) en los dos cables de conector modular y asegúrelo con el tornillo (4).

Anschließen des MFP an die Telefonleitung.

5. Den Stecker mit Ferritkern (D) in die Leitungsbuchse stecken. Den anderen Stecker an die Telefondose anschließen.

Das mitgelieferte Modularstecker Kabel (B) für das 100-V/120-V/Australien-Modell verwenden.

Sichern des Modulkabels

(nur bei Einbau in 3050/4050/5050).

6. Die Schraube (4) von der Rückabdeckung entfernen.
7. Die Klemme (E) an den beiden Modulkabeln anbringen und mit der Schraube (4) sichern.

Collegamento dell'MFP alla linea del telefono.

5. Inserire lo spinotto con il nucleo di ferrite (D) nel terminale della linea. Collegare l'altro spinotto alla linea del telefono.

Per modelli da 100 V/120 V/Australia, utilizzare il cavo connettore modulare (B) in dotazione.

Fissare il cavo connettore modulare (solo quando si installa nel 3050/4050/5050).

6. Rimuovere la vite (4) dal coperchio posteriore.
7. Montare la fascetta (E) ai due cavi connettori modulari e fissarli con la vite (4).

将 MFP 连接到电话线

5. 将缠绕在铁芯 (D) 上的电话线插入电话线端子。将另一个插头与电话线连线。

100V/120V/ 澳大利亚型号必须使用附属的电话线 (B)。

固定电话线

(仅适用于安装 3050/4050/5050 型号)

6. 拆下 1 颗后盖板螺钉 (4)。
7. 用卡夹 (E) 夹住 2 根电话线, 并用 1 颗螺钉 (4) 固定。

電話回線との接続

5. フェライトコア (D) が取り付けられているプラグをライン端子に差し込む。もう片方のプラグは、電話回線へ接続する。

100V/120V/ オーストラリア仕様は付属のモジュラーコード (B) を使用すること。

モジュラーコードの固定

(4050/5050 に設置する場合のみ)

6. 後カバーのビス (4) 1 本を外す。
7. モジュラーコード 2 本にクランプ (E) を取り付け、ビス (4) 1 本で固定する。

Initialize the FAX circuit board.

1. Plug the MFP into a power outlet, and turn on the main power.
2. **If the FAX circuit board has been installed only in OPT1 or installed both in OPT1 and OPT2 (to initialize all FAX circuit boards)**

Perform the maintenance mode U600 to initialize the fax control assembly.

If the FAX circuit board has been added to OPT2 (to initialize the FAX circuit board in OPT2)

Initialize OPT2 by pressing [PORT SELECT], [P2], and the Start key in this order in the maintenance mode U698 and executing the maintenance mode U600.

If [ALL] is selected in U698, both OPT1 and OPT2 are initialized.

For details, see the service manual.

Refer to the operation guide to create a FAX Box.

Initialiser la carte à circuits FAX.

1. Brancher le MFP sur une prise d'alimentation et le mettre sous tension.
2. **Si la carte à circuits FAX a été installée dans l'OPT1 seulement, ou a été installée dans l'OPT1 et dans l'OPT2 (pour initialiser toutes les cartes à circuits FAX)**

Exécuter le mode de maintenance U600 pour initialiser l'ensemble de commande de fax.

Si la carte à circuits FAX a été ajoutée à l'OPT2 (pour initialiser la carte à circuits FAX dans l'OPT2)

Initialiser l'OPT2 en appuyant sur [PORT SELECT], [P2] et la touche Départ dans cet ordre en mode de maintenance U698, et exécuter le mode de maintenance U600.

Si [ALL] est sélectionné dans U698, l'OPT1 et l'OPT2 sont tous deux initialisés.

Pour plus de détails, se reporter au manuel d'entretien.

Se reporter au manuel d'utilisation pour créer une Boîte de FAX.

Inicialice la tarjeta de circuitos FAX.

1. Conecte el MFP a un receptáculo de pared y encienda el interruptor principal.
2. **Si la tarjeta de circuitos de FAX se instaló solo en OPT1 o se instaló tanto en OPT1 como OPT2 (para inicializar todas las tarjetas de circuito de FAX)**

Ejecute el modo de mantenimiento U600 para inicializar el conjunto de control de fax.

Si la tarjeta de circuitos de FAX se agregó a OPT2 (para inicializar la tarjeta de circuitos de FAX en OPT2)

Inicialice el OPT2 presionando [PORT SELECT], [P2] y la tecla de Inicio en ese orden en el modo de mantenimiento U698 y ejecutando el modo de mantenimiento U600.

Si se selecciona [ALL] en U698, se inicializan ambos OPT1 y OPT2.

Para más detalles, lea el manual de servicio.

Consulte la guía de uso para crear un Buzón de FAX.

Initialisieren der FAX-Leiterplatte.

1. Netzstecker des MFP in eine Steckdose stecken und Hauptschalter einschalten.
2. **Wenn die FAX-Leiterplatte nur in OPT1 oder sowohl in OPT1 als auch in OPT2 installiert worden ist (um alle FAX-Leiterplatten zu initialisieren)**

Wartungsmodus U600 ausführen, um die Faxsteuerbaugruppe zu initialisieren.

Wenn die FAX-Leiterplatte zu OPT2 hinzugefügt worden ist (um die FAX-Leiterplatte in OPT2 zu initialisieren)

OPT2 initialisieren. Dazu [PORT SELECT], [P2] und die Start-Taste im Wartungsmodus U698 in dieser Reihenfolge drücken und den Wartungsmodus U600 ausführen.

Wenn [ALL] in U698 gewählt wird, werden OPT1 und OPT2 initialisiert.

Weitere Einzelheiten siehe Wartungsanleitung.

Schlagen Sie zur Erzeugung einer FAX-Box in der Einführung nach.

Inizializzare la scheda a circuiti FAX.

1. Collegare l'MFP ad una presa di corrente e portare l'interruttore principale su On.
2. **Se la scheda a circuiti FAX è stata installata solo nell'OPT1 o in entrambi l'OPT1 e l'OPT2 (per inizializzare tutte le schede di circuito FAX)**

Eseguire il modo di manutenzione U600 per inizializzare il gruppo di controllo fax.

Se la scheda a circuiti è stata aggiunta all'OPT2 (per inizializzare la scheda a circuiti FAX nell'OPT2)

Inizializzare OPT2 premendo [PORT SELECT], [P2] e il tasto Avvio in questo ordine nel modo di manutenzione U698 ed eseguendo il modo di manutenzione U600.

Se viene selezionato [ALL] nel modo U698, entrambi OPT1 e OPT2 sono inizializzati.

Per ulteriori dettagli leggere il manuale d'istruzioni.

Leggere la guida alle funzioni per creare una Casella FAX.

传真电话板的初始化

1. 将 MFP 插入电源插座，打开主电源。
2. **仅限于在 OPT1 或 OPT1 和 OPT2 上同时安装传真电路板时（全部的传真电路板初始化）**
执行维修保养模式 U600，初始化传真控制组件。
在 OPT2 上增设时（OPT2 的传真电路板初始化）
只进行 OPT2 初始化时，在维修保养模式 U698 状态下，按顺序按下“PORT SELECT”、“P2”、开始键，执行维修保养模式 U600。
在 U698 状态下设定“ALL”时，会使 OPT1 和 OPT2 均初始化，这一点请多加注意。
有关详细信息，请参见维修手册。

参照操作手册，作成传真盒。

FAX 基板の初期化

1. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、主電源スイッチを ON にする。
2. **OPT1 のみまたは OPT1 と OPT2 に FAX 基板を同時に設置した場合（すべての FAX 基板を初期化）**
メンテナンスモード U600 を実行し、FAX 基板を初期化する。
OPT2 に増設した場合（OPT2 の FAX 基板を初期化）
メンテナンスモード U698 で「PORT SELECT」、[P2]、スタートキーの順に押し、メンテナンスモード U600 を実行する。
U698 で「ALL」を設定すると OPT1 と OPT2 両方を初期化するので注意すること。
詳細はサービスマニュアルを参照のこと。

使用説明書を参照し、ファクスボックスを作成する。

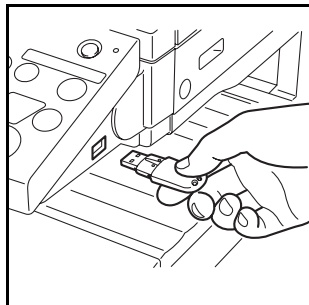
INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR Data Security Kit (C)

Data Security Kit (C) Installation Guide For MFP Models

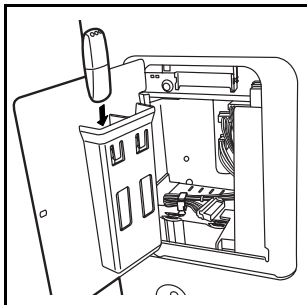
Guide d'installation du kit de sécurité des données (C) pour les modèles MFP

Guía de instalación del Kit de seguridad (C) para los modelos MFP

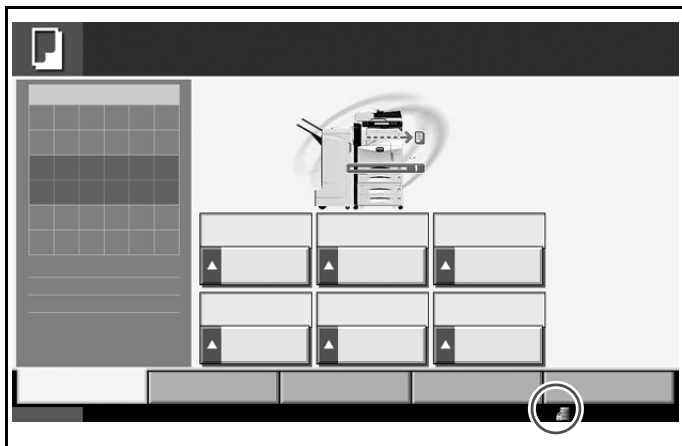
A



C



B



Français

Pièces fournies

Clé USB 1

Précautions avant l'activation

- L'activation du kit de sécurité des données supprime toutes les données enregistrées sur le disque dur par le client. Avant l'activation, vérifier avec le client si les données peuvent être supprimées.
- Veiller à mettre l'interrupteur principal de l'appareil hors tension.

Procédure d'activation

1. Insérer la clé USB dans l'emplacement de mémoire USB de l'appareil et mettre l'interrupteur principal sous tension. (voir illustration A.)
2. Lorsque l'écran d'accueil s'ouvre, le message *L'installation du Kit de sécurité va commencer.* s'affiche. Appuyer sur [OK].
3. Suivre les instructions à l'écran pour retirer la clé USB et mettre l'interrupteur principal hors tension.
4. Mettre l'interrupteur principal sous tension. L'écran de saisie du code de cryptage s'affiche.
Demander au client de changer le code de cryptage. L'utilisation de la valeur par défaut du code de cryptage (000000) n'affecte pas la fiabilité de la sécurité des données. Si le client désire changer le code, prier le client d'effectuer les opérations suivantes.
Appuyer sur [Code de cryptage].
Appuyer sur [Retour arrière] pour effacer 000000. Entrer le code de cryptage (caractères alphanumériques de 6 chiffres), puis appuyer sur [OK].
Rappeler au client de bien se souvenir du code de cryptage entré.
5. Appuyer sur [OK]. Le formatage du disque dur commence.
6. Lorsque le formatage est terminé, suivre les instructions à l'écran pour mettre l'interrupteur principal hors, puis sous tension.
7. Lorsque l'écran d'accueil s'ouvre, vérifier qu'une icône du disque dur () s'affiche dans l'angle inférieur droit de l'écran. (voir illustration B.)
8. Laisser la clé USB utilisée dans l'emplacement correspondant situé au dos du couvercle central gauche à l'arrière de l'appareil. (voir illustration C.)

English

Supplied Parts

USB Key 1

Precautions before Activating

- Activating the Data Security Kit will delete all data stored in the hard disk by the customer. Before activating, check with the customer if the data can be deleted.
- Be sure that the Main Power Switch of the machine is turned off.

Activating Procedure

1. Insert the USB Key into the USB Memory Slot of the machine and turn the Main Power Switch on. (See Illustration A.)
2. After the opening screen is displayed, the *Activating security function.* message is displayed. Press [OK].
3. Follow the onscreen instructions to remove the USB Key and turn the Main Power Switch off.
4. Turn the Main Power Switch on. The encryption code entry screen is displayed. Ask the customer to change the encryption code. Using the default value of the encryption code (000000) will not affect the data security reliability. If the customer desires to change the code, lead the customer to follow the steps below.
Press [Encryption Code].
Press [Back Space] to delete 000000. Enter the encryption code (6-digit alphanumeric characters) and then press [OK].
Remind the customer not to forget the encryption code entered.
5. Press [OK]. Hard disk formatting begins.
6. When formatting finishes, follow the onscreen instructions to turn the Main Power Switch off and on again.
7. After the opening screen is displayed, confirm that a hard disk icon () is shown in the lower right corner of the screen. (See Illustration B.)
8. Keep the used USB Key in the USB Key Box on the back side of the left-center cover that is attached to the back side of the machine. (See Illustration C.)

Español

Piezas suministradas

Llave USB 1

Precauciones antes de la activación

- Al activar el kit de seguridad, se eliminarán todos los datos que el cliente tenga almacenados en el disco duro. Antes de iniciar la activación, pida al cliente que confirme que los datos se pueden eliminar.
- Asegúrese de que el interruptor principal esté apagado.

Procedimiento de activación

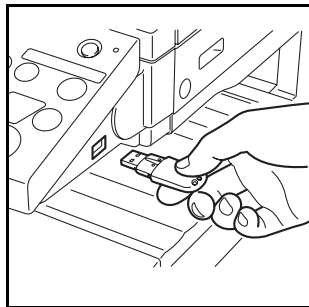
1. Inserte la llave USB en la ranura de memoria USB de la máquina y encienda el interruptor principal. (Consulte la ilustración A.)
2. Después de la pantalla inicial, aparecerá el mensaje *Comenzará instalación de kit de seguridad.* Pulse [OK].
3. Siga las instrucciones que aparecen en pantalla para retirar la llave USB y apague el interruptor principal.
4. Encienda el interruptor principal. Aparecerá la pantalla de introducción del código de cifrado.
Pida al cliente que cambie el código de cifrado. Si usa el valor predeterminado del código de cifrado (000000), la fiabilidad de la seguridad de los datos no se verá afectada. Si el cliente desea cambiar el código, avise al cliente que debe seguir los pasos a continuación.
Pulse [Encriptación Código].
Pulse [Retroceso] para borrar 000000. Introduzca el código de cifrado (6 caracteres alfanuméricos) y pulse [OK].
Advierta al cliente que no debe olvidar el código de cifrado introducido.
5. Pulse [OK]. Se inicia el formateo del disco duro.
6. Cuando termine el formateo, siga las instrucciones que aparecen en pantalla para apagar y encender el interruptor principal.
7. Después de que aparezca la pantalla inicial, compruebe que se muestra un icono de disco duro () en el ángulo superior derecho de la pantalla. (Consulte la ilustración B.)
8. Conserve la llave USB utilizada en su receptáculo, situado en el lado posterior de la cubierta central izquierda instalada en la parte de atrás de la máquina. (Consulte la ilustración C.)

Datensicherheits-Kit (C) – Installationsanleitung für MFP-Modelle

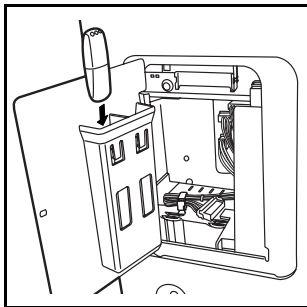
Kit Sicurezza Dati (C) - Guida all'installazione per i modelli MFP

Data Security Kit (C) 複合機用設置手順書

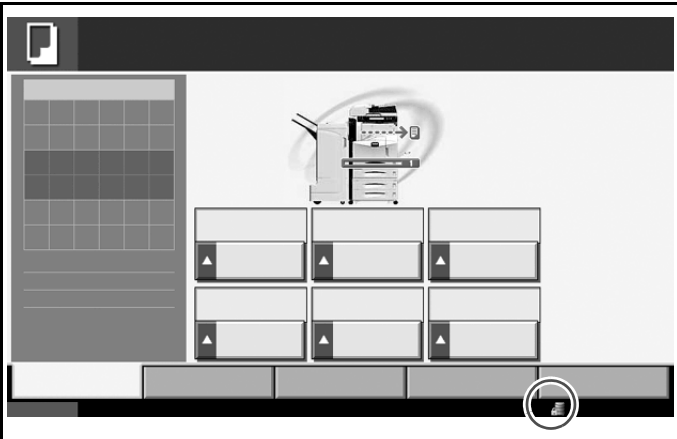
A



C



B



Italiano

Componenti forniti

Chiave USB 1

Precauzioni prima dell'attivazione

- Attivando il Kit Sicurezza Dati tutti i dati memorizzati dal cliente sul disco rigido verranno eliminati. Prima di iniziare l'attivazione, verificare con il cliente che i dati possano essere eliminati.
- Accertarsi che l'interruttore di alimentazione principale della macchina sia spento.

Procedura di attivazione

1. Inserire la chiave USB nel relativo slot di memoria della macchina e accendere l'interruttore di alimentazione principale. (vedere Figura A.)
2. Una volta visualizzata la schermata iniziale, viene visualizzato il messaggio *Verrà avviata l'installazione del Kit sicurezza*. Premere [OK].
3. Seguire le istruzioni sullo schermo per la rimozione della chiave USB e spegnere l'interruttore di alimentazione principale.
4. Accendere l'interruttore di alimentazione principale. Viene visualizzata la schermata per l'immissione della chiave di crittografia. Chiedere al cliente di modificare la chiave di crittografia. L'utilizzo del valore predefinito della chiave di crittografia (000000) non influisce sull'affidabilità della sicurezza dati. Se il cliente desidera modificare la chiave di crittografia, è necessario che esegua i passi descritti qui in basso.
Premere [Chiave di crittografia]
Premere [Backspace] per eliminare 000000. Immettere la chiave di crittografia (6 caratteri alfanumerici) e poi premere [OK].
Ricordare al cliente di non dimenticare la chiave di crittografia immessa.
5. Premere [OK]. La formattazione del disco rigido ha inizio.
6. Al termine della formattazione, seguire le istruzioni sullo schermo per spegnere e riaccendere l'interruttore di alimentazione principale.
7. Una volta aperta la schermata iniziale, verificare che un'icona del disco rigido (📁) sia visualizzata nell'angolo inferiore destro dello schermo. (vedere Figura B.)
8. Conservare la chiave USB nell'apposito scomparto situato sul retro della copertura centrale sinistra, fissata alla parte posteriore della macchina. (vedere Figura C.)

www.tonerplus.com.ua

Deutsch

Gelieferte Teile

USB-Schlüssel 1

Vorsichtsmaßnahmen vor der Aktivierung

- Durch Aktivieren des Datensicherheits-Kits werden alle Daten gelöscht, die vom Kunden auf der Festplatte gespeichert wurden. Fragen Sie vor der Aktivierung den Kunden, ob die Daten gelöscht werden können.
- Stellen Sie sicher, dass der Netzschalter des Geräts ausgeschaltet ist.

Aktivierungsverfahren

1. Stecken Sie den USB-Schlüssel in den USB-Speichersteckplatz des Geräts ein und schalten Sie den Netzschalter ein. (Siehe Abbildung A.)
2. Zuerst wird der Eröffnungsbildschirm angezeigt, dann wird die Nachricht *Sicherheits-Kit wird installiert* angezeigt. Drücken Sie [OK].
3. Folgen Sie den Anweisungen, die auf dem Bildschirm angezeigt werden, um den USB-Schlüssel zu entfernen, und schalten Sie den Netzschalter aus.
4. Schalten Sie den Netzschalter ein. Das Dialogfeld zur Eingabe des Verschlüsselungscodes wird angezeigt. Bitten Sie den Kunden, den Verschlüsselungscode zu ändern. Die Verwendung des Standardwertes für den Verschlüsselungscode (000000) hat keinen Einfluss auf die Zuverlässigkeit der Datensicherheit. Falls der Kunde den Code ändern möchte, weisen Sie ihn an, die folgenden Schritte auszuführen.

Drücken Sie [Verschlüssel.- code].

Drücken Sie [Rücktaste], um 000000 zu löschen. Geben Sie den Verschlüsselungscode (6-stellige alphanumerische Zeichenfolge) ein, und drücken Sie [OK].

Erinnern Sie den Kunden daran, dass er den eingegebenen Verschlüsselungscode nicht vergessen darf.

5. Drücken Sie [OK]. Die Festplatte wird formatiert.
6. Nach der Formatierung werden Sie auf dem Bildschirm aufgefordert, den Netzschalter aus und wieder einzuschalten.
7. Wenn der Eröffnungsbildschirm angezeigt wird, stellen Sie sicher, dass ein Festplattensymbol (📁) unten rechts auf dem Bildschirm angezeigt wird. (Siehe Abbildung B.)
8. Bewahren Sie den USB-Schlüssel in der USB-Schlüsselpackung hinten in der linken mittleren Abdeckung auf, die sich hinten am Gerät befindet. (Siehe Abbildung C.)

日本語

付属部品

USB キー 1

導入前の注意事項について

- データセキュリティキットを導入すると、お客様がハードディスクに保存したデータは全て削除される。お客様に削除して問題ないことを確認してから、導入作業を行う。
- 機械の電源が切れていることを確認してから、手順を行う。

導入手順

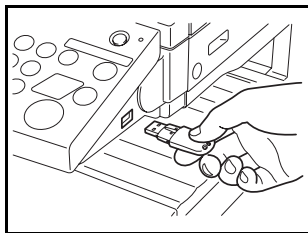
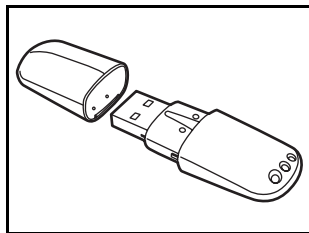
1. 機械の USB メモリスロットに USB キーを挿入し、主電源スイッチを入れる。(イラスト A 参照)
2. オープニング画面が表示されたあと、「**セキュリティ機能を起動します。**」が表示されるので、[OK]を押す。
3. 画面の指示にしたがって、USB キーを抜き、主電源スイッチを切る。
4. 主電源スイッチを入れる。暗号化コードを入力する画面が表示される。暗号化コードは工場出荷時 (000000) のまま運用してもセキュリティ上問題ない。お客様が変更を希望された場合は、以下の手順で変更してもらう。
[暗号化コード]を押す。
[バックスペース]を押して、「000000」を消してから、暗号化コード (英数字 6 文字) を入力して、[OK]を押す。
お客様に、暗号化コードを忘れないよう注意を促すこと。
5. [OK]を押す。ハードディスクのフォーマットが開始される。
6. フォーマットが終了したら、画面の指示にしたがって、主電源スイッチを切る。
7. 主電源スイッチを入れる。オープニング画面が表示されたあと、画面右下 (イラスト B 参照) にハードディスクアイコン (📁) が表示されているか確認する。
8. 使用後の USB キーは、本体後側のカバー (イラスト C 参照) 裏側の USB キーBOX に収納する。

INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR UG-30

UG-30 Installation Guide

Guide d'installation de l'UG-30

Guía de instalación de UG-30



English

Supplied parts

USB Key 1

Precautions before Activating

Be sure that the Main Power Switch of the machine is turned off.

Activating Procedure

1. Insert the USB Key into the USB Memory Slot of the machine and turn the Main Power Switch on.
2. After the opening screen appeared, the message *Activating high compression PDF and PDF encryption functions.* is displayed. Press [OK].
3. Follow the onscreen instructions to remove the USB Key and turn the Main Power Switch off.
4. Turn the Main Power Switch on. The high compression PDF and PDF encryption functions are now available.

For details on the high compression PDF and PDF encryption functions, refer to the Operation Guide of the machine.

Keep the USB key carefully.

The functions may be unavailable caused by the malfunction in the machine. Perform the procedure above to reactivate the functions.

Français

Pièces fournies

Clé USB 1

Précautions avant l'activation

Veiller à mettre l'interrupteur principal de l'appareil hors tension.

Procédure d'activation

1. Insérer la clé USB dans l'emplacement de mémoire USB de l'appareil et mettre l'interrupteur principal sous tension.
2. Lorsque l'écran d'accueil s'ouvre, le message *L'installation des fonctions de haute compression* s'affiche. Appuyer sur [OK].
3. Suivre les instructions à l'écran pour retirer la clé USB et mettre l'interrupteur principal hors tension.
4. Mettre l'interrupteur principal sous tension. Les fonctions de haute compression PDF et de cryptage PDF sont maintenant disponibles.

Pour plus d'informations sur ces fonctions, consulter le guide d'utilisation de l'appareil.

Conserver soigneusement la clé USB.

Les fonctions peuvent ne pas être disponibles en cas de dysfonctionnement de l'appareil.

Effectuer la procédure ci-dessus pour les réactiver.

Español

Piezas suministradas

Llave USB 1

Precauciones antes de la activación

Asegúrese de que el interruptor principal esté apagado.

Procedimiento de activación

1. Inserte la llave USB en la ranura de memoria USB de la máquina y encienda el interruptor principal.
2. Después de la pantalla inicial, aparecerá el mensaje *Comenzará instalación de PDF de alta compresión.* Pulse [OK].
3. Siga las instrucciones que aparecen en pantalla para retirar la llave USB y apague el interruptor principal.
4. Encienda el interruptor principal. Ya están disponibles las funciones PDF de alta compresión y cifrado PDF.

Para conocer detalles acerca de las funciones PDF de alta compresión y cifrado PDF, consulte la Guía de uso de la máquina.

Conserve cuidadosamente la llave USB.

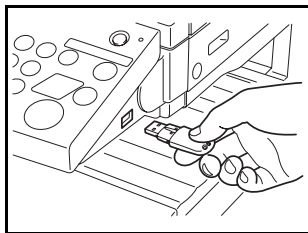
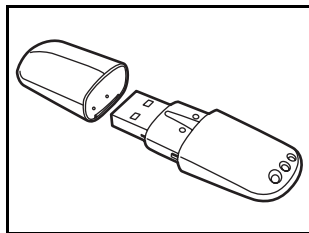
Es posible que las funciones no estén disponibles a causa de algún fallo de la máquina.

Ejecute el procedimiento anterior para reactivar las funciones.

UG-30 Installationsanleitung

UG-30 - Guida all'installazione

UG-30 設置手順書



Italiano

Componenti forniti

Chiave USB 1

Precauzioni prima dell'attivazione

Accertarsi che l'interruttore di alimentazione principale della macchina sia spento.

Procedura di attivazione

1. Inserire la chiave USB nel relativo slot di memoria della macchina e accendere l'interruttore di alimentazione principale.
2. Una volta visualizzata la schermata iniziale, viene visualizzato il messaggio *Verrà avviata l'installazione delle funzionalità*. Premere [OK].
3. Seguire le istruzioni sullo schermo per la rimozione della chiave USB e spegnere l'interruttore di alimentazione principale.
4. Accendere l'interruttore di alimentazione principale. Le funzioni di crittografia e compressione elevata PDF sono ora disponibili.

Per maggiori dettagli sulle funzioni sopra citate, fare riferimento alla Guida operativa della macchina.

Conservare con cura la chiave USB.

È possibile che le funzioni non siano disponibili a causa di un'anomalia a carico della macchina.

Eseguire la procedura sopra riportata per riattivare le funzioni.

Deutsch

Gelieferte Teile

USB-Schlüssel 1

Vorsichtsmaßnahmen vor der Aktivierung

Stellen Sie sicher, dass der Netzschalter des Geräts ausgeschaltet ist.

Aktivierungsverfahren

1. Stecken Sie den USB-Schlüssel in den USB-Speichersteckplatz des Geräts ein und schalten Sie den Netzschalter ein.
2. Nach der Anzeige des Eröffnungsbildschirms wird die Meldung *Funktionen für hoch komprimierte und verschlüsselte PDF-Dateien* angezeigt. Drücken Sie [OK].
3. Folgen Sie den Anweisungen, die auf dem Bildschirm angezeigt werden, um den USB-Schlüssel zu entfernen, und schalten Sie den Netzschalter aus.
4. Schalten Sie den Netzschalter ein. Die Funktionen für hoch komprimierte und verschlüsselte PDF-Dateien stehen jetzt zur Verfügung.

Weitere Informationen zu den Funktionen für hoch komprimierte und verschlüsselte PDF-Dateien finden Sie in der Betriebsanleitung für das Gerät.

Bewahren Sie den USB-Schlüssel sorgfältig auf.

Die Funktionen stehen möglicherweise aufgrund einer Fehlfunktion im Gerät nicht zur Verfügung.

Aktivieren Sie die Funktionen mit dem obigen Verfahren erneut.

日本語

付属部品

USB キー 1

使用前の注意事項

機械の電源が切れていることを確認してから、手順を行ってください。

使用手順

1. 機械の USB メモリスロットに USB キーを挿入し、主電源スイッチを入れてください。
2. オープニング画面が表示されたあと、「高圧縮 PDF および PDF 暗号化機能を起動します。」が表示されるので、[OK]を押してください。
3. 画面の指示にしたがって、USB キーを抜き、主電源スイッチを切ってください。
4. 主電源スイッチを入れてください。高圧縮 PDF および PDF 暗号化機能が使用できるようになります。

高圧縮 PDF および PDF 暗号化機能についての詳細は、本体の使用説明書をご覧ください。

USB キーは大切に保管してください。

機械の故障などで、機能が無効になることがあります。その場合は、上記手順を行うと機能を再起動させることができます。

KYOCERA MITA EUROPE B.V.

Hoeksteen 40, 2132 MS Hoofddorp,
The Netherlands
Phone: +31.20.654.0000
Home page: <http://www.kyoceramita-europe.com>
Email: info@kyoceramita-europe.com

KYOCERA MITA NEDERLAND B.V.
Beechavenue 25, 1119RA Schiphol-Rijk
The Netherlands
Phone: +31.20.58.77.200

KYOCERA MITA (UK) LTD
8 Beacontree Plaza
Gillette Way Reading Berks RG2 0BS,
U.K.
Phone: +44.1189.311.500

KYOCERA MITA ITALIA S.p.A.
Via G. Verdi, 89 / 91, 20063 Cernusco s/N
Milano, Italy
Phone: +39.02.92179.1

S.A. KYOCERA MITA BELGIUM N.V.
Hermesstraat 8A, 1930 Zaventem,
Belgium
Phone: +32.2.720.9270

KYOCERA MITA FRANCE S.A.
Parc Les Algorithmes Saint Aubin
91194 GIF-SUR-YVETTE,
France
Phone: +33.1.6985.2600

KYOCERA MITA ESPAÑA S.A.
Edificio Kyocera, Avda de Manacor No. 2,
28290 Las Matas (Madrid),
Spain
Phone: +34.91.631.8392

KYOCERA MITA FINLAND OY
Kirvesmiehenkatu 4, 00880 Helsinki,
Finland
Phone: +358.9.4780.5200

KYOCERA MITA (SCHWEIZ)
Hohlstrasse 614, 8048 Zürich
Switzerland
Phone: +41.1.908.4949

KYOCERA MITA DEUTSCHLAND GMBH
Otto-Hahn-Str. 12 D-40670 Meerbusch,
Germany
Phone: +49.2159.918.0

KYOCERA MITA GMBH AUSTRIA
Eduard-Kittenberger-Gasse 95,
1230 Wien,
Austria
Phone: +43.1.86338.210

KYOCERA MITA SVENSKA AB
Esbogatan 16B 164 75 Kista,
Sweden
Phone: +46.8.546.55000

KYOCERA MITA NORGE
Postboks 150 Oppsal, NO 0619 Oslo
Olaf Helsetsvet 6, NO 0694 Oslo,
Norway
Phone: +47.22.62.73.00

KYOCERA MITA DANMARK A/S
Ejby Industrivej 1, DK-2600 Glostrup,
Denmark
Phone: +45.5687.1100

KYOCERA MITA PORTUGAL LDA.
Rua do Centro Cultural, 41 (Alvalade) 1700-106 Lisbon,
Portugal
Phone: +351.21.842.9100

KYOCERA MITA SOUTH AFRICA (PTY) LTD.
527 Kyalami Boulevard,
Kyalami Business Park Midrand,
South Africa
Phone: +27.(0)11.540.2600

KYOCERA MITA AMERICA, INC.

Headquarters:
225 Sand Road,
Fairfield, New Jersey 07004-0008,
U.S.A.
Phone: (973) 808-8444

KYOCERA MITA AUSTRALIA PTY. LTD.
Level 3, 6-10 Talavera Road, North Ryde,
N.S.W. 2113 Australia
Phone: (02) 9888-9999

KYOCERA MITA NEW ZEALAND LTD.
1-3 Parkhead Place, Albany
P.O. Box 302 125 NHPC, Auckland,
New Zealand
Phone: (09) 415-4517

KYOCERA MITA (THAILAND) CORP., LTD.
9/209 Ratchada-Prachachem Road,
Bang Sue, Bangkok 10800, Thailand
Phone: (02) 586-0320

KYOCERA MITA SINGAPORE PTE LTD.
121 Genting Lane, 3rd Level,
Singapore 349572
Phone: 67418733

KYOCERA MITA HONG KONG LIMITED
11/F., Mita Centre,
552-566, Castle Peak Road,
Tsuen Wan, New Territories,
Hong Kong
Phone: 24297422

KYOCERA MITA TAIWAN Corporation.
7F-1~2, No.41, Lane 221, Gangchi Rd.
Neihu District, Taipei, Taiwan, 114. R.O.C.
Phone: (02) 87511560

KYOCERA MITA Corporation

2-28, 1-chome, Tamatsukuri, Chuo-ku
Osaka 540-8585, Japan
Phone: (06) 6764-3555
<http://www.kyoceramita.com>

KYOCERA MITA AMERICA, INC.

Headquarters:

225 Sand Road,
Fairfield, New Jersey 07004-0008
TEL : (973) 808-8444
FAX : (973) 882-6000

New York Branch:

1410 Broadway 23rd floor
New York, NY 10018
TEL : (917) 286-5400
FAX : (917) 286-5402

Northeastern Region:

225 Sand Road,
Fairfield, New Jersey 07004-0008
TEL : (973) 808-8444
FAX : (973) 882-4401

Midwestern Region:

201 Hansen Court Suite 119
Wood Dale, Illinois 60191
TEL : (630) 238-9982
FAX : (630) 238-9487

Western Region:

14101 Alton Parkway,
Irvine, California 92618-7006
TEL : (949) 457-9000
FAX : (949) 457-9119

Southeastern Region:

1500 Oakbrook Drive,
Norcross, Georgia 30093
TEL : (770) 729-9786
FAX : (770) 729-9873

Southwestern Region:

2825 West Story Road,
Irving, Texas 75038-5299
TEL : (972) 550-8987
FAX : (972) 252-9786

National Operation Center & National Training Center:

2825 West Story Road,
Irving, Texas 75038-5299
TEL : (972) 659-0055
FAX : (972) 570-5816

Latin America Division:

8240 N.W. 52nd. Terrace Dawson Building,
Suite 108 Miami, Florida 33166
TEL : (305) 421-6640
FAX : (305) 421-6666

KYOCERA MITA CANADA, LTD.

6120 Kestrel Road, Mississauga,
Ontario L5T 1S8, Canada
TEL : (905) 670-4425
FAX : (905) 670-8116

KYOCERA MITA MEXICO, S.A. DE C.V.

Av. 16 de Septiembre #407
Col. Santa Inés,
Azcapotzalco México,
D.F. 02130, México
TEL : (55) 5383-2741
FAX : (55) 5383-7804